The late Dr. Carleton Stanley
THE LOEB CLASSICAL LIBRARY

EDITED BY
E. CAPPS, PH.D., LL.D.  T. E. PAGE, LITT.D.
W. H. D. ROUSE, LITT.D.

PLATO
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BOOK</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VII</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI</td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII</td>
<td>475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX</td>
<td>571</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LAWS
ΝΟΜΟΙ

ΤΑ ΤΟΥ ΔΙΑΛΟΓΟΥ ΠΡΟΣΩΠΑ

ΑΘΗΝΑΙΟΣ ΞΕΝΟΣ, ΚΛΕΙΝΙΑΣ ΚΡΗΣ,
ΜΕΓΙΛΛΟΣ ΛΑΚΕΔΑΙΜΟΝΙΟΣ.

Ζ

788 ΑΘ. Γενομένων δε παιδων ἀρρένων καὶ θηλειών τροφήν μὲν πον καὶ παιδείαν τὸ μετὰ ταῦτα λέγειν ὀρθότατ' ἄν ὁ γύρωθ' ἡμιν, ἢν εἶναι μὲν ἀρρήτον πάντως ἀδύνατον, λεγομένη δὲ διδαχῇ τινὶ καὶ νοοθετήσει μᾶλλον ἡ νόμοις εἰκώ ἂν ἡμὶν φαίνοιτο. ἰδία γὰρ καὶ κατ' ὁικίας πολλὰ καὶ σμικρὰ καὶ οὐκ ἐκφάνη πάσι γιγνόμενα ῥαξίως ὑπὸ τῆς ἐκάστου λύπης τε καὶ ἡδονῆς.

Β καὶ ἐπιθυμίας, ἐτερα παρὰ τὰς τοῦ νομοθέτου ἐνμιστοῦσα παραγενόμενα παντοδαπὰ καὶ οὐχ ὁμοια ἀλλῆλοις ἀπεργάζοιτ' ἄν τὰ τῶν πολιτῶν ἡθὶ τοῦτο δὲ κακὸν ταῖς πόλεσι. καὶ γὰρ διὰ σμικρότητα αὐτῶν καὶ πυκνότητα ἐπιζήμια τεθέντα ποιεῖν νόμους ἀπρεπές ἁμα καὶ ἁσχημόν. διαφθείρει δὲ καὶ τοὺς γραφῆ τεθέντας νόμους, ἐν τοῖς σμικροῖς καὶ πυκνοῖς ἑθισθέντων τῶν

C ἀνθρώπων παραγομεῖν φωτε ἀπορία μὲν περὶ αὐτὰ νομοθετεῖν, σιγάν δὲ ἀδύνατον. ἓ δὲ λέγω,

1 ὀρθότατ' ἄν Ast: ὀρθότατα MSS.
LAWS

[or ON LEGISLATION, POLITICAL]

CHARACTERS

An Athenian Stranger, Clinias of Crete, Megillus of Lacedaemon

BOOK VII

ATH. Now that our children, of both sexes, are born, our proper course will be to deal in the next place with their nurture and education. This is a subject which it is wholly impossible to pass over; but obviously it can be treated more suitably by way of precept and exhortation than by legislation. For in the private life of the family many trivial things are apt to be done which escape general notice,—things which are the result of individual feelings of pain, pleasure, or desire, and which contravene the instructions of the lawgiver; and these will produce in the citizens a multiplicity of contradictory tendencies. This is bad for a State. For while, on the one hand, it is improper and undignified to impose penalties on these practices by law, because of their triviality and the frequency of their occurrence, on the other hand, it detracts from the authority of the law which stands written when men grow used to breaking the law in trivial matters repeatedly. Hence, while it is impossible to pass over these practices in silence, it is difficult to legislate concerning them. The practices I refer to I will try to
δηλώσαι πειρατέον οίνον δείγματα ἐξενεγκόντα 
εἰς φῶς· νῦν γὰρ λεγομένους ἑοικε κατὰ τι σκότος.

κλ. 'Αληθέστατα λέγεις.

α. Ούκοιν ὅτι μὲν σώματα καὶ ψυχὰς τὴν 
γε ὅρθῃν πάντως δεῖ τροφῆν φαίνεσθαι δυναμένην 
ὡς κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα ἐξεργάζεσθαι, τούτω μὲν 
ὁρθῶς εἰρηταί ποι.

κλ. Τί μὴν ἐνια 

D

α. Σώματα δὲ κάλλιστα, οἴμαι, τὸ γε ἀπλούστατοι, ὡς ὁρθότατα δεῖ νέων οὖντων εὐθὺς φύεσθαι 
tῶν παλίδων.

κλ. Πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

α. Τί δὲ; τὸδε οὐκ ἐννοοῦμεν, ὡς ἡ πρώτῃ 
βλάστη παντὸς ξώου πολὺ μεγίστῃ καὶ πλείστῃ 
φύεται, ὡστε καὶ ἐριν πολλοὶς παρέσχηκε μὴ 
γίγνεσθαι τὰ γ' ἀνθρώπινα μήκη διπλάσια ἀπὸ 
πέντε ἑτῶν ἐν τοῖς λοιποῖς εἰκοσιν ἔτεσιν 
αὐξανόμενα;

κλ. 'Αληθῆ.

α. Τί οὖν; πολλὴ αὕξη ὅταν ἐπιρρήγη πόνων 
789 χωρίς πολλῶν καὶ συμμέτρων, οὐκ ἔσμεν ὅτι 
μυρία κακὰ ἐν τοῖς σώμασιν ἀποτελεῖ;

κλ. Πάνυ γε.

α. Ούκοιν τότε δεῖται πλείστων πόνων, ὅταν 
ἡ πλείστῃ τροφῇ προσηγύνηται τοῖς σώμασιν.

κλ. Τί δήτα, ω ἔξενε; ἡ τοῖς ἄρτι γεγονόσι 
καὶ νεωτάτοις πόνους πλείστους προστάξαμεν;

α. Οὐδαμῶς γε, ἀλλ' ἔτι καὶ πρότερον τοῖς 
ἐντὸς τῶν αὐτῶν μητέρων τρεφομένοις.

κλ. Πῶς λέγεις, ὃ λῶστε; ἡ τοῖς κυνομένοις 
φράζεις;

1 643D ff.
LAWS, BOOK VII

make clear by bringing some specimens, as it were, to the light; for at present my words rather resemble a "dark speech."

CLIN. That is quite true.

ATH. When we said 1 that right nurture must be manifestly capable of making both bodies and souls in all respects as beautiful and good as possible, we spoke, I presume, truly?

CLIN. Certainly we did.

ATH. And I suppose that (to take the simplest point) the most beautiful bodies must grow up from earliest infancy as straight as possible.

CLIN. Most certainly.

ATH. Well then, do we not observe that in every living creature the first shoot makes by far the largest and longest growth; so that many people stoutly maintain that in point of height men grow more in the first five years of life than in the next twenty?

CLIN. That is true.

ATH. But we know, don't we, that when growth occurs rapidly, without plenty of suitable exercise, it produces in the body countless evils?

CLIN. Certainly.

ATH. And when bodies receive most food, then they require most exercise?

CLIN. What is that, Stranger? Are we to prescribe most exercise for new-born babes and tiny infants?

ATH. Nay, even earlier than that,—we shall prescribe it for those nourished inside the bodies of their mothers.

CLIN. What do you mean, my dear sir? Is it unborn babes you are talking of?
PLATO

Β θε. Ναί. θαυμαστὸν δ’ ουδέν ἐστὶν ἀγνοεῖν ὕμας τὴν τῶν τηλικοῦτων γυμναστικῆς, ἢν βουλοίμην ἄν ὕμιν, καίπερ ἄτοπον οὖσαν, δηλόσαι.

κα. Πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

θε. Ἕστι τοίνυν παρ’ ἡμῖν μᾶλλον τὸ τοιοῦτον κατανοεῖν διὰ τὸ τὰς παιδίας αὐτοθει μεἰζόνως τινὰς παῖζειν ἢ δεῖ. τρέφουσι γὰρ δὴ παρ’ ἡμῖν οὐ μόνον παῖδες ἀλλὰ καὶ πρεσβύτεροι τινὲς ὀρνίθων θρέμματα, ἐπὶ τὰς μάχας τὰς πρὸς ἄλληλα ἁσκοῦντες τὰ τοιάτα τῶν θηρίων.

C τολλοῦ δὴ δέουσιν ἡγεῖσθαι τοὺς πόνους αὐτοῖς εἶναι τοὺς πρὸς ἄλληλα μετρίους, ἐν οἷς αὐτὰ ἀνακινοῦσι γυμνάζοντες: πρὸς γὰρ τούτοις λαβόντες ὑπὸ μάλλη ἐκαστὸς, τοῖς μὲν ἐλάττουσας εἰς τὰς χεῖρας, μεῖζον δ’ ὑπὸ τὴν ἀγκάλην ἐντός, πορεύονται περιπατοῦντες στάδιοι παμπόλλους ἑνεκα τῆς εὐεξίας οὐ τι τῆς τῶν αὐτῶν σωμάτων, ἀλλὰ τῆς τούτων τῶν θρεμμάτων. καὶ τὸ γε τοσοῦτον δηλοῦσι τὸ δυναμένῳ καταμαθεῖν, ὅτι τὰ σώματα πάντα ὑπὸ τῶν σεισμῶν τε καὶ

D κινήσεων κινούμενα ἀκόπτα ὑνιναιται πάντων ὁσα τε ὑπὸ ἐαυτῶν ἢ καὶ ἐν αἰώραις ἢ καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν ἢ καὶ ἐφ’ ἵππων ὄχυμενα καὶ ὑπ’ ἄλλων ὁπωσοῦν ὅθεν φερομένων τῶν σωμάτων κινεῖται, καὶ διὰ ταύτα τὰς τῶν σίτων τροφᾶς καὶ τοτῶν κατακρατοῦντα ὑγίειαν καὶ κάλλος καὶ τὴν ἄλλην ῥώμην ἡμῖν δυνατά ἐστι παραδιδόναι. τί οὖν ἃν φαίμεν ἔχοντων οὕτω τούτων τὸ μετὰ τούτο ἡμᾶς δειν ποιεῖν; βούλεσθε ἀμα γέλωτι

Ε φράξωμεν, τιθέντες νόμους τὴν μὲν κύουσαν περιπατεῖν, τὸ γενόμενον δὲ πλάττειν τε οἶνον κήρινον, ἔως ὑγρὸν, καὶ μέχρι δυοῖν ἑτοῖν σπαργανὰν; καὶ
LAWS, BOOK VII

ATH. It is. Still it is by no means surprising that you know nothing of this pre-natal gymnastic; but, strange though it is, I should like to explain it to you.

CLIN. By all means do so.

ATH. In our country it is easier to understand a practice of this kind, because there are people there who carry their sports to excess. At Athens we find not only boys but sometimes old men rearing birds and training such creatures to fight one another. But they are far from thinking that the training they give them by exciting their pugnacity provides sufficient exercise; in addition to this, each man takes up his bird and keeps it tucked away in his fist, if it is small, or under his arm, if it is large, and in this way they walk many a long mile in order to improve the condition, not of their own bodies, but of these creatures. Thus clearly do they show to any observant person that all bodies benefit, as by a tonic, when they are moved by any kind of shaking or motion, whether they are moved by their own action—as in a swing or in a rowing-boat—or are carried along on horseback or by any other rapidly moving bodies; and that this is the reason why bodies can deal successfully with their supplies of meat and drink and provide us with health and beauty, and strength as well. This being the state of the case, what does it behove us to do in the future? Shall we risk ridicule, and lay down a law that the pregnant woman shall walk, and that the child, while still soft, shall be moulded like wax, and be kept in swaddling clothes till it is two years

1 ὀξοῦμενα Ast : ὀξομένων MSS.
δή καὶ τὰς τροφοὺς ἀναγκάζωμεν νόμῳ ξημοῦντες τὰ παιδία ἢ πρὸς ἁγροὺς ἢ πρὸς ἀερὰ ἢ πρὸς οἰκείους ἀεὶ πη φέρειν, μέχριτέραν ἂν ἰκανῶς ἰστασθαί δυνάτα γίγνηται, καὶ τὸτε διενλαβομένας ἔτι νέων οὐντων μή πη βία ἐπερειδομένων στρέφηται τὰ κάλα ἐπιπονεῖν φερούσας, ἐως ἂν τριετίς ἀποτελεσθῇ τὸ γενόμενον; εἰς δύναμιν δὲ 790 ἵσχυρὰς αὐτάς εἶναι χρεὼν [καὶ μὴ μίαν] ; ἡτὶ δὲ τούτως ἐκάστοις, ἂν μὴ γίγνηται, ξημίαν τοῖς μὴ ποιοῦσι γράφωμεν; ἡ πολλοῦ γε δεῖ; τὸ γὰρ ἅρτι ῥηθένν γίγνοντ', ἂν πολὺ καὶ ἄφθονον.

κα. Τὸ ποίον;

α. Τὸ γέλωτα ἂν πολὺν ὀφλεῖν ἡμᾶς πρὸς τῷ μὴ ἐθέλειν ἂν πείθεσθαι γυναικεῖα τε καὶ δούλεια ἡθὴ τροφῶν.

κα. Ἀλλὰ τίνος δὴ χάριν ἔφαμεν αὐτὰ δεῖν ῥηθήναι;

α. Τούθεν τὰ τῶν δεσποτῶν τε καὶ ἑλευθέρων ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν ἡθή τάχ' ἂν ἀκούσαντα εἰς σύννοιαν ἀφίκοιτ' ἂν τὴν ὑφή, ὅτι χωρίς τῆς ἴδιας διοικήσεως εὑρείς πόλεσιν ὀρθῆς ἐγγυμένης μάτιν ἂν τὰ κοινὰ τίς οἶοιτο ἔξειν τινὰ βεβαιότητα θέσεως νόμων, καὶ ταῦτα ἑυνουῶν αὐτὸς νόμοι ἂν τοῖς νῦν ῥηθείσι χρῶτο, καὶ χρόμενος εὖ τήν τε οἰκίαν καὶ πόλιν ἄμα τὴν αὐτῶν διοικῶν εὑδαιμονοῖ.

κα. Καὶ μάλ' εἰκότως εἴρηκας.

α. Τοιγαροῦν μῆπω λήξωμεν τῆς τοιαύτης νομοθεσίας, πρὶν ἂν καὶ τὰ περὶ τὰς ψυχὰς τῶν

1 [καὶ μὴ μίαν] bracketed by W.-Möllendorff.
old? And shall we also compel the nurses by legal penalties to keep carrying the children somehow, either to the fields or to the temples or to their relatives, all the time until they are able to stand upright; and after that, still to persevere in carrying them until they are three years old, as a precaution against the danger of distorting their legs by over-pressure while they are still young? And that the nurses shall be as strong as possible? And shall we impose a written penalty for every failure to carry out these injunctions? Such a course is quite out of the question; for it would lead to a super-abundance of that consequence which we mentioned a moment ago.

CLIN. What was that?

ATH. The consequence of our incurring ridicule in abundance, in addition to meeting with a blank refusal to obey on the part of the nurses, with their womanish and servile minds.

CLIN. What reason, then, had we for saying that these rules ought to be stated?

ATH. The reason was this: the minds of the masters and of the freemen in the States may perhaps listen, and so come to the right conclusion that, unless private affairs in a State are rightly managed, it is vain to suppose that any stable code of laws can exist for public affairs; and when he perceives this, the individual citizen may of himself adopt as laws the rules we have now stated, and, by so doing and thus ordering aright both his household and his State, may achieve happiness.

CLIN. Such a result seems quite probable.

ATH. Consequently we must not desist from this kind of legislation until we have described in detail
 Plato

πάνω νέων παίδων ἐπιτηδεύματα ἀποδόμεν κατὰ τῶν αὐτῶν τρόπον ὑπερ ἡρμεθα τῶν περὶ τὰ σώματα μύθων λεχθέντων διαπεραίνειν.

κα. Πάνω μὲν οὖν ὅρθως.

ἀθ. Δάβωμεν τοίνυν τούτο οἶνον στοιχεῖον ἐπ’ ἀμφότερα, σώματός τε καὶ ψυχῆς τῶν πάνω νέων τήν τιθήνησιν καὶ κίνησιν γιγνομένην ὅτι μάλιστα διὰ πάσης νυκτὸς τε καὶ ἡμέρας, ὡς ἔστι ξύμφορος ἀπαίτη μέν, οὐχ ἦκιστα δὲ τοῖς ὅτι νεωτάτοισιν, καὶ

ὅικεῖων, εἰ δυνατόν ἦν, οἶνον αἰεὶ πλέοντας· νῦν δ’ ὡς ἐγγύτατα τούτων ποιεῖν δεῖ περὶ τὰ νεωγενή παίδων θρέμματα. τεκμαίρεσθαι δὲ χρὴ καὶ ἀπὸ τόυτο ὡς ἐξ ἐμπειρίας αὐτὸ εἰλήφασι καὶ ἐγνῶκα-

σιν ὅν χρήσιμον αἱ τε τροφοὶ τῶν σμικρῶν καὶ αἱ περὶ τὰ τῶν Κορυβάντων ἱάματα τελεόσιν· ἥνικα γὰρ ἀν ποὺ βουληθῶσι κατακοιμίζειν τὰ δυσυπ-

νούντα τῶν παιδίων αἱ μητέρες, οὐχ ἦσυχίαν αὐτοῖς προσφέρουσιν ἀλλὰ τοὺναντίον κίνησιν, ἐν ταῖς ἀγκάλαις αἰεὶ σείονται, καὶ οὐ σιγὴν ἀλλὰ

Ε τῖνα μελωδίαν, καὶ ἀτεχνῶς οἶνον κατανύσω τῶν παιδίων, καθαπερεὶ 1 τῶν ἑκφρόνων ἐκχεῖων, ιάσει 2 ταύτη τῇ τῆς κινήσεως ἀμα χορεία καὶ

μούση χρώμεναι.

κα. Τῆς οὖν αἰτία τούτων, ὡς εἶνε, μᾶλιστ’ ἐσθ’ ἡμῖν;

ἀθ. Οὐ πάνω χαλεπὴ γιγνώσκειν.

κα. Πῶς δῆ; 

ἀθ. Δειμαίνειν ἐστὶ που ταύτ’ ἀμφότερα τὰ

1 καθαπερεὶ: καθʿ αἰ MSS.; καθ᾽ αἰ Aldus, Zur.

2 ἐκχεῖων, ιάσει: ἐκχεῖων ιάσει MSS. (ἐκχεῖων, ιάσει England).
the treatment suited for the souls of young children in the same manner as we commenced our advice regarding their bodies.

CLIN. You are quite right.

ATH. Let us take this, then, as a fundamental assumption in both cases,—that for both body and soul of the very young a process of nursing and moving, that is as continuous as possible both by day and by night, is in all cases salutary, and especially in the case of the youngest: it is like having them always rocked—if that were possible—on the sea. As it is, with new-born infants one should reproduce this condition as nearly as possible. Further evidence of this may be seen in the fact that this course is adopted and its usefulness recognized both by those who nurse small children and by those who administer remedies in cases of Corybantism.\footnote{“Corybantism” is a technical term for a state of morbid mental excitement (cp. “tarantism”) derived from “Corybantes,” the name given to the frenzied worshippers of Bacchus.} Thus when mothers have children suffering from sleeplessness, and want to lull them to rest, the treatment they apply is to give them, not quiet, but motion, for they rock them constantly in their arms; and instead of silence, they use a kind of crooning noise; and thus they literally cast a spell upon the children (like the victims of Bacchic frenzy) by employing the combined movements of dance and song as a remedy.

CLIN. And what, Stranger, are we to suppose is the main cause of this?

ATH. It is easy enough to see.

CLIN. How so?

ATH. Both these affections are forms of fright;
πάθη, καὶ ἐστὶ δείματα δι’ ἐξιν φαύλην τῆς ψυχῆς τινά. ὅταν οὖν ἔξωθεν τις προσφέρῃ τοῖς τοιούτοις πάθεις σεισμοῖς, ἢ τῶν ἔξωθεν κρατεὶ κίνησις προσφερομένη τὴν ἐντὸς φοβερὰν οὖςαν καὶ μανικήν κίνησιν, κρατήσασα δὲ γαλήνην ἠσυχίαν τε ἐν τῇ ψυχῇ φαίνεται ἀπεργασαμένη τῆς περὶ τά τῆς καρδίας χαλεπῆς γενομένης ἐκάστων πιθήκων, παντάπασιν ἀγαπητῶν τινῶν μὲν ὑπὸνοι λαγχάνειν ποτεῖ, τοὺς δ’ ἐγχεγο-ρότας ὅρχουμένους τε καὶ αὐλουμένους μετὰ θεῶν, Β οἷς ὁ καλλιεροῦντες ἐκαστοί θύσια, κατειργάσατο ἄντι μανικῶν ἡμῖν διαθέσεων ἔξεις ἐμφρονας ἔχειν, καὶ τάῦτα, ὡς διὰ βραχέων γε οὖτως εἰπεῖν, πιθανὸν λόγον ἔχει τινά.

κλ. Πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

ἀ. Εἰ δέ γε οὖτω τοιαύτην τινά δύναμιν ἔχει τάῦτα, ἐννεῖν χρή τόδε παρ’ αὐτοῖς, ὥσ ἁπάσα ψυχῆ δείμασι ἔννοιαν ἐκ νέων μᾶλλον ἅν διὰ φόβων ἔθιζοντο γίγνεσθαι. τούτῳ δέ ποι πάς ἄν φαίν δειλίας ἀσκησιν, ἀλλ’ οὐκ ἀνδρίας γίγνεσθαι.

κλ. Πῶς γὰρ οὖ; Σ ἀ. Τὸ δέ γε ἐναντίον ἀνδρίας ἄν φαῖμεν ἐκ νέων εὐθὺς ἐπιτηδευμα εἶναι, τὸ νικᾶν τὰ προσ-πίπτονθ’ ἡμῖν δείματά τε καὶ φόβους.

κλ. Ὄρθως.

ἀ. Ἐν δὴ καὶ τούτο εἰς ψυχῆς μόριον ἀρετῆς, τὴν τῶν παντελῶς παῖδων γυμναστικὴν ἐν ταῖς κινήσει, μέγα ἡμῖν φῶμεν ἐμμβάλλεσθαι.

κλ. Πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

ἀ. Καὶ μὴν τὸ γε μὴ δύσκολον ἐν ψυχῇ καὶ τὸ δύσκολον οὐ σμικρὸν μόριον εὐψυχίας καὶ κακοψυχίας ἐκάτερον γεγομένου γίγνοιτ’ ἀν.
and frights are due to a poor condition of soul. So whenever one applies an external shaking to affections of this kind, the external motion thus applied overpowers the internal motion of fear and frenzy, and by thus overpowering it, it brings about a manifest calm in the soul and a cessation of the grievous palpitation of the heart which had existed in each case. Thus it produces very satisfactory results. The children it puts to sleep; the Bacchants, who are awake, it brings into a sound state of mind instead of a frenzied condition, by means of dancing and playing, with the help of whatsoever gods they chance to be worshipping with sacrifice. This is—to put it shortly—quite a plausible account of the matter.

CLIN. Most plausible.

ATH. Seeing, then, that these causes produce the effects described, in the case of the people mentioned one should observe this point,—that every soul that is subjected to fright from youth will be specially liable to become timid: and this, as all would aver, is not to practise courage, but cowardice.

CLIN. Of course it is.

ATH. The opposite course, of practising courage from youth up, consists, we shall say, in the conquering of the frights and fears that assail us.

CLIN. That is true.

ATH. Let us say, then, that this factor—namely, the exercise of quite young children by the various motions—contributes greatly towards developing one part of the soul's virtue.

CLIN. Certainly.

ATH. Moreover, cheerfulness of soul and its opposite will constitute no small part of stout-heartedness and faintheartedness.
PLATO

κα. Πῶς δ’ οὐ;

Δ α. Τίνα σον ἂν τρόπον ἑυθὺς ἐμφύουθ’ ἡμῖν ὁπότερον βουληθέμεν τῷ νεογενεῖ; φράζειν δὴ πειρατέον ὅπως τις καὶ καθ’ ὅσον εὐπορεῖ τούτων.

κα. Πῶς γὰρ οὕ; 

α. Δέγω δὴ τὸ γε παρ’ ἡμῖν δόγμα, ὡς ἢ μὲν τρυφὴ δύσκολα καὶ ἀκράχολα καὶ σφόδρα ἀπὸ σμικρῶν κινούμενα τὰ τῶν νέων ἥθη ἀπεργάζεται, τὸ δὲ τούτων ἐναντίον, ἢ τε σφοδρὰ καὶ ἀγρίᾳ δουλωσις, ταπεινοῖς καὶ ἀνελευθέροις καὶ μισανθρώπους ποιοῦσα ἀνεπιτηδείους ξυνοίκους ἀποτελεῖ.

Ε κα. Πῶς οὖν δὴ χρῆ τὰ μὴ πω φωνῆς ξυνείντα μηδε παιδείας τῆς ἀλλῆς δυνατὰ γενέσθαι πω τρέφειν τὴν πόλιν ἀπασαν;

α. Ὠδὲ πως: φθέγγεσθαι ποιν μετὰ βοὴς εὐθὺς πᾶν εἰώθε τὸ γεγονόμενον, καὶ οὐχ ἥκιστα τὸ τῶν ἀνθρώπων γένος· καὶ δὴ καὶ τῷ κλαίειν πρὸς τῇ βοῇ μᾶλλον τῶν ἀλλῶν συνέχεται.

κα. Πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

α. Οὐκοῦν αἱ τροφοὶ σκοποῦσαι τίνος ἐπιθυμεῖ τούτοις αὐτοῖς ἐν τῇ προσφορᾷ τεκμαίρονται: 792 οὐ μὲν γὰρ ἂν προσφερομένου σιγά, καλῶς οἴονται προσφέρειν, οὐ δ’ ἂν κλαίῇ καὶ βοᾷ, οὐ καλῶς. τοῖς δὴ παιδίοις τὸ δῆλωμα ὅν ἔρα καὶ μηδὲ κλαυμοναὶ καὶ βοαί, σημεία οὐδαμῶς εὐτυχῆ, ἐστὶ δὲ ὁ χρόνος οὕτως τρώων οὐκ ἔλαπτων ἑτῶν, μόριον οὐ σμικρὸν τοῦ βίου διαγαγεῖν χεῖρον ἢ μῆ χείρον.

κα. 'Ορθῶς λέγεις.
Of course.

What way can we find, then, for implanting at once in the new-born child whichever of these qualities we desire? We must endeavour to indicate how and to what extent we have them at our command.

By all means.

The doctrine held amongst us, I may explain, is this,—that whereas luxurious living renders the disposition of the young morose and irascible and too easily moved by trifles, its opposite (which is uttermost and cruel enslavement) makes them lowly and mean-spirited and misanthropic, and thus unfit to associate with others.

In what way, then, should the State at large rear up infants that are still incapable of understanding speech or receiving other kinds of education?

In this way: it is usual for every creature that is born—and the human child as much as any—to utter at once a loud outcry; and, what is more, the child is the most liable of them all to be afflicted with tears as well as outcries.

Quite true.

When nurses are trying to discover what a baby wants, they judge by these very same signs in offering it things. If it remains silent when the thing is offered, they conclude that it is the right thing, but the wrong thing if it weeps and cries out. Thus infants indicate what they like by means of weepings and outcries—truly no happy signals!—and this period of infancy lasts not less than three years, which is no small fraction of one's time to spend ill or well.

You are right.
ΑΘ. 'Ο δὴ δύσκολος οὐδαμῶς τε ἰλεως ἀρ' οὐ
Β δοκεῖ σφών θρηνώδης τε εἶναι καὶ ὀδυρμοῦν ὡς
ἐτί τὸ πολὺ πλήρης μᾶλλον ἢ χρεών ἐστὶ τοῦ
ἀγαθῶν;
ΚΛ. 'Ἐμοὶ γοῦν δοκεῖ.
ΑΘ. Τὶ ὄνυ; εἰ τὶς τὰ τρὶ' ἐτη πειράτῳ πᾶσαν
μηχανήν προσφέρων ὅπως τὸ τρεφόμενον ἡμῖν ὡς
ολυγίστη προσχρήσεται ἀλγηδόνι καὶ φόβους καὶ
λύπη πάση κατὰ δύναμιν, ἂρ' οὐκ οἰόμεθα εὐθύμον
μᾶλλον τε καὶ ἰλεων <ἀν> ἀπεργάζεσθαι την-
καύτα τὴν ψυχὴν τοῦ τρεφομένου;
ΚΛ. Δὴλον δὴ, καὶ μάλιστα γ' ἂν, ὡ ξένε, εἰ τὶς
C πολλὰς ἡδονάς αὐτῷ παρασκευάζοι.
ΑΘ. Τοῦτ' οὐκέτι ἂν ἐγὼ Κλεινία ἡν
θῆσαμ' ἂν, ὡ θαυμάστε. ἔστι γὰρ ὄνυ ἡμῖν ἡ
τοιαύτῃ πράξεις διαφθορὰ μεγίστη πασῶν ἐν
ἀρχῇ γὰρ γίγνεται ἐκάστοτε τροφῆς. ὥραμεν δὲ
ei τι λέγομεν.
ΚΛ. Δέγα τι φής.
ΑΘ. Οὐ σμικροῦ πέρι νῦν εἰναι νῦν τῶν λόγων.
ὁρα δὲ καὶ σὺ, ξυνητικρινε τὴ ἡμᾶς, ὡ Μέγιλλε. ὁ
μὲν γὰρ ἐμὸς δὴ λόγος οὐθ' ἡδονᾶς φησι δεῖν
dιώκειν τὸν ὀρθὸν βίον οὔτ' αὐτὸ τὸ παράτατον φεύγειν
D τὰς λύπας, ἀλλ' αὐτὸ ἀσπάζεσθαι τὸ μέσου, ὃ νῦν
dὴ προσείπον ὡς ἰλεων ὑνομᾶσας, ἤν δὴ διάθεσιν
καὶ θεοῦ κατὰ τινα μαντείας φήμην εὔστοχος
πάντες προσαγορεύσειμεν. ταύτην τὴν ἐξιν διώκειν
φημὶ δεῖν ἡμῶν καὶ τὸν μέλλοντα ἐσεσθαι θείον-
μῆτ' οὖν αὐτὸν προπετῇ πρὸς τὰς ἡδονὰς γεγομέ-
νον ὅλως, ὃς οὐδ' ἔκτος λυπῶν ἐσόμενοι, μήτε

1 <ἀν> added by H. Richards, England.
LAWS, BOOK VII

ATH. When a man is peevish and not cheerful at all, do you not regard him as a doleful person and more full, as a rule, of complaints than a good man ought to be?

CLIN. I certainly regard him as such.

ATH. Well then, suppose one should try to secure by every available means that our nursling should experience the least possible amount of grief or fear or pain of any kind, may we not believe that by this means the soul of the nursling would be rendered more bright and cheerful?

CLIN. Plainly it would, Stranger; and most of all if one should provide him with many pleasures.

ATH. There, my good sir, I must part company with Clinias. For in our eyes such a proceeding is the worst possible form of corruption, for it occurs in every instance at the very beginning of the child's nurture.¹ But let us consider whether I am right.

CLIN. Explain your view.

ATH. I believe that the issue before us is one of extreme importance. You also, Megillus, consider the matter, I pray, and lend us the aid of your judgment. What I maintain is this: that the right life ought neither to pursue pleasures nor to shun pains entirely; but it ought to embrace that middle state of cheerfulness (as I termed it a moment ago), which—as we all rightly suppose, on the strength of an inspired utterance—is the very condition of God himself. And I maintain that whosoever of us would be godlike must pursue this state of soul, neither becoming himself prone at all to pleasures, even as he will not be devoid of pain, not allowing

¹ Cp. Rep. 377 B.
PLATO

άλλον, γέροντα ἢ νέον, εἶν πάσχειν ταύτὸν τούθ' ἡμῖν, ἀρρενα ἢ θήλυν, ἀπάντων δὲ Ἦκιστα. Εἰς δύναμιν τὸν ἀρτίως νεογενή· κυριώτατον γὰρ ὅν γένησθαι πάσι τότε τὸ πᾶν ἦδος διὰ ἔθος. ἐτι ο' ἔγωγ', εἰ μὴ μέλλομι δόξειν παῖζειν, φαίνειν ἄν δεῖ καὶ τὰς φεροῦσας ἐν γαστρὶ πασῶν τῶν γυναικῶν μάλιστα θεραπεύειν ἐκεῖνον τὸν ἐνιαυτὸν, ὅτις μήτε ἥδοναίς τισὶ πολλαῖς ἁμα καὶ μάργους προσχρῆσεται ἡ κύουσα μήτε ἁὐ λύπαις, τὸ δὲ ἰλεων καὶ εὑμενὲς πράον τε τιμώσα διαζήσει τῶν τότε χρόνων.

κα. Οὐδὲν δεὶ σε, ο ἕνε, Μέγιλλον ἀνερωταν 793 πότερος ἡμῶν ὁρθότερον εἰρήκεν· ἐγὼ γὰρ αὐτὸς σοι συγχωρώ τὸν λύπης τε καὶ ἥδονῆς ἀκράτου βίων φεύγειν δεῖν πάνταςε, μέσον δὲ τινα τέμνειν ἀεί. καλῶς τοίνυν εἰρηκάς τε καὶ ἁκήκοας ἁμα.

ἀ. Μάλα μὲν ὅν ὀρθῶς, ο Κλεινία. τὸδε τοίνυν ἐπὶ τούτοις τρεῖς οὔτε διανοηθῶμεν.

κα. Τὸ ποῖον;

ἀ. "Ὅτι ταὐτ' ἐστὶ πάντα, ὡσα νῦν διεξερ-χόμεθα, τὰ καλούμενα ὑπὸ τῶν πολλῶν ἀγραφα νόμιμα· καὶ ὅσ πατρίους νόμους ἐπονομάζουσιν, Β οὐκ ἄλλα ἐστίν ἣ τὰ τοιαύτα ἕµπαντα. καὶ ἔτι γε ὃ νῦν δὴ λόγος ἡμῖν ἐπιχυθείς, ὡς οὔτε νόμους δεὶ προσαγορεύειν αὐτὰ οὔτε ἄρρητα ἐαν, εἰρήται καλῶς· δεσμοὶ γὰρ οὔτε πάσης εἰς ἀ πολιτείας, μεταξὺ πάντων ὄντες τῶν ἐν γράμμασι τεθέντων τε καὶ κειμένων καὶ τῶν ἔτι τεθησομένων, ἀτεχνῶς

1 Κρ. Αρ. Ἐλλ. Ν. 1103a17; ἢ δὲ ἡθική (ἀρετή) ἐξ ἔθους περι-γίνεται, δδεν καὶ τοῦνομα ἕσχηκε μικρῶν παρεγκλίνων ἀπὸ τοῦ
any other person—old or young, man or woman—to be in this condition and least of all, so far as possible, the new-born babe. For because of the force of habit, it is in infancy that the whole character is most effectually determined. I should assert further—were it not that it would be taken as a jest—that women with child, above all others, should be cared for during their years of pregnancy, lest any of them should indulge in repeated and intense pleasures or pains, instead of cultivating, during the whole of that period, a cheerful, bright and calm demeanour.

CLIN. There is no need for you, Stranger, to ask Megillus which of us two has made the truer statement. For I myself grant you that all men ought to shun the life of unmixed pain and pleasure, and follow always a middle path. So all is well both with your statement and with my reply.

ATH. You are perfectly right, Clinias. So then let the three of us together consider this next point.

CLIN. What is that?

ATH. That all the regulations which we are now expounding are what are commonly termed "unwritten laws." And these as a whole are just the same as what men call "ancestral customs." Moreover, the view which was recently impressed upon us, that one should neither speak of these as "laws" nor yet leave them without mention, was a right view. For it is these that act as bonds in every constitution, forming a link between all its laws (both those already enacted in writing and those still to be

ἔθους ("ethical virtue is the result of habit, and its name 'ethical' is also derived from 'ethos' (habit)").

2 788 B f.
οἶνον πάτρια καὶ παντάπασιν ἀρχαία νόμιμα, ἀκαλῶς μὲν τεθέντα καὶ ἑθισθέντα πάση σωτηρία περικαλύψαντα ἔχει τοὺς τότε γραφέντας νόμους, 

C ἂν δὲ ἐκτὸς τοῦ καλοῦ βαίνῃ πλημμελῶς, οἶνον τεκτόνων ἐν οἴκοδομήμασιν ἐρείσματα ἐκ μέσου ὑπορρέοντα, συμπίπτειν εἰς ταῦτα ποιεῖ τὰ ἐξύμπαντα κεῖσθαι τε ἄλλα υφ᾽ ἑτέρων, αὐτὰ 

τε καὶ τὰ καλῶς ὑστερον ἐποικοδομηθέντα, τῶν ἀρχαίων ὑποπεσόντων. ἂ δὴ διανοούμενοι ἡμᾶς, ὁ Κλεινία, σοὶ δεῖ τὴν πόλιν καὶ ἤν ὑπάντην ἐξυδείην, μήτε μέγα μήτε σμικ-

D ῥόν παραλυτόντας εἰς δύναμιν ὡσα νόμους ἢ ἐθνὶς ἢ ἐπιτηθευματα καλεῖ. πάσι γὰρ τοῖς τοιούτοις πόλεις ἐξυδεῖται, ἀνευ δὲ ἄλληλων ἐκάτερα τούτων οὐκ ἔστι μόνιμα, ὥστε οὐ χρὴ 

θαυμάζειν ἐὰν ἴμιν πολλὰ ἀμα καὶ σμικρὰ δο-

κοῦνται εἰναι νόμιμα ἢ καὶ ἐθῆσαμα ἐπιρρέουντα 

μακροτέρους ποιή τοὺς νόμους.

κλ. Ἐλλ' ὀρθῶς σὺ τε λέγεις ἣμεῖς τε σύτω 

diανοησόμεθα.

α.Εἰς μὲν τοῖνυν τὴν τοῦ τρὶ ἐν γεγονότος 

Ε ἠλίκιαν, κόρον καὶ κόρης, ταῦτα εἰ τις ἄκριβως ἀποτέλοι καὶ μὴ παρέργως τοῖς εἰρημένοις χρώτο, οὐ σμικρὰ εἰς ὧφελειαν γίγνουτ' ἀν τοῖς 

νεωστὶ τρεφομένους: τριτεῖ δὲ δὴ καὶ τετραετεῖ 

καὶ πενταετεῖ καὶ ἐτε ἐξετεῖ ἡθει ψυχῆς παιδιῶν 

δέον ἂν εἰη, τρυφῆς δὲ ἦδη παραλυτέον κολά-

ξουτα μὴ ἀτίμως, ἀλλ' ὅπερ ἐπὶ τῶν δούλων 

γ' ἐλεγομεν, τὸ μὴ μεθ' ὦβρεως κολάζοντας ὁργὴν 

ἐμποιεῖν δεῖν τοῖς κολασθεὶς μηδ' ἀκολάστους 

794 ἐώντας τρυφὴν, ταῦτα δραστέον τοῦτο γε καὶ 

1 Cp. 777 A ff.
enacted), exactly like ancestral customs of great antiquity, which, if well established and practised, serve to wrap up securely the laws already written, whereas if they perversely go aside from the right way, like builders' props that collapse under the middle of a house, they bring everything else tumbling down along with them, one thing buried under another, first the props themselves and then the fair superstructure, once the ancient supports have fallen down. Bearing this in mind, Clinias, we must clamp together this State of yours, which is a new one, by every possible means, omitting nothing great or small in the way of laws, customs and institutions; for it is by all such means that a State is clamped together, and neither kind of law is permanent without the other. Consequently, we need not be surprised if the influx of a number of apparently trivial customs or usages should make our laws rather long.

CLIN. What you say is quite true, and we will bear it in mind.

ATH. If one could carry out these regulations methodically, and not merely apply them casually, in the case of girls and boys up to the age of three, they would conduce greatly to the benefit of our infant nurslings. To form the character of the child over three and up to six years old there will be need of games: by then punishment must be used to prevent their getting pampered,—not, however, punishment of a degrading kind, but just as we said before, in the case of slaves, that one should avoid enraging the persons punished by using degrading punishments, or pampering them by leaving them unpunished, so in the case of the free-born the


PLATO

ἐπ’ ἐλευθέρους. παιδιαί δ’ ἐσὶ τοῖς τηλικούτοις αὐτοφυεῖς τινές, ὥς ἐπειδὰν ξυνέλθωσιν αὐτοῖς σχεδὸν ἀνευρίσκουσι. ξυνεῖναι δὲ εἰς τὰ κατὰ κώμας ίερὰ δεὶ πάντα ἢδη τὰ τηλικαῦτα παιδία, ἀπὸ τριετοὺς μέχρι τῶν ἔξ ἑτῶν, κοινὴ τὰ τῶν κωμητῶν εἰς ταύτων ἐκαστὰ· τὰς δὲ τροφοὺς ἐτὶ τῶν τηλικούτων κοσμιότητος τε καὶ ἀκολασίας ἐπιμελεῖσθαι, τῶν δὲ τροφῶν αὐτῶν καὶ τῆς Β ἀγέλης ξυμπάσης, τῶν δῶδεκα γυναικῶν μίαν ἐφ’ ἐκάστη τετάχθαι κοσμοῦσαν κατ’ ἐνιαυτὸν τῶν προηρημένων1 ἄς ἄν τάξωσιν οἱ νομοφύ- λακες. ταύτας δὲ αἱρεῖσθωσαν μὲν αἱ τῶν γάμων κύριαι τῆς ἐπιμελείας, ἐξ ἐκάστης τῆς φυλῆς μίαν, ἦλικας αὐταῖς· ἡ δὲ καταστάσα ἀρχέτω φοιτώσα εἰς τὸ ἱερὸν ἐκάστης ἡμέρας καὶ κολάξουσα ἅει τὸν ἀδικοῦντα, δούλων μὲν καὶ δούλην καὶ ἔξων καὶ ἐξῆσθην αὐτῇ διὰ τινῶν τῆς πόλεως οἰκετῶν, πολίτην δὲ ἀμφισβητοῦντα C μὲν τῇ κολάσει πρὸς τοὺς ἀστυνόμους ἐπὶ δίκην ἄγουσα, ἀναμφισβήτητον δὲ ὄντα καὶ τὸν πο- λίτην αὐτή κολαζέτω. μετὰ δὲ τὸν ἐξέτη καὶ τὴν ἐξέτι διακρινέσθω μὲν ἢδη τὸ γένος ἐκατέρων· κοροὺ μὲν μὲν κόρου, παρθένοι δὲ ὀσαυτως μετ’ ἀλλήλων τὴν διατριβὴν ποιεῖσθωσαν· πρὸς δὲ τὰ μαθήματα τρέπεσθαι χρεῶν ἐκάτερος, τοὺς μὲν ἄρρενας ἐφ’ ὑπ’ ὑπ’ διδασκάλους καὶ τόξων καὶ ἀκοντίων καὶ σφενδονήσας, ἐάν δὲ τῇ ἐνυχωρώσῃ μέχρι γε μαθήσωσ καὶ τὰ θήλεα, D καὶ δὴ τὰ γε μάλιστα πρὸς τὴν τῶν ὀπλῶν χρείαν. τὸ γὰρ δὴ νῦν καθεστὸς περὶ τὰ τοιαύτα ἀγνοεῖται παρὰ τοῖς πᾶσιν ὀλίγον.

1 προηρημένων Badham: προειρημένων MSS.
same rule holds good. Children of this age have games which come by natural instinct; and they generally invent them of themselves whenever they meet together. As soon as they have reached the age of three, all the children from three to six must meet together at the village temples, those belonging to each village assembling at the same place. Moreover, the nurses of these children must watch over their behaviour, whether it be orderly or disorderly; and over the nurses themselves and the whole band of children one of the twelve women already elected must be appointed annually to take charge of each band, the appointment resting with the Law-wardens. These women shall be elected by the women who have charge of the supervision of marriage,¹ one out of each tribe and all of a like age. The woman thus appointed shall pay an official visit to the temple every day, and she shall employ a State servant and deal summarily with male or female slaves and strangers; but in the case of citizens, if the person protests against the punishment, she shall bring him for trial before the city-stewards; but if no protest is made, she shall inflict summary justice equally on citizens. After the age of six, each sex shall be kept separate, boys spending their time with boys, and likewise girls with girls; and when it is necessary for them to begin lessons, the boys must go to teachers of riding, archery, javelin-throwing and slinging, and the girls also, if they agree to it, must share in the lessons, and especially such as relate to the use of arms. For, as regards the view now prevalent regarding these matters, it is based on almost universal ignorance.

¹ Cp. 784 A.
ΚΑ. Τὸ ποῖον;
ΑΘ. Ὡς ἄρα τὰ δεξιὰ καὶ τὰ ἀριστερὰ διαφέροντά ἐσθ' ἡμῶν φύσει πρὸς τὰς χρείας εἰς ἐκάστας τῶν πράξεων τὰ περὶ τὰς χείρας· ἐπει τὰ γε περὶ πόδας τε καὶ τὰ κάτω τῶν μελῶν οὖν διαφέροντα εἰς τοὺς πόνους φαίνεται,
Ε Τὰ δὲ κατὰ χείρας ἀνοία τροφῶν καὶ μητέρων οἶνον χωλοὶ γεγόναμεν ἐκαστοί. τῆς φύσεως γὰρ ἐκατέρων τῶν μελῶν σχεδὸν ἰσορροπούσης αὐτοί διὰ τὰ ἐθη διάφορα αὐτὰ πεποιήκαμεν οὐκ ὅρθως χρώμενοι. ἐν οὖν μὲν γὰρ τῶν ἐργῶν μὴ μέγα διαφέρει, λύρα μὲν ἐν ἀριστερὰ χρωμένων,1 πλήκτρῳ δὲ ἐν δεξιᾷ, πράγμα οὖν, καὶ ὁσα τοιαύτα· τούτοις δὲ παραδείγμασι χρώμενοι καὶ εἰς ἄλλα μὴ δέον οὕτω χρῆσθαι σχεδὸν
795 άνοια. ἐδείξε δὲ ταύτα ὁ τῶν Σκυθῶν νόμος, οὐκ ἐν ἀριστερᾷ μὲν τόξῳ ἄπαγων, ἐν δεξιᾷ δὲ οἰστῶν προσαγόμενος μόνων, ἀλλὰ ὅμοιός ἐκατέρως ἐπ' ἀμφότερα χρώμενος. πάμπολλα δ' ἐτερα τοιαύτα παραδείγματα ἔν ἰμοχείας τ' ἐστὶ καὶ ἐν ἐτέρους, ἐν οἷς μαθεῖν δυνατόν ὦτι παρὰ φύσιν κατασκευάζουσιν οἱ ἀριστερὰ δεξιῶν ἀσθενέστερα κατασκευάζουσι. ταύτα δ', ὅπερ εἶπομεν, ἐν μὲν κερατίοις πλήκτροις καὶ ἐν 
Β ὀργάνοις τοιούτοις οὖν μέγα· σιδηροῖς δ' εἰς τὸν πόλεμον όταν δέχῃ χρῆσθαι, μέγα διαφέρει, καὶ τόξοις καὶ ἀκοντίοις καὶ ἐκάστοις τούτοις πολὺ δὲ μέγιστον όταν ὀπλοῖς δέχῃ πρὸς ὀπλα χρῆσθαι. διαφέρει δὲ πάμπολα μαθῶν μὴ μαθάντος καὶ ὁ γυμνασάμενος τὸν μὴ γυ- 
γυμνασμένον. καθάπερ γὰρ ὁ τελέως παγκράτιον

1 χρωμένων Apelt: χρώμενον MSS.
CLIN. What view?

ATH. The view that, in the case of hands, right and left are by nature different in respect of their utility for special acts; but, as a matter of fact, in the case of the feet and the lower limbs there is plainly no difference in working capacity; and it is due to the folly of nurses and mothers that we have all become limping, so to say, in our hands. For in natural ability the two limbs are almost equally balanced; but we ourselves by habitually using them in a wrong way have made them different. In actions of trifling importance this does not matter—as for example, whether a man uses the left hand for the fiddle and the right hand for the bow, and things of that sort; but to follow these precedents and to use the hands in this way on other occasions, when there is no necessity, is very like foolishness. This is shown by the Scythian custom not only of using the left hand to draw the bow and the right to fit the arrow to it, but also of using both hands alike for both actions. And there are countless other instances of a similar kind, in connexion with driving horses and other occupations, which teach us that those who treat the left hand as weaker than the right are confuted by nature. But this, as we have said, matters little in the case of fiddle-bows of horn and similar implements; but when it is a case of using iron instruments of war—bows, darts and the like—it matters a great deal, and most of all when weapon is to be used against weapon at close quarters. There is a vast difference here between the taught and the untaught, the trained and the untrained warrior. For just as the athlete who is thoroughly
PLATO

ησκηκώς η πυγμήν η πάλην ούκ ἀπὸ μὲν τῶν ἁριστερῶν ἀδύνατός ἐστι μάχεσθαι, χωλαίνει δὲ θοῦ καὶ ἐφέλκεται πλημμελῶν, ὅποταν αὐτὸν τις μεταβιβάζων ἐπὶ θάτερα ἀναγκάζῃ διαπονεῖν, ταῦτα δὲ τοῦτ', οἴματι, καὶ ἐν ὁπλοῖς καὶ ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις πάσι χρῆ προσδοκῶν ὀρθῶν, ὅτι τὸν διττὰ δεί κεκτημένον οἰς ἀμύνοιτο τ' ἀν καὶ ἐπιτιθεῖτο ἄλλοις μηδὲ ἀνεπιστήμων ἔξιν εἶναι κατὰ δύναμιν. Γηρυόνου δέ γε εἰ τις φύσιν ἔχων ή καὶ τὴν Βριάρεω φύσιο, ταῖς ἐκατον χερσὶν ἐκατὸν δεὶ βῆλίν ρίπτειν δυνατὸν εἶναι. τοῦτω δὴ πάντων τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν

D ἀρχοῦσαι τε καὶ ἄρχουσι δεῖ γίγνεσθαι, ταῖς μὲν ἐν παιδίαις τε καὶ τροφαῖς ἐπισκόποις γιγνομέναις, τοῖς δὲ περί μαθήματα, ὅπως ἀρτίποδες τε καὶ ἀρτί- χειρες πάντες τε καὶ πᾶσαι γιγνόμενοι μηδὲν τοῖς ἐθεσιν ἀποβλάπτωσι τὰς φύσεις εἰς τὸ δυνατὸν.

Τὰ δὲ μαθήματα που διττά, ὃς γ' εἶπεῖν, χρήσασθαι ξυμβαίνον ἂν, τὰ μὲν ὅσα περὶ τὸ σῶμα γυμναστικῆς, τὰ δ' εὐψυχίας χάριν μου- σικῆς. τὰ δὲ γυμναστικῆς αὐ δύο, τὸ μὲν Ε ὀρχήσεως, τὸ δὲ πάλη. τῆς ὀρχήσεως δὲ ἄλλη μὲν Μουσῆς λέξιν μιμομένων, τὸ τε μεγαλο- πρεπὲς φυλάττουσα τ' ἀμα καὶ ἐλεύθερον ἄλλη δὲ εὔεξίας ἐλαφρότητος τε ἔνεκα καὶ κάλλους τῶν τοῦ σματος αὐτοῦ μελῶν καὶ μερῶν τὸ προσήκον καμπῆς τε καὶ ἐκτάσεως, καὶ ἅποδι- δομένης ἐκάστοις αὐτοῖς αὐτῶν εὐρύθμου κυνήσεως, διαστειρομένης ἀμα καὶ ξυνακολοθούσης εἰς 796 πάσαν τὴν ὀρχήσιν ἱκανός, καὶ δὴ τὰ γε κατὰ

1 φυλάττουσα: φυλάττοντας MSS. (Ἀλλο . . . φυλάττων Badham).
practised in the pancratium or in boxing or wrestling is capable of fighting on his left side, and does not move that side as if it were numb or lame, whenever he is compelled to bring it into action through his opponent shifting to the other side,—in precisely the same way, I take it, in regard to the use of weapons of war and everything else, it ought to be considered the correct thing that the man who possesses two sets of limbs, fit both for offensive and defensive action, should, so far as possible, suffer neither of these to go unpractised or untaught. Indeed, if a man were gifted by nature with the frame of a Geryon or a Briareus, with his hundred hands he ought to be able to throw a hundred darts. So all these matters must be the care of the male and female officers, the women overseeing the games and the feeding of the children, and the men their lessons, to the intent that all the boys and girls may be sound of hand and foot, and may in no wise, if possible, get their natures warped by their habits.

The lessons may, for practical convenience, be divided under two heads—the gymnastical, which concern the body, and the musical, which aim at goodness of soul. Of gymnastic there are two kinds, dancing and wrestling. Of dancing there is one branch in which the style of the Muse is imitated, preserving both freedom and nobility, and another which aims at physical soundness, agility and beauty by securing for the various parts and members of the body the proper degree of flexibility and extension and bestowing also the rhythmical motion which belongs to each, and which accompanies the whole of dancing and is diffused throughout it completely. As to the
πάλην ἀ μὲν 'Ανταῖος ἢ Κερκύων ἐν τέχναις ἑαυτῶν ξυνεστήσαντο φιλονεικίας ἀχρήστου χάριν, ἢ πυγμῆς Ἐπείδη ἢ Ἀμνίκος, οὐδὲν χρή- σιμα ἐπὶ πολέμου κοινωνίαν οὖνα, οὐκ ἄξια λόγω κοσμεῖν· τὰ δὲ ἀπ' ὅρθης πάλης, ἀπ' αὐχένων καὶ χειρῶν καὶ πλευρῶν ἐξειλήσεως, μετὰ φιλονεικίας τε καὶ καταστάσεως διαπονού- μενα μετ' εὐσχήμονοι, ῥώμης τε καὶ ὑγιείας ἑνεκα, ταῦτ' εἰς πάντα ὅντα χρήσιμα οὐ παρετέον, ἀλλὰ προστακτέων μαθηταῖς τὲ ἁμα καὶ τοῖς

B διδάξουσιν, ὅταν ἐνταῦθ' ὅμεν τῶν νόμων, τοῖς μὲν πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα εὐμενῶς δωρεῖσθαι, τοῖς δὲ παραλαμβάνειν ἐν χάρισιν. οὐδ' ὅσα ἐν τοῖς χοροῖς ἐστίν αὐ μιμήματα προσήκοντα μιμεῖσθαι παρετέον, κατὰ μὲν τὸν τόπον τὸν δὲ Κουρήτων ἐνόπλια παίγμια, κατὰ δὲ Δακεδαϊμονα Διοσκό- ρων. ἢ δὲ αὖ ποὺ παρ' ἤμιν κόρη καὶ δέσποινα, εὐφρανθεῖσα τῇ τῆς χορείας παιδιᾷ, κεναις χερσίν

C οὐκ ὁμήθη δεῖν ἀδύρειν, πανοπλία δὲ παντελεί κοσμηθεῖσα οὕτω τὴν ὀρχήσιν διαπεραίνειν· ἀ δὴ πάντως μιμεῖσθαι πρέπον ἂν εἴη κόρους τε ἁμα καὶ κόρας, τὴν τῆς θεοῦ χάριν τιμῶντας, πολέμου τ' ἐν χρεία καὶ ἔορτῶν ἑνεκα. τοῖς δὲ πον παισίν εὐθὺς τε καὶ ὅσον ἂν χρόνον μῆπω εἰς πόλεμον ἰσι, πᾶσι θεοῖς προσόδους τε καὶ πομπᾶς ποιομένους μεθ' ὀπλῶν τε καὶ ἵππων ἀεὶ κοσμεῖσθαι δεὸν ἂν εἴη, θάττους τε καὶ βραδυτέρας ἐν ὀρχήσει καὶ ἐν πορείᾳ τὰς ἱκετείας ποιομένους πρὸς θεοὺς τε καὶ θεῶν

1 Mythical giants and wrestlers, to whom were ascribed such devices as the use of the legs in wrestling. Epeius

28
devices introduced by Antaeus or Cercyon in the art of wrestling for the sake of empty glory, or in boxing by Epeius or Amycus, since they are useless in the business of war, they merit no eulogy. But the exercises of stand-up wrestling, with the twisting free of neck, hands and sides, when practised with ardour and with a firm and graceful pose, and directed towards strength and health,—these must not be omitted, since they are useful for all purposes; but we must charge both the pupils and their teachers—when we reach this point in our legislation—that the latter should impart these lessons gently, and the former receive them gratefully. Nor should we omit such mimic dances as are fitting for use by our choirs,—for instance, the sword-dance of the Curetes here in Crete, and that of the Dioscori in Lacedaemon; and at Athens, too, our Virgin-Lady gladdened by the pastime of the dance deemed it not seemly to sport with empty hands, but rather to tread the measure vested in full panoply. These examples it would well become the boys and girls to copy, and so cultivate the favour of the goddess, alike for service in war and for use at festivals. It shall be the rule for the children, from the age of six until they reach military age, whenever they approach any god and form processions, to be always equipped with arms and horses, and with dance and march, now quick, now slow, to make their supplications to the gods is mentioned as a boxer in Homer, II. 23. 668; and the mythical Amycus is said to have invented the use of (boxing-gloves).

2 Priests of the Idaean Zeus.
3 Castor and Pollux.
4 Athenê.
PLICATE

D paídas. kai ἁγώνας δὴ καὶ προαγώνας, εἰ τινων, οὐκ ἄλλων ἢ τούτων ἐνεκα προαγωνιστέων οὕτωι γάρ καὶ ἐν εἰρήνῃ καὶ κατὰ πόλεμον χρήσιμοι εἰς τε πολιτείαν καὶ ἱδίους οἶκους, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι τόνοι τε καὶ παιδιαὶ καὶ σπουδαὶ κατὰ σώματα οὐκ ἐλευθέρων.

Ὡ Μέγιλλὲ τε καὶ Κλεινία, ἢν εἰπον γνω-

ναστικὴν εὐ τοῖς πρώτοις λόγοις ὅτι δέοι
diexelthein, σχεδον δὴ διελήλυθα τὰ νῦν καὶ
ἐσθ' αὐτὴ παντελῆς εἰ δὲ τινα ταῦτης ὑμεῖς
Εἴχετε βελτίω, θέντες εἰς κοινὸν λέγετε.

κα. Οὐ ράδιον, ὃ ξένε, παρέντας ταῦτα ἄλλα
ἐχειν βελτίω τούτων περὶ γνωναστικής ἁμα καὶ
ἀγωνίας εἰπεῖν.

αθ. Τὸ τοίνυν τούτων ἐξής περὶ τὰ τῶν
Μουσῶν τε καὶ Ἀπόλλωνος δῶρα, τότε μὲν, ὦς
ἀπαντα εἰρηκότες, φόμεθα καταλείπειν μόνα τὰ
περὶ γνωναστικής νῦν δὲ ἐστὶ δῆλα αὐτές,
καὶ ὅτι πρῶτα πᾶσι ρητέα. λέγωμεν τοίνυν
ἐξής αὐτὰ.

κα. Πάνυ μὲν οὖν λεκτέον.

797 αθ. Ἀκούσατε δὴ 1 μου, προακηκοότες μὲν
καὶ ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν ὡμως δὲ τὸ γε σφόδρα
ἀτοπον καὶ ἀνθέας διευλαβείσθαι δεῖ λέγοντα
καὶ ἀκούοντα, καὶ δὴ καὶ νῦν, ἐρῶ μὲν γὰρ ἐγὼ
λόγον οὐκ ἄφοβον εἰπεῖν, ὡμως δὲ πὴ θαρρὴσας
οὐκ ἀποστήσομαι.

κα. Τίνα δὴ τούτων, ὃ ξένε, λέγεις;
αθ. Φημὶ κατὰ πᾶσας πόλεις τὸ τῶν παιδίων

1 δὴ H. Richards : δὲ MSS.

1 672 D, 673 A ff.; ep. also 813 D ff.
and the children of gods. Contests, too, and preliminary trials must be carried out with a view to the objects stated, if at all; for these objects are useful both in peace and war, alike for the State and for private families; but all other kinds of work and play and bodily exercise are not worthy of a gentleman.

And now, O Megillus and Clinias, I have pretty fully described that gymnastic training which—as I said early in our discourse—requires description: here it is in its full completeness. So if you know of a better gymnastic than this, disclose it.

clin. It is no easy thing, Stranger, to reject your account of gymnastic training and competition, and produce a better one.

ath. The subject which comes next to this, and deals with the gifts of Apollo and the Muses, is one which we previously thought we had done with, and that the only subject left was gymnastic; but I plainly see now, not only what still remains to be said to everybody, but also that it ought to come first. Let us, then, state these points in order.

clin. By all means let us do so.

ath. Give ear to me now, albeit ye have already done so in the past. None the less, one must take great heed, now as before, both in the telling and in the hearing of a thing that is supremely strange and novel. To make the statement that I am going to make is an alarming task; yet I will summon up my courage, and not shrink from it.

clin. What is the statement you refer to, Stranger?

ath. I assert that there exists in every State
γένος ἡγμονήσθαι ἡξυμπασίν ὅτι κυριώτατον ἐστὶν περὶ θέσεως νόμων, ἡ μονίμους εἶναι τοὺς τεθέντας
Β ἡ μῆ. ταχθὲν μὲν γὰρ αὐτὸ καὶ μετασχῖν τοῦ τὰ αὐτὰ κατὰ τὰ αὐτὰ καὶ ὀσαῦτως ἀεὶ τοὺς αὐτοὺς παῖζειν τε καὶ εὐθυμεῖσθαι τοῖς αὐτοῖς παιγνίοις ἔδ᾽ καὶ τὰ σπουδὴ κείμενα νόμιμα μένειν ἴσυχῆ, κινοὺμενα δὲ ταῦτα καὶ καινοτομοῦμενα μεταβολαῖς τε ἄλλαζις ἀεὶ χρώμενα, καὶ μηδέποτε ταὐτὰ φίλα προσαγορευόντων τῶν νέων μὴν ἐν σχήμασι τοῖς τῶν αὐτῶν σωμάτων μήτε ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις σκέψεις ὁμολογομένως αὐτοῖς ἀεὶ κείσθαι τὸ τ᾽ εὐσχῆμον καὶ ἁσχῆμον, ἀλλὰ τὸν τι νέον ἀεὶ καινοτομοῦντα καὶ εἰσφέροντα
C τῶν εἰωθότων ἔτερον κατὰ τε σχήματα καὶ χρώματα καὶ πάντα ὅσα τοιαῦτα, τούτων τιμᾶσθαι διαφερόντως, τούτων πόλει λόβην οὐκ εἶναι μεῖζων φαίμεν ἀν ὀρθότατα λέγοντες· λανθάνειν γὰρ τῶν νέων τὰ ἡθὶ μεθιστάντα καὶ ποιεῖν τὸ μὲν ἄρχαιον παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς ἄτιμον, τὸ δὲ νέον ἐντιμον. τούτων δὲ πάλιν αὐ̃ λέγω τοῦ τε ῥήματος καὶ τοῦ δόγματος οὐκ εἶναι ξημίαν μεῖζων πάσαις πόλεσιν· ἀκούσατε δὲ ὅσον φημὶ αὐτ᾽ εἶναι κακῶν.
D κλ. Ἡ τὸ ψέγεσθαι τὴν ἀρχαιότητα λέγεις ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν;
α. Πάνω μὲν οὖν.
κλ. Οὔ τις φαύλους τοῖς ἡμᾶς ἀν ἀκροστάς πρὸς αὐτῶν τὸν λόγον ἔχους ἀν τούτων, ἀλλ᾽ ὡς δυνατὸν εὐμενεστάτους.
α. Εἰκὸς γοῦν.
κλ. Λέγε μόνον.

1 ταῦτα England: τὰ αὐτὰ MSS.
a complete ignorance about children's games—how that they are of decisive importance for legislation, as determining whether the laws enacted are to be permanent or not. For when the programme of games is prescribed and secures that the same children always play the same games and delight in the same toys in the same way and under the same conditions, it allows the real and serious laws also to remain undisturbed; but when these games vary and suffer innovations, amongst other constant alterations the children are always shifting their fancy from one game to another, so that neither in respect of their own bodily gestures nor in respect of their equipment have they any fixed and acknowledged standard of propriety and impro priety; but the man they hold in special honour is he who is always innovating or introducing some novel device in the matter of form or colour or something of the sort; whereas it would be perfectly true to say that a State can have no worse pest than a man of that description, since he privily alters the characters of the young, and causes them to contemn what is old and esteem what is new. And I repeat again that there is no greater mischief a State can suffer than such a dictum and doctrine: just listen while I tell you how great an evil it is.

CLIN. Do you mean the way people rail at antiquity in States?

ATH. Precisely.

CLIN. That is a theme on which you will find us no grudging listeners, but the most sympathetic possible.

ATH. I should certainly expect it to be so.

CLIN. Only say on.
A. o. "Ite δή, μειζόνως αὐτῶν ἀκούσωμεν τε ἡμῶν αὐτῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλους οὕτως εἴπωμεν, μεταβολὴν γὰρ δὴ πάντων πλῆθν κακῶν πολὺ σφαλερώτατον εὐρήσομεν ἐν ὧραις πάσαις, ἐν πνεύμασιν, ἐν διαίταις σωμάτων, ἐν τρόποις ψυχῶν, ἐν ὡς ἐπος εἰπεῖν <πᾶσιν>, οὐ τοῖς μέν, τοῖς δ' οὖ, πλῆθν, ὁ τί περ ἐπον νῦν δή, κακοῖς.

Εἰστε, εἰ τις ἀποβλέψει τοῖς σώματα, ὡς πᾶσι μὲν σιτίοις, πάσι δ' αὐ ποτοῖς καὶ πόνοις ξυνηθῆ γυνόμενα, καὶ τὸ πρῶτον ταραχθέντα ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν, ἔπειτ' ἐξ αὐτῶν τούτων ὑπὸ χρόνου σάρκας φῦσαντα οἰκείας τούτοις, φίλα τε καὶ συνήθη

798 καὶ γυνόμια γενόμενα ἀπάση ταύτη τῇ διάτη πρὸς ἡδονὴν καὶ ύπείραι ἀριστα διάγει καὶ ἀν ποτ' ἀρα ἀναγκασθῇ μεταβάλλειν αὐ τις ὡνἐν- συν δυνασθῆς ὑπὸ νόσουν μόνης ποτὲ κατέστη τῇ συνήθεια τῇ τροφῇ πάλιν ἄπολαβὼν ταύτων δὴ δεὶ νομίζειν τοῦτο ἡγίσεθαι καὶ περὶ τὰς τῶν ἀνθρώπων διανοιάς τε ἁμα καὶ τὰς τῶν ψυχῶν φύσεις. οἷς ἔγρα καὶ ἐντραφώσει νόμοις καὶ κατὰ τίνα θείαν εὐτυχίαν ἀκίνητοι γένονται

Β μακρῶν καὶ πολλῶν χρόνων, ὡς μηδείνα ἔχειν μνείαν μηδὲ ἄκοιν τοῦ ποτὲ ἄλλως αὐτὰ σχείν ἢ καθάπερ νῦν ἔχει, σέβεται καὶ φοβεῖται πᾶσα ἡ ψυχὴ τοῦ τι κινεῖν τῶν τῶν καθεστώτων. μηχανὴν δὴ δεὶ τῶν νομοθετήν ἐννοεῖν ἀμόθεν γέ ποθεν ὄντων τρόπων τοῦτ' ἔσται τῇ πόλει. τῇ δ' οὖν ἐγὼ γε εὐφρίσκω. τὰς παιδίας πάντες διανοοῦνται κινουμένας τῶν νέων, ὁπερ ἐμπροσθεν

1 <πᾶσιν>, added by H. Richards.
2 αὖ τις Badham: αὖθις MSS., edd.
LAWS, BOOK VII

ATH. Come now, let us listen to one another and address one another on this subject with greater care than ever. Nothing, as we shall find, is more perilous than change in respect of everything, save only what is bad,—in respect of seasons, winds, bodily diet, mental disposition, everything in short with the solitary exception, as I said just now, of the bad. Accordingly, if one considers the human body, and sees how it grows used to all kinds of meats and drinks and exercises, even though at first upset by them, and how presently out of these very materials it grows flesh that is akin to them, and acquiring thus a familiar acquaintance with, and fondness for, all this diet, lives a most healthy and pleasant life; and further, should a man be forced again to change back to one of the highly-reputed diets, how he is upset and ill at first, and recovers with difficulty as he gets used again to the food,—it is precisely the same, we must suppose, with the intellects of men and the nature of their souls. For if there exist laws under which men have been reared up and which (by the blessing of Heaven) have remained unaltered for many centuries, so that there exists no recollection or report of their ever having been different from what they now are,—then the whole soul is forbidden by reverence and fear to alter any of the things established of old. By hook or by crook, then, the lawgiver must devise a means whereby this shall be true of his State. Now here is where I discover the means desired:—Alterations in children's games are regarded by all lawgivers (as we said above\(^1\)) as being mere matters

\(^1\) 797 B, C.
ἐλέγομεν, παειδίας ὅντως εἶναι καὶ οὐ τὴν μεγίστην ἐξ ἀυτῶν σπουδὴν καὶ βλάβην ξυμβαινειν, ὡστε φιλοτέπουσιν ἀλλὰ ἐξυπνοῦνται ὑπείκοντες καὶ οὐ λογίζονται τόδε, ὡστε τούτου ἀνάγκη τοὺς παείδας τοὺς ἐν ταῖς παιδιαίς νεωτερίζοντας ἐτέρους ἀνδρας τῶν ἐμπροσθεν γενέσθαι [παίδων],1 γενομένους δὲ ἄλλους ἄλλων βίου θείων, θυσίαστας δὲ ἐτέρων ἐπιτηδευμάτων καὶ νόμων ἐπιθυμήσαι, καὶ μετὰ τούτο ὧς ἦξοντο τοῦ νῦν δὴ λεγομένου μεγίστου κακοῦ διπόλεσιν οὐδείς αὐτῶν φοβεῖται. τὰ μὲν οὐν ἀλλα ἐλάπτῳ μεταβαλλόμενα κακὰ διεξεργάζουτ’ ἀν, ὅσα περὶ σχῆματα πάσχει τὸ τοιοῦτον ὅσα δὲ περὶ τὰ τῶν ἦθων ἐπαίνου τε καὶ ψόγου πέρι πυκνὰ μεταπίπτει, πάντων, σινομαί, μέγιστα τε καὶ πλείστης εὐλαβείας δεόμενα ἀν εἰη.

κα. Πῶς γὰρ οὐ;

ἀο. Τί οὖν; τοῖς ἐμπροσθεν λόγοις πιστεύομεν, οἶς ἑλέγομεν ώς τὰ περὶ τοὺς ὑμᾶς καὶ πᾶσαν μουσίκην ἐστὶ τρόπων μιμήματα βελτιών καὶ Ε ἤχορόνων ἀνθρώπων; ἢ πώς;

κα. Οὐδαμῶς ἄλλως πως τὸ γε παρ’ ἡμῖν δόγμα ἔχειν ἀν εἰη.

ἀο. Ὅνκοιν, φαμέν, ἀπασαν μηχανήτους μη-
χανὴν ὅπως ἄν ἡμῖν οἱ παιδεῖς μήτε ἐπιθυμῶσιν ἄλλων μιμήματων ἀπτεσθαι κατὰ ὀρχήσεις ἢ κατὰ μελωδίας, μήτε τὶς αὐτοὺς πείσῃ προσάγων παυτοίας ἡδονᾶς;

κα. ὧς ὅρθοτατα λέγεις.

799 ἀο. Ἐχει τις οὖν ἡμῶν ἐπὶ τὰ τοιαύτα βελτίω τινὰ τέχνην τῆς τῶν Αἰγυπτίων;

1 παίδων] bracketed by Badham, England.
LAWS, BOOK VII

of play, and not as the causes of serious mischief; hence, instead of forbidding them, they give in to them and adopt them. They fail to reflect that those children who innovate in their games grow up into men different from their fathers; and being thus different themselves, they seek a different mode of life, and having sought this, they come to desire other institutions and laws; and none of them dreads the consequent approach of that result which we described just now as the greatest of all banes to a State. The evil wrought by changes in outward forms would be of less importance; but frequent changes in matters involving moral approval and disapproval are, as I maintain, of extreme importance, and require the utmost caution.

CLIN. Most certainly.

ATH. Well, then, do we still put our trust in those former statements of ours,¹ in which we said that matters of rhythm and music generally are imitations of the manners of good or bad men? Or how do we stand?

CLIN. Our view at least remains unaltered.

ATH. We assert, then, that every means must be employed, not only to prevent our children from desiring to copy different models in dancing or singing, but also to prevent anyone from tempting them by the inducement of pleasures of all sorts.

CLIN. Quite right.

ATH. To attain this end, can any one of us suggest a better device than that of the Egyptians?²

¹ 654 E ff., 668 A.
² Cp. 656 D ff.
κλ. Ποίας δὴ λέγεις;
αθ. Τοῦ καθιερώσαι πᾶσαν μὲν ὁρχήσιν, πάντα δὲ μέλη, τάξιν ταῖς πρῶτοι μὲν τὰς ἑορτάς, συνλογισμένους εἰς τὸν ἐνιαύτον ἀστινας ἐν ὅις χρόνοις καὶ ὁστίσιν ἐκάστοις τῶν θεῶν καὶ παισί τούτων καὶ δαίμοσι γύγιεσθαι χρεών, μετὰ δὲ τούτῳ, ἐπὶ τῶν τῶν θεῶν θύμασιν ἐκάστοις ἡν ὃδην δεῖ ἐφυμεῖσθαι, καὶ χορείας ποίαις

Β γεραίρειν τήν τότε θυσίαν, τάξιν μὲν πρῶτον τινας, ἀ δὲν ταχθῇ, Μοῖραις καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις πάσι θεοῖς θύσαντας κοινὴ πάντας τοὺς πολῖτας σπένδοντας καθιερούν ἐκάστας τὰς φώτας ἐκάστοις τῶν θεῶν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων' ἂν δὲ παρ' αὐτά τις τῷ θεῶν ἄλλους ὑμνουσ ἡ χορείας προσάγῃ, τοὺς ιερέας τε καὶ τὰς ιερείας μετὰ νομοφυλάκων ἐξειργοῦντας ὁσίως ἐξειργεῖν καὶ κατὰ νόμον, τὸν δὲ ἐξειργόμενον, ἂν μὴ ἐκῶν ἐξειργηταὶ, δίκας ἀσβείας διὰ βίου παντὸς τῷ ἐθελήσαντι παρέχειν.

κλ. Ἑρῴως.

C αθ. Πρὸς τούτῳ δὴ νῦν γενόμενοι τῷ λόγῳ πάθωμεν τοῦ πρέπον ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς.

κλ. Τοῦ πέρι λέγεις;

αθ. Πάς πον νέος, μὴ ὅτι πρεσβύτης, ἵδων ἃν ἡ καὶ ἄκοισας ὁτιόν τῶν ἐκτόπων καὶ μηδαμῇ τῶν ἔξυνθων, οὐκ ἂν ποτὲ ποιν τὸ ἀπορηθέν περὶ αὐτῶν συγχωρήσειεν ἐπιδραμὼν οὕτως εὐθὺς, στὰς δὲ ἂν, καθάπερ ἐν τρίῳ διοί γενόμενοι καὶ μὴ σφόδρα κατειδὼς ὅδοιν, εἴτε μόνος εἴτε μετ' ἄλλων

D τύχοι πορεύμενος, ἀνέροιτ' ἂν αὐτῶν καὶ τοὺς

1 πω Bekker: πως MSS.

1 i.e. with the caution proper to old men.
CLIN. What device is that?

ATH. The device of consecrating all dancing and all music. First, they should ordain the sacred feasts, by drawing up an annual list of what feasts are to be held, and on what dates, and in honour of what special gods and children of gods and daemons; and they should ordain next what hymn is to be sung at each of the religious sacrifices, and with what dances each such sacrifice is to be graced; these ordinances should be first made by certain persons, and then the whole body of citizens, after making a public sacrifice to the Fates and all the other deities, should consecrate with a libation these ordinances—dedicating each of the hymns to their respective gods and divinities. And if any man proposes other hymns or dances besides these for any god, the priests and priestesses will be acting in accordance with both religion and law when, with the help of the Lawwardens, they expel him from the feast; and if the man resists expulsion, he shall be liable, so long as he lives, to be prosecuted for impiety by anyone who chooses.

CLIN. That is right.

ATH. Since we find ourselves now dealing with this theme, let us behave as befits ourselves.¹

CLIN. In what respect?

ATH. Every young man—not to speak of old men—on hearing or seeing anything unusual and strange, is likely to avoid jumping to a hasty and impulsive solution of his doubts about it, and to stand still; just as a man who has come to a crossroads and is not quite sure of his way, if he be travelling alone, will question himself, or if travelling with others, will question them too about
ολλοὺς τὸ ἀποροῦμενον, καὶ οὐκ ἂν πρῶτερον ὀρμήσειε, πρὶν πη βεβαιώσατο τὴν σκέψιν τῆς πορείας, ὅπη ποτὲ φέρει. καὶ δὴ καὶ τὸ παρὸν ἡμῖν ὀςαύτως ποιητέων ἀτόπου γὰρ τὰ νῦν ἐμπεπτωκότος λόγου περὶ νόμων ἀνάγκη τοῦ σκέψιν πᾶσαν ποίησασθαι καὶ μὴ βαδίως οὕτω περὶ τοσοῦτων τηλικοῦτος ὄντας φάναι δι- 
ισχυριζομένους ἐν τῷ παραχρήμα τι σαφὲς ἤν εἰπεῖν ἔχειν.

κλ. Ἀληθέστατα λέγεις.

Ε ἈΘ. Οὐκοίν τούτω μὲν χρόνον δώσομεν, βεβαι- 
ώσομεν δὲ τότε αὐτὸ ὅπόταν σκεψώμεθα ἰκανῶς. 
ἴνα δὲ μὴ τὴν ἐπομένην τὰξιν τοῖς νόμοις τοῖς νῦν 
ἡμῖν παροῦσι διαπεράνασθαι κολυθόμεν μάτην, 
ῑμεν πρὸς τὸ τέλος αὐτῶν. τάχα γὰρ ἱσως, εἰ 
θεὸς ἔθελοι, κἂν ἡ διεξοδὸς αὕτη ὅπη σχοῦσα 
τέλος ἰκανῶς ἄν μηνύσειε καὶ τὸ νῦν διαποροῦ- 
μενον.

κλ. Ἄριστ', ὃ ξένω, λέγεις, καὶ ποιῶμεν οὕτως 
ὡς εἰρήκας.

ΑΘ. Δεδοχθω μὲν δὴ, φαμέν, τὸ ἀτοπον τοῖστο, 
νόμους τὰς ἀδᾶς ἡμῖν γεγονέναι, καὶ καθάπερ οἱ 
πάλαιοι τὸ γε 1 περὶ κιβαρδίαν οὕτω πως, ὡς 
800 ἐσικεν, ἀνόμασαν, ὡστε τάχ' ἄν οὐδ' ἐκεῖνο 
παντάπασι γ' ἄν ἀφεστώτες εἰν τοῦ νῦν λεγο-
μένου, καθ' ὑπνον δὲ οἶχον τὶς ἥ καὶ ὑπαρ 
ἐγγραγορώς ὑνείρωξε μαυτεύμονεος αὐτὸ. τὸ δ' 
οὖν δόγμα περὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦτ' ἐστω παρὰ τὰ 
δημόσια μέλη τε καὶ ίερὰ καὶ τὴν τῶν νέων 
ξύμπασαν χορεῖαν μηδεῖς μᾶλλον ἥ παρ' ὑντινοῦν

1 τὸ γε Apelt, England: τότε MSS.
the matter in doubt, and refuse to proceed until he has made sure by investigation of the direction of his path. We must now do likewise. In our discourse about laws, the point which has now occurred to us being strange, we are bound to investigate it closely; and in a matter so weighty we, at our age, must not lightly assume or assert that we can make any reliable statement about it on the spur of the moment.

CLIN. That is very true.

ATH. We shall, therefore, devote some time to this subject, and only when we have investigated it thoroughly shall we regard our conclusions as certain. But lest we be uselessly hindered from completing the ordinance which accompanies the laws with which we are now concerned, let us proceed to their conclusion. For very probably (if Heaven so will) this exposition, when completely brought to its conclusion, may also clear up the problem now before us.

CLIN. Well said, Stranger: let us do just as you say.

ATH. Let the strange fact be granted, we say, that our hymns are now made into "nomes" (laws), just as the men of old, it would seem, gave this name to harp-tunes,—so that they, too, perhaps, would not wholly disagree with our present suggestion, but one of them may have divined it vaguely, as in a dream by night or a waking vision: anyhow, let this be the decree on the matter:—

In violation of public tunes and sacred songs and the whole choristry of the young, just as in violation

1 A play on the double sense of νόμος,—"law" and "chant" or "tune": cp. 700 B, 722 D, 734 E.
ΠΛΑΤΟ

άλλον τῶν νόμων φθεγγεσθω μηδ' ἐν ὀρχήσει κινεῖσθω. καὶ ὁ μὲν τοιοῦτος ἄξιμος ἀπαλλαττεσθω, τὸν δὲ μὴ πειθόμενον, καθάπερ ἐρήμῃ νῦν δή, νομοφύλακες τε καὶ ἱέρειαι καὶ ἱερεῖς

Β. κολαξόντων. κείσθω δὲ νῦν ἡμῖν ταῦτα τῷ λόγῳ ;

κλ. Κείσθω.

α. 'Εντα δὴ τρόπων αὐτὰ νομοθετῶν τις μὴ παντάπασι καταγέλαστος γίγνοιτ' ἂν; ἔδωμεν δὴ τὸ τοιοῦτον ἐτί περὶ αὐτά. ἀσφαλέστατον καθάπερ ἐκμαγεῖ ἀρτ' αὐτοῖς πρῶτον πλάσασθαι τῷ λόγῳ, λέγω δὲ ἐν μὲν τῶν ἐκμαγείων εἶναι τοιοῦτοι τῷ θυσίας γενομένης καὶ ἱερῶν καυθέντων κατὰ νόμον, εἰ τ' τις, φαμέν, ἵδια παραστάσις τοῖς

Ο. βωμοῖς τε καὶ ἱεροῖς, νῖος ἡ καὶ ἀδελφός, βλασφημοῖς πᾶσαν βλασφημίαν, ἥρ' οὐκ ἄν φαίμεν, ἀθυμίαν καὶ κακὴν ὅταν καὶ μαντείαν πατρὶ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἂν οἰκείοις φθέγγοιτο ἐντιθείς ;

κλ. Τι μὴν ;

α. 'Ἐν τοῖς παρ' ἡμῖν τόποις τοῦτ' ἔστι ταῖς πόλεσι γιγνόμενον ὡς ἔτες εἰπεὶς σχεδὸν ὀλίγων πάσαις. δημοσίᾳ γὰρ τινα θυσίαν ὅταν ἀρχὴ τις θύσῃ, μετὰ ταῦτα χορὸς ὅχι εἰς ἀλλὰ πλῆθος χορῶν ἥκει, καὶ στάντες οὐ πόρρω τῶν βωμῶν

Δ. ἀλλὰ παρ' αὐτοὺς ἐνίοτε πᾶσαν βλασφημίαν τῶν ἱερῶν καταχέουσι, ρήμασὶ τε καὶ ῥυθμοῖς καὶ γραμματέσταταις ἀμοινίαις συντεινοντες τὰς τῶν ἀκρομεμένων ψυχάς, καὶ δὴ ἄν δακρύσαι μάλιστα τὴν θύσασαν παραχρῆμα ποιήσῃ πόλιν, οὕτως τὰ 42
of any other "nome" (law), no person shall utter a note or move a limb in the dance. He that obeys shall be free of all penalty; but he that disobeys shall (as we said just now) be punished by the Lawwardens, the priestesses and the priests. Shall we now lay down these enactments in our statement?

CLIN. Yes, lay them down.

ATH. How shall we enact these rules by law in such a way as to escape ridicule? Let us consider yet another point concerning them. The safest plan is to begin by framing in our discourse some typical cases,¹ so to call them; one such case I may describe in this way. Suppose that, when a sacrifice is being performed and the offerings duly burned, some private worshipper—a son or a brother—when standing beside the altar and the offering, should blaspheme most blasphemously, would not his voice bring upon his father and the rest of the family a feeling of despair and evil forebodings?

CLIN. It would.

ATH. Well, in our part of the world this is what happens, one may almost say, in nearly every one of the States. Whenever a magistrate holds a public sacrifice, the next thing is for a crowd of choirs—not merely one—to advance and take their stand, not at a distance from the altars, but often quite close to them; and then they let out a flood of blasphemy over the sacred offerings, racking the souls of their audience with words, rhythms and tunes most dolorous, and the man that succeeds at once in drawing most tears from the sacrificing city carries

¹ ἐκμαγεῖον ("mould" or "impression") is here used, much like ἔλθος, of a class or "type" of cases needing legal regulation.
νικητήρια φέρει τούτον δη τού νόμον άρ' ουκ ἀποψηφιξόμεθα; καὶ εἰ ποτ' ἀρα δεῖ τοιούτων οίκτων γύγνεσθαι τοὺς πολίτας ἐπηκόους, ὅποταν ἥμεραι μὴ καθαραὶ τινες ἀλλὰ ἀποφράδες ὁσι, Ετὸθ' ἤκειν δέον ἀν εἰη μᾶλλον χοροὺς τινάς ἔξωθεν μεμισθωμένους όδους, οἴον οἱ περὶ τοὺς τελευτήσαντας μισθούμενοι παριτίς των Μούσης προσέμπουσι [τοὺς τελευτήσαντας]; τοιούτον που πρέπουν ἀν εἰη καὶ περὶ τὰς τοιαύτας ώδας γυγνομενον καὶ δὴ καὶ στολῆ γέ που ταῖς ἔπικης δείοις ώδαίς οὐ στέφανοι πρέποιεν ἀν οὐδ' ἐπίχρυσοι κόσμοι, πᾶν δὲ τούναντιον, ἵν' ὅτι τάχιστα περὶ αὐτῶν λέγων ἀπαλλάττωμαι. τὸ δὲ τοσοῦτον ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς ἐπανερωτῶ πάλιν, τῶν ἐκμαγείων ταις ώδαις εἰ πρῶτον ἐν τοῦθ' ἤμιν ἄρεσκον κείσθω.

κα. Τὸ ποῖον;

α. Ἐυφημία, καὶ δὴ καὶ τὸ τῆς ώδῆς γένος 801 εὐφημον ἡμῖν πάντη πάντως ὑπαρχέτω; ἡ μηδὲν ἐπανερωτῶ, τιθῶ δὲ τοῦτο οὕτως;

κα. Παντάπασι μὲν οὖν τίθει νικᾶ γὰρ πᾶσαισ ταῖς ψῆφοις οὕτος ὁ νόμος.

α. Τίς δὴ μετ' εὐφημίαι δεύτερος ἀν εἰη νόμος μουσικῆς; ἅρ' οὐκ εὐχὰς εἶναι τοῖς θεοῖς διὸς θύμοιν ἔκαστοτε;

κα. Πῶς γὰρ οὖ; 

α. Τρίτος δ', οἷμαι, νόμος, ὅτι γνώντας δεὶ τοὺς ποιητὰς ὅς εὐχαὶ παρὰ θεῶν αἰτήσεις εἰςί, δεὶ δὴ τὸν νοῦν αὐτοῦς σφόδρα προσέχειν μὴ ποτὲ

off the palm of victory. Must we not reject such a custom as this? For if it is ever really necessary that the citizens should listen to such doleful strains, it would be more fitting that the choirs that attend should be hired from abroad, and that not on holy days but only on fast-days—just as a corpse is escorted with Carian music by hired mourners. Such music would also form the fitting accompaniment for hymns of this kind; and the garb besetting these funeral hymns would not be any crowns nor gilded ornaments, but just the opposite,—for I want to get done with this subject as soon as I can. Only I would have us ask ourselves again this single question,—are we satisfied to lay this down as our first typical rule for hymns?

CLIN. What rule?

ATH. That of auspicious speech; and must we have a kind of hymn that is altogether in all respects auspicious? Or shall I ordain that it shall be so, without further questioning?

CLIN. By all means ordain it so; for that is a law carried by a unanimous vote.

ATH. What then, next to auspicious speech, should be the second law of music? Is it not that prayers should be made on each occasion to those gods to whom offering is made?

CLIN. Certainly.

ATH. The third law, I suppose, will be this,—that the poets, knowing that prayers are requests addressed to gods, must take the utmost care lest

1 Music should be used as an ennobling educational instrument, promoting self-control, not as a means of exciting vulgar sentiment and passion.

2 Cp. 800 B.
PLATO

Β λάθωσι κακὸν ός ἀγαθὸν αἰτούμενον γελοῦν γὰρ δὴ τὸ πάθος, οἶμαι, τούτ' ἂν γίγνοιτο εὐχὴς τοιαύτης γενομένης.

κλ. Τί μήν;

ἀθ. Οὐκοῦν ἡμεῖς ἐμπροσθεν σμικρὸν τῷ λόγῳ ἐπείσδημεν ὡς οὕτε ἄργυροι δεὶ Πλοῦτον οὕτε χρυσοῦν ἐν πόλει ἱδρυμένον ἐνοικεῖν;

κλ. Πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

ἀθ. Τίνος οὖν ποτὲ παράδειγμα εἰρήσθαι φῶμεν τούτον τὸν λόγον; ἀρ' οὖ τοῦτο, ὅτι τὸ τῶν ποιητῶν γένος οὐ πᾶν ἰκανόν ἐστι γνωστεῖν.

σφόδρα τὰ τὴν ἄγαθὰ καὶ μή; ποιήσας οὖν δὴ ποὺ τις ποιητὴς ῥήμασιν ἢ καὶ κατὰ μέλος τοῦτο ἡμαρτημένος [εὐχὰς οὐκ ὅρθᾶς] ἡμῖν τοὺς πολίτας περὶ τῶν μεγίστων εὐχεσθαι τάναντια ποιήσει καὶ τοι τοῦτο, καθάπερ ἐλέγομεν, οὐ πολλὰ ἡμαρτήματα ἀνευρήσομεν μείζω. θῶμεν δὴ καὶ τούτον τῶν περὶ Μοῦσαν νόμον καὶ τύπων ἐνα;

κλ. Τίνα; σαφέστερον εἰπῇ ἡμῖν.

ἀθ. Τὸν ποιητὴν παρὰ τὰ τῆς πόλεως νόμιμα καὶ δίκαια ἢ καλὰ ἢ ἄγαθὰ μηδεν ποιεῖν ἄλλο, τὰ δὲ ποιηθέντα μὴ ἐξεῖναι τῶν ἱδιοτῶν μηδενί πρότερον δεικνύοι, πρὶν ἀν αὐτοῖς τοῖς περὶ ταύτα ἀποδεδειγμένοις κριταῖς καὶ τοῖς νομοφύλαξι δευθῆ καὶ ἀρέσῃ. σχεδον δὲ ἀποδειγμένοι εἰσὶν ἡμῖν ὡς εἰλόμεθα νομοθέτας περὶ τὰ μονο- σικά καὶ τὸν τῆς παιδείας ἐπιμελητὴν. τι οὖν; ὃ πολλάκις ἐρωτῶ, κείσθω νόμοι ἡμῖν καὶ τύποις ἐκμαγεῖον τε τρίτον τοῦτο, ἡ πῶς δοκεῖ;

1 ἡμαρτημένος: ἡμαρτημένον MSS., edd.
2 [εὐχὰς οὐκ ὅρθᾶς] bracketed by Badham.

46
unwittingly they request a bad thing as though it were a good thing; for if such a prayer were made, it would prove, I fancy, a ludicrous blunder.

CLIN. Of course.

ATH. Did not our argument convince us, a little while ago,\(^1\) that no Plutus either in gold or in silver should dwell enshrined within the State?

CLIN. It did.

ATH. What then shall we say that this statement serves to illustrate? Is it not this,—that the tribe of poets is not wholly capable of discerning very well what is good and what not? For surely when a poet, suffering from this error, composes prayers either in speech or in song, he will be making our citizens contradict ourselves in their prayers for things of the greatest moment; yet this, as we have said,\(^2\) is an error than which few are greater. So shall we also lay down this as one of our laws and typical cases regarding music?

CLIN. What law? Explain it to us more clearly.

ATH. The law that the poet shall compose nothing which goes beyond the limits of what the State holds to be legal and right, fair and good; nor shall he show his compositions to any private person until they have first been shown to the judges appointed to deal with these matters, and to the Law-wardens, and have been approved by them. And in fact we have judges appointed in those whom we selected to be the legislators of music and in the supervisor of education. Well then, I repeat my question,—is this to be laid down as our third law, typical case, and example? What think you?

\(^1\) 742 D ff. Plutus is the god of wealth.

\(^2\) 801 B.
ΠΛΑΤΟ

κλ. Κείσθω τί μήν;
λθ. Μετά γε μήν ταῦτα ὑμοι θεῶν καὶ ἐγκώμια κεκοιμωνῆμένα εὐχαῖς ἀδοιτ ἀν ὀρθότατα, καὶ μετὰ θεοὺς ωσαύτως περὶ δαίμονας τε καὶ ἡρώας μετ’ ἐγκωμίων εὐχαὶ γίγνοιντ’ ἀν τούτους πᾶς πρέπουσαι.

κλ. Πῶς γὰρ οὖ;</p>
LAWS, BOOK VII

CLIN. Be it laid down by all means.

ATH. Next to these, it will be most proper to sing hymns and praise to the gods, coupled with prayers; and after the gods will come prayers combined with praise to daemons and heroes, as is befitting to each.

CLIN. To be sure.

ATH. This done, we may proceed at once without scruple to formulate this law:—all citizens who have attained the goal of life and have wrought with body or soul noble works and toilsome, and have been obedient to the laws, shall be regarded as fitting objects for praise.

CLIN. Certainly.

ATH. But truly it is not safe to honour with hymns and praises those still living, before they have traversed the whole of life and reached a noble end. All such honours shall be equally shared by women as well as men who have been conspicuous for their excellence. As to the songs and the dances, this is the fashion in which they should be arranged. Among the compositions of the ancients there exist many fine old pieces of music, and likewise dances, from which we may select without scruple for the constitution we are founding such as are fitting and proper. To examine these and make the selection, we shall choose out men not under fifty years of age; and whichever of the ancient songs are approved we shall adopt, but whichever fail to reach our standard, or are altogether unsuitable, we shall either reject entirely or revise and remodel. For this purpose we shall call in the advice of poets and musicians,

Εὔαντα, χρωμένους αὐτῶν ταῖς δυνάμεσι τῆς ποιήσεως, ταῖς δὲ ἡδοναῖς καὶ ἐπιθυμίαις μὴ εἴσητεν τοῦ νομοθετοῦν βουλήματα ὧτι μάλιστα ὃρχησιν τε καὶ ὧδην καὶ πᾶσαν χορείαν συστήσασθαι κατὰ τὸν αὐτοῦ 1 νοῦν. πᾶσα δὲ ἀτακτος γε τάξιν λαβοῦσα περὶ Μοῦσαν διατριβῇ καὶ μὴ παρατιθεμένη τῆς γλυκείας Μοῦσης ἀμείων μυρίῳ τὸ δ' ἦδον κοινὸν πᾶσας. ἐν ἣ γὰρ ἄν ἐκ παίδων τις μέχρι τῆς ἐστηκνίας τε καὶ ἐμφρονος ἡλικίας διαβιδώ, σώφρονι μὲν Μοῦσῃ καὶ ἐτεαγμένῃ, ἀκούον ἄει 2 τῆς ἐναντίας μισεῖ καὶ D ἀνελεύθερον αὐτὴν προσαγορεύει, τραφεῖς δ' ἐν τῇ κοινῇ καὶ γλυκείᾳ ψυχρὰν καὶ ἀνήδη τῆς ταύτης ἐναυτίας εἶναι φησιν, ὡστε, ὅπερ ἐφρήθη νῦν δὴ, τὸ γε τῆς ἡδονῆς η ἀνήδης περὶ ἐκατέρας οὐδὲν πεπλευκνίκτηκεν, ἐκ περιττοῦ δὲ ἡ μὲν βελτιός, ἡ δὲ χείρος τοὺς ἐν αὐτῇ τραφέντας ἐκάστοτε παρέχεται.

κα. Καλῶς εἰρηκας.

ἀω. Ἔτι δὲ θηλείας τε πρεπούσας ὁδὰς ἀρρέσι τε χωρίσαι που δεν ἄν εἰ ὧδη τὺπῳ τινὶ διορίςαμεν, καὶ ἀρμονίαις δὴ καὶ ρυθμοῖς προσαρ-Ε μόττεν ἀναγκαῖον δεινόν γὰρ ὄλη ν ἀρμονία ἀπάδειν ἢ ῥυθμῷ ἀρρυμεῖν, μηδὲν προσήκοντα τούτων ἐκάστοτον ἀποδδόντα τοῖς μέλεσιν. ἀναγκαῖον δὴ καὶ τούτων τὰ σχῆματα γε νομοθετεῖν. ἐστὶ δὲ ἀμφοτέρως μὲν ἀμφότερα ἀνάγκη κατεχόμενα ἀποδεδόναι, [τὰ δὲ τῶν θηλείων] 3

1 αὐτῶν: αὐτῶν MSS.; αὐτῶν Zur.
2 ἄει W. R. Paton, England: δὲ MSS.
3 τὰ . . . θηλείων I transpose, after W.-Müllendorff.
and make use of their poetical ability, without, however, trusting to their tastes or their wishes, except in rare instances; and by thus expounding the intentions of the lawgiver, we shall organise to his satisfaction dancing, singing, and the whole of choristry. In truth, every unregulated musical pursuit becomes, when brought under regulation, a thousand times better, even when no honeyed strains are served up: all alike provide pleasure.\footnote{i.e. a "regulated" style of music pleases the educated just as much as the other sort pleases the uneducated. Cp. 658 Eff.} For if a man has been reared from childhood up to the age of steadiness and sense in the use of music that is sober and regulated, then he detests the opposite kind whenever he hears it, and calls it "vulgar"; whereas if he has been reared in the common honeyed kind of music, he declares the opposite of this to be cold and unpleasing. Hence, as we said just now, in respect of the pleasure or displeasure they cause neither kind excels the other; where the superiority lies is in the fact that the one kind always makes those who are reared in it better, the other worse.

\textsc{clin.} Finely spoken!

\textsc{ath.} Further, it will be right for the lawgiver to set apart suitable songs for males and females by making a rough division of them; and he must necessarily adapt them to harmonies and rhythms, for it would be a horrible thing for discord to exist between theme and tune, metre and rhythm, as a result of providing the songs with unsuitable accompaniments. So the lawgiver must of necessity ordain at least the outline of these. And while it is necessary for him to assign both words and music for both
αὐτῷ τῷ τῆς φύσεως ἐκατέρου διαφέροντι, <τὰ δὲ τῶν θηλείων> τούτῳ δεῖ καὶ διασαφεῖν. τὸ δὴ μεγαλοπρεπὲς οὖν καὶ τὸ πρὸς τὴν ἀνδρίαν ῥέπον ἀρρένωτον φατέον εἶναι, τὸ δὲ πρὸς τὸ κόσμιον καὶ σῶφρον μᾶλλον ἀποκλίνων θηλυγενεστέρον ὡς ὁν παραδοτέον ἐν τῷ νόμῳ καὶ 803 λόγῳ. τάξις μὲν δὴ τις αὐτῆς τούτων δὲ αὐτῶν διδασκαλία καὶ παράδοσις λεγέσθω τὸ μετὰ τοῦτο, τίνα τρόπον χρῆ καὶ οὕστις καὶ πότε πράττειν ἔκαστα αὐτῶν ὡς ἐστὶ τῆς ναυπηγίας τῆς ναυπηγίας ἀρχῆν καταβαλλόμενος τὰ τροπίδεια ὑπογράφεται τῶν πλοίων σχήματα, ταύτων δὴ μοι κἂν φαίνομαι ἐμαυτῷ δρέν τὰ τῶν βίων πειρώμενος σχήματα διαστήσασθαι κατὰ τρόπους τοὺς τῶν ψυχῶν, ὡς τοῦτον τὰ

Β τροπίδεια καταβάλλεσθαι, ποία μηχανὴ καὶ τίς ποτὲ τρόποις ξυνόντες τὸν βίον ἀριστα διὰ τοῦ πλοῦ τούτου τῆς ζωῆς διακομισθήσομεθα, τὸτοι σκοπῶν ὁρθῶς. ἐστι δὴ τοίνυν τὰ τῶν ἀνθρώ-πων πράγματα μεγάλης μὲν σπουδῆς οὐκ ἄξια, ἀναγκαῖον γε μὴν σπουδάζειν τοῦτο δὲ οὐκ εὔνυχες. ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐνταῦθα ἔσμεν, εἴ πως διὰ προσήκοντός τινος αὐτὸ πράττομεν, ἵσως ἂν ἤμιν σύμμετρον ἄν εἴη. λέγω δὲ δὴ τὶ ποτὲ; ἵσως μεντ' ᾧ ἂν τίς μοι τοῦτ' αὐτὸ ὑπολαβῶν ὁρθῶς ὑπολάβωι. κλ. Πάνω μὲν οὖν.

α. Φημὶ χρῆμα τὸ μὲν σπουδαίον σπουδάζειν, τὸ δὲ μὴ σπουδαῖον μὴν φύσει δὲ εἶναι θεοῖν μὲν πάσης μακρίου σπουδῆς ἄξιον, ἀνθρωπὸν δὲ, ὅπερ εὐπομεν ἐμπροσθεν, θεοῦ τι παύγιον εἶναι μεμηχανημένον, καὶ ὡς τοῦτο αὐτῷ τὸ βέλτιστα-

1 σκοπῶν Peipers: σκοπεῖν MSS.
types of song as defined by the natural difference of the two sexes, he must also clearly declare wherein the feminine type consists. Now we may affirm that what is noble and of a manly tendency is masculine, while that which inclines rather to decorum and sedateness is to be regarded rather as feminine both in law and in discourse. Such then is our regulation of the matter. We have next to discuss the question of the teaching and imparting of these subjects—how, by whom, and when each of them should be practised. Just as a shipwright at the commencement of his building outlines the shape of his vessel by laying down her keel, so I appear to myself to be doing just the same—trying to frame, that is, the shapes of lives according to the modes of their souls, and thus literally laying down their keels, by rightly considering by what means and by what modes of living we shall best navigate our barque of life through this voyage of existence. And notwithstanding that human affairs are unworthy of earnest effort, necessity counsels us to be in earnest; and that is our misfortune. Yet, since we are where we are, it is no doubt becoming that we should show this earnestness in a suitable direction. But no doubt I may be faced—and rightly faced—with the question, "What do I mean by this?"

CLIN. Certainly.

ATH. What I assert is this,—that a man ought to be in serious earnest about serious things, and not about trifles; and that the object really worthy of all serious and blessed effort is God, while man is contrived, as we said above,¹ to be a plaything of God, and the best part of him is really just that; and

¹ 644 D.
PLATO

τον γεγονέναι τούτω δὴ δεῖν τῷ τρόπῳ ξυνεπόμενον καὶ παίζοντα ὡς καλλίστας παιδίας πάντ' ἀνδρα καὶ γυναῖκα οὕτω διαβιώναι, τούναντίον ἢ νῦν διανοηθέντας.

κα. Πῶς;

α. Νῦν μὲν ποὺ τὰς σπουδὰς οἶνονται δεῖν ἐνεκα τῶν παιδιῶν γίγνεσθαι, τὰ γάρ περὶ τῶν πόλεμων ήγούνται σπουδαία ὅντα τῆς εἰρήνης ἐνεκα δεῖν εὐ τίθεσθαι. τὸ δ' ἦν ἐν πολέμῳ μὲν ἀρα οὔτ' οὖν παιδία πεφυκυία οὔτ' αὐτ παιδεία ποτὲ ἡμῖν αξιόλογος, οὔτε οὔσα οὔτ' ἐσομένη, δ' ἦν φαμεν ἡμῖν γε εἶναι σπουδαιότατον δεὶ δὴ τὸν κατ' εἰρήνην βίον ἐκαστὸν πλείστον τε καὶ ἀριστον ἀδεξέλθειν. τὸς οὖν ὀρθότης; παίζοντα 2 ἐστὶν

Ε διαβιωτέον τινας δὴ παιδιὰς θύνοντα, καὶ ἄδοντα καὶ ὀρχούμενον, ὡστε τοὺς μὲν θεοὺς ἱλεωσ αὐτῷ παρασκευάζειν δυνατὸν εἶναι, τοὺς δ' ἐκθροὺς ἀμύνεσθαι καὶ νικᾶν μαχόμενον. ὅποια δὲ ἁδὼν ἄν τις καὶ ὀρχούμενος ἀμφότερα ταῦτα πράττοι, τὸ μὲν τῶν τύπων εἰρηταί καὶ καθάπερ ὅδοι τέτμηνται, καθ' ἀς ἰτέων προσδοκῶντα καὶ τὸν ποιητὴν εὐ λέγειν τὸ

804 Τηλέμαχ', ἄλλα μὲν αὐτὸς ἐνὶ φρεσὶ σῆσι νοήσεις,

ἄλλα δὲ καὶ δαίμων ὑποθήσεται' οὐ γὰρ οἷον οὐ σὲ τεθῶν ἀέκητι γενέσθαι τε τραφέμεν τε.

ταῦτὸν δὴ καὶ τοὺς ἡμετέρους τροφίμους δεὶ διανοούμενους τὰ μὲν εἰρημένα ἀποχρώτως νομίζειν εἰρήσθαι, τὰ δὲ καὶ τὸν δαίμονα τε καὶ θεὸν

1 δ' Hermann: τὸ MSS.
2 παίζοντα MSS.: τί παίζοντα . . . διαβιωτέον; τίνας δὴ Zur.
LAWS, BOOK VII

thus I say that every man and woman ought to pass through life in accordance with this character, playing at the noblest of pastimes, being otherwise minded than they now are.

clin. How so?

ath. Now they imagine that serious work should be done for the sake of play; for they think that it is for the sake of peace that the serious work of war needs to be well conducted. But as a matter of fact we, it would seem, do not find in war, either as existing or likely to exist, either real play or education worthy of the name, which is what we assert to be in our eyes the most serious thing. It is the life of peace that everyone should live as much and as well as he can. What then is the right way? We should live out our lives playing at certain pastimes—sacrificing, singing and dancing—so as to be able to win Heaven's favour and to repel our foes and vanquish them in fight. By means of what kinds of song and dance both these aims may be effected,—this has been, in part, stated in outline, and the paths of procedure have been marked out, in the belief that the poet is right when he says

"Telemachus, thine own wit will in part
Instruct thee, and the rest will Heaven supply;
For to the will of Heaven thou owest birth
And all thy nurture, I would fain believe."

It behoves our nurslings also to be of this same mind, and to believe that what we have said is sufficient, and that the heavenly powers will suggest to them all

1 Odyss. III. 26 ff.
αὐτοῖσιν ὑποθῆσεσθαι θυσίαν τε πέρι καὶ χορείων,
Β οίστισι τε καὶ ὅποτε έκαστα έκάστοις προσπαί-
ζοντές τε καὶ ἰλεούμενοι κατὰ τὸν τρόπον τῆς
φύσεως διαβιώσονται, θαύματα οὖντες τὸ πολὺ,
σμικρὰ δὲ ἀληθείας ἂττα μετέχουσε.
ΜΕ. Παντάπασι τὸ τῶν ἀνθρώπων γένος ἡμῖν,
ὁ ξένε, διαφαυλίζεις.
ΑΘ. Μὴ θαυμάσῃς, ὦ Μέγιλλε, ἀλλὰ ξύγγυμνότερον ἡμῶν πρὸς γὰρ τὸν θεὸν ἄπιθῶν καὶ παθῶν ἐπειπον ὅπερ εὐρήκα νῦν. ἔστω δὲ οὖν τὸ γένος ἡμῶν μὴ
C φαύλον, εἰ σοι φίλον, σπουδής δὲ τίνος αξίον.
Τὸ δὲ έξῆς τούτως, οἴκοδομία μὲν εἰρηνταί
γυμνασίων ἀμα καὶ διδασκαλεῖς κοινῶν τριχῆ
κατὰ μέσην τὴν πόλιν, ἔξωθεν δὲ ἵππων αὖ τριχὴ
περί τὸ ἀστυ γυμνάσια τε καὶ εὐρυχώρια, τοξικῆς
tε καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀκροβόλισμῶν ἕνεκα διακεκοσ-
μένα, μαθήσεως τε ἀμα καὶ μελέτης τῶν νέων.
eἰ δὲ ἀρα μή τότε ἰκανός εὑρήθησαν, νῦν εὐρήσθω
tο λόγῳ μετὰ νόμων. ἐν δὲ τούτως πάσι διδασ-
κάλως ἐκάστων πεπεισμένους μυσθοῖς οἰκούντας
έξενους διδάσκειν τε πάντα ὁσα πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον
ἐστὶ μαθήματα τοὺς φοιτῶντας ὧσα τε πρὸς
μονυσικῆς, οὐχ ὡς μὲν ἂν ὁ πατὴρ βούληται
φοιτῶντα, ὅτι ὃ τὸν ἐὼν τὰς παιδείας, ἀλλὰ
tὸ λεγόμενον πάντ' ἀνδρα καὶ παίδα κατὰ τὸ
δυνατόν, ὡς τῆς πόλεως μᾶλλον ἢ τῶν γεννητόρων
ὕτας, παιδευτέον εἴξ ἀνάγκης. τὰ αὕτα δὲ δὴ
καὶ περὶ θηλείων ὃ μὲν ἐμὸς νομοὶ ἢ εἰποι πάντα
ὁσαπερ καὶ περὶ τῶν ἀρέσκων, ἢσα καὶ τὰς θηλείας
Ε ἀσκεῖν δεῖν' καὶ οὐδὲν φοβοθέεις εἰπομί' ἂν τούτων
1 Cp. 644 D, E. 2 764 C, 779 D.
else that concerns sacrifice and the dance,—in honour of what gods and at what seasons respectively they are to play and win their favour, and thus mould their lives according to the shape of their nature, inasmuch as they are puppets for the most part, yet share occasionally in truth.

MEG. You have a very mean opinion, Stranger, of the human race.

ATH. Marvel not, Megillus, but forgive me. For when I spoke thus, I had my mind set on God, and was feeling the emotion to which I gave utterance. Let us grant, however, if you wish, that the human race is not a mean thing, but worthy of serious attention.

To pursue our subject,—we have described buildings for public gymnasia as well as schools in three divisions within the city, and also in three divisions round about the city training-grounds and race-courses for horses, arranged for archery and other long-distance shooting, and for the teaching and practising of the youth: if, however, our previous description of these was inadequate, let them now be described and legally regulated. In all these establishments there should reside teachers attracted by pay from abroad for each several subject, to instruct the pupils in all matters relating to war and to music; and no father shall either send his son as a pupil or keep him away from the training-school at his own sweet will, but every "man jack" of them all (as the saying goes) must, so far as possible, be compelled to be educated, inasmuch as they are children of the State even more than children of their parents. For females, too, my law will lay down the same regulations as for men, and training of an identical kind. I will unhesitatingly affirm that
PLATO

tον λόγον οὕτε ἵππηκῆς οὕτε γυμναστικῆς, ὡς ἀνδράσι μὲν πρέπον ἄν εἰη, γυναιξὶ δὲ οὐκ ἄν πρέπον. ἄκοιναν μὲν γὰρ δὴ μῦθους παλαιοὺς πέπεισμαί, τὰ δὲ νῦν ὡς ἔπος εἴπειν οἶδα ὅτι μυριάδες ἀναρίθμητοι γυναικῶν εἰσὶ τῶν περὶ τῶν Πόντων, ὡς Σαυρομάτιδας καλοῦσιν, αἷς οὐχ ἰπτων μόνον ἄλλα καὶ τόξων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ὁπλῶν κοινωνία καὶ τοῖς ἀνδράσιν ἵση προστε- 

tαγμένη ἵσως ἁσκεῖται. λογισμὸν δὲ πρὸς τούτοις 

805 περὶ τούτων τοιόνδε τινὰ ἔχω φημί, εἴπερ ταῦτα 

οὕτω ξυμβαίνειν ἐστὶ δυνατά, πάντων ἁνοητότατα 

τὰ νῦν ἐν τοῖς παρ’ ἡμῖν τόποις γίγνεσθαι τὸ μὴ 

πάση ρώμη πάντας ὁμοθυμαδόν ἐπιτηδεύειν ἀνδρας 

γυναῖξι ταῦτα. σχεδὸν γὰρ ὀλόγου πᾶσα ἡμίσεια 

πόλις ἀντὶ διπλασίας οὕτως ἐστὶ τε καὶ γίγνεται 

ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν τελῶν καὶ πόνων καὶ τοῦ θανάσ- 

B τὸν ἄν ἀμάρτημα νομοθέτῃ τοῦτ ἀυτὸ γίγνοιτο. 

κλ. Ἠοικὲ γε’ ἐστὶ μὲντοι πάμπολλα ἡμῖν, 

ὦ ξένε, παρὰ τὰς εἰωθυνιάς πολιτείας τῶν νῦ ἐν 

λεγομένων. 

αθ. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ εἶπον 1 τὸν μὲν λόγον ἐάσσαι 

διεξελθεῖν, εῦ διελθόντος δὲ οὕτω τὸ δοκοῦν 

αἱρεῖσθαι δεῖν. 

κλ. Μάλα εἰπέσε τε ἐμελέως πεποιηκάς τ᾽ ἐμὲ 

τὰ νῦν αὐτὸν ἐμαυτῷ ἐπιπλήττειν ὅτι ταῦτα 

εἰρήκα. λέγε οὖν τὸ μετὰ ταῦτα ὃ τί σοι 

C κεχαρισμένου ἐστίν. 

αθ. Τόδε ἔμοιγε, ὦ Κλεινία, ὦ καὶ πρόσθεν 

εἶπον, ὡς, εἰ μὲν ταῦτα ἢν μὴ ἱκανῶς ἔργους 

ἐληθεμένα ὅτι δυνατά ἐστὶ γίγνεσθαι, τάχα ἢν 

ἀν τι καὶ ἀντειπεῖν τῷ λόγῳ, νῦν δὲ ἄλλο τί πον 

1 εἶπον Cornarius: εἰπάν MSS., and some edd. (assigning 

ἀλλὰ . . . δεῖν also to Clin.).
neither riding nor gymnastics, which are proper for men, are improper for women. I believe the old tales I have heard, and I know now of my own observation, that there are practically countless myriads of women called Sauromatides, in the district of Pontus, upon whom equally with men is imposed the duty of handling bows and other weapons, as well as horses, and who practise it equally. In addition to this I allege the following argument. Since this state of things can exist, I affirm that the practice which at present prevails in our districts is a most irrational one—namely, that men and women should not all follow the same pursuits with one accord and with all their might. For thus from the same taxation and trouble there arises and exists half a State only instead of a whole one, in nearly every instance; yet surely this would be a surprising blunder for a lawgiver to commit.

yclin. So it would seem; yet truly a vast number of the things now mentioned, Stranger, are in conflict with our ordinary polities.

ath. Well, but I said that we should allow the argument to run its full course, and when this is done we should adopt the conclusion we approve.

yclin. In this you spoke most reasonably; and you have made me now chide myself for what I said. So say on now what seems good to you.

ath. What seems good to me, Clinias, as I said before, is this,—that if the possibility of such a state of things taking place had not been sufficiently proved by facts, then it might have been possible to gainsay our statement; but as it is, the man who

1 Cp. 746 C, 799 E.  
2 805 A.
ζητητέου ἐκείνῳ τῷ τούτου τὸν νόμον μηδαμῇ δεχομένω, τὸ δ' ἡμέτερον διακέλευμα ἐν τούτοις οὐκ ἀποσβησται, τὸ μὴ οὐ λέγειν ὡς δεὶ παιδείας τε καὶ τῶν ἀλλῶν ὅτι μάλιστα κοινωνεῖν τὸ

D θηλυ γένος ἡμῖν τῷ τῶν ἀρρένων γένει. καὶ γὰρ οὖν οὕτως πως δεὶ περὶ αὐτῶν διανοηθῇναι. φέρε, μὴ μετέχουσών ἀνδράσι γυναικῶν κοινῆ τῆς ξωῆς πάσης μῶν οὐκ ἀνάγκη γενέσθαι γε τινα τάξιν ἐτέραν αὐταῖς;

κα. 'Ανάγκη μὲν οὖν.

άθ. Τίνα οὖν ἔμπροσθεν τῶν νῦν ἀποδεδειγμένων θείμεν ἂν τῆς κοινωνίας ταύτης ἢν νῦν αὐταῖς ἡμεῖς προστάττομεν; πότερον ἢν Ἐράκες ταῖς γυναιξί χρώνται καὶ πολλὰ ἐτέρα γένη,

Ἐγεωργεῖν τε καὶ βουκολεῖν καὶ πουμαίνειν καὶ διακοινεῖν μηδέν διαφέροντος τῶν δούλων; ἡ καθάπερ ἡμέις ἀπαντές τε οἱ περὶ τῶν τόπων ἑκείνου; νῦν γὰρ δὴ τὸ γε παρ' ἡμῖν ὡδὲ ἐστὶ περὶ τούτων γυνώμενον· εἰς τίνα μίαν οἶκησίν ξυμφορήσαντες, τὸ λεγόμενον, πάντα χρήματα παρέδομεν ταῖς γυναιξί διατεμεύειν τε καὶ κερκίδων ἁρχεῖν καὶ πάσης ταλασίας. ἢ τὸ τούτων δὴ διὰ μέσου θῶμεν,1 ὡ Μέγιλλε, τὸ

806 Δακωνικόν; κόρας μὲν γυμνασίων μετόχους οὕσας ἀμα καὶ μουσικῆς ἵνα δεῖν, γυναίκας δὲ ἀργοὺς μὲν ταλασίας, ἀσκητικῶν δὲ τινα βλον καὶ οὐδαμῶς φαύλου οὐδ' εὐτελῆ διαπλέκειν, θεραπείας δὲ καὶ ταμείας αὐ καὶ παιδοτροφίας εἰς τι μέσου ἀφικνεῖσθαι, τῶν δὲ εἰς τὸν πόλεμον μὴ κοινωνούσας, ὡστ' οὔδ' εἰ τίς ποτὲ διαμάχεσθαι περὶ πόλεως τε καὶ παίδων ἀναγκαία τῦχῃ γέγονοιτο,

1 θῶμεν H. Richards: φῶμεν MSS.
LAWS, BOOK VII

rejects our law must try some other method, nor shall we be hereby precluded from asserting in our doctrine that the female sex must share with the male, to the greatest extent possible, both in education and in all else. For in truth we ought to conceive of the matter in this light. Suppose that women do not share with men in the whole of their mode of life, must they not have a different system of their own?

CLIN. They must.

ATH. Then which of the systems now in vogue shall we prescribe in preference to that fellowship which we are now imposing upon them? Shall it be that of the Thracians, and many other tribes, who employ their women in tilling the ground and minding oxen and sheep and toiling just like slaves? Or that which obtains with us and all the people of our district? The way women are treated with us at present is this—we huddle all our goods together, as the saying goes, within four walls, and then hand over the dispensing of them to the women, together with the control of the shuttles and all kinds of wool-work. Or again, shall we prescribe for them, Megillus, that midway system, the Laconian? Must the girls share in gymnastics and music, and the women abstain from wool-work, but weave themselves instead a life that is not trivial at all nor useless, but arduous, advancing as it were halfway in the path of domestic tendance and management and child-nurture, but taking no share in military service; so that, even if it should chance to be necessary for them to fight in defence of their city and their children, they will be unable to handle
B οὖτ' ἂν τόξων, ὡς τινες Ἄμαξονες, οὐτ' ἄλλης κοινωνήσαι ποτε βολῆς μετὰ τέχνης δυνάμεναι, οὐδὲ ἄσπίδα καὶ δόρυ λαβοῦσαι μιμήσασθαι τὴν θεόν, ὡς πορθομένης αὐταῖς τῆς πατρίδος γενναίως ἀντιστάσας φόβου γε, εἰ μηδὲν μεῖζον, πολεμίοισι δύνασθαι παρασχεῖν ἐν τάξει τινὶ κατοφθείσας; Σαυρομάτιδας δὲ οὖδ' ἂν τὸ παράπαν τολμήσειν μιμήσασθαι τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον διαβιοῦσαι, παρὰ γυναικαὶ δὲ αὐτὰς ἄνδρες ἂν αἱ ἐκεῖνων γυναικὲς φανεῖν. ταῦτ' οὖν ὑμῖν τοὺς νομοθέτας ὁ μὲν βουλόμενος ἐπαινεῖν ἐπαίνειτων.  

C τὸ δ' ἐμὸν οὐκ ἄλλως ἂν λέχθην' τέλεον γὰρ καὶ οὗ διήμισυν ἂν θῇλν μὲν ἀφιέντα τρυφάν καὶ ἀναλίσκειν διαίταις ἀτάκτως χρόμενον, τοῦ δὲ ἀρρένως ἐπιμελθότα, τελέως σχεδὸν εὐδαίμωνος ἤμισυ βίου καταλείπειν ἀντὶ διπλασίον τῇ πόλει.

ΜΕ. Τί δράσομεν, ὡς Κλεινία; τὸν ξένον ἐάσομεν τὴν Σπάρτην ἤμιν οὔτω καταδραμεῖν;  

D ΚΑ. Ναὶ: δεδομένης γὰρ αὕτῳ παρρησίας ἐστέον, ἐως ἂν διεξέλθωμεν πάντη ἰκανῶς τοὺς νόμους.  

ΜΕ. Ὄρθως λέγεις.  

ΑΘ. Οὐκοῦν τὰ μετὰ ταῦτα ὑδὴ σχεδὸν ἐμὸν πειράσθαι φράξειν;  

ΚΑ. Πῶς γὰρ οὐ;  

ΑΘ. Τίς δὴ τρόπος ἀνθρώποις γύνοιτ' ἂν τοῦ βίου, οὐσι τὰ μὲν ἀναγκαῖα εἰς κατεσκευασμένα μέτρια, τὰ δὲ τῶν τεχνῶν ἄλλοις παραδεδομένα,  

Ε. γεωργίαι δὲ ἐκδεδομέναι δούλως ἀπαρχήν τῶν ἐκ τῆς γῆς ἀποτελόσιν ἰκανὴν ἀνθρώπως ζῶσι  

1 οὐ διήμισυν Schneider: οὐ δὲ ἤμισυν MSS.: οὐδ' ἤμισυν Zur.

62
LAWS, BOOK VII

with skill either a bow (like the Amazons) or any other missile, nor could they take spear and shield, after the fashion of the Goddess,⁠¹ so as to be able nobly to resist the wasting of their native land, and to strike terror—if nothing more—into the enemy at the sight of them marshalled in battle-array? If they lived in this manner, they certainly would not dare to adopt the fashion of the Sauromatides, whose women would seem like men beside them. So in regard to this matter, let who will commend your Laconian lawgivers: as to my view, it must stand as it is. The lawgiver ought to be whole-hearted, not half-hearted,—letting the female sex indulge in luxury and expense and disorderly ways of life,⁠² while supervising the male sex; for thus he is actually bequeathing to the State the half only, instead of the whole, of a life of complete prosperity.

MEG. What are we to do, Clinias? Shall we allow the Stranger to run down our Sparta in this fashion?

CLIN. Yes: now that we have granted him free speech we must let him be, until we have discussed the laws fully.

MEG. You are right.

ATH. May I, then, endeavour without more delay to proceed with my exposition?

CLIN. By all means.

ATH. What manner of life would men live, supposing that they possessed a moderate supply of all the necessaries, and that they had entrusted all the crafts to other hands, and that their farms were hired out to slaves, and yielded them produce

¹ For Athené as a warrior, cp. 796 B,
κοσμίως· ξυσσίτια δὲ κατεσκευασμένα εἳ ἡ χορίς μὲν τὰ τῶν ἀνδρῶν, ἐγγὺς δ' ἐχόμενα τὰ τῶν αὐτοῖς οἶκείων, παίδων τε ἅμα θηλεῖών καὶ τῶν μητέρων αὐταῖς· ἄρχουσι δὲ καὶ ἀρχόυσαι εἰή προστεταγμένα λύειν ταῦτα ἐκάστοις τὰ ξυσσίτια πάντα καθ' ἐκάστην ἡμέραν θεασαμένους καὶ ἰδόντας τὴν διαγωγὴν τὴν τῶν ξυσσίτων, μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα σπείσαντας τὸν τε ἄρχοντα καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους, οἳ ἂν τυγχάνῃ θεοὶς ἴ σῶτε νῦς τε καὶ ἡμέρα καθιερωμένη, κατὰ ταῦτα οὐτως οἰκαδε πορεύεσθαι; τοῖς δὲ τάυτη κεκοσμημένοις ἀρα οὐδὲν λειπόμενον ἐστιν ἀναγκαῖον τε ἔργον καὶ παντάπασι προσήκον, ἀλλ' ἐν τρόπῳ βοσκήματος ἐκαστον πιανόμενον αὐτῶν δει ξεν; οὐκον τὸ γε δικαίον φαμεν οὖντε καλόν, οὖν' οἴον τε τὸν ἤξωντα οὕτως ἀτυχήσαι τού προσήκοντος, προσήκει δὲ ἄργῳ καὶ ῥαθύμως καταπετασμένως ξώφω ἰβ σχεδὸν ὑπ' ἄλλου διαρπασθήναι ξῶν τῶν σφόδρα τετρυχωμένων μετὰ ἀνδρίας τε ἅμα καὶ τῶν πόλεων. ταῦτα δὲν δὴ δὲ ἀκριβέιας μὲν ἰκανῆς [ὡς καὶ νῦν] εἰ ξητοίμεν [ἂν].1 ἵσως οὖκ ἂν ποτε γένοιτο, μὲχριπέρ ἂν γυναικές τε καὶ παῖδες οἰκήσεις τε ἢοίαι καὶ ἢοίως ἀπαντ' ἢ τα τοιαῦτα ἐκάστοις ἡμῶν κατεσκευασμένα· τὰ δὲ μετ' ἐκείνων ἄδεωτερα τὰ νῦν λεγόμενα εἰ γίγνοιτο ἦμων, ἰγίγνοιτο ἂν καὶ μᾶλα μετρίως. ἔργον δὲ δὴ τοὺς οὕτως ξώσι φαμεν οὔ το σμικρότατον οὐδὲ τὸ φαυλότατον λειπεσθαι, μέγιστον δὲ πάντων εἶναι προστεταγμένων ὑπὸ δικαιοῦ νόμου τοῦ γὰρ πάσαν τῶν ἄλλων πάντων ἔργων βίου ἀσχολίαν

1 [ὡς καὶ νῦν] and [ἂν] I bracket (νῦν for νῦν εἰ Badham, England: οὐ for εἰ Apelt).
enough for their modest needs? Let us further suppose that they had public mess-rooms—separate rooms for men, and others close by for their households, including the girls and their mothers—and that each of these rooms was in charge of a master or mistress, to dismiss the company and to watch over their behaviour daily; and, at the close of the meal, that the master and all the company poured a libation in honour of those gods to whom that night and day were dedicated, and so finally retired home. Supposing them to be thus organised, is there no necessary work, of a really appropriate kind, left for them, but must every one of them continue fattening himself like a beast?¹ That, we assert, is neither right nor good; nor is it possible for one who lives thus to miss his due reward; and the due reward of an idle beast, fattened in sloth, is, as a rule, to fall a prey to another beast—one of those which are worn to skin and bone through toil hardly endured. Now it is probable that if we look to find this state of leisure fully realised exactly as described, we shall be disappointed, so long as women and children and houses remain private, and all these things are established as the private property of individuals; but if the second-best State,² as now described, could exist, we might be well content with it. And, we assert, there does remain for men living this life a task that is by no means small or trivial, but rather one that a just law imposes upon them as the weightiest task of all. For as compared with the life that aims at a Pythian or

² i.e. the (Magnesian) State described in the Laws, in contrast to the Ideal (communistic) State of the Republic.
παρασκευάζοντος, τοῦ Πυθιάδος τε καὶ Ὄλυμπιάδος νύκης ὀρεγομένου, διπλασίας τε καὶ ἐτὶ πολλῷ πλέονος ἀσχολίας ἐστὶ γέμων ὁ περὶ τὴν τοῦ σῶματος πάντως καὶ ψυχῆς εἰς ἁρετῆν

D ἐπιμέλειαν βίος εἰρημένος ὀρθότατα. πάρεργον γὰρ οὖν ἔδει τῶν ἄλλων ἐργῶν διακόλυμα γίνεσθαι τῶν τῷ σώματι προσηκόντων εἰς ἀπόδοσιν πόνων καὶ τροφῆς, οὖν ἂν ψυχῆς μαθημάτων τε καὶ ἐθών πᾶσα δὲ νῦξ τε καὶ ἡμέρα σχεδὸν οὐκ ἔστιν ἰκανὴ τοῦτ' αὐτὸ πράττοντι, τὸ τέλεον τε καὶ ἰκανὸν αυτῶν ἐκλαμβάνειν.

Οὐτὼ δὴ τούτων πεφυκότων τάξιν δεὶ γίγνεσθαι πᾶσι τοῖς ἔλευθεροις τῆς διατριβῆς περὶ τὸν χρόνον

Ε ἀπαντά, σχεδὸν ἀρξάμενον εἰς ἐσθρήντος τίς ἔτερας ἢ ἐν ἐυνέχος ἐσθρήντος πολλὰ μὲν οὖν καὶ πυκνὰ καὶ σκηνὰ καὶ ταῖς νυφιῶταις ἀσχημώνοις φαίνοντο περὶ τῶν κατ' ὅικιαν διοικήσεων, τὰ τέλεα καὶ ὅσα νῦκτωρ ἀυτοῦσα πέρι πρέπει τοῖς μέλλουσι διὰ τέλους φυλάξειν πᾶσαν πόλιν ἀκριβῶς. τὸ γὰρ ὀλὴν διατελεῖν ἑντυποῦν νῦκτα εὐθύταιρα καὶ ὑποτυποῦν τῶν πολιτῶν, καὶ μὴ φανερὸν εἶναι πᾶσι τοῖς ὦκεταῖς ἐγείροντον τοῖς καὶ ἐκανοτάμενον ἢ ἐπτοῦτον, τοῦτο αἰσχρὸν δὲ δεδόχθαι πᾶσι καὶ ὦκεν ἔλευθερον, εὑρόν νόμον εὑρήθηντεσκοια τοῦτον καὶ πολὺν ἔτη ἔνωσα καὶ τοὺς ἐν ἑνωμένος ἂν ὀικίαν ἀκριβῶς. τῷ λέγει καὶ δῆς καὶ διασποιναν ἐν ὀικίαν ὑπὸ θεραπεινάω ἐγείρεσθαι τινῶν καὶ μὴ πρόκτιν αὐτὴν ἐγείρειν τάς ἄλλας, αἰσχρὸν λέγειν χρὴ πρὸς αὐτοὺς δοῦλον τε καὶ δοῦλην καὶ παίδα, καὶ εἴ πως ἢν οἶνον τε, ὀλὴν καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν ὦκίαιν. ἐγείρομένους δὲ νῦκτώρ δὲι πάντας πράττειν τῶν

1 ἁρετῆν Ast, England: ἁρετῆς MSS.
Olympian victory and is wholly lacking in leisure for other tasks, that life we speak of—which most truly deserves the name of "life"—is doubly (nay, far more than doubly) lacking in leisure, seeing that it is occupied with the care of bodily and spiritual excellence in general. For there ought to be no other secondary task to hinder the work of supplying the body with its proper exercise and nourishment, or the soul with learning and moral training: nay, every night and day is not sufficient for the man who is occupied therein to win from them their fruit in full and ample measure.

So this being nature's law, a programme must be framed for all the freeborn men, prescribing how they shall pass their time continuously, from dawn to dawn and sunrise on each successive day. It would be undignified for a lawgiver to mention a host of petty matters connected with the domestic arrangements—such as, in particular, the rules about that wakefulness at night which is proper for men who propose to guard a whole State adequately and continuously. That any citizen, indeed, should spend the whole of any night in sleep, instead of setting an example to his household by being himself always the first to awaken and rise—such a practice must be counted by all a shameful one, unworthy of a free man, whether it be called a custom or a law. Moreover, that the mistress of a house should be awakened by maids, instead of being herself the first to wake up all the others—this is a shameful practice; and that it is so all the servants must declare to one another—bondman and bondmaid and boy, yea, even (were it possible) every stone in the house. And, when awake by night, they must certainly transact a large
Β ΤΕ ΠΟΛΙΤΙΚΩΝ ΜΕΡΗ ΠΟΛΛΑ ΚΑΙ ΤΩΝ ΟΙΚΟΝΟΜΙΚΩΝ, ΆΡΧΟΝΤΑΣ ΜΕΝ ΚΑΤΑ ΠΟΛΙΝ, ΔΕΣΤΟΙΝΑΣ ΔΕ ΚΑΙ ΔΕΣΤΟΤΑΣ ΕΝ ΙΔΙΑΙΣ ΟΙΚΙΑΙΣ. ΥΠΝΟΣ ΓΑΡ ΔΗ ΠΟΛΥΣ ΟΥΤΕ ΤΟΙΣ ΣΩΜΑΣΙΝ ΟΥΤΕ ΤΑΙΣ ΨΥΧΑΙΣ ΗΜΩΝ ΟΥΔΕ ΑΥΤΑΙΣ ΠΡΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΑΙΣ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΑΥΤΑ ΠΑΝΤΑ ΆΡΜΟΤΤΩΝ ΕΣΤΙ ΚΑΤΑ ΦΥΣΙΝ. ΚΑΘΕΥΔΩΝ ΓΑΡ ΟΥΔΕΙΣ ΟΥΔΕΝΟΣ ΆΞΙΟΣ, ΟΥΔΕΝ ΜΑΛΛΟΝ ΤΟΥ ΜΗ ΞΩΝΤΟΣ ΆΛΛ' ΟΣΤΙΣ ΤΟΥ ΞΗΝ ΗΜΩΝ ΚΑΙ ΤΟΥ ΦΡΟΝΕΙΝ ΜΑΛΙΣΤΑ ΕΣΤΙ ΚΗΔΕΜΩΝ, ΕΓΡΗΓΟΡΕ ΧΡΟΝΩΝ ΩΣ ΠΛΕΙΣΤΟΝ, ΤΟ ΠΡΟΣ

C ΥΓΙΕΙΝ ΑΥΤΟΥ ΜΟΝΟΝ ΦΥΛΑΤΤΩΝ ΧΡΗΣΙΜΟΝ ΕΣΤΙ Δ' ΟΥ ΠΟΛΥ, ΚΑΛΩΣ ΕΙΣ ΘΟΣ ΙΟΝ. ΕΓΡΗΓΟΡΟΤΕΣ ΔΕ ΆΡΧΟΝΤΕΣ ΕΝ ΠΟΛΕΣΙ ΝΥΚΤΩΡ ΦΟΒΕΡΟΙ ΜΕΝ ΚΑΚΟΙΣ ΠΟΛΕΜΙΟΙΣ ΤΕ ΑΜΑ ΚΑΙ ΠΟΛΙΤΑΙΣ, ΆΓΑΣΤΟΙ ΔΕ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΜΟΙ ΤΟΙΣ ΔΙΚΑΙΟΙΣ ΤΕ ΚΑΙ ΣΩΦΡΟΙΝ, ΩΦΕΛΙΜΟΙ ΔΕ ΑΥΤΟΙΣ ΤΕ ΚΑΙ ΞΥΜΠΑΣΗ ΤΗ ΠΟΛΕΙ.

ΝΥΣ ΜΕΝ ΔΗ ΔΙΑΓΟΜΕΝΗ ΤΟΙΑΣ ΤΗ ΠΡΟΣ ΠΑΣΙ ΤΟΙΣ ΕΙΡΗΜΕΝΟΙΣ ΆΝΔΡΙΑΝ ΑΝ ΤΙΝΑ ΠΡΟΣΠΑΡΈΧΟΙΤΟ ΤΑΙΣ ΨΥΧΑΙΣ ΕΚΑΣΤΩΝ ΤΩΝ ΕΝ ΤΑΙΣ ΠΟΛΕΣΙΝ ΗΜΕΡΑΣ ΔΕ ΌΡΘΡΟΥ ΤΕ ΕΠΑΝΙΟΝΤΩΝ ΠΑΙΔΑΣ ΜΕΝ ΠΡΟΣ

D ΔΙΔΑΣΚΑΛΟΣ ΠΟΥ ΤΡΕΠΕΣΘΑΙ ΧΡΕΩΝ. ΆΝΕΥ ΠΟΙΜΕΝΟΣ ΔΕ ΟΥΤΕ ΠΡΟΒΑΤΑ ΟΥΤΕ ΆΛΛΟ <ΑΝΟΥΝ> 1 ΟΥΔΕΝ ΠΩ ΒΙΩΤΕΟΝ, ΟΥΔΕ ΔΗ ΠΑΙΔΑΣ ΆΝΕΥ ΤΙΝΩΝ ΠΑΙΔΑΓΩΓΩΝ ΟΥΔΕ ΘΟΥΛΟΣ ΆΝΕΥ ΔΕΣΠΟΤΩΝ. Ο ΔΕ ΠΑΙΣ ΠΑΝΤΩΝ ΘΗΡΙΩΝ ΕΣΤΙ ΔΥΣΜΕΤΑΧΕΙΡΙΣΤΟΤΑΤΟΝ. ΌΣΦ ΓΑΡ ΜΑΛΙΣΤΑ ΕΧΕΙ ΠΗΓΗΝ ΤΟΥ ΦΡΟΝΕΙΝ ΜΗΠΩ ΚΑΤΗΡΤΥΜΕΝΗΝ, ΕΠΙΒΟΥΛΟΝ ΚΑΙ ΔΡΙΜΥ ΚΑΙ ΥΒΡΙΣΤΟΤΑΤΟΝ ΘΗΡΙΩΝ ΓΥΜΕΤΑΙ. ΔΙΟ ΔΗ ΠΟΛΛΟΙΣ ΑΥΤΟΙ ΟΙΟΝ

E ΧΑΛΙΝΟΙΣ ΤΙΣΙ ΙΔΕΙ ΔΕΣΜΕΥΕΙΝ, ΠΡΩΤΟΝ ΜΕΝ, ΤΡΟΦΩΝ ΚΑΙ ΜΗΤΕΡΩΝ ΌΤΑΝ ΑΠΑΛΛΑΤΤΗΤΑΙ, ΠΑΙΔΑΓΩΓΟΙΣ ΠΑΙΔΙΑΣ ΚΑΙ ΝΗΠΙΟΤΗΤΟΣ ΧΑΡΙΝ, ΕΤΙ Δ' ΑΥΤΟΙΣ ΔΙΔΑΣΚΟΥΣΙ ΚΑΙ ΟΤΙΟΥΝ ΚΑΙ ΜΑΘΗΜΑΣΙΝ, ΩΣ ΕΛΕΥ-

1 <ΑΝΟΥΝ> Ι add (πων for πω ΕΝΓΛΑΝΤΙΑ).
share of business, both political and economical, the
magistrates in the city, and the masters and mistres-
ses in their own houses. For much sleep is not
naturally suitable either to our bodies or souls, nor
yet to employment on any such matters. For when
asleep no man is worth anything, any more than if
he were dead: on the contrary, every one of us
who cares most greatly for life and thought keeps
awake as long as possible, only reserving so much
time for sleep as his health requires—and that is but
little, once the habit is well formed. And rulers
that are watchful by night in cities are a terror to
evil-doers, be they citizens or enemies, but objects
of respect and admiration to the just and temperate;
and they confer benefit alike on themselves and on
the whole State.

The night, if spent in this way, will—in addition
to all the other benefits described—lend greater
fortitude to the souls of all who reside in these
States. With the return of daylight the children
should go to their teachers; for just as no sheep or
other witless creature ought to exist without a
herdsman, so children cannot live without a tutor,
nor slaves without a master. And, of all wild
creatures, the child is the most intractable; for in
so far as it, above all others, possesses a fount of
reason that is as yet uncurbed, it is a treacherous,
sly and most insolent creature. Wherefore the child
must be strapped up, as it were, with many bridles
—first, when he leaves the care of nurse and mother,
with tutors, to guide his childish ignorance, and
after that with teachers of all sorts of subjects and
lessons, treating him as becomes a freeborn child.
θερον ὡς δ’ αὐ δοῦλον, πᾶς ὁ προστυγχάνων τῶν ἐλευθέρων ἀνδρῶν κολάζετω τὸν τε παῖδα αὐτὸν καὶ τὸν παιδαγωγὸν καὶ τὸν διδάσκαλον, ἐὰν ἐξαμαρτάνητις τι τούτων. ἂν δ’ αὐ προστυγχάνων τις μὴ κολάζη τῇ δίκῃ, οὐνεῖδε μὲν ἐνεχέσθω πρῶτον τῷ μεγίστῳ, ὁ δὲ τῶν νομοφυλάκων ἐπὶ τὴν τῶν παιδῶν ἀρχὴν ἕρημένοις ἐπισκοπεῖτο τούτον τὸν ἐντυγχάνοντα οἷς λέγομεν καὶ μὴ κολάζοντα δέον κολάζειν, ἢ κολάζοντα μὴ κατὰ τρόπον βλέπων δὲ ἡμῖν ὡξὺ καὶ διαφέροντως ἐπιμελεύμενος τῆς τῶν παιδῶν τροφῆς κατευθύνετο τὰς φύσεις αὐτῶν, ἀεὶ τρέπων πρὸς τἀγαθὸν κατὰ νόμους.

Τούτων δὲ αὐτῶν αὐ τῶς ἢ μὲν ὁ νόμος αὐτὸς παιδευσειν ἰκανῶς; νῦν μὲν γὰρ δὴ εἰρηκεὶν οὐδὲν ἂν πως σαφὲς οὐδὲ ἰκανόν, ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν, τὰ δ’ οὐ δεὶ λόγον αφερμηνεύειν, ἵνα οὕτος τοῖς ἄλλοις μηνυτῆς τῇ ἀμα καὶ τροφεύς γίγνεται. τὰ μὲν οὖν δὴ χορείας πέρι μελῶν τε καὶ ὅρχησεως ἐρρήθη, τίνα τύπον ἤχοντα ἐκλεκτέα τῇ ἐστί καὶ ἐπανορθώτεα καὶ καθιερωτέα· τὰ δὲ ἐν γράμμασι μὲν ὡντα, ἀνευ δὲ μέτρων, ποῖα καὶ τίνα μεταχειρίζεσθαι χρὴ σοι τρόπον, ὁ ἀριστε τῶν παιδῶν ἐπιμελητᾶ, τοὺς υπὸ σοῦ τρεφομένους, οὐκ εἰρήκαμεν. καὶ τοι τὰ μὲν περὶ τὸν πόλεμον, ἀ δεὶ μανθάνειν τε αὐτῶς καὶ

1 The child is of two-fold nature,—semi-rational; as such he needs a double "bridle," that of instruction (proper to free men), and that of chastisement (proper to slaves).
On the other hand, he must be treated as a slave; and any free man that meets him shall punish both the child himself and his tutor or teacher, if any of them does wrong. And if anyone thus meets them and fails to punish them duly, he shall, in the first place, be liable to the deepest degradation; and the Law-warden who is chosen as president over the children shall keep his eye on the man who has met with the wrong-doings mentioned and has failed either to inflict the needed punishment at all, or else to inflict it rightly. Moreover, this Law-warden shall exercise special supervision, with a keen eye, over the rearing of the children, to keep their growing natures in the straight way, by turning them always towards goodness, as the laws direct.

But how is the law itself to give an adequate education to this Law-warden of ours? For, up to the present, the law has not as yet made any clear or adequate statement: it has mentioned some things, but omitted others. But in dealing with this warden it must omit nothing, but fully expound every ordinance that he may be both expositor and nurturer to the rest. Matters of choristry of tunes and dancing, and what types are to be selected, remodelled, and consecrated—all this has already been dealt with; but with regard to the kind of literature that is written but without metre we have never put the question—O excellent supervisor of children, of what sort ought this prose to be, and in what fashion are your charges to deal with it? You know from our discourse what are the military exercises they ought to learn and to practise, but the matters that

1 799 A ff., 802 A ff.
2 Cp. 796 A ff.
μελετάν, ἐχεῖς τῷ λόγῳ, τὰ δὲ περὶ τὰ γράμματα πρώτον καὶ δεύτερον λύρας πέρι καὶ λογισμῶν, ὃν ἔφαμεν δεῖν ὅσα τε πρὸς πόλεμον καὶ οἰκονομίαν καὶ τὴν κατὰ πόλιν διοίκησιν χρήναι ἐκάστους λαβεῖν, καὶ πρὸς τὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα ἔτι τὰ χρήσιμα τῶν ἐν ταῖς περιόδοις τῶν θείων, ἀστρῶν τε πέρι καὶ ἱλίου καὶ σελήνης, ὅσα διοικεῖν ἀναγκαῖον ἔστιν περὶ ταῦτα πάση πόλει. τίνων δὴ περὶ λέγομεν; ἡμερῶν τάξεως εἰς μηνῶν περιόδους καὶ μηνῶν εἰς ἐκαστον τὸν ἐνιαυτὸν, ἵνα δραί καὶ θυσίαι καὶ ἐόρται τὰ προσήκοντ’ ἀπολαμβάνουσαι ἐαυταῖς ἐκασται τῷ κατὰ φύσιν ἄγεσθαι, ξῶσαν τὴν πόλιν καὶ ἐγρηγορούιαν παρεξόμεναι, θεοίς μὲν τὰς τιμὰς ἀποδίδοσι, τοὺς δὲ ἀνθρώπους περὶ αὐτὰ μᾶλλον ἐμφρονας ἀπεργάζωνται. ταῦτα οὕτω σοι πάντα ἰκανῶς, ὃ φίλε, παρὰ τού τοι νομοθέτου διείρηται. 

Εἰ πρόσεχε δὴ τὸν νοῦν τοὺς μετὰ ταῦτα μέλλουσιν ῥηθῆσεθαι. γραμμάτων εἴπομεν ὅσοι ἰκανῶς ἐχεῖς πέρι τὸ πρώτον, ἑπικαλοῦντες τὶ τῇ λέξῃ; τὸ δὲ, ὡς οὕτω διείρχηκε σοι πότερον εἰς ἀκρίβειαν τοῦ μαθήματος ἱτέον τὸν μέλλοντα πολῖτην ἔσεσθαι μέτριον ἢ τὸ παράπαυ σοι ἐποιοστέεον ὡς δ’ αὗτως καὶ περὶ λύραν, προσοιστέεον μὲντοι νῦν φαμέν. εἰς μὲν γράμματα παῦδι δεκετεὶ 810 σχεδόν ἐνιαυτοί τρεῖς, λύρας δὲ ἄφασθαι τρία μὲν ἔτη καὶ δέκα γεγονόσιν ἄρχεσθαι μέτριοι ὁ χρόνος, ἐμμείναι δὲ ἐτέρα τρία. καὶ μήτε πλείω τούτων μὴ τ’ ἐλάττων πατρὶ μηδ’ αὐτῷ, φιλομαθοῦντι μηδὲ μισοῦντι, περὶ ταῦτα ἕξεστῳ μείζων 72
LAWS, BOOK VII

have not as yet, my friend, been fully declared to you by the lawgiver are these—first, literature, next, lyre-playing; also arithmetic, of which I said that there ought to be as much as everyone needs to learn for purposes of war, house-management and civic administration; together with what it is useful for these same purposes to learn about the courses of the heavenly bodies—stars and sun and moon—in so far as every State is obliged to take them into account. What I allude to is this—the arranging of days into monthly periods, and of months into a year, in each instance, so that the seasons, with their respective sacrifices and feasts, may each be assigned its due position by being held as nature dictates, and that thus they may create fresh liveliness and alertness in the State, and may pay their due honours to the gods, and may render the citizens more intelligent about these matters. These points, my friend, have not all as yet been explained to you sufficiently by the lawgiver. Now attend carefully to what is next to be said. In the first place, you are, as we said, insufficiently instructed as yet concerning letters. The point we complain of is this—that the law has not yet told you clearly whether the man who is to be a good citizen must pursue this study with precision, or neglect it altogether; and so likewise with regard to the lyre. That he must not neglect them we now affirm. For the study of letters, about three years is a reasonable period for a child of ten years old; and for lyre-playing, he should begin at thirteen and continue at it for three years. And whether he likes or dislikes the study, neither the child nor his father shall be permitted either to cut short or to prolong the years
μηδ' ἐλάττω διατριβήν ποιεῖσθαι παράνομον· ὁ δὲ μὴ πειθόμενος ἀτίμος τῶν παιδείων ἔστω τιμῶν, ἂς ὠλίγον ὑστερον ῥήτεον. μανθάνειν δὲ ἐν τούτοις τοῖς χρόνοις δὴ τί ποτε δεὶ τοὺς νέους καὶ διδάσκειν αὐτοῖς τοὺς διδασκάλους, τούτῳ αὐτῶς

Β πρῶτον μάνθανε. γράμματα μὲν τοῖνυν χρὴ τὸ μέχρι τοῦ γράψαι τε καὶ ἀναγνώρισθαι δυνατὸν εἶναι διαπονεῖν· πρὸς τάχος δὲ ἡ κάλλος ἀπηκριβώσθαι τισιν οἷς μὴ φύσις ἐπέσπευσεν ἐν τοῖς τεταγμένοις ἔστει χαίρειν ἐὰν. πρὸς δὲ δὴ μαθήματα ἅλυσα ποιητῶν καίμενα ἐν γράμμασι, τοῖς μὲν μετὰ μέτρων, τοῖς δ' ἄνευ ρυθμῶν τμημάτων, ἄ δὴ συγγράμματα κατὰ λόγον εἰρήμενα μόνον, τητόμενα ρυθμοῦ τε καὶ ἄρμονιας,

C σφαλερὰ γράμμαθ' ἡμῖν ἐστὶ παρὰ τινων τῶν πολλῶν τοιούτων ἀνθρώπων καταλειμμενά· οἷς, ὁ πάντων βέλτιστοι νομοφύλακες, τί χρήσεθε; ἢ τί ποθ' ὑμῖν ὁ νομοθέτης χρήσθαι προστάξας ὀρθῶς ἄν τάξει; καὶ μάλα ἀπορήσειν αὐτῶν προσδοκῶ.

ΚΑ. Τί ποτε τοῦτ', ὁ ξένε, φαίνει πρὸς σαυτὸν ὄντως ἡπορηκὼς λέγειν;

ΑΘ. Ὄρθῶς ύπέλαβες, ὁ Κλεινία. πρὸς δὲ δὴ κοινωνοὺς ὑμᾶς ὄντας περὶ νόμων ἀνάγκη τὸ τε φαινόμενον εὐπορον καὶ τὸ μὴ φράζειν.

D ΚΑ. Τί οἶν; τί περὶ τούτων νῦν καὶ ποιῶν τι πεπονθῶς λέγεις;

ΑΘ. Ἐρῶ δὴ; στόμασι γὰρ πολλάκις μυρίως ἐναυτία λέγειν οὕδαμός εὐπορον.

ΚΑ. Τί δαί; σμικρὰ καὶ ὀλίγα δοκεῖ σοι τὰ

1 αὐτῶς Ritter; αὐτὸ MSS.
of study contrary to the law; and anyone who disobeys shall be disqualified for the school honours which we shall mention presently. And, during these periods, what are the subjects which the children must learn and the teachers teach—this you yourself must learn first. They must work at letters sufficiently to be able to read and write. But superior speed or beauty of handwriting need not be required in the case of those whose progress within the appointed period is too slow. With regard to lessons in reading, there are written compositions not set to music, whether in metre or without rhythmical divisions—compositions merely uttered in prose, void of rhythm and harmony; and some of the many composers of this sort have bequeathed to us writings of a dangerous character. How will you deal with these, O my most excellent Law-wardens? Or what method of dealing with them will the law-giver rightly ordain? He will be vastly perplexed, I verily believe.

CLIN. What does this mean, Stranger? Evidently you are addressing yourself, and are really perplexed.

ATH. You are right in your supposition, Clinias. As you are my partners in this investigation of laws, I am bound to explain to you both what seems easy and what hard.

CLIN. Well, what is it about them that you are now alluding to, and what has come over you?

ATH. I will tell you: it is no easy matter to gainsay tens of thousands of tongues.

CLIN. Come now,—do you believe that the points

1 Cp. 832 E ff.
'Εμπροσθεν ἥμιν εἰρημένα περὶ νόμων κείσθαι τοῖς πολλοῖς ὑπεναντία;

α. Καὶ μᾶλα ἀληθὲς τοῦτο γε λέεις: κελεύεις γὰρ δὴ με, ὅσ ἐμοὶ φαίνεται, τῆς αὐτῆς ὅδοῦ ἐχθροδοποῦ γεγονυίας πολλοῖς, ὅσως δ' οὐκ ἐλάτ-

Ετοσιν ἐτέρως προσφιλοῦσι, εἰ δὲ ἐλάττοσιν, οὐκον χείροσι γε, μεθ' ὃν διακελεύει με παρακινδυ-

νεύοντά τε καὶ βαρβώντα τὴν νῦν ἐκ τῶν παρόντων λόγων τετμημένην ὅδον τῆς νομοθεσίας πορεύεσθαι μηδὲν ἀνιέντα.

κ. Τί μήν;

α. Οὐ τοίνυν ἀνίημι. Λέγω μὴν ὅτι ποιηταὶ τε ἡμῖν εἰσὶ τινες ἐπὶ ἐξαμέτρων πάμπολλοι καὶ τριμέτρων καὶ πάντων δὴ τῶν λεγομένων μέτρων, οἱ μὲν ἐπὶ σπονδὴν, οἱ δ' ἐπὶ γέλωτα ὁρμηκότες, ἐν οἷς φασὶ δεῖν οἱ πολλάκις μυρίοι τοὺς ὀρθός παιδευμένους τῶν νέων τρέφειν καὶ διακορεῖς ποιεῖν, πολυκόμους τ' ἐν ταῖς ἀναγνώσεισι

811 ποιοῦντας καὶ πολυμαθεῖς, ὅλους ποιητάς ἐκμαν-

θάνοντας: οἱ δὲ ἐκ πάντων κεφάλαια ἐκλέξαντες καὶ τινας ολὰς ῥήσεις εἰς ταῦτο ξυναγαγόντες ἐκμαθάνειν φασὶ δεῖν εἰς μνήμην τιθεμένους, εἰ μέλλει τις ἀγάθος ἡμῖν καὶ σοφὸς ἐκ πολυπειρίας καὶ πολυμαθίας γενέσθαι. τοιτοις δὴ σὺ κελεύεις ἐμὲ τὰ νῦν παράξειαζόμενον ἀποφαίνεσθαι τί τε καλῶς λέγουσι καὶ τί μή;

κ. Πῶς γὰρ οὐ;

α. Τί δὴ ποτ' ἂν οὖν περὶ ἀπάντων τούτων Β ἐνὶ λόγῳ φράζων εὕποιμ' ἂν ἰκανόν; οἴμαι μὲν

1 Cp. Heraclitus's saying (Frag. 16): πολυμαθῆ νῦν οὐ διδάσκει; and the contempt shown for the versatile smatterer.
in which our previous conclusions about laws contradicted ordinary opinion were few and trifling?

ATH. Your observation is most just. I take it that you are bidding me, now that the path which is abhorrent to many is attractive to others possibly not less numerous (or if less numerous, certainly not less competent),—you are, I say, bidding me adventure myself with the latter company and proceed boldly along the path of legislation marked out in our present discourse, without flinching.

CLIN. Certainly.

ATH. Then I will not flinch. I verily affirm that we have composers of verses innumerable—hexameters, trimeters, and every metre you could mention,—some of whom aim at the serious, others at the comic; on whose writings, as we are told by our tens of thousands of people, we ought to rear and soak the young, if we are to give them a correct education, making them, by means of recitations, lengthy listeners and large learners, who learn off whole poets by heart. Others there are who compile select summaries of all the poets, and piece together whole passages, telling us that a boy must commit these to memory and learn them off if we are to have him turn out good and wise as a result of a wide and varied range of instruction. Would you have me now state frankly to these poets what is wrong about their declarations and what right?

CLIN. Of course.

ATH. What single statement can I make about all these people that will be adequate? This,
PLATO

τὸ τοιόνδε σχεδὸν, ὦ καὶ πᾶς ἂν μοι συγχωρήσειε, πολλὰ μὲν ἐκαστὸν τοὺτων εἰρηκέναι καλῶς, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ τοῦναντίον. εἰ δ' οὕτω τοῦτ' ἔχει, κινδυνὸν φημὶ εἶναι φέρουσαν τοῖς παισὶ τῇ πολυμαθίᾳ.

κα. Πῶς οὖν καὶ τί παραίνοις ἂν τῷ νομοφύλακι;

ἀθ. Τοῦ δὲρι λέγεις;

κα. Τοῦ πρὸς τί παραδείγματα ποτε ἀποβλέψας ἂν τὸ μὲν ἐὼ πάντας μαυθάνειν τοὺς νεώς, τὸ C δ' ἀποκωλύοι. λέγε ὡς καὶ μηδὲν ἀπόκνυε λέγων.

ἀθ. Ὡ' γαθὲ Κλεινία, κινδυνεύω κατὰ γέ τινα τρόπον εὐτυχικέναι.

κα. Τοῦ δὴ περί;

ἀθ. Τοῦ μὴ παντάπασι παραδείγματος ἀπορείν. νῦν γὰρ ἀποβλέψας πρὸς τοὺς λόγους οὓς ἐξ ἐω μέχρι δεύρο δὴ διεληλύθαμεν ἧμεῖς, ὡς μὲν ἐμοὶ φαινόμεθα οὐκ ἄνευ τινὸς ἐπιπνοίας θεών, ἐδοξαν δ' οὖν μοι παντάπασι ποιήσει τινὶ προσομοίως εἰρήσθαι. καὶ μοι ἵσως οὐδὲν θαυμαστὸν

D πάθος ἐπὴλθε, λόγους οἰκείους οἴον ἀθρόους ἐπυβλέψαντε μάλα ἡσθήναι. τῶν γὰρ δὴ πλείστων λόγων, οὓς ἐν ποιήσασιν ἡ χύδην οὕτως εἰρημένους μεμάθηκα καὶ ἀκήκοα, πάντων μοι μετριώτατοι γε εἰναι κατεφάνησαν καὶ προσήκοντες τὰ μάλιστα ἀκούειν νέοις. τῷ δὴ νομοφύλακι τε καὶ παιδευτῇ παραδείγμα παραδείγμα ὅνι ἄν ἔχοιμι, ὡς οἴμαι, τοῦτον βέλτιον φράζειν, ἢ ταῦτα τε διδασκαλεῖσθαι τοῖς διδασκάλοις τοὺς παῖδας, τὰ τε E τοὺτων ἔχομενα καὶ ὡμοῖα, ἄν ἀρα ποιόν περιτυχίας ἐποιητῶν τε ποιήματα διεξίδων καὶ γεγραμ-
perhaps,—in which everyone will agree with me,—that every poet has uttered much that is well, and much also that is ill; and this being so, I affirm that a wide range of learning involves danger to children.

CLIN. What advice then would you give the Law-warden?

ATH. About what?

CLIN. About the pattern by which he should be guided in respect of the particular subjects which he permits or forbids all the children to learn. Tell us, and without scruple.

ATH. My good Clinias, I have had, it would seem, a stroke of luck.

CLIN. How so?

ATH. In the fact that I am not wholly at a loss for a pattern. For in looking back now at the discussions which we have been pursuing from dawn up to this present hour—and that, as I fancy, not without some guidance from Heaven—it appeared to me that they were framed exactly like a poem. And it was not surprising, perhaps, that there came over me a feeling of intense delight when I gazed thus on our discourses all marshalled, as it were, in close array; for of all the many discourses which I have listened to or learnt about, whether in poems or in a loose flood of speech like ours, they struck me as being not only the most adequate, but also the most suitable for the ears of the young. Nowhere, I think, could I find a better pattern than this to put before the Law-warden who is educator, that he may charge the teachers to teach the children these discourses of ours, and such as resemble and accord with these; and if it should be that in his search he should light on poems of
μένα καταλογάδην ἢ καὶ ψιλῶς οὕτως ἀνευ τοῦ γεγράφθαι λεγόμενα, ἄδελφα πον τούτων τῶν λόγων, μὴ μεθέναι τρόπτω μηδενί, γράφεσθαι δὲ καὶ πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς διδασκάλους αὐτοῦς ἀναγκά-ζειν μανθάνειν καὶ ἐπαινεῖν, οὔς δὲ ἄν μὴ ἀρέσκῃ τῶν διδασκάλων, μὴ χρὴσθαι τούτοις συνεργοῖς, οὔς δὲ ἄν τῷ ἐπαίνῳ συμψήφους ἔχη, τούτοις χρώμενον τοὺς νέους αὐτοῖς παραδίδοναί διδάσκειν
812 τε καὶ παιδεύειν· οὕτως μοι μύθος ἐνταῦθα καὶ οὐτω τελευτάτω, περὶ γραμματίστων τε εἰρήμενος ἀμα καὶ γραμμάτων.

κλ. Κατὰ μὲν τὴν ὑπόθεσιν, ὦ ἔνε, ἐμοιγε οὐ φαινόμεθα ἔκτος πορεύεσθαι τῶν ὑποτεθέντων λόγων· εἰ δὲ τὸ ὄλον κατορθοῦμεν ἡ μὴ, χαλεπὸν ἱσως δυσχυρίζεσθαι.

ἀ. Τότε γὰρ, ὁ Κλεονία, τούτῳ γ' αυτὸ ἔσται καταφανέστερον, ὡς εἰκός, ὡταν, ὃ πολλάκις εἰρήκαμεν, ἐπὶ τέλος ἀφικόμεθα πάσης τῆς δι-εξώδου περὶ νόμων.

Β κλ. Ἀρθῶς.

ἀ. Ἀρ' οὖν οὐ μετὰ τὸν γραμματιστὴν ὁ κιθαρίστης ἢ μὴν προσρητέος;

κλ. Τι μὴν;

ἀ. Τοῖς κιθαρισταῖς μὲν τοῖς ἡμαῖς δοκῶ τῶν ἐμπροσθεν λόγων ἀναμνησθέντας τὸ προσήκον νείμαι τῆς τε διδασκαλίας ἀμα καὶ πάσης τῆς περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα παιδεύσεως.

κλ. Ποίων δὴ πέρι λέγεις;

ἀ. Ἐφαμεν, οἴμαι, τοὺς τοῦ Διονύσου τοὺς ἐξηκοντοῦτας ὀδοὺς διαφαρόντως εὐαίσθητοις δεῖν

C γεγομέναι περὶ τε τοὺς ρυθμοὺς καὶ τὰς τῶν ἀρ-μονιῶν συστάσεις, ἵνα τὴν τῶν μελῶν μίμησιν τὴν

80
composers, or prose-writings, or merely verbal and
unwritten discourses, akin to these of ours, he
must in no wise let them go, but get them written
down. In the first place, he must compel the
teachers themselves to learn these discourses, and
to praise them, and if any of the teachers fail to
approve of them, he must not employ them as
colleagues; only those who agree with his praise
of the discourses should he employ, and entrust to
them the teaching and training of the youth. Here
and herewith let me end my homily concerning
writing-masters and writings.

CLIN. Judged by our original intention, Stranger,
I certainly do not think that we have diverged from
the line of argument we intended; but about the
matter as a whole it is hard, no doubt, to be sure
whether or not we are right.

ATH. That, Clinias, (as we have often said) will
probably become clearer of itself, ① when we arrive at
the end of our whole exposition concerning laws.

CLIN. Very true.

ATH. After the writing-master, must we not
address the lyre-master next?

CLIN. Certainly.

ATH. When assigning to the lyre-masters their
proper duties in regard to the teaching and general
training in these subjects, we must, as I think, bear
in mind our previous declarations. ②

CLIN. Declarations about what?

ATH. We said, I fancy, that the sixty-year-old
singers of hymns to Dionysus ought to be exception-
ally keen of perception regarding rhythms and
harmonic compositions, in order that when dealing

PLATO

εὐ καὶ τὴν κακῶς μεμιμημένην, ἐν τοῖς παθήμασιν ὅταν ἤμοιώματα καὶ τὰ τῆς ἀγαθῆς ὁμοιώματα καὶ ἐν τῇ ἐναντίας ἐκλέξασθαί δυνατὸς ὄν τις τὰ μὲν ἀποβάλλη, τὰ δὲ προφέρων εἰς μέσου ὑμνῆς καὶ ἐπάθη ταῖς τῶν νέων θυγατέρων, προκαλούμενος ἐκάστους εἰς ἀρετῆς ἐπεσθαί κτήσιν συνακολουθοῦντας διὰ τῶν μιμήσεων.

καὶ Ἀλκιθέας ταὶ λέγεις.

D α. Τοῦτων τοίνυν δεὶ χάριν τοῖς φθόγγοις τῆς λύρας προσχρῆσθαι, σαφηνείας ἕνεκα τῶν χορῶν, τὸν τε κινδυνεύοντα καὶ τὸν παιδεύομενον, ἀποδιδούσας πρόσχορδα τὰ φθέγματα τοῖς φθέγμασιν τῆς δ' ἐπερφομένων καὶ ποικίλων τῆς λύρας, ἄλλα μὲν μέλη τῶν χορῶν ἰείσων, ἄλλα δὲ τὸν τὴν μελωδίαν ξυνθέντος ποιητοῦ, καὶ ἐκ καὶ πυκνότητα μᾶνοτητι καὶ τάχους βραδυτῆτι καὶ ὀξύτητα βαρύτητι ξύμφωνον [καὶ ἀντίφωνον] παρεχομένους,

Ε καὶ τῶν ῥυθμῶν ὁσαύτως παντοδαπὰ ποικίλματα προσαρμόττοντας τοῖς φθόγγοις τῆς λύρας, πάντα οὖν τὰ τοιαῦτα μὴ προσφέρειν τοῖς μέλλουσιν ἐν τρισὶν ἔτεσι τὸ τῆς μουσικῆς χρήσιμον ἐκλήψεθαι διὰ τῶν ἐνταξεὶ τῶν μουσικῶν ἡμέρας. τὰ γὰρ ἐναντία ἄλληλα παράττοντα δυσμαθίαν παρέχει, δεὶ δὲ ὅτι μάλιστα εὐμαθεῖς εἶναι τοὺς νέους· τὰ γὰρ ἀναγκαία οὐ σμικρὰ οὖν ὅλγα αὐτοῖς ἐστὶ προστεταγμένα μαθηματα, δεὶξει δὲ αὐτὰ προϊόν ὁ λόγος ἀμα τῷ χρόνῳ. ἄλλα ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω περὶ τῆς μουσικῆς ἡμῶν ὁ παιδευτὴς ἐπιμελεῖσθω· τὰ δὲ μελῶν αὐτῶν


1 i.e. the notes of the instrument must be in accord with those of the singer's voice. "The tune, as composed by the
with musical representations of a good kind or a bad, by which the soul is emotionally affected, they may be able to pick out the reproductions of the good kind and of the bad, and having rejected the latter, may produce the other in public, and charm the souls of the children by singing them, and so challenge them all to accompany them in acquiring virtue by means of these representations.

CLIN. Very true.

ATH. So, to attain this object, both the lyre-master and his pupil must use the notes of the lyre, because of the distinctness of its strings, assigning to the notes of the song notes in tune with them; but as to divergence of sound and variety in the notes of the harp, when the strings sound one tune and the composer of the melody another, or when there results a combination of low and high notes, of slow and quick time, of sharp and grave, and all sorts of rhythmical variations are adapted to the notes of the lyre,—no such complications should be employed in dealing with pupils who have to absorb quickly, within three years, the useful elements of music. For the jarring of opposites with one another impedes easy learning; and the young should above all things learn easily, since the necessary lessons imposed upon them are neither few nor small,—which lessons our discourse will indicate in time as it proceeds. So let our educator regulate these matters in the manner stated. As regards the poet, is supposed to have comparatively few notes, to be in slowish time, and low down in the register; whereas the complicated variation, which he is condemning, has many notes, is in quick time, and high up in the register."

(England.)
αὐ καὶ ῥημάτων, ὧν τοὺς χοροδιδασκάλους καὶ ἀ
dei didáσκειν, καὶ ταῦτα ἢμῖν ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν
dieirrήται πάντα, ἀ δὴ καθερωθέντα ἐφαμεν δείν,
tais ἑορταῖς ἐκαστα ἀρμόττοντα, ἱδονὴν εὐτυχῆ
tais pòlesi paradiónta ὡφελεῖν.

κα. 'Ἀληθῇ καὶ ταῦτα dieήρκας.

αθ. 'Ἀληθέστατα τοῖνυν. καὶ ταύθ' ἢμῖν παρα-
labwōn ὁ περὶ τήν Μοῦσαν ἄρχων αἱρεθεὶς
ἐπιμελείσθω μετὰ τύχης εὐμενοὺς, ἡμεῖς δὲ
ὄρχήσεως τε πέρι καὶ ὅλης τῆς περὶ τὸ σῶμα
γυμναστικῆς πρὸς τοὺς ἐμπροσθεν εἰρήμενοι ἀπο-
βδωμεν καθάπερ μουσικῆς τὸ διδασκαλικὸν ὑπό-
λοιπον ὃν ἀπέδωμεν, ὡσαύτως ποιῶμεν κατὰ ἡ
γυμναστικῆς. τοὺς γὰρ παῖδας τε καὶ τὰς παῖδας
ὄρχεισθαι δὴ δεὶ καὶ γυμνάζεσθαι μανθάνειν. ἦ
γὰρ;

κα. Ναὶ.

αθ. Τοῖς μὲν τοῖνυν παισίων ὀρχησταί, ταῖς δὲ
ὄρχηστρίδες ἂν εἰεν πρὸς τὸ διαπονέιν οὐκ ἀνεπι-
tηδεῖότερον.

κα. 'Εστῳ δὴ ταύτῃ.

αθ. Πάλιν δὴ τὸν τὰ πλεῖστα ἐξοντα πρῶγ-
C ματα καλῶμεν, τὸν τῶν παῖδων ἐπιμελητήν, δὲ
τῶν τε περὶ μουσικῆ τῶν τε περὶ γυμναστικῆ
ἐπιμελούμενος οὐ πολλὴν ἔξει σχολῆν.

κα. Πώς ὅν δυνατὸς ἔσται πρεσβύτερος ὃν
τοσοῦτον ἐπιμελεῖσθαι;

αθ. 'Ραδίως, ὁ φίλε, ὁ νόμος γὰρ αὐτῷ
dedyke kai dōsai prosolambánveis eis tautn tīn
epimelēian tōn politōn andrōn kai γυναικῶν oúς
án evēlē, gnwstor dē oûs dēi, kai boulhsetai mē

1 katá: kal MSS., edd.
character of the actual tunes and words which the choir-masters ought to teach, all this we have already\(^1\) explained at length. We stated that in each case they should be adapted to a suitable festival and dedicated, and thus prove a benefit to the States, by furnishing them with felicitous enjoyment.

CLIN. This, too, you have explained truly.

ATH. Yes, most truly. These matters also let the man who is appointed our Director of Music take over and supervise, with the help of kindly fortune; and let us supplement our former statements concerning dancing and bodily gymnastics in general. Just as, in the case of music, we have supplied the regulations about tuition that were missing, so also let us now do in the case of gymnastics. Shall we not say that both girls and boys must learn both dancing and gymnastics?

CLIN. Yes.

ATH. Then for their practices it would be most proper that boys should have dancing-masters, and girls mistresses.

CLIN. I grant it.

ATH. Let us once more summon the man who will have most of these duties to perform, the Director of the Children,—who, in supervising both music and gymnastic, will have but little time to spare.

CLIN. How will he be able, at his age, to supervise so many affairs?

ATH. Quite easily. For the law has granted him, and will continue to grant him, such men or women as he wishes to take to assist him in this task of supervision: he will know himself the right persons.

\(^1\) 799 A ff., 802 A.
ΠΛΑΤΟ

Δ πλημμελεῖν εἰς ταῦτα αἰδούμενος ἐμφρόνως καὶ γνωσκομεν τῆς ἄρχῆς τὸ μέγεθος, λογισμῷ τε ἔννοιαν ὡς εὖ μὲν τραφέντων καὶ τρεφομένων τῶν νέων πάντα ἡμῖν κατ’ ὀρθὸν πλεί, μὴ δὲ, οὔτε εἰπεῖν ἄξιον οὔθε ἡμεῖς λέγομεν ἐπὶ καὶ κατὶ πόλει τοὺς σφόδρα φιλομαντευτάς σεβόμενοι. πολλὰ μὲν οὖν ἡμῖν καὶ περὶ τούτων εὑρηταί τῶν περὶ τὰς ὀρχήσεις καὶ περὶ πᾶσαν τῆς τῶν γυμνασίων κύνησιν γυμνάσια γὰρ τίθεμεν καὶ τὰ περὶ τῶν πόλεμον ἄπαντα τοῖς σώμασι διαπονῆματα τοξικῆς τε καὶ πάσης ῥύσεως καὶ πελταστικῆς καὶ Ε πάσης ὀπλομαχίας καὶ διεξόδων τακτικῶν καὶ ἀπάσης πορείας στρατοπέδου καὶ στρατοπεδεύσεως καὶ ὅσα εἰς ἱππικὴν μαθήματα συντείνει. πάντων γὰρ τούτων διδασκάλους τε εἶναι δεῖ κοινοὺς, ἀρνυμένους μισθὸν παρὰ τῆς πόλεως, καὶ τούτων μαθητὰς τοὺς ἐν τῇ πόλει παῖδας τε καὶ ἄνδρας, καὶ κόρας καὶ γυναικῶς πάντων τούτων ἐπιστήμονας, κόρας μὲν οὐσας ἐτὶ πᾶσαν τὴν ἐν ὅπλοις ὀρχήσιν καὶ μάχην μεμεληκυίας, γυναικῶς δὲ διεξόδων καὶ τάξεων καὶ 814 θέσεως καὶ ἀναίρεσεως ὀπλῶν ἡμένας, εἰ μηδενὸς ἐνεκα <ἄλλου>, 1 ἄλλε εἴ τοπο δησειε τανδης μεί [πάση τῇ δυνάμει] 2 καταλειπόντας τὴν πόλιν ἐξω στρατεύεσθαι τοὺς φυλάξαντας παιδάς τε καὶ τὴν ἄλλην πόλιν, ἰκανοῖς εἶναι τὸ γε τοσσοῦτον, ἢ καὶ τούναντιον, ὅγ 3 οὔδὲν ἀπόμοιον, ἐξωθέν πολεμίους εἰσπεσόντας βρόμη τινὶ μεγάλη καὶ βία, βαρβάρους εἰτε "Ελληνας, ἀνάγκην παρασχεῖν

1 <ἄλλου> I add.
3 ὅγ: ὅν MS., edd. (ὅν Badham).
to choose, and he will be anxious to make no blunder in these matters, recognizing the greatness of his office and wisely holding it in high respect, and holding also the rational conviction that, when the young have been, and are being, well brought up, all goes "swimmingly," but otherwise—the consequences are such as it is wrong to speak of, nor will we mention them, in dealing with a new State, out of consideration for the over-superstitious. 1 Concerning these matters also, which relate to dancing and gymnastic movements, we have already spoken at length. 2 We are establishing gymnasia and all physical exercises connected with military training,—the use of the bow and all kinds of missiles, light skirmishing and heavy-armed fighting of every description, tactical evolutions, company-marching, camp-formations, and all the details of cavalry training. In all these subjects there should be public instructors, paid by the State; and their pupils should be not only the boys and men in the State, but also the girls and women who understand all these matters—being practised in all military drill and fighting while still girls and, when grown to womanhood, taking part in evolutions and rank-forming and the piling and shouldering of arms,—and that, if for no other reason, at least for this reason, that, if ever the guards of the children and of the rest of the city should be obliged to leave the city and march out in full force, these women should be able at least to take their place; while if, on the other hand—and this is quite a possible contingency—an invading army of foreigners, fierce and strong,

1 i.e. they would regard the mere mention of possible evil (esp. in connexion with anything new-born) as of ill-omen.
2 795 D ff.
περὶ αὐτῆς τῆς πόλεως τὴν διαμάχην γίγνεσθαι, 
Β πολλῆ ποικιλείας οὕτως αἰσχρῶς τὰς 
γυναῖκας εἶναι τεθραμμένας, ὡς μηδ’ ὧσπερ ὅρμι
θας περὶ τέκνων μαχομένας πρὸς ὅτιοι τῶν 
ἰσχυροτάτων θηρίων ἑθέλειν ἀποθνῄσκειν τε καὶ 
πάντας κινδύνους κινδυνεύειν, ἀλλ’ εὖθὺς πρὸς 
ἱερὰ φερομένας πάντας βωμοὺς τε καὶ ναοὺς ἐμπι
πλάναι καὶ δόξαν τοῦ τῶν ἀνθρώπων γένους κατα
χεῖν ὡς πάντων δειλότατον φύσει θηρίων ἑστὶν.

κλ. Ὅν μὰ τὸν Δία, ὃ ξένε, οὔδαμος εὐσχήμον
οὐ γίγνοιτ’ ἂν, τοῦ κακοῦ χαρῆς, τοῦτο ἐν πόλει ὅπου 
γίγνοιτο.

α. Οὐκοῦν τιθῶμεν τὸν νόμον τούτου, μέχρι 
γε τοσοῦτον μή ἀμελεῖσθαι τὰ περὶ τὸν πόλεμον 
γυναιξὶ δειν, ἐπιμελεῖσθαι δε πάντας τοὺς πολίτας 
καὶ τὰς πολιτίδας;

κλ. Ἐγὼ γοῦν συγχωρῶ.

α. Πάλης τούνν τὰ μὲν εἴπομεν, ὅ δ’ ἐστὶ 
μέγιστον, ὡς ἐγὼ φαίνῃ ἂν, οὐκ εἰρήκαμεν, οὔδ’ 
ἐστι ράδιον ἀνευ τοῦ τῷ σώματι δεικνύντα ἄμα 
καὶ τῷ λόγῳ φράζειν. τοῦτ’ οὖν τότε κρινοῦμεν, 
ὅταν ἔργῳ λόγος ἀκολουθήσας μηνύσῃ τι σαφὲς 
tῶν τε ἄλλων ὃν εἰρήκει πέρι καὶ ὅτι τῇ πολεμικῇ 
μάχῃ πασών κινήσεων οὕτως ἐστὶ ἔννοιας πολὺ 
μάλισθ’ ἢμῖν ἡ τοιαύτη πάλη, καὶ δὴ καὶ ὅτι δεὶ 
tαύτην ἑκεῖνην χάριν ἐπιτηδεύειν, ἀλλ’ οὐκ ἑκεῖνην 
tαύτης ἐνεκα μανθάνειν.

κλ. Καλῶς τούτῳ γε λέγεις.

α. Νῦν δὴ τῆς μὲν περὶ παλαιότεραν δυνάμεως

1 795 D, E. 2 Κρ. 832 Ε.
should force a battle round the city itself, then it would be a sore disgrace to the State if its women were so ill brought up as not even to be willing to do as do the mother-birds, which fight the strongest beasts in defence of their broods, but, instead of facing all risks, even death itself, to run straight to the temples and crowd all the shrines and holy places, and drown mankind in the disgrace of being the most craven of living creatures.

CLIN. By Heaven, Stranger, if ever this took place in a city, it would be a most unseemly thing, apart from the mischief of it.

ATH. Shall we, then, lay down this law,—that up to the point stated women must not neglect military training, but all citizens, men and women alike, must pay attention to it?

CLIN. I, for one, agree.

ATH. As regards wrestling, some points have been explained;¹ but we have not explained what is, in my opinion, the most important point, nor is it easy to express it in words without the help of a practical illustration. This point, then, we shall decide about² when word accompanied by deed can clearly demonstrate this fact, among the others mentioned,—that wrestling of this kind is of all motions by far the most nearly allied to military fighting; and also that it is not the latter that should be learned for the sake of the former, but, on the contrary, it is the former that should be practised for the sake of the latter.³

CLIN. There, at any rate, you are right.

ATH. For the present let this suffice as an

³ Cp. 803 D.
τὸ μέχρι δεύρ' ἡμῖν εἰρήσθων περὶ δὲ τῆς ἄλλης
Εἰ κινήσεως παντὸς τοῦ σώματος, ἂς τὸ πλείστου μέρους ὀρχησίν τινά τις προσαγορεύων ὀρθῶς ἄν
φθέγγοιτο, δύο μὲν αὐτῆς εἰδη χρῆ νομίζειν εἶναι,
τὴν μὲν τῶν καλλιόνων σωμάτων ἐπὶ τὸ σεμνὸν
μιμομένην, τὴν δὲ τῶν αἰσχιόνων ἐπὶ τὸ
φαύλου, καὶ πάλιν τοῦ φαύλου τε δύο καὶ τοῦ
σπουδαίου δύο ἑτέρα. τοῦ δὴ σπουδαίου τὴν
μὲν κατὰ πόλεμον καὶ ἐν βιαίοις ἐμπλακέντων
πόνοις σωμάτων μὲν καλῶν, ψυχῆς δὲ ἀνδρικῆς,
τὴν δ' ἐν εὐπραγίαις τε οὕσης ψυχῆς σώφρονος ἐν
ἡδονᾶς τε ἐμμέτροις· εἰρηνικὴν ἂν τὶς λέγων κατὰ
φύσιν τὴν τοιαύτην ὀρχησίν λέγοι. τὴν πολε-
μικὴν δὴ τούτων, ἄλλην οὕσαν τῆς εἰρηνικῆς,
πυρρίχην ἂν τὶς ὀρθῶς προσαγορεύοι, τάς τε εὐλα-
βείας πασῶν πληγῶν καὶ βολῶν ἐκνεύσει καὶ
ὑπείξει πάση καὶ ἐκπενήσειν ἐν ὑψει καὶ ξῦν
ταπεινώσει μιμομένην, καὶ τὰς ταύτας ἑναντίας,
tὰς ἐπὶ τὰ δραστικὰ φερομένας αὐ τὰχματα ἐν τε
ταῖς τῶν τόξων βολαῖς καὶ ἀκοντίων καὶ πασῶν
πληγῶν μιμήματα ἐπιχειροῦσαν ἵππεισθαί. τὸ
τε ὀρθῶν ἐν τούτοις καὶ τὸ εὐτοῦν, τῶν ἀγαθῶν
σωμάτων καὶ ψυχῶν ὅποταν γέγυνται μίμημα,
Β εὐθυφερές ὡς τὸ πολὺ τῶν τοῦ σώματος μελῶν
γιγνόμενον, ὀρθῶν μὲν τὸ τοιοῦτον, τὸ δὲ τούτως
τοῦσαντίον οὐκ ὀρθῶν ἀποδεχόμενον. τὴν δὲ
εἰρηνικῆς ὀρχησιν τῇδ' αὐθεωρητέου ἔκαστων,
εἴτε ὀρθῶς εἴτε μὴ κατὰ φύσιν τίς τῆς καλῆς

1 ἐπιχειροῦσαν Badham: ἐπιχειρούσας MSS.
account of the functions of the wrestling-school. Motion of the whole body, other than wrestling, has for its main division what may be rightly termed dancing\(^1\); and we ought to consider it as consisting of two kinds,—the one representing the solemn movement of beautiful bodies, the other the ignoble movement of ugly bodies; and of these again there are two subdivisions. Of the noble kind there is, on the one hand, the motion of fighting, and that of fair bodies and brave souls engaged in violent effort; and, on the other hand, there is the motion of a temperate soul living in a state of prosperity and moderate pleasures; and this latter kind of dancing one will call, in accordance with its nature, "pacific." The warlike division, being distinct from the pacific, one may rightly term "pyrrhiché"\(^2\); it represents modes of eluding all kinds of blows and shots by swervings and duckings and side-leaps upward or crouching; and also the opposite kinds of motion, which lead to active postures of offence, when it strives to represent the movements involved in shooting with bows or darts, and blows of every description. In all these cases the action and the tension of the sinews are correct when there is a representation of fair bodies and souls in which most of the limbs of the body are extended straight: this kind of representation is right, but the opposite kind we pronounce to be wrong. In pacific dancing, the point we must consider in every case is whether the performer in his dances keeps

\(^1\) Here a wide term, embracing all kinds of bodily gestures and posturing.

\(^2\) The technical name for a "war-dance" ("polka") in quick time (possibly connected by Π. with ὀπέρ. οπερτός).
όρχήσεως ἀντιλαμβανόμενος ἐν χορείαις πρεπόντως εὐνόμων ἀνδρῶν διατελεῖ.

Τὴν τούπων ἀμφισβητομένην ὀρχήσειν δεὶ πρῶτον χωρίς τῆς ἀναμφισβητητῆς διατελεῖν. τίς οὖν αὕτη, καὶ ποῦ δεὶ χωρίς τέμνειν ἑκατέραν;

C ὅση μὲν βακχεία τ' ἐστὶ καὶ τῶν ταύταις ἐπομένων, αἶσσ[Νύμφας τε καὶ] Πάνας καὶ Σειλήνους καὶ Σατύρους [ἐποιομάζουτες], ὡς φασί, μιμοῦνται κατφυγμένους, περικαθαρμοῦσα τε καὶ τελετάς τινας ἀποτελοῦντων, ξύμπαν τούτῳ τῆς ὀρχήσεως τὸ γένος οὖθ' ὡς εἰρηνικὸν οὖθ' ὡς πολεμικὸν οὖθ' ὃ τί ποτε βούλεται ῥᾴδιον ἀφορίσασθαι: διορίσασθαι μὴν μοι ταύτη δοκεῖ σχεδὸν ὅρθοτατον

D αὐτὸ εἶναι, χωρίς μὲν πολεμικοῦ, χωρίς δὲ εἰρηνικοῦ θέντας εἰπεῖν ὡς οὖκ ἐστὶ πολιτικὸν τοῦτο τῆς ὀρχήσεως τὸ γένος, ἐνταύθα δὲ κείμενον ἐσάντα κεῖσθαι νῦν ἐπὶ τὸ πολεμικὸν ἁμα καὶ εἰρηνικὸν, ὡς ἀναμφισβητήτως ἠμέτερον ὅν, ἐπαινεῖαι.

Τὸ δὲ τῆς ἀπολέμου Μούσης, ἐν ὀρχήσει δὲ τοὺς τε θεοὺς καὶ τοὺς τῶν θεῶν παίδας τιμῶντων, ἐν μὲν ξύμπαν γῆγνοιτ' ἄν γένος ἐν δόξῃ τοῦ πράττειν εὐ γιγνόμενον, τοῦτο δὲ διχῇ διαιρόμεν

Ε ἂν, τὸ μὲν ἐκ πόνων τινῶν αὐτοῦ καὶ κινδύνων διαπεφευγότων εἰς ἀγαθά, μεῖζους ἡδονὰς ἔχον, τὸ δὲ τῶν ἔμπροσθεν ἀγαθῶν σωτηρίας οὐσίας καὶ ἐπαύξης πραοτέρας τὰς ἡδονὰς κεκτημένοις ἑκείνων. ἐν δὲ δὴ τοῖς τοιούτοις ποι πᾶς ἀνθρώπος τᾶς κινήσεις τοῦ σῶματος μεῖζών μὲν τῶν ἡδονῶν οὐσίων μεῖζος, ἐλπιτῶν δὲ ἐλάττους κινεῖται, καὶ κοσ...
always rightly, or improperly, to the noble kind of dancing, in the way that befits law-abiding men.

So, in the first place, we must draw a line between questionable dancing and dancing that is above question. All the dancing that is of a Bacchic kind and cultivated by those who indulge in drunken imitations of Pans, Sileni and Satyrs (as they call them), when performing certain rites of expiation and initiation,—all this class of dancing cannot easily be defined either as pacific or as warlike, or as of any one distinct kind. The most correct way of defining it seems to me to be this—to separate it off both from pacific and from warlike dancing, and to pronounce that this kind of dancing is unfitted for our citizens: and having thus disposed of it and dismissed it, we will now return to the warlike and pacific kinds which do beyond question belong to us.

That of the unwarlike Muse, in which men pay honour to the gods and the children of the gods by dances, will consist, broadly speaking, of all dancing performed under a sense of prosperity: of this we may make two subdivisions—the one being of a more joyful description, and proper to men who have escaped out of toils and perils into a state of bliss,—and the other connected rather with the preservation and increase of pre-existent blessings, and exhibiting, accordingly, joyousness of a less ardent kind. Under these conditions every man moves his body more violently when his joys are greater, less violently when they are smaller; also, he moves it less violently when he is more

1 as England: as MSS. [Νύμφας τε καὶ] and [ἐπωνομά-
ζοντες] 1 bracket.
PLATO

μιώτερος μὲν ὄν πρός τε ἀνδρίαν μᾶλλον γεγυμ-νωθεῖ 816 νασμένος ἐλάττους αὖ, δειλὸς δὲ καὶ ἀγύμναστος γεγονὼς πρός το σωφρονεῖν μείζους καὶ σφοδροτέ-ρας παρέχεται μεταβολάς τῆς κινήσεως· ὅλως δὲ φθεγγόμενος, εἰτ’ ἐν φίδαις εἰτ’ ἐν λόγοις, ἥσυχίαν οὐ πάνω δυνάτος τῷ σώματι παρέχεσθαι πᾶς. διὸ μύμησις τῶν λεγομένων σχίμασι γενομένη τὴν ὀρχηστικὴν ἐξειργάσατο τέχνην ἐξυπασαν. ὁ μὲν οὖν ἐμμελῶς ἡμῶν, ὁ δὲ πλημμελῶς ἐν τούτοις

B πᾶσι κινεῖται. πολλὰ μὲν δὴ τοῖνυν ἄλλα ἤμιν τῶν παλαιῶν ὀνομάτων ὡς εῦ καὶ κατὰ φύσιν κείμενα δεὶ διανοούμενον ἐπαινεῖν, τούτων δὲ ἐν καὶ τὸ περὶ τὰς ὀρχήσεις τὰς τῶν εὗ πραττόντων, ὄντων δὲ μετρίων αὐτῶν πρὸς τὰς ἱδονὰς, ὡς ὀρθῶς ἀμα καὶ μουσικῶς ὀνομάσει ὡστὶς ποτ’ ἦν, καὶ κατὰ λόγον αὐταῖς θέμενος ὄνομα ἐξυπάσασις ἐμμελείας ἐποιόμασε, καὶ δύο δὴ τῶν ὀρχήσεων τῶν καλῶν εἴδη κατεστῆσατο, τὸ μὲν πολεμικὸν

C πυρρίχην, τὸ δὲ εἰρηνικῶν ἐμμελείαν, ἐκατέρω τὸ πρέπον τε καὶ ἄρμοττον ἐπιθείς ὄνομα. ἀ δὴ δεὶ τῶν μὲν νομοθετήν ἐξηγεῖσθαι τούτοις, τῶν δὲ νομοφύλακα ξητεῖν τε καὶ ἀνερευνησάμενον, μετὰ τῆς ἄλλης μουσικῆς τὴν ὀρχήσιν συνθέντα καὶ νείμαντα ἐπὶ πάσας ἐρτας τῶν θυσιῶν ἐκάστη τὸ πρόσφοροι, οὕτω καθιερώσαντα αὐτὰ πάντα ἐν τάξει τοῦ λοιποῦ μὴ κίνειν μηδὲν μὴτε ὀρχήσεως ἐχόμενον μὴτε φόδης, ἐν ταῖς δ’ αὕταις ἱδοναῖς

D ὡσαύτως τὴν αὐτὴν πόλιν καὶ πολίτας διάγοντας, ὁμοίους εἰς δύναμιν ὄντας, ζῆν εὖ τε καὶ εὐδαιμόνως.

1 A decorous, stately dance (“minuet”).

94
sedate and better trained in courage, but when he is cowardly and untrained in temperance, he indulges in greater and more violent changes of motion; and in general, no one who is using his voice, whether in song or in speech, is able to keep his body wholly at rest. Hence, when the representation of things spoken by means of gestures arose, it produced the whole art of dancing. In all these instances, one man of us moves in tune with his theme, another out of tune. Many of the names bestowed in ancient times are deserving of notice and of praise for their excellence and descriptiveness: one such is the name given to the dances of men who are in a prosperous state and indulge in pleasures of a moderate kind: how true and how musical was the name so rationally bestowed on those dances by the man (whoever he was) who first called them all "Emmeleiai," and established two species of fair dances—the warlike, termed "pyrrhiché," and the pacific, termed "emmeleia"—bestowing on each its appropriate and harmonious name. These dances the lawgiver should describe in outline, and the Law-warden should search them out and, having investigated them, he should combine the dancing with the rest of the music, and assign what is proper of it to each of the sacrificial feasts, distributing it over all the feasts; and when he has thus consecrated all these things in due order, he should thenceforth make no change in all that appertains to either dancing or singing, but this one and the same city and body of citizens should continue in one and the same way, enjoying the same pleasures and living alike in all ways possible, and so pass their lives happily and well.

95
Τὰ μὲν ὅν τῶν καλῶν σωμάτων καὶ γενναίων ψυχῶν εἰς τὰς χορείας, οίας εἰρηται δεῖν αὐτὰς εἶναι, διαπεπέρανται τὰ δὲ τῶν αἷμαρων σωμάτων καὶ διανοημάτων καὶ τῶν ἐπὶ τὰ τού γέλωτος κωμῳδήματα τετραμμένων, κατὰ λέξειν τε καὶ ὁδὴν καὶ κατὰ ὀρχησιν καὶ κατὰ τούτων πάντων μυμήματα κεκωμῳδημένα, ἀνάγκη μὲν θεάσασθαι καὶ γνωρίζειν· ἀνευ γὰρ γελοίων τὰ σπουδαῖα καὶ Εἰ πάντων τῶν ἐναντίων τὰ ἐναντία μαθεῖν μὲν οὖν δυνατὸν, εἰ μέλλει τις φρόνιμος ἔσσεθαι, ποιεῖν δὲ οὖν αὖ 1 δυνατὸν ἀμφότερα, εἰ τις ἁρὰ 2 μέλλει καὶ σμικρὸν ἀρετῆς μεθέξειν, ἀλλὰ αὐτῶν ἕνεκα τούτων καὶ μανθάνειν αὐτὰ δεῖ, τοῦ μή ποτε δὲ ἀγνοιαν δράν ἢ λέγειν ὡσα γελοία μηδέν δέον, δοῦλοις δὲ τὰ τοιαῦτα καὶ ξένους ἐμμίσθοις προστάττειν μιμεῖσθαι, σπουδήν δὲ περὶ αὐτὰ εἶναι μηδέποτε μηδ' ἤντινοιν μηδὲ τινα μανθάνοντα αὐτὰ γίγνεσθαι φανερὸν τῶν ἐλευθέρων, μήτε γυναῖκα μήτε ἄνδρα, καίνον δὲ ἀεὶ τι περὶ αὐτὰ φαίνεσθαι τῶν μυμήματων. ὡσα μὲν οὖν περὶ γέλωτα ἐστὶ παίγνια, ἃ δὴ κωμῳδίαν πάντες 817 λέγομεν, οὖτω τῷ νόμῳ καὶ λόγῳ κείσθω· τῶν δὲ σπουδαίων, ὡς φασί, τῶν περὶ τραγῳδίαν ἢμῖν ποιητῶν, εαν ποτὲ τινες αὐτῶν ἡμᾶς ἐλθόντες ἐπανερωτήσωσιν οὔτωσι πως, Ὡξένοι, τότερον φοιτῶμεν ὑμῖν εἰς τὴν πόλιν τε καὶ χώραν ἡ μή, καὶ τὴν ποίησιν φέρωμεν τε καὶ ἁγιώμεν, ἡ τῶς ὑμῖν δέδοκται περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα δράν; τί οὖν ἄν πρὸς ταῦτα ὀρθῶς ἀποκριναίμεθα τοῖς θείοις

1 αὖ H. Richards: ἄν MSS.
2 ἁρα: αὖ MSS., edd.
LAWS, BOOK VII

What concerns the actions of fair and noble souls in the matter of that kind of choristry which we have approved as right has now been fully discussed. The actions of ugly bodies and ugly ideas and of the men engaged in ludicrous comic-acting, in regard to both speech and dance, and the representations given by all these comedians—all this subject we must necessarily consider and estimate. For it is impossible to learn the serious without the comic, or any one of a pair of contraries without the other, if one is to be a wise man; but to put both into practice is equally impossible, if one is to share in even a small measure of virtue; in fact, it is precisely for this reason that one should learn them,—in order to avoid ever doing or saying anything ludicrous, through ignorance, when one ought not; we will impose such mimicry on slaves and foreign hirelings, and no serious attention shall ever be paid to it, nor shall any free man or free woman be seen learning it, and there must always be some novel feature in their mimic shows.¹ Let such, then, be the regulations for all those laughable amusements which we all call "comedy," as laid down both by law and by argument. Now as to what are called our "serious" poets, the tragedians,—suppose that some of them were to approach us and put some such question as this,—"O Strangers, are we, or are we not, to pay visits to your city and country, and traffic in poetry? Or what have you decided to do about this?" What would be the right answer to make to these

¹ i.e. lest the public taste should be debased by the repeated exhibition of any one piece of vulgarity.
PLATO

ἀνδραῖοι; ἐμοὶ μὲν γὰρ δοκεῖ τάδε, Ὡ άριστοί,

Β φάναι, τῶν ξένων, ἡμεῖς ἐσμέν τραγῳδίας αὐτοῦ ποιηταὶ κατὰ δύναμιν ὅτι καλλίστης ἀμα καὶ ἀριστής. πᾶσα χοῦν ἡ πολιτεία ξυνέστηκε μίμησις τοῦ καλλίστου καὶ ἀριστοῦ βίου, ὥστε φαμεν ἡμεῖς γε ὅτι τό νόμος εἶναι τραγῳδίαν τὴν ἀληθεστάτην. ποιηταὶ μὲν οὖν ὑμεῖς, ποιηταὶ δὲ καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐσμέν τῶν αὐτῶν, ὕμιν ἀντίτροποι τοῖς ἀνταγωνισταί τοῦ καλλιστου δράματος, ὥστε νόμος ἀληθῆς μόνος ἀποτελεῖ πέφυκεν, ὡς ἡ παρ

C ἡμῶν ἐστὶν ἑλπίς. μὴ δὴ δόξητε ἡμᾶς ῥαδίως γε οὕτως ὑμᾶς ποτὲ παρ' ἡμῖν ἐάσειν σκηνάς τε πῆξαντας καὶ ἁγοράν καὶ καλλιφῶνος ὑποκριταὶ εἰσαγαγομένους, μεῖζον φθεγγομένους ἡμῶν, ἐπιτρέψειν ὑμῖν δημηγορεῖν πρὸς παῖδας τε καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ τῶν πάντα ὅχλων, τῶν αὐτῶν λέγουντας ἑπιτηδευμάτων πέρι μη τὰ αὐτὰ ἀπερ ἡμεῖς ἀλλ' ὡς τὸ πολὺ καὶ ἑναντία τὰ πλείστα σχεδὸν γὰρ τοῖς καὶ μανικρεῖν τελέως ἡμεῖς τε

D καὶ ἀπασα ἡ πόλις, ἦτε οὖν ὑμῖν ἐπιτρέποι δράν τὰ νῦν λεγόμενα, πρὶν κρίνας τὰς ἀρχὰς εἰτε ἤητα καὶ ἑπιτήδεια πεποίηκατε λέγειν εἰς τὸ μέσον εἰτε μή. νῦν οὖν, ὁ παῖδες μαλακῶν Μουσῶν ἔκγονοι, ἐπιδείξαντες τοῖς ἀρχοῦσι πρῶτον τᾶς ὑμετέρας παρὰ τᾶς ὑμετέρας ωδᾶς, ἀν μὲν τὰ αὐτὰ γε ἡ καὶ βελτίω τὰ παρ᾽ υμῶν φαίνεται λεγόμενα, δώσομεν ὑμῖν χορῶν, εἰ δὲ μή, ὁ φίλοι, οὐκ ἂν ποτὲ δυνάμεθα.

Ε Ὁ Ταῦτ' οὖν ἐστω περὶ πᾶσαν χορείαν καὶ μάθησιν τούτων περὶ συντεταγμένα νόμοις ἔθη,

1 γοῦν Bywater, England: oῦν MSS.
inspired persons regarding the matter? In my judgment, this should be the answer,\(^1\)—"Most excellent of Strangers, we ourselves, to the best of our ability, are the authors of a tragedy at once superlatively fair and good; at least, all our polity is framed as a representation of the fairest and best life, which is in reality, as we assert, the truest tragedy. Thus we are composers of the same things as yourselves, rivals of yours as artists and actors of the fairest drama, which, as our hope is, true law, and it alone, is by nature competent to complete. Do not imagine, then, that we will ever thus lightly allow you to set up your stage beside us in the market-place, and give permission to those imported actors of yours, with their dulcet tones and their voices louder than ours, to harangue women and children and the whole populace, and to say not the same things as we say about the same institutions, but, on the contrary, things that are, for the most part, just the opposite. In truth, both we ourselves and the whole State would be absolutely mad, were it to allow you to do as I have said, before the magistrates had decided whether or not your compositions are deserving of utterance and suited for publication. So now, ye children and offspring of Muses mild, do ye first display your chants side by side with ours before the rulers; and if your utterances seem to be the same as ours or better, then we will grant you a chorus,\(^2\) but if not, my friends, we can never do so."

Let such, then, be the customs ordained to go with the laws regarding all choristry and the learning

\(^1\) Cp. Rep. 398 A, B.
\(^2\) i.e. grant you leave to "stage" your play.
χωρὶς μὲν τὰ τῶν δούλων, χωρὶς δὲ τὰ τῶν 
δεσποτῶν, εἰ ἵνα ἰσοδοκεῖ.

κ. Πῶς δ' οὖν ἰσοδοκεῖ νῦν γε οὕτως;
ν. "Ετι δὴ τοίνυν τοῖς ἐλευθεροῖς ἐστὶ
τρία μαθήματα, λογισμοὶ μὲν καὶ τὰ περὶ ἁριθ-
μοὺς ἐν μάθημα, μετρητικὴ δὲ μήκους καὶ ἐπι-
πέδου καὶ βάθους ὡς ἐν αὐτῷ ἐνεργοῦν, τρῖτον δὲ
τῆς τῶν ἀστρων περιόδου πρὸς ἀλληλα ὡς πέφυκε

818 πορεύεσθαι. ταῦτα δὲ ἄμα παντα οὐχ ὡς ἀκρι-
βείας ἐχόμενα δεῖ διαπονεῖν τοὺς πολλοὺς ἀλλὰ
tινὰς ὁλίγους. οὔς δὲ, προϊόντες ἐπὶ τῶν τέλει
φράσομεν οὕτω γὰρ πρέπει ἄν εἴη τῶν πλῆθει
dὲ, ὅσα αὐτῶν ἀναγκαία ὡς ἐπίστασθαι μὲν τοῖς πολλοῖς αἰσχρῶν, δ' ἀκρι-
βείας δὲ ζητεῖν πάντα οὔτε ράδιον οὔτε τὸ
παράπαν δυνατόν δὲ ἀναγκαῖον αὐτῶν οὐχ
οἶν τε ἀποβάλλειν, ἀλλ' ἐοικέν ὁ τῶν θεον πρῶτον

Β παροιμιασάμενος εἰς ταῦτα ἀποθέλεψα εἴπειν ὡς
οὐδὲ θεὸς ἀνάγκη μὴ ποτε φανὴ μαχόμενος, ὅσα
θειαί γε, οἴμαι, τῶν [τε] ἀναγκῶν εἰςιν, ἐπει τῶν
γε ἀνθρωπίνων, εἰς ὁς οἱ πολλοὶ βλέποντες λέ-
γουσι τὸ τοιοῦτον, οὕτως πάντων τῶν λόγων
εὐθεστάτους ἐστὶ μακρῷ.

κ. Τίνες οὖν, ὁ ξένε, αἱ μὴ τοιαύται ἀνάγκαι
τῶν μαθημάτων, θειαί δὲ;
ν. Δοκῶ μὲν, ὡς μὴ τις πράξας μηδὲ αὐ
C μαθῶν τὸ παράπαν οὔκ ἄν ποτε γένοιτο ἀν-
θρώποις θεός οὐδὲ δαίμων οὐδὲ ἕρως, οἷος
[δυνατὸς] ἀνθρώπων ἐπιμέλειαν σὺν σπουδῇ

1 ὁς: καὶ πῶς MSS. (ὅπως W.-Mollendorff).
2 [δυνατὸς] bracketed by Badham.
thereof—keeping distinct those for slaves and those for masters,—if you agree.

CLIN. Of course we now agree to it.

ATH. There still remain, for the freeborn, three branches of learning: of these the first is reckoning and arithmetic; the second is the art of measuring length and surface and solid; the third deals with the course of the stars, and how they naturally travel in relation to one another. All these sciences should not be studied with minute accuracy by the majority of pupils, but only by a select few—and who these are we shall say when we have come near the end,—since that will be the proper place:¹ but for the bulk of the pupils, while it would be shameful for most of them not to understand all those parts of them that are most truly termed "necessary," yet it is not easy nor even at all possible for every student to go into them minutely. The necessary part of them it is impossible to reject, and probably this is what was in the mind of the original author of the proverb,² "Not even God will ever be seen fighting against Necessity,"—meaning by this, I suppose, all kinds of necessity that are divine, since in relation to human necessities (to which most people apply the saying when they quote it) it is of all sayings far and away the most fatuous.

CLIN. What necessities then, Stranger, belong to these sciences, that are not of this sort, but divine?

ATH. Those, as I believe, which must be practised and learned by every god, daemon, and hero, if he is to be competent seriously to supervise man-

¹ Cp. 962 C, 965 A ff. ² Cp. 741 A.
PLATO

ποιείσθαι. πολλοί δ’ ἂν δεήσειν ἀνθρωπὸς γε θείος γενέσθαι μήτε ἐν μήτε δύο μήτε τρία μήθ’ ὀλως ἄρτια καὶ περιττᾶ δυνάμενος γιγνώσκειν, μηδὲ ἀρμθμεῖν τὸ παράπαν εἴδως, μηδὲ νῦκτα καὶ ἴμεραν διαρθμεῖσθαι δυνατὸς ὄν, σελήνης δὲ καὶ ἴλιον καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀστρων περιφορᾶς ἀπείρως

D ἔχων. ταῦτ’ οὖν δ’ ἔλαυντα ως μὲν οὐκ ἀναγκαῖα ἐστὶ μαθήματα τῷ μέλλοντι σχεδὸν οτιοῦν τῶν καλλίστων μαθημάτων εἴσεθαι, πολλῇ καὶ μωρίᾳ τοῦ διανοημάτος. ποιὰ δὲ ἐκαστὰ τούτων καὶ πόσα καὶ πότε μαθητέου, καὶ τὶ μετὰ τίνος καὶ τὶ χωρίς τῶν ἄλλων, καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν τούτων κράσιν, ταυτά ἐστιν ἅ δὲι λαβόντα ὀρθῶς πρῶτα ἐπὶ τάλλα ἰόντα τούτων ἡγομένων τῶν μαθημάτων μανθάνειν: οὔτω γὰρ ἀνάγκη φύσει κατείλη-

Ε φεν, ἢ φαιμὲν οὐδένα θεῶν οὔτε μάχεσθαι τὰ νῦν οὔτε μαχεῖσθαι ποτε.

κα. Ἐνυκὲ γε, ὃ ξένε, νῦν οὔτω πως ῥηθέντα ὀρθῶς εἰρήσθαι καὶ κατὰ φύσιν ἂ λέγεις.

α. Ἐχει μὲν γὰρ οὕτως, ὃ Κλεινία, χαλεπὸν δὲ αὐτὰ προταξάμενον τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ νομοθετεῖν ἄλλ’ εἰς ἄλλου, εἰ δοκεῖ, χρόνον ἀκριβέστερον ἂν νομοθετησάμεθα.

κα. Δοκεῖς ἡμῖν, ὃ ξένε, φοβεῖσθαι τὸ τῆς ἡμετέρας περὶ τῶν τοιούτων ἀπειρίας ἔθος. οὐκ-ουν ὀρθῶς φοβεῖ: πειρὼ δ’ ἡ λέγειν μηδὲν ἀποκρυπτόμενος ἐνεκά τούτων.

819 α. Φοβοῦμαι μὲν καὶ ταῦτα ἁ σῦ νῦν λέγεις, μᾶλλον δ’ ἐτι δεδοίκα τοὺς ἡμένους μὲν αὐτῶν

1 i.e. arithmetic, geometry, and astronomy: some elementary ("necessary") knowledge of all three is indispensable for a thorough study of any one branch of science.
kind: a man certainly would be far from becoming godlike if he were incapable of learning the nature of one and of two, and of even and odd numbers in general, and if he knew nothing at all about counting, and could not count even day and night as distinct objects, and if he were ignorant of the circuit of the sun and moon and all the other stars. To suppose, then, that all these studies are not "necessary" for a man who means to understand almost any single one of the fairest sciences, is a most foolish supposition. The first thing we must grasp correctly is this—which of these branches of study must be learnt, and how many, and at what periods, and which of them in conjunction with which, and which by themselves apart from all others, and the method of combining them; this done, and with these studies as introductory, we may proceed to the learning of the rest. For such is the natural order of procedure as determined by Necessity, against whom, as we declare, no god fights now, nor ever will fight.

CLIN. Yes, Stranger, this account of yours does seem to be in accord with nature, and true.

ATH. That is indeed the truth of the matter, Clinias; but to give legal enactment to this programme of ours is difficult. We will, if you agree, enact this more precisely on a later occasion.

CLIN. You appear to us, Stranger, to be scared by the neglect of such studies which is the habit in our countries; but you are wrong to be scared. Do not be deterred on that account, but try to proceed with your statement.

ATH. I am indeed scared about the habit you mention, but I am still more alarmed about the
PLATO

toútwv tòwv mabhmátowv, kakaós d' hnuméonvs. oúdámoú γάρ δεινών oúd' h sfofrà ¹ àpeiría tòwv pánwv oûdè mégyistov kakaón, álì h poluvpeiría kai poluvthíà méta kakaís áganíhí gíngemαι polú toútwv meízwv ëxìmíà.

kl. 'Alhthē légeis.

aò. Tòsáde toínwv ekástowv ùrì fànavi mañ-
Bhánei. pròtovn mèn γáρ peri lôghísmovn àtechnôs
paióv eixevhímevá mahmátata metà paídiàs te
kai ëðoníhí mañbhaínei, mhílwv te tìwv diànovmàs ²
kai stefάnwv, pléoiowin áma kai ëlástosin
ámoottótovn àríbómwn tòw avtwv, kai puktòwv kai
palaistówv ëfèdreiás te kai suyllíhèwsw en mére
kai èfexíhí [kai] ³ òws peñùkasi giýngesthain. kai
dh kai paízontes, mhálas áma chrusòu kai ãaklóu
C kai árgyrou kai toiovútov tìnòv ãllòwv kerañ-
vóntes, òi dè kai òlás pwìs diadíónteis, òper
eîpov, eîs paìdiàn ènavímotontes tás tòw ãn-
agkaíwvn àríbómwn ùrìseis, òðeðouîn tòwv mañ-
thánoontas eîs te tás tòwv stratopéddowv tárxeis kai
àngwgas kai stratéias kai eîs óikunomiàs áu,
kai pántowv ùrìsmwtróuov avtwv avtwv kai
ègrhgorótas màlllon toûv ãnthrópouv àpèrgá-
D ðontai. méta dè tânta èn tâis metrísseisin, òsa
éxei mhíh kai plátì kai bâthì, peri ãpantà
tânta ènovústh tina fûsèi ãhelóían te kai áîs chrâv

¹ oúd' h sfofrà Badham: oúdè sfoððòv MSS.
² diànovmâs W.-Möllendorff: diànovmã MSS. (diànovmãs Bad-
ham).

104
people who take up these very sciences for study, and do so badly. Complete and absolute ignorance of them is never alarming, nor is it a very great evil; much more mischievous is a wide variety of knowledge and learning combined with bad training.

CLIN. That is true.

ATH. One ought to declare, then, that the free-born children should learn as much of these subjects as the innumerable crowd of children in Egypt learn along with their letters. First, as regards counting, lessons have been invented for the merest infants to learn, by way of play and fun,—modes of dividing up apples and chaplets, so that the same totals are adjusted to larger and smaller groups, and modes of sorting out boxers and wrestlers, in byes and pairs, taking them alternately or consecutively, in their natural order. Moreover, by way of play, the teachers mix together bowls made of gold, bronze, silver and the like, and others distribute them, as I said, by groups of a single kind, adapting the rules of elementary arithmetic to play; and thus they are of service to the pupils for their future tasks of drilling, leading and marching armies, or of household management, and they render them both more helpful in every way to themselves and more alert. The next step of the teachers is to clear away, by lessons in weights and measures, a certain kind of ignorance, both absurd and disgrace-

1 Cp. 886 A ff.

2 The Egyptian priests are said to have specially drilled their scholars in arithmetic and geometry—partly with a view to their use in land-mensuration.

3 [ka] bracketed by W.—Möllendorff.
ἄγνοιαν ἐν τοῖς ἀνθρώποις πᾶσι ταύτῃ ¹ ἀπαλλάττουσιν.

κα. Πολλάν δὴ καὶ τίνα λέγεις ταύτην;
α. Ὡφίλει Κλεινία, παντάπασι γε μὴν καὶ αὐτὸς ἀκούσας ὀψὲ ποτὲ τὸ περὶ ταύτα ἡμῶν πάθος ἑθαύμασα, καὶ ἐδοξῆ μοι τοῦτο ὦν ἀνθρώπινον ἄλλα ὑπὲρ τινῶν εἶναι μᾶλλον θρἐμμάτων, ἤσχύνθην τε ὑπὲρ ἐμαυτοῦ μόνον, ἄλλα καὶ ὑπὲρ ἀπάντων τῶν Ἐλλήνων.

Ε κα. Τοῦ πέρι; λέγ' ὦ τι καὶ φής, ὦ ξένε.
α. Δέγω δὴ μᾶλλον δὲ ἐρωτῶν σοι δείξω, καὶ μοι σμικρὸν ἀπόκριναι. γυγνώσκεις ποιν μῆκος;
κα. Τί μὴν;
α. Τί δὲ; πλάτος;
κα. Πάντως.
α. Ἡ καὶ ταύτα ὅτι δ' ἐστὸν καὶ τρίτον τούτων βάθος;
κα. Πῶς γὰρ οὖ; 
α. Ἀρ' οὖν οὖ δοκεῖ σοι ταύτα εἶναι πάντα μετρητὰ πρὸς ἄλληλα;
κα. Ναὶ.
α. Μῆκος τε, οἴμαι, πρὸς μῆκος, καὶ πλάτος 820 πρὸς πλάτος, καὶ βάθος ὡσαύτως δυνατὸν εἶναι μετρεῖν φύσει.
κα. Σφόδρα γε.
α. Εἰ δ' ἐστὶ μήτε σφόδρα μήτ' ἱρέμα δυνατὰ ἐνία, ἄλλα τὰ μὲν, τὰ δὲ μή, σὺ δὲ πάντα ἤγεῖ, πῶς οἴει πρὸς ταύτα διακείσθαι;
κα. Δῆλον ὅτι φαύλως.

¹ ταύτῃ: ταύτης MSS., edd. (ταύτην ci. Stallb.).
FUL, which is naturally inherent in all men touching lines, surfaces and solids.

**CLIN.** What ignorance do you mean, and of what kind is it?

**ATH.** My dear Clinias, when I was told quite lately of our condition in regard to this matter, I was utterly astounded myself: it seemed to me to be the condition of guzzling swine rather than of human beings, and I was ashamed, not only of myself, but of all the Greek world.\(^1\)

**CLIN.** Why? Tell us what you mean, Stranger.

**ATH.** I am doing so. But I can explain it better by putting a question. Answer me briefly: you know what a line is?

**CLIN.** Yes.

**ATH.** And surface?

**CLIN.** Certainly.

**ATH.** And do you know that these are two things, and that the third thing, next to these, is the solid?

**CLIN.** I do.

**ATH.** Do you not, then, believe that all these are commensurable one with another?

**CLIN.** Yes.

**ATH.** And you believe, I suppose, that line is really commensurable with line, surface with surface, and solid with solid?

**CLIN.** Absolutely.

**ATH.** But supposing that some of them are neither absolutely nor moderately commensurable, some being commensurable and some not, whereas you regard them all as commensurable,—what do you think of your mental state with respect to them?

**CLIN.** Evidently it is a sorry state.

\(^1\) Cp. *Rep.* 528 Cf.
 Plato

æ. Τί δ’ αὖ; μηκός τε καὶ πλάτος πρὸς βάθος, ἢ πλάτος τε καὶ μήκος πρὸς ἄλληλα, ἁρ’ οὖ διανοούμεθα περὶ ταῦτα οὕτως Ἠλλήνες πάντες, ὡς δυνατά ἐστι μετρεῖσθαι πρὸς ἄλληλα ἀμός γε πως;

κα. Παντάπασι μὲν οὖν.

æ. Εἰ δ’ ἐστίν αὖ μηδαμὸς μηδαμῇ δυνατά, πάντες δ’, ὅπερ εἶπον, Ἠλλήνες διανοούμεθα ὡς δυνατά, μῶν οὖκ ἄξιον ὑπὲρ πάντων αἰσχυνθέντα εἶπεῖν πρὸς αὐτοὺς, Ὡ βέλτιστοι τῶν Ἠλλήνων, ἐν ἑκέινῳ τούτῳ ὁμιλοῦν ἐστιν ὃν ἐφαμεν, ἀἰσχρόν μὲν γεγονόν τὸ μὲ ἐπιστασθαι, τὸ δ’ ἐπιστασθαὶ τάναγκαία οὐδὲν πάνω καλῶν;

κα. Πῶς δ’ οὖ;

æ. Καὶ πρὸς τούτοις γε ἄλλα ἐστὶν τούτων

κα. Ποία δὴ;

æ. Τὰ τῶν μετρητῶν τε καὶ ἀμέτρων πρὸς ἄλληλα, ἦτινι φύσει γέγονε. ταῦτα γὰρ δὴ σκοποῦντα διαγιγνώσκειν ἄναγκαιον ἢ πανταπασιν εἶναι φαύλον, προβάλλοντά τε ἄλληλοις ἅπι, διατριβὴν τῆς πεπτείας πολὺ χαριεστέραν πρεσβυτῶν διατρίβοντα, φιλονεικεῖν ἐν ταῖς τούτων ἀξίαις σχολαις.

κα. Ἡσώς· έοικε γονέως ἢ τε πεπτεία καὶ ταῦτα ἄλληλοι τὰ μαθήματα οὐ πάμπολυ κεχωρίσθησαί.

æ. Ταῦτα τοισὶν ἐγὼ μὲν, ὁ Κλεινία, φημὶ τοὺς νέους δεῖν μανθάνειν· καὶ γὰρ οὗτε βλαβερὰ οὔτε χαλεπά ἐστι, μετὰ δὲ παιδίας ἀμα μανθανόμεναι ὠφελήσει μὲν, βλάψει δὲ ἡμῖν τὴν πόλιν οὐδέν. εἰ δὲ τις ἄλλως λέγει, ἀκουστέον. 108
ATH. Again, as regards the relation of line and surface to solid, or of surface and line to each other—do not all we Greeks imagine that these are somehow commensurable with one another?

CLIN. Most certainly.

ATH. But if they cannot be thus measured by any way or means, while, as I said, all we Greeks imagine that they can, are we not right in being ashamed for them all, and saying to them, "O most noble Greeks, this is one of those 'necessary' things which we said 1 it is disgraceful not to know, although there is nothing very grand in knowing such things."

CLIN. Of course.

ATH. In addition to these there are other matters, closely related to them, in which we find many errors arising that are nearly akin to the errors mentioned.

CLIN. What are they?

ATH. Problems concerning the essential nature of the commensurable and the incommensurable. For students who are not to be absolutely worthless it is necessary to examine these and to distinguish the two kinds, and, by proposing such problems one to another, to compete in a game that is worthy of them,—for this is a much more refined pastime than draughts for old men.

CLIN. No doubt. And, after all, draughts and these studies do not seem to lie so very far apart.

ATH. I assert, then, Clinias, that these subjects must be learnt by the young; for they are, in truth, neither harmful nor hard, and when learnt by way of play they will do no damage at all to our State, but will do it good. Should anyone disagree, however, we must listen to him.

ΚΑ. Πώς δ' οὖ; 
ΑΘ. 'Αλλά μήν ἂν οὖτω ταῦτα ἐχοντα φαίνεται, δήλον ὡς ἐγκρινοῦμεν αὐτά, μή ταύτῃ δὲ φαινόμενα ἔχειν ἀποκριθήσεται.
Ε ΚΑ. Δήλον τι μήν; 
ΑΘ. Ὁύκοιν νῦν, ὡς εἶναι, κείσθω ταῦτα ὡς ὄντα τῶν δεόντων μαθημάτων, ἵνα μὴ διάκειν ἡμῶν ἢ τὰ τῶν νόμων. κείσθω μέντοι καθάπερ ἐνέχυρα λύσιμα ἐκ τῆς ἄλλης πολιτείας, εάν ἢ τοὺς θέντας ἡμᾶς ἢ καὶ τοὺς θεμένους ἡμᾶς μηδαμῶς φιλοφρονεῖται.
ΚΑ. Δικαίαν λέγεις τὴν θέσιν.
ΑΘ. Ἀστρων δὴ τὸ μετὰ ταῦτα ὡρα τὴν μάθησιν τοῖς νέοις, ἀν ἡμᾶς ἀρέσκῃ λεχθεῖσα ἢ καὶ τούναντίον.
ΚΑ. Λέγε μόνον.
ΑΘ. Καὶ μήν θαυμά γε περὶ αὐτά ἐστι μέγα καὶ οὐδαμῶς οὐδαμὴ ἀνεκτὸν.
821 ΚΑ. Τὸ ποῦν δή;
ΑΘ. Τὸν μέγιστον θεὸν καὶ ὅλον τὸν κόσμον φαμὲν οὗτε ξητείν δεῖν οὗτε πολυπραγμονεῖν τὰς αἰτίας ἐρευνώντας· οὐ γὰρ οὔδ' ὅσιον εἶναι. τὸ δὲ ἐοικε πάν τοῦτο τούναντίον γιγνόμενον ὅρθως ἀν γίγνεσθαι.
ΚΑ. Πῶς εἶπες;
ΑΘ. Παράδοξον μὲν τὸ λεγόμενον, καὶ οὐκ ἂν πρεσβύταις τις οἰηθείν πρέπειν· τὸ δὲ ἐπειδὰν τὶς τι καλῶν τε οἰηθῇ καὶ ἀληθὲς μάθημα εἶναι καὶ πόλει ἐμφέρον καὶ τὸ θεὸ παντάπασι 
Β φίλον, οὐδενὶ δὴ τρόπῳ δυνατόν ἔστων ἔτι μὴ φράξειν.

1 Οὐκοῦν... νόμων is wrongly assigned by Zur. to Clīn.
LAWS, BOOK VII

CLIN. Of course.

ATH. Well then, if this is clearly the case, obviously we shall adopt these subjects; but if it seems clearly to be otherwise, we shall rule them out.

CLIN. Yes, obviously.

ATH. Shall we not, then, lay these down as necessary subjects of instruction, so that there may be no gap in our code of laws? Yet we ought to lay them down provisionally—like pledges capable of redemption—apart from the rest of our constitution, in case they fail to satisfy either us who enact them or you for whom they are enacted.

CLIN. Yes, that is the right way to lay them down.

ATH. Consider next whether or not we approve of the children learning astronomy.

CLIN. Just tell us your opinion.

ATH. About this there is a very strange fact—indeed, quite intolerable.

CLIN. What is that?

ATH. We commonly assert that men ought not to enquire concerning the greatest god and about the universe, nor busy themselves in searching out their causes, since it is actually impious to do so; whereas the right course, in all probability, is exactly the opposite.

CLIN. Explain yourself.

ATH. My statement sounds paradoxical, and it might be thought to be unbecoming in an old man; but the fact is that, when a man believes that a science is fair and true and beneficial to the State and altogether well-pleasing to God, he cannot possibly refrain any longer from declaring it.¹

¹ Cp. 779 B.
ΚΛ. Εἰκότα λέγεις· ἀλλ' ἀστραυ πέρι μᾶθημα
tί τοιοῦτον ἀνευρήσομεν;
ΑΘ. Ὡς ἄγαθοί, καταψευδόμεθα νῦν ὡς ἔπος
eἰπεῖν Ἔλληνες πάντες μεγάλων θεῶν, Ἡλίου
tε ἁμα καὶ Σελήνης.
ΚΛ. Τὸ ποίου δὴ ψεῦδος;
ΑΘ. Φαμέν αὐτὰ οὐδέποτε τὴν αὐτὴν ὁδὸν
ἰέναι, καὶ ἀλλ' ἄττα ἄστρα μετὰ τούτων,
ἐπονομάζοντες πλανητὰ αὐτὰ.

C ΚΛ. Νῦ τὸν Δία, ὦ ξένε, ἀληθὲς τοῦτο λέγεις·
ἐν γὰρ δὴ τῷ βίῳ πολλάκις ἔωρακα καὶ αὐτὸς
τὸν τε Ἡσσόφόρου καὶ τὸν Ἡσπεροῦ καὶ ἄλλους
tων ἐς οὐδέποτε ἱόντας εἰς τὸν αὐτὸν δρόμον,
ἀλλὰ πάντῃ πλανωμένους, τὸν δὲ Ἡλίου που
καὶ Σελήνην δρῶντας ταῦτα 1 ἢ ἐπὶ πάντες ἐξυπη-
στάμεθα.

ΑΘ. Ταῦτ' ἔστι τοῖνυ, ὦ Μέγιλλέ τε καὶ
Κλεινία, νῦν ἢ δὴ φημὶ δεῖν περὶ θεῶν τῶν
καὶ οὕρανδον τοὺς γε ἡμετέρους πολίτας τε καὶ
tους νέους τὸ μέχρι τοσοῦτον μαθεῖν περὶ
D ἀπάντων τούτων, μέχρι τοῦ μὴ βλασφημεῖν περὶ
αὐτά, εὐφημεῖν δὲ ἢ ἔλευντας τε καὶ ἐν εὐχαῖς
εὐχομένους εὐσεβῶς.

ΚΛ. Τούτῳ μὲν ὅρθῳν, εἰ γε πρῶτον μὲν
δυνατὸν ἔστιν ὁ λέγεις μαθεῖν· εἰτα, εἰ μὴ λέγο-
μέν τι περὶ αὐτῶν ὅρθως νῦν, μαθόντες δὲ
λέξομεν, συγχωρῶ κἀγὼ τὸ γε τοσοῦτον καὶ
tοιοῦτον ὑποκηθεῖν εἶναι. ταῦτ' οὖν δὲ ἔχοντά
ἐσθ' αὐτῷ, πειρῶ σὺ μὲν ἐξηγεῖσθαί πάντως,
ἡμεῖς δὲ ἐξουσεῖσθαι σοι μανθάνουτες.
Ε ΑΘ. Ἀλλ' ἔστι μὲν οὐ ράδιον ὁ λέγω μαθεῖν,
LAWS, BOOK VII

CLIN. That is reasonable; but what science of this kind shall we find on the subject of stars?

ATH. At present, my good sirs, nearly all we Greeks say what is false about those mighty deities, the Sun and Moon.

CLIN. What is the falsehood?

ATH. We assert that they, and some other stars along with them, never travel along the same path; and we call them "planets."\(^1\)

CLIN. Yes, by Zeus, Stranger, that is true; for I, during my life, have often noticed how Phosphorus and Hesperus and other stars never travel on the same course, but "wander" all ways; but as to the Sun and Moon, we all know that they are constantly doing this.

ATH. It is precisely for this reason, Megillus and Clinias, that I now assert that our citizens and our children ought to learn so much concerning all these facts about the gods of Heaven as to enable them not to blaspheme about them, but always to speak piously both at sacrifices and when they pray reverently at prayers.

CLIN. You are right, provided that, in the first place, it is possible to learn the subject you mention; and provided also that learning will make us correct any mistakes we may be making about them now,—then I, too, agree that a subject of such importance should be learned. This being so, do you make every effort to expound the matter, and we will endeavour to follow you and learn.

ATH. Well, the matter I speak of is not an easy

\(^1\) \textit{i.e.} "wanderers."

1 \textit{ταῳτα} Paris MS.; \textit{ταῳθε} & Par. marg., Zur., \textit{al.}
οὐδ’ αὐτ παντάπασι χαλεπῶν, οὐδὲ γε τινος χρόνου παμπόλλου. τεκμήριον δὲ ἐγὼ τούτων οὔτε νέος οὔτε πάλαι ἀκηκὼς σφῶν ἄν νῦν οὐκ ἐν πολλῷ χρόνῳ δηλώσαι δυναῖμην. καὶ τοι χαλεπά γε οὔτα οὐκ ἂν ποτε οἶδος τ’ ἦν δηλοῦν τηλικούτους οὐσι τηλικούτος.

κλ. Ἀληθῆ λέγεις. ἀλλὰ τί καὶ φῆς τούτο τὸ μάθημα, ὁ θαυμαστὸν μὲν λέγεις, προσήκον δ’ αὖ μαθεῖν τοῖς νέοις, οὐ γιγνώσκειν δὲ ἡμᾶς;

822 πειρὼ περὶ αὐτοῦ τὸ γε τοσοῦτον φράζειν ὡς σαφέστατα.

ἀ. Πειρατέον. οὐ γάρ ἐστὶ τούτο, ὃ ἀριστοί, τὸ δόγμα ὅρθον περὶ σελήνης τε καὶ ἡλίου καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀστρών, ὡς ἄρα πλανᾶται ποτε, πᾶν δὲ τοῦναντίον ἔχει τούτων τὴν αὕτην γὰρ αὐτῶν ὁδὸν ἐκαστὸν καὶ οὐ πολλάς ἀλλὰ μίαν ἀεὶ κύκλῳ διεξερχεται, φαίνεται δὲ πολλὰς φερόμενον τὸ δὲ τάχιστον αὐτῶν ὑπὸ βραδύτατον οὐκ ὅρθως αὐτ’ ὀξύζεται, τὸ δ’ ἐναντίον ἐναντίως.

Β ταῦτ’ οὖν εἰ πέφυκε μὲν οὕτως, ἡμεῖς δὲ μὴ ταύτη δοξάζομεν, ¹ εἰ μὲν ἐν Ὀλυμπίᾳ θεόντων ἰππῶν οὕτως ἡ δολιχοδρόμων ἀνδρῶν διενούμεθα περὶ, καὶ προσηγορεύσομεν τὸν τάχιστον μὲν ὡς βραδύτατον, τὸν δὲ βραδύτατον ὡς τάχιστον, ἐγκώμια τε ποιοῦντες ὑδομεν τὸν ἡττώμενον νεικηκότα, οὔτε ὅρθως ἀν οὔτ’ οἷμαι προσφιλῶς τοῖς δρομεύσιν ἡμᾶς ἀν τὰ ἐγκώμια προσάπτειν ἀνθρώπως οὔςι νῦν δὲ δὴ περὶ θεοὺς τὰ αὐτὰ

C ταῦτα ἐξαμαρτανότων ἡμῶν ἄρ’ οὐκ οἴομεθα <ὁ> γελοιῶν τε καὶ οὐκ ὅρθων ἑκεῖ γιγνόμενον ἤν ἂν τότε, νῦν ἐνταυθοῖ καὶ ἐν τούτωι γίγνεσθαι

¹ δοξάζομεν Ast: δόξομεν MSS.
one to learn; nor yet is it altogether difficult and demanding very prolonged study. In proof of this—although I was told of it neither in the days of my youth nor long ago, I may be able to explain it to you in a comparatively short time. Whereas, if it had been a difficult subject, I should never have been able to explain it to you at all—I at my age to you at yours.

**CLIN.** Very true. But what is this science which you describe as marvellous and fitting for the young to learn, and which we are ignorant about? Do try to tell us thus much, at least, about it, with all possible clearness.

**ATH.** I must try. The opinion, my friends, that the Sun and Moon and the rest of the stars "wander" is not correct; the truth is precisely the opposite: each of them always travels in a circle one and the same path,—not many paths, although it appears to move along many paths; and the quickest of the stars is wrongly opined to be the slowest, and vice versa.\(^1\) If these are the real facts and we imagine otherwise,—well, suppose we held a similar notion about horses racing at Olympia, or about long-distance runners, and proclaimed the quickest to be slowest and the slowest quickest, and sang chants lauding the loser as the winner, why, then, the laudations we bestowed on the runners would be neither right nor acceptable, though they were but mortal men. But in the present case, when we commit the same error about gods, do we not think that what would have been ludicrous and wrong there and then is, here and now and in dealing with this subject, by no means ludicrous and assuredly

γελοῖον μὲν οὐδαμῶς, οὔ μὴν οὐδὲ θεοφιλές γε, ψευδὴ φήμην ἡμῶν κατὰ θεῶν ὑμοῦντων;

καὶ. Ἀληθέστατα, εἴπερ γε οὕτω ταῦτ' ἔστιν.

αὐθ. Οὐκοῦν ἂν μὲν δείξωμεν οὕτω ταῦτ' ἔχοντα, μαθητεά μέχρι γε τοῦτο τὰ τοιαῦτα πάντα, μὴ δειχθέντων δὲ ἐστέον; καὶ ταῦτα ἡμῖν οὕτω ἐξυγκείσθω;

D καὶ. Πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

αὐθ. Ἡδη τοίνυν χρή φάναι τέλος ἐξειν τά γε παιδείας μαθημάτων πέρι νόμιμα. περὶ δὲ θήρας ὁσαύτως διανοηθήναι χρὴ, καὶ περὶ ἀπάντων ὀπόσα τοιαῦτα. κινδύνευε γὰρ δὴ νομοθέτη τὸ προστατήσμενον ἐπὶ μείζον ένεια τοῦ νόμους θέντα ἀπηλλάχθαι, ἔτερον δὲ τι πρὸς τοῖς νόμοις εἶναι μεταξὺ τι νουθετήσεως τε Επεφυκός ἀμα καὶ νόμων, δὴ πολλάκις ἡμῶν ἐμπέπτωκε τοῖς λόγοις, οἷον περὶ τὴν τῶν σφόδρα νέων παιδῶν στροφήν' οὐ γὰρ ἀρρητά φαμεν εἶναι, λέγοντες τε αὐτὰ ὡς νόμους οἰεσθαι τιθεμένους εἶναι πολλῆς ἀνοίας γέμειν. γεγραμμένων δὴ ταύτῃ τῶν νόμων τε καὶ ὅλης τῆς πολιτείας οὐ τέλεος ὁ τοῦ διαφέροντος πολίτου πρὸς ἀρετὴν γίγνεται ἐπαινος, ὅταν αὐτὸν της φύ τὸν υπηρετήσαντα τοῖς νόμοις ἁριστά καὶ πειθόμενον μάλιστα, τοῦτον εἶναι τὸν ἀγαθὸν τελεώτερον δὲ ὧδε εἰρημένον, ὡς ἄρα ὅς ἀν τοῖς τοῦ <νομοθέτου>3 νομοθετοῦντος τε καὶ ἐπαίνοντος καὶ ψέγοντος πειθόμενος γράμμασι 823 διεξέλθῃ τὸν βίον ἄκρατον. οὕτως ο τε λόγος

1 Zur. assigns γελοῖον μὲν οὐδαμῶς to Clit. (omitting the <δ> after οἶδομέθα).

116
not pleasing to the gods, when concerning gods we repeat a tale that is false?

CLIN. Very true, if the facts are as you say.

ATH. Then, if we demonstrate that they really are so, shall all these subjects be learnt up to the point mentioned, and, failing that demonstration, be left alone? Is that to be our agreement?

CLIN. Certainly.

ATH. We may now say that our regulations concerning subjects of education have been completed. The subject of hunting, and similar pursuits, must now be dealt with in a similar manner. The duty laid upon the lawgiver probably goes further than the bare task of enacting laws: in addition to laws, there is something else which falls naturally between advice and law—a thing which has often cropped up in the course of our discussion, as, for example, in connexion with the nurture of young children: such matters, we say, should not be left unregulated, but it would be most foolish to regard those regulations as enacted laws. When, then, the laws and the whole constitution have been thus written down, our praise of the citizen who is pre-eminent for virtue will not be complete when we say that the virtuous man is he who is the best servant of the laws and the most obedient; a more complete statement will be this,—that the virtuous man is he who passes through life consistently obeying the written rules of the lawgiver, as given in his legislation, approbation and disapprobation. This statement is the

1 788 A ff., 793 A ff.
2 i.e. for perfect virtue there is required not only obedience to statute law, but also conformity with all the other rules of conduct laid down by the lawgiver in the less rigid form of advice ("approbation" and "disapprobation").
όρθοτατος εἰς ἐπαίνον πολίτου, τὸν τε νομοθέτην οὕτως ἔδει μὴ μόνον γράφειν τοὺς νόμους, πρὸς δὲ τοῖς νόμοις ὅσα καλὰ αὐτῷ δοκεῖ καὶ μὴ καλὰ εἶναι νόμοις ἐμπεπλεγμένα γράφειν, τὸν δὲ ἄκρον πολίτην μηδὲν ἦττον ταύτα ἐμπεδοῦν ἢ τὰ ταῖς ζημίαις ὑπὸ νόμων κατειλημμένα.

Τὸ δὲ δὴ παρὸν ἦμιν τὰ νῦν ὅσα μάρτυρα ἐπά-

Β γόμενοι δηλοίμεν 2 ἄν ὁ βουλόμεθα μᾶλλον. θῆρα γὰρ πάμπολυ τι πρᾶγμα ἐστὶ, περιειλημμένον ὅνοματι νῦν σχεδὸν ἐνὶ. πολλῆ μὲν γὰρ ἡ τῶν ἐνύδρων, πολλὴ δὲ ἡ τῶν πτηνῶν, πάμπολυ δὲ καὶ τὸ περὶ τὰ πεξαθηρεύματα, οὐ μόνον θηρίῳ ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἄξιον ἐννοεῖν θῆραν, τὴν τε κατὰ πόλεμον, πολλὴ δὲ καὶ ἡ κατὰ φιλίαν θηρεύονσα, ἡ μὲν ἐπαίνον, ἡ δὲ ψόγον ἔχει· καὶ κλωπεῖαν καὶ χροστῶν καὶ στρατοπέδων [στρατο-

C πέδων] 3 θῆραι. θῆρας δὲ περὶ τιθέντι τῷ νομοθέτῃ τοὺς νόμους οὕτε μὴ δηλοῦν ταῦθ' ὅσα τε, οὕτε ἐπὶ πάσι τάξεις καὶ ζημίας ἐπι-

τιθέντα ἀπειλητικὰ νόμιμα τιθέναι. τί δὴ δραστέον περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα; τὸν μὲν, τὸν νομοθέ-

την, ἐπαίνεσαι καὶ ψέξαι χρεῶν τὰ περὶ θῆρας πρὸς τοὺς τῶν νέων πόνους τε καὶ ἐπιτηδεύματα, τὸν δ' αὐ νέον ἀκούσαντα πείθεσθαι, καὶ μὴθ' ἤδονὴν μήτε πόνον ἐξείργειν αὐτὸν, τῶν δὲ περὶ ἐκαστα ἀπειληθέντων μετὰ ζημίας καὶ νομο-

1 οὕτως W.-Möllendorff: ὀντως MSS., edd.
2 ἐπαγόμενοι δηλοίμεν Badham: ἐπαγόμεθα δηλοὶ μὲν Zur., al. (δηλοίμεν Paris MS.).
3 [στρατοπέδων] I bracket.

118
most correct way of praising the citizen; and in this way, moreover, the lawgiver must not only write down the laws, but in addition to the laws, and combined with them, he must write down his decisions as to what things are good and what bad; and the perfect citizen must abide by these decisions no less than by the rules enforced by legal penalties.

The subject now before us we may adduce as a witness to show more clearly what we mean. Hunting is a large and complex matter, all of which is now generally embraced under this single name. Of the hunting of water-animals there are many varieties, and many of the hunting of fowls; and very many varieties also of hunts of land-animals—not of beasts only, but also, mark you, of men, both in war and often, too, in friendship, a kind of hunt that is partly approved and partly disapproved; and then there are robberies and hunts carried on by pirates and by bands. When the lawgiver is making laws about hunting, he is necessarily bound to make this point clear, and to lay down minatory directions by imposing regulations and penalties for all these kinds. What then ought to be done about these matters? The lawgiver, for his part, will be right in praising or blaming hunting with an eye to the toils and pursuits of the young; and the young man will be right in listening and obeying, and in allowing neither pleasure nor toil to hinder him, and in holding in greater respect the orders that are

---

1 Cp. Soph. 222 D where ἡ τῶν ἐρώτων θήρα (“the lovers’ chase”) is mentioned as a sub-species of θηρευτική; and in Sympos. 203 D the God of Love is described as “a mighty hunter” (θηρευτῆς δείνος).
ΠΛΑΤΟ

Δ θετηθέντων τὰ μετ᾽ ἐπαίνου ῥηθέντα μᾶλλον τιμᾶν καὶ προσταθέντα ἀποτελεῖν.

Τούτων δὴ προρρηθέντων ἔξης ἂν γίγνοιτο ἐμμετροῖς ἐπαινόσ θήρας καὶ ψόγος, ἢτις μὲν βελτίους ἀποτελεῖ τὰς ψυχὰς τῶν νέων, ἐπαινοῦντος, ψέγοντος δὲ ἡ τάναστία. Ἀλέγωμεν τοίνυν τὸ μετὰ τούτο ἔξης προσαγορεύοντες δὶ εὐχῆς τοὺς νέους, Ὡ φίλοι, εἰθ' ὑμᾶς μήτε τις ἐπιθυμία μήτ' ἔρως τῆς περὶ θάλατταν θήρας ποτὲ λάβοι μηδὲ ἀγκιστρείας

Ε μηδ' ὀλος τῆς τῶν ἐνύδρων ξώων, μήτε ἐγρηγοροῦσι μήτε εὐδοκεῖ σύρτοις ἁργὸν θήραν διαπονοῦμένοις. μηδ' αὐ ἄγρα αὐθρόπων κατὰ θάλατταν ληστείας τε ῥεμοσ ἐπέλθων ὑμῖν θηρευταὶ ἁμοὺς καὶ ἀνόμους ἀποτελοὶ. κλωπείας δ' ἐν χώρα καὶ πόλει μηδὲ εἰς τὸν ἐσχατον ἐπέλθοι νοῦν ἀφασθαί. μηδ' αὐ πτηνῶν θήρας αἰμύλιος ἔρως

θ' σφόδρα ἐλευθερίσετο ἐπέλθοι τινὶ νέων. πεζῶν δὴ μόνον θήρευσίς τε καὶ ἄγρα λοιπὴ τοῖς παρ' ἡμῖν ἄθληταῖς, δι' ἡ μὲν τῶν εὐδότων αὖ κατὰ μέρη, νυκτερεία κληθείσα, ἁργῶν ἄνδρῶν, οὐκ ἀξία ἐπαίνου, οὖδ' ἡ τοί 1 διαπαύματα πόνων ἐχοῦσα, ἀρκυσί τε καὶ πάγαις ἀλλ' οὐ φιλοπόνου ψυχῆς νίκη χειρομενῶν τὴν ἁγριῶν τῶν θηρίων ρώμην. μόνη δὴ πᾶσι λοιπῇ καὶ ἀρίστη ἡ τῶν τετραπόδων ἐπτοις καὶ κυσὶ καὶ τοῖς ἑαυτῶν θήρα σώμασιν, διὸ ἀπαίτων κρατοῦσι δρόμοις

Β καὶ πληγαίς καὶ βολαῖς, αὐτόχειρες θηρεύοντες, ὁσοὶ ἄνδριας τῆς θείας ἐπιμελέσ.

1 ἡ τοῖ: ἡ τῶν MSS. (ἡττον Burnet).

120
sanctioned by praise, and carrying them out, rather than those which are enacted by law under threat of penalties.

After these prefatory observations there will follow adequate praise and blame of hunting—praise of the kind which renders the souls of the young better, and blame of the kind which does the opposite. Our next step will be to address the young people with prayer—"O friends, would that you might never be seized with any desire or craving for hunting by sea, or for angling, or for ever pursuing water-animals with creels that do your lazy hunting for you, whether you sleep or wake. And may no longing for man-hunting by sea and piracy overtake you, and render you cruel and lawless hunters; and may the thought of committing robbery in country or city not so much as cross your minds. Neither may there seize upon any of the young the crafty craving for snaring birds—no very gentlemanly pursuit! Thus there is left for our athletes only the hunting and capture of land-animals. Of this branch of hunting, the kind called night-stalking, which is the job of lazy men who sleep in turn, is one that deserves no praise; nor does that kind deserve praise in which there are intervals of rest from toil, when men master the wild force of beasts by nets and traps instead of doing so by the victorious might of a toil-loving soul. Accordingly, the only kind left for all, and the best kind, is the hunting of quadrupeds with horses and dogs and the hunter's own limbs, when men hunt in person, and subdue all the creatures by means of their own running, striking and shooting—all the men, that is to say, who cultivate the courage that is divine."
Τούτων δὴ πάντων ἐπαινοσ μὲν πέρι καὶ ψόγος ὁ διειρημένος ἀν εἰ ἁ λόγος, νόμος δὲ ὅδε: τούτους μηδεὶς τοὺς ἱεροὺς ὁντὼς θηρευτὰς κωλυετῶ, ὅπου καὶ ὅπῃ περ ἀν ἐθέλωσι κυνηγετεῖν νυκτερευτήν δὲ ἁρκυσὶ καὶ πλεκταῖς πιστῶν μηδεὶς μηδέποτε εἰσὶν ἡμᾶνοι θηρεύσαι· τὸν ὀρνιθευτήν δὲ ἐν ἁργοῖς μὲν καὶ ὄρεσι μὴ κωλυετῶ, ἐν ἐργασίμοις δὲ καὶ ἱεροῖς ἁγροῖς 1 ἔζειργέτω ὁ προστυγχάνων. Καὶ νυγροθηρευτήν δὲ, πλὴν ἐν λιμέσι καὶ ἱεροῖς ποταμοῖς τε καὶ ἐλεσι καὶ λύμανσι· ἐν τοῖς ἄλλοις δὲ ἔξεστο θηρεύειν μὴ χρώμενον ὅπως ἀναβολόσει μόνον. νῦν οὖν ἡ ἦδη πάντα χρῆ φάναι τέλος ἐχειν τά γε παιδείας πέρι νομιμα. 
κλ. Καλῶς ἀν λέγοις.

1 ἁγροῖς Badham: ἁγροῖς most MSS., Zur.; al. ἁγγλός (καὶ ἱερατιχοῖς England, with one MS.).
LAWS, BOOK VII

Concerning the whole of this subject, the exposition we have now given will serve as the praise and blame; and the law will run thus,—"None shall hinder these truly sacred hunters from hunting wheresoever and howsoever they wish; but the night-trapper who trusts to nets and snares no one shall ever allow to hunt anywhere. The fowler no man shall hinder on fallow land or mountain; but he that finds him on tilled fields or on sacred glebes shall drive him off. The fisherman shall be allowed to hunt in all waters except havens and sacred rivers and pools and lakes, but only on condition that he makes no use of muddying juices."¹ So now, at last, we may say that all our laws about education are complete.

clin. You may rightly say so.

¹ i.e. vegetable juices which taint the water and paralyse the fish.
828 ΑΘ. Τούτων μὲν ἔχομενά ἐστι τάξασθαι μὲν καὶ νομοθετήσασθαι ἔορτὰς μετὰ τῶν ἐκ Δελφῶν μαντείων, αὐτίνες θυσίας καὶ θεοὺς οἴστισιν ἁμείνου καὶ λὰον θυνύσῃ τῇ πόλει γίγνοιν· ἀν' πότε δὲ καὶ πόσαι τῶν ἀριθμῶν, σχεδόν ἵσως ἥμετερον ἂν νομοθετεῖν [ἔνια γ'] ἕντων εἰην.

ΚΑ. Τάχ' ἂν τὸν ἀριθμὸν.

ΑΘ. Τὸν ἀριθμὸν δὴ λέγωμεν πρῶτον· ἐστώσαν ὑπὸ τῶν μὲν πέντε καὶ ἔξήκοντα καὶ τριακοσίων μηδὲν ἀπολείπουσαί, ὅπως ἂν μία γέ τις ἀρχὴθύη θεῶν ἢ δαιμόνων τινὶ αἰεὶ ύπὲρ πολεῶς τε καὶ ἄυτῶν καὶ κτημάτων. ταῦτα δὲ ξυνελθότενς ἔξηγηταί καὶ ἱερεῖς ἱερεῖαι τε καὶ μάντεις μετὰ νομοφυλάκων ταξάντων, ἢ παραλείπειν ἀνάγκη τῷ νομοθέτῃ καὶ δὴ καὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου χρῆ γίγνεσθαι ἐπιγνώμονας τοῦ παραλειπομένου τούτους τοὺς αὐτούς. ὦ μὲν γὰρ δὴ νόμοις ἐρεὶ δώδεκα μὲν ἕορτας εἴναι τοῖς δώδεκα θεοῖς, ὃν ἂν ἡ φυλὴ ἐκάστη ἐπώνυμος ζῇ, θύωντας τούτων ἐκάστοις ἔμμηνα ἱερά, χοροῦς τε καὶ ἀγώνας μουσικοὺς, τοὺς δὲ γυμνικοὺς κατὰ τὸ πρέπον προσνέμοντας τοῖς θεοῖς τε αὐτοῖς ἀμα καὶ ταῖς ὀραις ἐκάσταις, γυναικείας τε ἔορτας, ὀσαις χωρίς ἀνδρῶν προσήκει καὶ ὀσαις μὴ, διανέμοντας. ἔτι δὲ καὶ τὸ τῶν χθονίων καὶ ὀσοῦς αὐ

1 [ἔνια γ'] bracketed by England.

1 Cp. 771 Diff.
BOOK VIII

ATH. Our next task is, with the help of the Delphic oracles, to arrange and ordain by law the festivals, prescribing what sacrifices, and to what deities, it will be good and right for the State to offer: the times and the number of them, however, it is, no doubt, our own business to ordain by ourselves.

CLIN. Very likely, as regards the number of them.

ATH. Then let us first state the number. There shall be not less than 365 feasts, so that some one official may always be doing sacrifice to some god or daemon on behalf of the State, the people, and their property. The interpreters, the priests, the priestesses and the prophets shall assemble, and, in company with the Law-wardens, they shall ordain what the lawgiver is obliged to omit: moreover, these same persons shall determine wherein such omissions consist. For the law will state that there are twelve feasts to the twelve gods who give their names to the several tribes: to each of these they shall perform monthly sacrifices and assign choirs and musical contests, and also gymnastic contests, as is suitable both to the gods themselves and to the several seasons of the year; and they shall ordain also women's festivals, prescribing how many of these shall be for women only, and how many open also to men. Further, they must determine, in conformity with the law, the rites proper to the nether gods,
PLATO

θεοὺς οὐρανίους ἐπονομαστέον καὶ τί τῶν τούτων ἐπομένων οὐ̂ ξυμμικτέον ἀλλὰ χωριστέον, ἐν τῷ

D τοῦ Πλούτωνος μηνὶ τῷ δωδεκάτῳ κατὰ τὸν νόμον ὑποδιδόντας, καὶ οὗ δυσχεραντέον πολεμικοῖς ἀνθρώποις τὸν τοιοῦτον θεόν, ἀλλὰ τιμητέον ὡς ὣντα ἀεὶ τῷ τῶν ἀνθρώπων γένει ἀριστόν κοινωνία γὰρ ψυχῆ καὶ σώματι διαλύσεως οὐκ ἔστιν ἡ κρείττων, ὡς ἐγὼ φαίνη ἂν σπουδῇ λέγων πρὸς τούτους δὲ διάνοιαν χρῆ σχεῖν τοὺς διαιρήσοντας ἵκανῶς ταῦτα τοιάνδε, ὡς ἐσθ' ἡμῖν ἡ πόλις οὖν ὡν ἂν τις ἔτεραν εὑροί τῶν νῦν περὶ χρόνον σχολῆς καὶ τῶν ἀναγκαίων ἔξουσίας, δεὶ δὲ αὐτὴν,

829 καθάπερ ἐνα ἀνθρωποῦν, ζῆν εὖ. τοῖς δὲ εὐδαιμονίων ὡς ζῶσιν ὑπάρχειν ἀνάγκη πρῶτον τὸ μήτε ἀδικεῖν ἄλλους μὴθ' ύφ' ἐτέρων αὐτοὺς ἀδικεῖσθαι. τούτου δὲ τῷ μὲν οὐ πάνιν χαλεπῶν, τοῦ δὲ μὴ ἀδικεῖσθαι κτήσασθαι δύναμιν παγχάλεπον, καὶ οὐκ ἔστιν αὐτὸ τελέως σχεῖν ἄλλως ἡ τελέως γενόμενον ἁγαθῶν ταὐτὸν δὴ τούτο ἐστὶ καὶ πόλει ὑπάρχειν, γενομένη μὲν ἁγαθῇ βίοις εἰρηνικός, πολεμικὸς δὲ ἐξωθὴν τε καὶ ἐνδοθεῖν, ἂν ἡ κακὴ τούτων δὲ ταύτη σχεδοὺν ἐχόντων οὐκ ἐν πολέμῳ

Β τὸν πόλεμον ἐκάστοις γυμναστέον, ἀλλ' ἐν τῷ της εἰρήνης βίῳ. δεὶ τοῖς πάλιν ἐκάστοτες ἀπούς οὐδεὶς νοῦν κεκτημένην στρατεύεσθαι μὴ ἔλαττον μίας ἡμέρας, πλείονς δὲ, ὡς καὶ τοὺς ἄρχουσι εὐνοδῆ, μηδενὶς χειμῶνας ἢ καύματα διενεβούμενος, αὐτοὺς τε ἀμα καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας, ὅταν ὡς πανδημίαν ἔξαγεν δόξῃ τοῖς ἄρχουσι,


1 Cp. S32 C ff., S35 D, E.
LAWS, BOOK VIII

and how many of the celestial gods should be invoked, and what of the rites connected with them should not be mingled but kept apart, and put them in the twelfth month, which is sacred to Pluto; and this god should not be disliked by men who are warriors, but honoured as one who is always most good to the human race; for, as I would assert in all seriousness, union is in no way better for soul and body than dissolution. Moreover, if they are to arrange these matters adequately, these persons must believe that no other State exists which can compare with ours in respect of the degree in which it possesses leisure and control over the necessities of life;¹ and believe also that it, like an individual, ought to lead a good life. But for a good and blessed life, the first requisite is neither to do wrong oneself nor to suffer wrong from others. Of these, the former is not very hard, but it is very hard to secure immunity from suffering wrong;² indeed, it is impossible to gain this perfectly, except by becoming perfectly good. So likewise a State may obtain a life of peace if it becomes good, but if bad, a life of war both abroad and at home. This being so, all men must train for war not in war-time, but while they are living in peace.³ Therefore, a judicious State must carry out a march, every month, for not less than one whole day, or more (according as the rulers decree),⁴ paying no heed to cold weather or hot: all shall join in it—men, women and children—whenever the rulers decide to march them out

² Cp. 663 A, 904 Ef. “Perfect goodness” helps to secure this “immunity” because it includes the virtue of “courage”: people do not lightly provoke the brave warrior.
³ Cp. 803 D, 814 D.
⁴ Cp. 830 D.
τοτε δε και κατα μερη και τινας αει παιδιας μηχανασθαι καλας άμα θυσαις, οπως άν γγινων.

C ται μαχαι τινες οραστοτικαι, μιμούμεναι τας πολεμικας οτι μαλιστα εναργως μαχας. νικηθηρια δε και άριστεια εκαστοις τοιτων δει διανεμειν εγκωμια τα και ψόγους ποιειν ἄλληλοις, οποίος τις αν έκαστοις γίνηται κατα τοις άγγιναις εν παιτι τε αυ τω βίω, τον τε άριστον δοκούντα είναι κοσμούντας και τον μη ψέγουντας. ποιηθης δε έστω των τοιούτων μη άπας, άλλα γεγονως πρώτον μεν μη έλαπτον πεντήκοντα έτον, μηδε αυ των όποσι ποιησιν μεν και Μούσαν ικανως κεκτημενοι εν αυτοις εισι, καλον δε έργον και D επιφανεις μηδεν δρασαντες πώποτε οσοι δε άγαθοι τε αυτοι και τιμιοι εν τη πόλει, έργων όντες δημιουργοι καλων, τα των τοιούτων άδεσθω ποιήματα, εαν και μη μουσικα πεφυκη, κρίσις δε αυτων έστω παρα τε τω παιδετη και τοις άλλοις νομοφυλαξι, τοστο άποδιδοντων αυτοις γέρας, παρηγησιαν εν Μούσαις ειναι μόνοις, τοις δε άλλοις μηδεμιαν εξουσιαν γγινεσθαι μηδε τινα τολμαν άδειν άδοκιμον Μούσαν [μη κριναν- E των των νομοφυλακων],1 μηδε αν ήδιων η των Θαμυρου τε και Όρφεων υμνων, άλλ οσα τε ιεραι κρηθεντα ποιήματα έδοθη τοις θεοις και οσα άγαθον οντα άνδρων ψέγουντα η επαινοντα τινας εκριθη μετριος δραν το τοιούτον.

Τα αυτα δε λεγω στρατειας τε περι και της εν ποιησει παρηγησιας γυναιξι τε και άνδρασιν ομοιως γγινεσθαι δειν. χρη δε αναφυρειν παραδει-

LAWS, BOOK VIII

en masse, and at other times they shall go in sections. Along with sacrifices, they must continually devise noble games, to serve as festival-contests, modelled as closely as possible on those of war. At each of these they must distribute prizes and awards of merit, and compose for one another speeches of praise and blame, according to the character each one exhibits not only in the contests, but in his life generally, magnifying him who is accounted most good and blaming him who is not. Such speeches not everyone shall compose; for, first, no one who is under fifty years old shall compose one, and further, no one shall do so who, though he may be fully proficient in poetry and music, has not as yet performed any noble or notable deed. But, even though they be not musical, those poems shall be sung which are composed by men¹ who are personally good and honoured in the State as performers of noble deeds. The adjudication of these shall lie with the Educator and the rest of the Law-wardens, who shall grant them the sole privilege of free speech in song; whereas to the others no permission shall be given; nor yet shall anyone venture to sing an unauthorised song—not even should it be sweeter than the hymns of Orpheus or of Thamyras,—but only such sacred poems as have won the judges' approval and have been presented to the gods, or those by good men which have been adjudged to have duly distributed praise or blame.

In regard both to military operations and to freedom of poetic speech I state that the same rules shall apply equally to both men and women. The lawgiver ought to commune with himself and

¹ Cp. 936 A.
κυντα ἐαυτῷ τὸν νομοθέτην τῷ λόγῳ. Φέρε, τίνας
830 ποτὲ τρέφω τὴν πόλιν ὅλην παρασκευάσας; ἂρι
οὐκ ἄθλητας τῶν μεγίστων ἁγώνων, οἷς ἀνταγωνισ-
σταί μυρίοι ύπάρχονσι; Καὶ πάντα γε, φαίη τις ἄν
ορθῶς λέγων. Τῇ δήτα; εἰ πύκτας ὑ παγκρατια-
στάς ἐτρέφομεν ὑ τι τῶν τοιούτων ἔτερον ἁγωνι-
σμάτων ἁθλούντας, ἄρα εἰς αὐτὸν ἄν ἁπηντώμεν
τὸν ἁγώνα ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ οὐδενὶ καθ’ ἡμέραν
προσμαχόμενοι; ἡ πύκτας γε ὄντες παμπόλλας ἄν
ἡμέρας ἐμπροσθεν τοῦ ἁγώνοις ἐμανθάνομεν τε ἂν
Β μάχεσθαι καὶ διεπονούμεθα, μμούμενοι πάντα
ἐκεῖνα ὅποιοι ἐμέλλομεν εἰς τότε χρήσεσθαι περὶ
tῆς νίκης διαμαχόμενοι; καὶ ὡς ἐγγύτατα τοῦ
ὀμοίου ἄντε ἵμαντων σφαῖρας ἂν περιεδού-
μεθα, ὅπως αἱ πληγαί τε καὶ αἱ τῶν πληγῶν εὐλά-
βειαι διεμελετῶμεν εἰς τὸ δυνατὸν ἱκανός; εἰ τε τις
ἡμῖν συγγυμναστῶν συνεβαίνει ἀπορία πλείων, ἄρ’
ἀν δείσαντες τὸν τῶν ἀνοίτων γέλωτα οὐκ ἂν ἐτολ-
μῶμεν κρεμανύντες εἰδολῶν ἁψύχου γυμνάζεσθαι
πρὸς αὐτό; καὶ ἔτι πάντων τῶν τε ἐμψύχων καὶ
C τῶν ἁψύχων ἀπορήσαντές ποτε, ἐν ἐρήμῳ συγ-
γυμναστῶν ἄρα γε οὐκ ἐτολμήσαμεν ἄν αὐτοὶ πρὸς
ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς σκιαμαχεῖν ὄντως; ἡ τί ποτε ἄλλο
τὴν τοῦ χειρονομεῖν μελέτην ἂν τις φαίη γεγονέναι;
ΚΑ. Σχεδόν, ὁ ἔενε, οὐδὲν ἄλλο γε πλὴν τούτο
αὐτὸ ὅ συ νῦν ἐφθεγξαι.
ΑΘ. Τί οὖν; τὸ τῆς πόλεως ἴμιν μάχιμον
ἡ χειρὸν τι παρασκευασάμενον τῶν τοιούτων
ἀγωνιστῶν εἰς τὸν μέγιστον τῶν ἁγώνων ἐκάστοτε
tολμήσει παριέναι, διαμαχούμενον περὶ ψυχῆς
[τε] καὶ παιδῶν καὶ χρημάτων καὶ ὅλης τῆς
D πόλεως; καὶ ταῦτα δὴ φοβηθεῖς αὐτῶν ὁ νομο-
130
reason thus—"Come now, what men am I to rear up, when I have made ready the whole State? Are they not to be competitors in the greatest of contests, wherein their antagonists will be numberless?"

"Most certainly," one would rightly reply. What then? Suppose we had been rearing boxers or pancratiasts or competitors in any similar branch of athletics, should we have gone straight into the contest without previously engaging in daily combat with someone? If we were boxers, for a great many days before the contest we should have been learning how to fight, and working hard, practising in mimicry all those methods we meant to employ on the day we should be fighting for victory, and imitating the real thing as nearly as possible: thus, we should don padded gloves instead of proper ring-gloves, so as to get the best possible practice in giving blows and dodging them; and if we chanced to be very short of training-mates, do you suppose that we should be deterred by fear of the laughter of fools from hanging up a lifeless dummy and practising on it? Indeed, if ever we were in a desert, and without either live or lifeless training-mates, would we not have recourse to shadow-fighting of the most literal kind, against ourselves? Or what else should one call the practice of pugilistic posturing?

Clin. There is no other name for it, Stranger, than the one you have just given to it.

Ath. What then? Is the fighting force of our State to venture to come forward every time to fight for their lives, their children, their goods, and for the whole State, after a less thorough preparation than the competitors we have been describing? And so is their lawgiver, through fear lest these training-
PLATO

θέτης τὰ πρὸς ἄλληλους γυμνᾶσια μὴ φαίνηται τίσι γελοία, οὐκ ἂρα νομοθετῆσει στρατεύεσθαι προστάττων μάλιστα μὲν ἐκάστης ἡμέρας τὰ γε σμικρὰ χωρὶς τῶν ὀπλῶν, χοροὺς τε εἰς ταῦτα ἄμα καὶ γυμναστικὴν πᾶσαν ξυντείνων; τὰς δὲ οἶνον τινὰς μείζους τε καὶ ἑνοπλίους γυμνασίας μὴ ἕλαττον ἢ κατὰ μὴνα ἐκαστον ποιεῖσθαι

Εἰ προστάξει, ἀμίλλας τε πρὸς ἄλληλους ποιομένους κατὰ πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν, ἐπὶ κατάληψιν χωρίς ἀμιλλομένους καὶ ἑνέδρας, καὶ πᾶσαν μιμουμένους τὸν πολεμικὴν οὕτως σφαιρομαχεῖν τε καὶ βολαίς ὡς ἐγγύτατα τῶν ἀληθῶν χρωμένως ὑποκινδύνους βέλεσιν, ὃπως μὴ παντάπασιν ἀφοβος ἢ πρὸς ἄλληλους γίγνηται παιδία, δειμματα δὲ παρέχῃ καὶ τινὰ τρόπον δηλοὶ τὸν τε 831 εὐψυχον καὶ τὸν μὴ, καὶ τοῖς μὲν τιμᾶς, τοῖς δὲ καὶ ἀτιμίας διανέμων ὀρθῶς τὴν πόλιν ὅλην εἰς τὸν ἀληθῶν ἀγώνα δία βίου παρασκευάζῃ χρησίμην καὶ δὴ καὶ τινὸς ἀποθανόντος οὕτως, ὡς ἀκουσίον τοῦ φόνου γειομένου, τιθῇ τὸν ἀποκτείναντα κατὰ νόμον καθαρθέντα καθαρὸν εἶναι χεῖρας, ἡγούμενους ἀνθρώπων μὲν τελευτησάντων μὴ πολλῶν ἐτέρους πάλιν οὐχ λοιπὸν φύσεσθαι, φόβου δὲ οἶνον τελευτησάντως ἐν πάσι τοῖς τοιούτοις βάσανον οὐχ εὑρίσειν τῶν τε ἀμεινῶν καὶ Β χειρόνων, οὐ σμικρὸν πόλει μείζον κακὸν ἕκεινον.

ΚΑ. Ἐνμφαίμεν ἂν ἡμεῖς γε, ὃ ἐξένε, τὰ τοιαῦτα δεῖν καὶ νομοθετεῖν καὶ ἑπιτηδεύειν πόλιν ἀπασαν.

ἈΘ. Ἄρ' οὖν γυγνωσκομεν ἁπαντες τὴν αἰτίαν

---

1 ἑνοπλίους cf. Stallb., England: ἐλάττους MSS.

1 "Sphaeromachia" was a (hand) ball contest between opposing sides (something like our hockey or polo matches).

132
bouts may appear ridiculous to some, to refrain from laying down laws whereby he will ordain field-operations, of which the minor kind, without heavy arms, will take place daily, if possible,—and to this end both the choristry and all the gymnastic shall be directed,—while the others, as a major kind of gymnastics in full armour, he shall order to be held at least once a month? In this latter kind they will engage in contests with one another throughout the whole country, contending in the capturing of forts and in ambuscades and in all forms of mimic warfare; in fact, they shall do literal fighting with balls¹ and darts as nearly real as possible,—though the points of the darts shall be made less dangerous,—in order that their games of combat may not be devoid of some element of alarm, but may provide terrors and indicate to some extent who is stout-hearted and who not: to the former the lawgiver shall duly assign honours, to the latter degradation, that thus he may prepare the whole State to be serviceable throughout life in the real contest. Moreover, if a man gets killed in these sham fights, inasmuch as the murder is involuntary, he shall pronounce the slayer to be pure of hands, when he has been legally purified; for he will reflect that, when a few men die, others equally good will grow up in their place, whereas, once fear is, so to speak, dead, he will be unable to find a test to distinguish, in all such cases, the good from the bad,—and that is a far greater evil than the other for a State.

clin. We, at least, Stranger, would certainly agree that every State should both ordain and practise these things.

ath. Are we all aware of the reason why such
διότι ποτὲ νῦν ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν ἡ τοιαύτη χορεία καὶ ἀγωνία σχεδὸν οὐδαμὴ οὐδαμῶς ἐστὶν, εἰ μὴ πάντα τι σμικρά; ἢ φῶμεν δὲ ἀμαθιαν τῶν πολλῶν καὶ τῶν τιθέντων αὐτοῖς τοὺς νόμους;

κα. Τάχ’ ἄν.

ἀ. Οὐδαμῶς, ὦ μακάριε Κλεινία: δύο δὲ χρῆ

ὑπ’ εὐρτὸς πλούτου πάντα χρόνον ἀσχολοῦν ποιοῦντος τῶν ἄλλων ἐπιμελεῖσθαι πλὴν τῶν ἵδιων κτημάτων, ἐξ ὧν κρεμαμένη πᾶσα ψυχὴ πολίτου παντὸς οὐκ ἂν ποτὲ δύναιτο τῶν ἄλλων ἐπιμελείαν ἵσχειν πλὴν τοῦ καθ’ ἡμέραν κέρδους· καὶ ὃ τι μὲν πρὸς τοῦτο φέρει μάθημα ἢ καὶ ἐπιτήδευμα, ἱδία πᾶσα μανθάνει τε καὶ ἀσκεῖν ἐτοιμότατός ἐστι, τῶν δὲ ἄλλων καταγελά.

ο. τούτῳ μὲν ἐν καὶ ταύτῃ μίαν αἰτίαν χρῆ φάναι τοῦ μήτε τοῦτο μήτ’ ἄλλο μηδὲν καλὸν κἀγαθὸν ἐθέλειν ἐπιτήδευμα πόλιν σπουδάζειν, ἄλλα διὰ τὴν τοῦ χρυσοῦ τε καὶ ἀργύρου ἀπληστίαν πᾶσαν μὲν τέχνην καὶ μηχανῆς καλλίω τε καὶ ἀσχημονεστεραν ἐθέλειν ὑπομένειν πάντα ἄνδρα, εἰ μέλλει πλούσιος ἐσεσθαι, καὶ πράξεων πράττειν ὁσίων τε καὶ ἀνόσιον καὶ πάντως ἀἰσχράν, μηδὲν δυσχεραί.

Ἐνοντα, ἐὰν μόνον ἔχῃ δύναμιν καθάπερ θηρίῳ τοῦ φαγεῖν παντοδαπὰ καὶ πιεῖν ὀσαύτως καὶ ἀφροδισίων πᾶσαν πάντως παρασχεῖν πλησμονῆν.

κα. Ὅρθος.

ἀ. Αὐτὴ μὲν τοῖνυν, ἢν λέγω, μία κείσθω διακωλύονσα αἰτία τοῦ μήτε ἄλλο καλὸν μὴτε τὰ πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον ἴκανὸς ἐάσασθαι ἀσκεῖν τὰς

1 ἐάσασθαι: ἐσάα MSS., edd. (bracketed by Hermann).
choristry and such contests do not at present exist anywhere in the States, except to a very small extent? Shall we say that this is due to the ignorance of the populace and of those who legislate for them?

CLIN. Possibly.

ATH. Not so, by any means, my ingenious Clinias! What we ought to say is that there are two causes, and both most weighty ones.

CLIN. What are they?

ATH. The first springs from a lust for wealth 1 which allows a man no leisure time for attention to anything else save his own private property; and when the soul of every citizen hangs upon this, it is incapable of attending to matters other than daily gain. Whate
tsoever science or pursuit leads to this, every man individually is most ready to learn and to practise; but all else he laughs to scorn. This we must assert to be one particular cause why a State is unwilling to be in earnest about this, or any other, fine and noble pursuit; and why, on the other hand, every individual, because of his greed for silver and gold, is willing to toil at every art and device, noble or ignoble, if he is likely to get rich by it,—willing, too, to perform actions both holy and unholy—nay, utterly shameful—without a scruple, provided only that he is able to sate himself to repletion, like a beast, with all manner of foods and drinks and wenchings.

CLIN. True.

ATH. Then let this which I describe be laid down as one cause which hinders the States from adequately practising either military operations or any other

1 Cp. 705 A, 742 D.
πόλεις, ἄλλ' ἐμπόροις τε καὶ ναυκλήρους καὶ
dιακόνους πάντως τοὺς φύσει κοσμίους τῶν ἀνθ-
ρώπων ἀπεργαζομένη, τοὺς δὲ ἀνδρείους ληστᾶς
cαὶ τοιχωρύχους καὶ ἱεροσύλους καὶ πολεμικοὺς
832 καὶ τυραννικοὺς ποιοῦσα, καὶ μάλ' ἐνίοτε οὐκ
ἀφεῖς ὄντας, δυστυχοῦντάς γε μήν.

κλ. Πῶς λέγεις;

αθ. Πῶς μὲν οὖν αὐτοὺς οὐ λέγομι' ἀν τὸ
παράπαν δυστυχέεις, οἷς γε ἀνάγκη διὰ βίον
πεινῶσι τὴν ψυχὴν ἀεὶ τὴν αὐτῶν διεξελθεῖν;

κλ. Ἀὕτη μὲν τοίνυν μία· τὴν δὲ δὴ δευτέραν
αἰτίαν τίνα λέγεις, ὃ ξένε; 

αθ. Καλῶς ὑπέμνησας.

με. 1 Ἀὕτη μὲν δὴ, φής σὺ, μία διὰ βίον ἀπληστος ζήτησις, παρέχουσα ἀσχολον ἔκαστον,
ἐμπόδιος γίγνεται τοῦ μή καλῶς ἀσκεῖν τὰ περὶ τὸν
Β πόλεμον ἐκάστους. ἔστω· τὴν δὲ δὴ δευτέραν λέγει.

αθ. Μῶν οὔ λέγειν ἀλλὰ διατρίβειν δοκῶ δι' ἀπορίαν;

με. Ὅυκ, ἄλλα οἷον μισῶν δοκεῖς ἡμῖν κολάζειν
tὸ τοιοῦτον ἱθὸς μᾶλλον τοῦ δέοντος τῷ παρα-
pεπτυκότι λόγῳ.

αθ. Καλλιστα, ὃ ξένοι, ἐπεπλήξατε· καὶ τὸ
μετὰ τοῦτο ἀκούστι' ἀν, ὡς ἐσικεν.

κλ. Λέγε μόνον.

αθ. Τὰς οὐ πολιτείας ἐγώγη αἰτίας εἶναι φημι
ἀς πολλάκις εἰρηκα ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν λόγοις, δημο-
κρατίαν καὶ ὀλυγαρχίαν καὶ τυραννίδα. τοῦτων
γὰρ δὴ πολιτεία μὲν οὐδεμία, στασιωτείαί δὲ

1 Αὕτη κτλ. I assign this reply and the next to Meg. (with
Apelt and W.-Mollendorff), not to Clin., as Zur. and most
edd.

136
noble pursuits and which turns men who are of a quiet nature into traders, ship-owners, and servants, while of the bold it makes pirates, burglars, temple-robbers, fighters and despots,—and that though, in some cases, they are not ill-natured, but merely ill-fortuned.

CLIN. How so?

ATH. Well, how could I describe otherwise than as utterly unfortunate men who are compelled to go through life with hunger always in their own souls?

CLIN. This, then, is one cause: what is the second cause you speak of, Stranger?

ATH. You are right in reminding me.

MEG. One cause, as you assert, is this lifelong insatiable pursuit, which wholly engrosses each man, and hinders each and all from rightly practising military operations. Be it so: now tell us the second cause.

ATH. Do you think that I am delaying to do so because I am at a loss?

MEG. No; but we think that, owing to a sort of hatred against the character you describe, you are castigating it more severely than is required by the argument now on hand.

ATH. Your rebuke is just, Strangers; you want, it seems, to hear what comes next.

CLIN. Only say on.

ATH. There lies a cause, as I affirm, in those non-polities which I have often mentioned in our previous discourse,—namely, democracy, oligarchy, and tyranny. For none of these is a polity, but the

1 Cp. 691 B, Rep. 410 C.
2 i.e. for gold. Cp. Virgil's "auri sacra fames."
3 712 C ff., 713 E ff.
πᾶσαι λέγοις’ ἂν ὁρθότατα· ἐκόντων γὰρ ἐκοῦσα οὐδεμία, ἀλλ’ ἀκόντων ἐκοῦσα ἀρχεὶ σὺν ἀεὶ τινι βίαι, φοβούμενος δὲ ἀρχών ἀρχόμενον οὔτε καλὸν οὔτε πλοῦσιον οὔτε ἰσχυρὸν οὔτ’ ἀνδρεῖον οὔτε τὸ παράπαυν πολεμικὸν ἑκὼν ἔσει γίγνεσθαι ποτε. ταῦτ’ οὖν ἐστὶ τὰ δύο πάντων μὲν σμικροῦ διαφέροντως αὐτία, τούτων δ’ οὖν οὖν διαφέρει.

D τὸ δὲ τῆς νῦν πολιτείας, ἡν νομοθετοῦμεν, ἡν 1 λέγομεν ἐκπέφευγεν ἀμφότερα· σχολὴν τε γὰρ ἀγεὶ πον μεγίστην, ἐλεύθεροί τε ἢπ’ ἀλλήλων εἰσὶ, φιλοχρήματοι δὲ ἦκιστ’ ἂν, οἶμαι, γίγνοιτ’ ἂν ἐκ τούτων τῶν νόμων· ὥστ’ εἰκότως ἁμα καὶ κατὰ λόγον ἡ τοιαύτη κατάστασις πολιτείας μόνη δέξαιτ’ ἂν τῶν νῦν τὴν διαπερανθέσαν παιδείαν τε ἁμα καὶ παιδιὰν πολεμικὴν ἀποτελεσθείσαν ὁρθάς τῷ λόγῳ.

κλ. Καλῶς.

α. "Ἄρ’ οὖν οὐ τούτως ἐφεξῆς ἐστὶ μνησθῆναι

Ε ποτε περὶ ἀπάντων τῶν ἀγώνων τῶν γυμνικῶν, ὡς ὅσα μὲν αὐτῶν πρὸς πολεμόν ἐστιν ἀγωνίσματα ἐπιτηδευτέον καὶ θετέον ἀθλα νικητήρια, ὅσα δὲ μὴ χαίρειν ἐστέον; ἢ δ’ ἐστιν, εἰς ἀρχῆς ἁμεινον ῥηθήναι τε καὶ νομοθετηθῆναι. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν τὰ περὶ δρόμον καὶ τάχος ὄλως ἅρ’ οὖν θετέον;

κλ. Θετέον.

α. "Εστὶ γοῦν πάντων πολεμικώτατον ἡ σώματος ἡγύτης πάντως, ἡ μὲν ἀπὸ τῶν ποδῶν, ἡ δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν χειρῶν· φυγεῖν μὲν καὶ ἐλεῖν

1 νομοθετοῦμεν, & Badham: νομοθετούμενοi MSS.

138
truest name for them all would be "faction-State"; for none of them is a form of voluntary rule over willing subjects, but a voluntary rule over unwilling subjects accompanied always by some kind of force; and the ruler, through fear of the subject, will never voluntarily allow him to become noble or wealthy or strong or brave or in any way warlike. These, then, are the two main causes of nearly everything, and certainly of the conditions we described. The polity, however, for which we are now legislating has escaped both these causes; for not only does it enjoy a great amount of leisure, ¹ but the citizens also are free from one another's domination, and as a consequence of these laws of ours they will be the least likely of men to be money-lovers. Hence it is both natural and logical that of all existing polities this type alone should welcome the system above described, which combines military schooling with sport, when we have rightly completed that description.


Ath. The next step, then, is to remind ourselves, with regard to all gymnastic contests, that all such as afford training for war should be instituted, and should have prizes assigned to them, but all that do not do so must be set aside. What these contests consist in, it will be well to have described and ordained at the beginning. First, then, should we not ordain contests in running and speed in general?

Clin. We should.

Ath. Most important of all things for war is, no doubt, general activity of the body, of hands as well as feet—activity of foot for flight and pursuit, and of

¹ Cp. 806 D, 828 D, E, etc.
833 ή τῶν ποδῶν, ἡ δ' ἐν ταῖς συμπλοκαῖς μάχῃ καὶ σύστασις ἴσχύος καὶ ῥόμης δεομένη.

κ.λ. Τι μήν;

α. Θ. Οὐ μήν χωρίς γε ὁπλων οὐδετέρα τὴν μεγίστην ἔχει χρείαν.

κ.λ. Πῶς γὰρ ἄν;

α. Θ. Σταδιοδρόμου δὴ πρῶτον ὁ κήρυξ ἦμῖν, καθάπερ νῦν, ἐν τοῖς ἀγώσι παρακαλεῖ: ὁ δὲ εἶσεισιν ὁπλα ἔχων ψυλὼ δὲ ἀθλα οὐ θήσομεν ἀγωνιστή. πρῶτος δὲ εἶσεισιν ὁ τὸ στάδιον ἀμιλλησόμενος σὺν τοῖς ὁπλοῖς, δεύτερος δὲ ὁ Β τὸν δίαυλον, καὶ τρίτος ὁ τὸν ἐφίππιον, καὶ δὴ καὶ τέταρτος ὁ τὸν δόλιχον, καὶ πέμπτος δὲ ὅν ἀφήσομεν πρῶτον ὦπλισμένον, ἐξήκοντα μὲν σταδίων μῆκος πρὸς ἱερὸν 'Αρεός τι καὶ πάλιν, βαρύτερον, ὁπλίτην ἐπονομάζοντες, λειστέρας ὁδοὺ διαμιλλῶμενον, τὸν δὲ ἄλλον τοξότην πᾶσαν τοξικὴν ἐχοντα στολῆν, σταδίων δὲ ἐκατόν πρὸς 'Ἀπόλλωνος τε καὶ 'Αρτέμιδος ἱερὸν τὴν δὴ ὄρον τε καὶ παντοίας χώρας ἀμιλλῶμενον. καὶ τιθέντες

C τὸν ἀγῶνα μενοῦμεν τούτους, ἐως ἂν ἔλθωσι, καὶ τῷ νικῶντι τὰ νικητήρια δώσομεν ἑκάστων.

κ.λ. Ὁρθῶς.

α. Θ. Τριττὰ δὴ ταῦτα ἀθλήματα διανοηθῶμεν, ἐν μὲν παιδικόν, ἐν δὲ ἀγενείων, ἐν δὲ ἀνδρῶν καὶ τοῖς μὲν τῶν ἀγενείων τὰ δύο τῶν τριῶν τοῦ μῆκους τοῦ δρόμου θήσομεν, τοῖς δὲ παισί τὰ τούτων ἡμίσεα, τοξόταις τε καὶ ὁπλίταις ἀμιλλωμένοις γυναιξὶ δὲ, κόραις μὲν ἀνήβοις γυμναῖς 140
hand for the stand-up fighting at close quarters which calls for sturdiness and strength.

**CLIN.** No doubt.

**ATH.** Yet, surely, neither of these is of the greatest service when it lacks weapons.

**CLIN.** Certainly not.

**ATH.** So at our contests the herald (as is now the practice) shall summon first the short-distance runner: he shall enter fully armed; and for an unarmed competitor we shall offer no prize. First, then, there shall enter the man who, with his arms, is to run the furlong,—second, the runner of the quarter-mile,—third, the half-miler,—fourth, the runner of the three-quarters,—and fifth, that runner whom we shall despatch first, fully armed, to run a distance of four miles to a temple of Ares and back; he shall be in heavier armour, and be called a hoplite, and he shall run over a smooth course, while his antagonist 1 shall be dressed in the full equipment of an archer, and shall run a course of twelve miles over hills and varied country to a temple of Apollo and Artemis. And having thus set up the contests, we shall await the return of these runners, and to the winner of each race we shall award the prize.

**CLIN.** Very right.

**ATH.** Let us plan these contests in three divisions—one for children, one for youths, and one for men. We shall ordain that the course for the youths' races shall be two-thirds of the full course, and that for children one-half, when they compete either as archers or as hoplites. In the case of females, we shall

---

1 In this 5th race the hoplite, running the shorter course competes (on time) against the archer, running the longer course.
στάδιον καὶ δίαυλον καὶ ἐφίππιον καὶ δόλιχον,
D ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ δρόμῳ ἀμιλλωμέναις· ταῖς δὲ τρια-
καιδεκέτεσι μέχρι γάμου μενούσης κοινωνίας, μὴ
μακρότερον εἰκοσιν ἐτῶν μηδ’ ἐλαττον ὀκτωκαί-
δεκα· πρεποῦσθη δὲ στολή ταύτας ἑσταλμένας
καταβατέον ἐπὶ τὴν ἀμιλλαν τούτων τῶν δρόμων.
Καὶ τὰ μὲν περὶ δρόμους ἀνδράσι τε καὶ γυναιξὶ
tαύτα ἔστω· τὰ δὲ κατ’ ἱσχύν, αὐτὶ μὲν πάλης
καὶ τῶν τοιούτων τὰ νῦν ὅσα βαρέα τὴν ἐν τοῖς
Ε ὀπλοὺς μάχην, ἐνα τε πρὸς ἕνα διαμαχομένους
καὶ δύο πρὸς δύο, καὶ μέχρι δέκα πρὸς δέκα
dιαμιλλωμένους ἀλλήλους. ἢ δὲ τὸν μὴ παθόντα
ἡ ποιῆσαντα δεῖ νικᾶν καὶ εἰς ὁπόσα, καθάπερ
νῦν ἐν τῇ πάλη διενομοθετήσαντο οἱ περί τὴν
πάλην αὐτὴν τῷ καλῶς παλαιόντος ἔργον καὶ
μὴ καλῶς, ταύτων δὴ καὶ τοὺς περὶ ὀπλομαχίαν
άκρους παρακαλοῦντας χρὴ τούτους συννομο-
θετεῖν κελεύειν τὶς νικᾶν ἀρα δίκαιος περὶ ταύτας
834 αὐ τὰς μάχας, ὁ τι μὴ παθὼν ἡ δράσας, καὶ τὸν
ἥττωμενον ὡσαύτως ἢτις διακρίνει τάξις. ταύτα
δὲ καὶ περὶ τῶν θηλείων ἐστω νομοθετούμενα
tῶν μέχρι γάμου.
Πελταστικὴν δὲ ὀλὴν ἀντιστήσασαν δεῖ τῇ
tου παγκρατίου μάχη, τόξωι καὶ πέλταις καὶ
ἀκοντίωι καὶ λίθων 1 [βολή] ἐκ χειρὸς τε καὶ
σφενδόνης 2 ἀμιλλωμένων, διαθεμένων αὐ τοῖς
τούτων νόμων, τῷ κάλλιστα ἀποδιδόντι τὰ περὶ
tαύτα νόμιμα τὰ γέρα καὶ τὰς νίκας διανέμειν.
Τὸ δὲ μετὰ ταύτα ἔπειτων δὴ περὶ ἀγώνος

1 λίθω Schneider: λίθων MSS. (omitting βολή).
ordain races of a furlong, a quarter-mile, a half-mile, and a three-quarters for girls under the age of puberty, who shall be stripped, and shall race on the course itself; and girls over thirteen shall continue to take part until married,\(^1\) up to the age of twenty at most, or at least eighteen; but these, when they come forward and compete in these races, must be clad in decent apparel.

Let such, then, be the rules concerning races for men and women. As to trials of strength, instead of wrestling and the other "strong-man" events now in vogue, we shall ordain fencing in armour, both in solo-contests and in team-competitions of anything from two to ten a side. As regards the hits which a winner is to make or avoid, and how many points he must score,—just as now in the case of wrestling, those who deal with this art have fixed by law the points of good wrestling and bad, so likewise we must summon the experts in fencing under arms, and bid them help us to draw up laws by which to decide the proper winner in such fights, what he must do and what he must avoid,—and similarly the rules for determining the loser. For females also, up to the age of marriage, the same laws shall be laid down.

And in the place of the pancratium we must establish a general tourney for peltasts, who shall compete with bows, targes, javelins, and stones flung either by hand or by sling; and for these, too, we shall prescribe laws for assigning the rewards and prizes to the man who best conforms to the rules governing such contests.

After these, the next thing to ordain will be

\(^1\) Cp. 785 B.
Β γύγνοιτο ἔξης ἄν νομοθετοῦμεν. ῆππων δὲ ἡμῖν χρείᾳ μὲν οὔτε τις πολλῶν οὔτε πολλῇ, κατὰ γε δὴ Κρήτην, ὡστε ἀναγκαῖον καὶ τὰς σπουδὰς ἐλάττους γύγνεσθαι τάς τε ἐν τῇ τροφῇ καὶ τὰς περὶ ἁγιώναν αὐτῶν. ἀρματος μὲν οὖν καὶ τὸ παράπαν οὔτε τις τροφεὺς ἡμῖν ἐστὶν οὔτε τις φιλοτιμία πρὸς ταῦτα οὐδενὶ γύγνοιτ’ ἂν λόγον ἑχουσα, ὡστε τούτου μὲν ἁγιώνας, < endors > οὐκ ἐπιχώριον ἔσται, τιθέντας νοῦν μήτε ἔχειν μήτε δοκεῖν κεκτῆσθαι· μονόπτοις δὲ ἄθλα τιθέντες,

C πώλοις τε ἀβόλοις καὶ τελείων τε καὶ ἀβόλων τοῖς μέσοις καὶ αὐτοῖς δὴ τοῖς τέλος ἑχουσι, κατὰ φύσιν τῆς χώρας ἄν τὴν ἱστικὴν παιδιὰν ἀποδι- δοίμεν. ἐστώ δὴ τούτων τε αὐτῶν κατὰ νόμον ἀμιλλά τε καὶ φιλονεικία, φυλάρχους τε καὶ ἱππάρχους δεδομένη κοινὴ κρίσις ἀπάντων τῶν τε δρόμων αὐτῶν καὶ τῶν καταβαίνοντων μεθ’ ὀπλών ἰσανοῦ δὲ ὀπλῶν οὔτ’ ἐν τοῖς γυμνικοῖς οὔτ’ ἐνταῦθα τιθέντες ἁγιώνας ὀρθῶς ἄν νομοθε-

D τοὐμεν. τοξότης δὲ ἄφ’ ῆππων Κρῆς οὐκ ἄχριστος, οὐδ’ ἀκούστης, ὡστε ἐστω καὶ τούτων παιδιᾶς χάριν ἔρις τε καὶ ἁγιώνα. θηλείας δὲ περὶ τούτων νόμως μὲν καὶ ἐπιτάξεσιν οὐκ ἀξία βιάζεσθαι τῆς κοινωνίας· ἐὰν δὲ ἔξ αὐτῶν τῶν ἐμπροσθεν παιδευμάτων εἰς ἔθος ἱόντων ἡ φύσις ἐνδεχῆται καὶ μὴ δυσχεραῖν παιδας ἡ παρθένους κοινωνεῖν, ἐὰν καὶ μὴ ψέγειν.

’Ἀγωνία δὴ νῦν ἦδη καὶ μάθησις γυμναστικῆς, ὅσα τε ἐν ἀγώσι καὶ ὅσα καθ’ ἡμέραν ἐν διδασκά-
horse-racing. Here, in a country like Crete, there is not much need of horses—not in great numbers,—so that inevitably less attention is paid either to the rearing or the racing of horses. As to chariots, we have no one who keeps them, nor is anyone here likely to cherish any great ambition respecting them, so that to establish contests for them would run counter to native custom, and would not only seem, but be, a foolish act. If, however, we establish prizes for races of riding-horses—both for young colts, and for three-year-olds, and for those of full age—we shall be adapting the sport of horse-racing to the character of the country. Of these horsemen there shall be established by law a competitive contest, and the phylarchs and hipparchs shall act as public judges both of all the races and of the armed competitors. For unarmed competitors we should be wrong in establishing prizes, either here or in the gymnastic sports. And for a Cretan there is credit in being a mounted archer or javelin-man, so we shall have contests and matches of a sportive kind between these also. As to women,—it is not worth while to make compulsory laws and rules about their taking part in such sports; but if, as a result of earlier training which has grown into a habit, their nature allows, and does not forbid, girls or maidens to take part, let them do so without blame.

So now at length we have reached the end both of competition and instruction in gymnastic, so far as concerns our education by means of contests and of daily teaching. Most of our account of music has likewise been completed; the regulations about

1 ἀγωνίας my conj. (and England, independently) for ἀγωνιστὰς of MSS. : <δ> I add, after Ast.
πεπέρανται, τὰ δὲ ραψφώδων καὶ τῶν τούτων ἑπομένων, καὶ οὕτως ἐν ἑορταῖς ἀμιλλαὶ χορῶν ἀναγκαία γίγνεσθαι ταχθέντων τοὺς θεοὺς τε καὶ τοῖς μετὰ θεῶν μηνῶν καὶ ἡμερῶν καὶ ἑνιαυτῶν κοσμηθῆσονται τότε, εἴτε τριετηρίδες εἴτε αὖ καὶ

835 διὰ πέμπτων ἐτῶν εἰϑ’ ὅπη καὶ ὅπως ἀν ἐννοιαν διδόντων τῶν θεῶν τάξεως πέρι διανεμήθωσι· τότε καὶ τοὺς μουσικῆς ἁγώνας χρῆ προσδοκάν κατὰ μέρος ἁγωνιεῖσθαι ταχθέντας ὑπὸ τε ἀθλοθετῶν καὶ τοῦ παιδετοῦ τῶν νέων καὶ τῶν νομοφυλάκων, εἰς κοινὸν περὶ αὐτῶν τούτων συνελθόντων καὶ γενομένων νομοθετῶν αὐτῶν, τοῦ τε πότε καὶ τίνες καὶ μετὰ τίνων τοὺς ἁγώνας ποιήσουσιν περὶ ἀπάντων χορῶν καὶ χορείας. οἷα δὲ ἔκαστα αὐτῶν εἶναι δεὶ κατὰ λόγον καὶ κατ’ ὀδῆς καὶ καθ’ ἄρμονίας ρυθμοῖς κραδείσας Β καὶ ὅρχησει, πολλάκις εὑρηται τῷ πρώτῳ νομοθέτῃ, καθ’ αὐτὸς δευτέρους δεὶ μεταδιώκοντας νομοθετεῖν, καὶ τοὺς ἁγώνας προπόντως ἐκάστοις θύμασιν ἐν χρόνοις προσήκουσα νεώμαντας ἑορτὰς ἀποδοῦναι τῇ πόλει ἑορτάζειν.

Τάδε μὲν οὖν καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα οὕτε χαλεπῶν γυνώνας τίνα τρόπου χρῆ τάξεως ἐννοούμοι λαγχάνειν, οὐδ’ αὐ τετανθέμενα ἐνθα ἡ ἐνθα μέγα τῇ

C πόλει κέρδου ή ξημίαν ἀν φέροι· ἄ δὲ μη σμικρῶν διαφέρει πείθειν τε χαλεπῶν, θεοῦ μὲν μάλιστα ἔργον, εἰ πως οἶον τε ἢν ἐπιτάξεις αὐτὰς παρ’ ἐκείνου γίγνεσθαι, νῦν δὲ ἀνθρώπου τολμηροῦ κίνδυνεύει δεῖσθαι τινός, ὅς παρῆσιν διαφερόντως τιμῶν ἐρεῖ τὰ δοκοῦντα ἀριστ’ εἴναι πόλει καὶ πολίταις, ἐν ψυχαῖς διεφθαρμέναις τὸ πρέπον καὶ

146
rhapsodes, however, and their retinue, and the choral contests which must accompany festivals are matters to be arranged after the gods and demi-gods have had their months, days and years assigned to them; then it will be seen whether they should be biennial fixtures or quadrennial, or what mode and manner of arranging them the gods may suggest. Then also, one expects, the musical contests will be held in sections, as arranged by the Masters of the Games and the Educator of the youth and the Law-wardens, meeting for this special purpose and acting in person as legislators to determine what persons, and when and with whom, are to frame the contests for all the choruses and choristry. Of what character each of these ought to be in respect of words, songs and tunes, blended with rhythm and dance, has frequently been stated\(^1\) by the original lawgiver; the secondary lawgivers should follow him in their enactments, and they should arrange the contests at convenient times to suit the several sacrifices, and thus appoint festivals for the State to observe.

Now as to these and the like matters, it is by no means hard to perceive how they should be given legal regulation, nor indeed would a shifting of their positions cause much gain or loss to the State. But the things which do make no small difference, and of which it is hard to persuade men —these form a task especially for God (were it possible that orders should come from him): as it is, they are likely to require a bold man who, valuing candour above all else, will declare what he deems best for city and citizens, and in the midst of corrupted souls will enjoin what is fitting and

\(^1\) In Books VI and VII.
ἐπόμενον πάση τῇ πολιτείᾳ τάττων, ἐναντία λέγων ταῖς μεγίσταισιν ἐπιθυμίαις καὶ οὐκ ἔχων βοηθὸν ἀνθρωπον οὐδένα, λόγῳ ἐπόμενος μόνοις μόνος.

D κα. Τίν' αὖ νῦν, ὃ ξένε, λόγον λέγομεν; οὐ γὰρ πω μανθάνομεν.

ΑΘ. Εἰκότως γε ἀλλὰ δὴ πειράσομαι ἐγὼ φράξειν ύμῖν ἐτι σαφέστερον. ὡς γὰρ εἰς παιδείαν ἤλθον τῷ λόγῳ, εἶδον νέους τε καὶ νέας ὀμιλοῦντας φιλοφρόνως ἀλλήλως. εἰσῆλθε δὴ με, οἷον εἰκός, φοβηθῆναι ξυνοίσαντα τί τις χρήσεται τῇ τοιαύτῃ πόλει ἐν ἡ δὴ νέοι μὲν νέαι τε εὐτρεφεῖς εἰςί πόνων τε σφοδρῶν καὶ ἀνελευθέρων, οἳ Ἐμάλιστα ἱβριν σβεννύσασι, ἄργοι, θυσίας δὲ καὶ ἑορταί καὶ χοροὶ πᾶσι μέλουσι διὰ βίου. τίνα δὴ ποτε τρόπον ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ πόλει ἀφέξονται τῶν πολλῶν δὴ πολλὰ ἐπιθυμίων εἰς ἔσχατα βαλλοῦσών, ὅν ἄν ὁ λόγος προστάτη ἀπέχεσθαι, νόμος ἐπιχειρῶν γίγνεσθαι; καὶ τῶν μὲν πολλῶν οὐθαμαστὸν ἐπιθυμίων εἰ κρατοῖ τὰ πρόσθεν

836 νόμῳμα ταχθέντας τὸ γὰρ μὴ πλούτειν τε ἐξεῖναι ὑπερβαλλόντως ἀγαθὸν πρὸς τὸ σωφρονεῖν οὐ σμικρὸν, καὶ πάσα ἡ παιδεία μετρίους πρὸς τὰ τοιαύτ' εἰληφε νόμους, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις ἡ τῶν ἀρχόντων ὠψις διηνεκετάσμενη μὴ ἀποβλέπειν ἀλλοσε, τηρεῖν δὲ ἔρει τοὺς νέους. ταῦτ' οὖν πρὸς μὲν τὰς ἄλλας ἐπιθυμίας, ὅσα γε ἀνθρώπινα, μέτρον ἔχειν τὰ δὲ δὴ τῶν ἐρώτων παίδων τε ἀρρένων καὶ θηλείων καὶ γυναικῶν ἀνδρῶν καὶ


1 771 E ff.
in keeping with all the constitution, and gainsay the mightiest lusts, acting alone by himself with no man to help him save, as his solitary leader, Reason.

CLIN. What is it we are reasoning about now, Stranger? For we are still in the dark.

ATH. Naturally: but I will try to explain myself more clearly. When in my discourse I came to the subject of education,¹ I saw young men and maidens consorting with one another affectionately; and, naturally, a feeling of alarm came upon me, as I asked myself how one is to manage a State like this in which young men and maidens are well-nourished but exempt from those severe and menial labours which are the surest means of quenching wantonness, and where the chief occupation of everyone all through life consists in sacrifices, feasts and dances. In a State such as this, how will the young abstain from those desires which frequently plunge many into ruin,—all those desires from which reason, in its endeavour to be law,² enjoins abstinence? That the laws previously ordained serve to repress the majority of desires is not surprising; thus, for example, the proscription of excessive wealth is of no small benefit for promoting temperance, and the whole of our education-system contains laws useful for the same purpose; in addition to this, there is the watchful eye of the magistrates, trained to fix its gaze always on this point and to keep constant watch on the young people. These means, then, are sufficient (so far as any human means suffice) to deal with the other desires. But when we come to the amorous passions of children of both sexes and of men for women and

¹ A play on νόμος = νοῦς; cp. 836 E, 714 A.

² A play on νόμος = νοῦς; cp. 836 E, 714 A.
B ἄνδρῶν γυναικῶν, οὖν δὴ μυρία γέγονεν ἀνθρώποις ἴδια καὶ ὅλαις πόλεσι κακά, πῶς τις τούτῳ διευ- λαβοῖτ' ἂν, καὶ τί τεμών φάρμακον τούτοις ἐκάστοις τοῦ τοιούτου κινδύνου διαφυγῆν εὑρήσει; πάντως οὐ ράδιον, ὁ Κλεινία. καὶ γὰρ οὐν πρὸς μὲν ἄλλα οὐκ ὀλίγα ἡ Κρήτη τε ἡμῖν ὅλη καὶ ἡ Λακεδαίμων βοήθειαν ἑπτεικῶς οὐ σμικρὰν ξυμβάλλονται τιθεισὶ νόμοις ἀλλοίους τῶν πολ- λῶν τρόπων, περὶ δὲ τῶν ἔρωτων, αὐτοὶ γὰρ Κ ἔσμεν, ἑναντιοῦνται παντάπασιν. εἰ γὰρ τις ἀκολουθῶν τῇ φύσει θησεῖ τόν πρό τοῦ Δαίων νόμον, λέγων ὃς ὀρθῶς εἶχε τὸ τῶν ἀρρένων καὶ νέων μὴ κοινωνεῖν καθάπερ θηλείων πρὸς μίξιν ἀφροδισίων, μάρτυρα παραγόμενος τὴν τῶν θηρίων φύσιν καὶ δεικνύσι πρὸς τὰ τοιαύτα οὐχ ἀπτόμενον ἀρρένα ἀρρένος διὰ τὸ μὴ φύσει τούτῳ εἶναι, τάχ' ἀν χρῷτο ἀπιθάνων Λόγῳ καὶ ταῖς ὑμετέραις πόλεσιν οὐδαμῶς ξυμφώνων. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις, ὁ διά παντός φαμεν δεῖν τὸν νομοθέτην διατηρεῖν, 

D τούτῳ ἐν τούτοις οὐχ ὑμολογεῖ. ξητοῦμεν γὰρ ἀεὶ δὴ τί τῶν τιθεμένων πρὸς ἅρτην φέρει καὶ τί μη. φέρε δή, τοῦτο ἐὰν συγχωρῶμεν καλόν ἡ μηδαμῶς αἴσχρον νομοθετεῖσθαι τὰ νῦν, τί μέρος ἢμῖν ξυμβάλλοιτ' ἂν πρὸς ἅρτην; πότερον ἐν τῇ τοῦ πεισθέντος ψυχῇ γιγνόμενον ἐμφύσεται τὸ τῆς ἀνδρίας ἑθος, ἥ ἐν τῇ τοῦ πείσαντος τὸ τῆς σῶφρονοι ἱδεας γένος; ἡ ταῦτα μὲν οὐδεὶς ἂν πεισθείη ποτέ, μᾶλλον δὲ ἄπαν τοῦτον τούν-

1 ἀπιθάνωθε Badham: πιθάνωθε MSS.
2 ξυμφώνωθε England: ξυμφώνωθε MSS.

1 King of Thebes, father of Oedipus.
women for men,—passions which have been the cause of countless woes both to individuals and to whole States,—how is one to guard against these, or what remedy can one apply so as to find a way of escape in all such cases from a danger such as this? It is extremely difficult, Clinias. For whereas, in regard to other matters not a few, Crete generally and Lacedaemon furnish us (and rightly) with no little assistance in the framing of laws which differ from those in common use,—in regard to the passions of sex (for we are alone by ourselves) they contradict us absolutely. If we were to follow in nature's steps and enact that law which held good before the days of Laius, declaring that it is right to refrain from indulging in the same kind of intercourse with men and boys as with women, and adducing as evidence thereof the nature of wild beasts, and pointing out how male does not touch male for this purpose, since it is unnatural,—in all this we would probably be using an argument neither convincing nor in any way consonant with your States. Moreover, that object which, as we affirm, the lawgiver ought always to have in view does not agree with these practices. For the enquiry we always make is this—which of the proposed laws tends toward virtue and which not. Come then, suppose we grant that this practice is now legalised, and that it is noble and in no way ignoble, how far would it promote virtue? Will it engender in the soul of him who is seduced a courageous character, or in the soul of the seducer the quality of temperance? Nobody would ever believe this; on the contrary, as all men

Εαντίον τοῦ μὲν ταῖς ἥδοναῖς ὑπείκοντος καὶ καρτερεῖν οὐ δυναμένου ψέξει πᾶς τὴν μαλακίαν, τοῦ δ' εἰς μέμησιν τοῦ θύλεως ἱόντος τὴν τῆς εἰκόνος ὁμοιότητα ἄρ' οὐ μέμψεται; τὶς οὖν ἀνθρώπων τούτο ὁν τοιούτων νομοθετήσει; σχεδὸν οὐδείς, ἔχων γε ἐν τῷ νῦ νόμον ἀληθῆ. πῶς οὖν φαινὲν ἀλήθες τοῦτο εἶναι; τὴν τῆς φιλίας τε καὶ 837 ἐπιθυμίας ἁμα καὶ τῶν λεγομένων ἐρῶτων φύσιν ἱδεὶν ἀναγκαίον, εἰ μέλλει τις ταῦτα ὀρθῶς διανοηθῆσεσθαι; δύο γὰρ ὑπάρ αὐτὰ καὶ ἐξ ἀμφοῖν τρίτων ἀλλὸ εἴδος ἐν ὀνόμα περιλαβὸν πᾶσαι ἀπορίαν καὶ σκότων ἀπεργάζεται.

κλ. Πῶς;

α. Φίλοιν μὲν ποι καλοῦμεν ὁμοιον ὁμοίων κατ᾽ ἀρετὴν καὶ ἵσον ὑσφ, φίλον δ' αὖ καὶ τὸ δεόμενον τοῦ πεπλουτηκότος, έναντίον ὅν τῷ γένει. ὅταν δὲ ἐκάτερον γίγνηται σφοδρὸν, ἔρωτα ἐπονομάζομεν.

Β κλ. Ὀρθῶς.

α. Φιλία τοῖνυν ἢ μὲν ἀπὸ ἐναντίων δεινῆ καὶ ἀγρία καὶ τὸ κοινὸν οὐ πολλάκις ἔχουσα ἐν ἡμῖν, ἢ δ' ἐκ τῶν ὁμοίων ἐμερὸς τε καὶ κοινὴ διὰ βίον. μικτὴ δὲ ὑπὸ τῶν γενομένη πρῶτον μὲν καταμαθεῖν ὁμοίως ὑπὸ ραδία, τὶ ποτε βούλοιτ' ἄν αὐτῷ γενέσθαι τὸν τρίτον ἐρωτά τις ἔχων τούτον, ἐπειτα εἰς τούναντίον ὑπ' ἀμφοῖν ἐλκόμενος ἀπορεῖ, τοῦ μὲν κελεύοντος τῆς ὀρας ἀπτεσθαι, τοῦ δὲ ἀπαγορεύοντος. ὁ μὲν γὰρ τοῦ σώματος 152
law will blame the cowardice of the man who always yields to pleasures and is never able to hold out against them, will they not likewise reproach that man who plays the woman's part with the resemblance he bears to his model? Is there any man, then, who will ordain by law a practice like that? Not one, I should say, if he has a notion of what true law is. What then do we declare to be the truth about this matter? It is necessary to discern the real nature of friendship and desire and love (so-called), if we are to determine them rightly; for what causes the utmost confusion and obscurity is the fact that this single term embraces these two things, and also a third kind compounded of them both.

CLIN. How so?

ATH. Friendship is the name we give to the affection of like for like, in point of goodness, and of equal for equal; and also to that of the needy for the rich, which is of the opposite kind; and when either of these feelings is intense we call it "love."

CLIN. True.

ATH. The friendship which occurs between opposites is terrible and fierce and seldom reciprocal amongst men, while that based on similarity is gentle and reciprocal throughout life. The kind which arises from a blend of these presents difficulties,—first, to discover what the man affected by this third kind of love really desires to obtain, and, in the next place, because the man himself is at a loss, being dragged in opposite directions by the two tendencies,—of which the one bids him to enjoy the bloom of his beloved, while the other forbids him. For he that is in love with the body.
C ἐρών καὶ τῆς ὁρᾶς καθάπερ ὀπώρας πεινῶν ἐμπλησθήμει παρακελεύεται ἑαυτῷ, τιμὴν οὐδεμίαν ἀπονέμων τῷ τῆς ἔσχης ᾤθει τοῦ ἐρωμένου· ὁ δὲ πάρεργον μὲν τῇ τοῦ σώματος ἐπιθυμίαν ἔχων, ὁρῶν δὲ μᾶλλον ἢ ἐρῶν, τῇ ἔσχη, δὲ ὄντως ἡ τῆς ἔσχης ἐπιτεθυμικῶς ὑβρίν ὑγνῄται τῇ περὶ τὸ σῶμα τοῦ σώματος πλησιμοῦχη, τὸ σῶφρον δὲ καὶ ἄνδρείν καὶ μεγαλοπρέπεις καὶ τὸ φρόνιμον αἰδούμενον ἀμα καὶ σεβόμενος ἀγνεύειν ἂει μεθ᾿.

D ἀγνεύοντος τοῦ ἐρωμένου βουλοῦτ᾿ ἄν· ὁ δὲ μιχθεὶς ἐξ ἀμφοῖν γὰρ ἐρῶσ ὀυτὸς ἐσθ᾿ ὃν νῦν διεληλύθαμεν ὡς τρίτον. Ὅντων δὲ τούτων τοσοῦτον πότερον ἀπαντᾶς δεῖ κωλυεῖν τὸν νόμον, ἀπείργουτα μὴ γίγνεσθαι εἴ ἡμῖν, ἡ δῆλον ὅτι τοῦ μὲν ἄρετῆς [τε] ὄντα καὶ τὸν νέον ἐπιθυμοῦντα ὡς ἀριστον γίγνεσθαι βουλοίμεθ᾿ ἄν ἡμῖν ἐν τῇ πόλει ἐνεῖναι, τοὺς δὲ δύο, εἰ δυνατὸν εἰη, κωλύοιμεν ἄν· ἡ πώς λέγομεν, ὁ φίλε Μέγιλλε·

ME. Πάντη τοι καλῶς, ὦ ξένε, περὶ αὐτῶν
Ε τούτων εἰρήκας τά νῦν.

ΑΘ. Ἐσκία γε, ὁπερ καὶ ἐπόπαξον, τυχεῖν τῆς σῆς, ὁ φίλε, ξυνωδίας· τοῦ δὲ νόμου ὑμῶν, ὁ τι νοεῖ περὶ τὰ τοιαύτα, οὐδὲν μὲ ἐξετάζειν δεῖ, δεχεθαί δὲ τῇ τῷ λόγῳ συγχώρησιν. Κλεινία δὲ [μετὰ ταῦτα] καὶ εἰσαύθης περὶ αὐτῶν τούτων πειράσομαι ἐπάδων πείθειν. τὸ δὲ μοι δεδομένου ὑπὸ σφῶν ἵτω, καὶ διεξέλθωμεν πάντως τοὺς νόμους.

ME. Ὀρθότατα λέγεις.

1 ὄντως Badham: δέοντωs MSS.
2 γ᾿ H. Jackson, England: τρίτος MSS.

154
and hungering after its bloom,¹ as it were that of a ripening peach, urges himself on to take his fill of it, paying no respect to the disposition of the beloved; whereas he that counts bodily desire as but secondary, and puts longing looks in place of love,² with soul lusting really for soul, regards the bodily satisfaction of the body as an outrage, and, reverently worshipping temperance, courage, nobility and wisdom, will desire to live always chastely in company with the chaste object of his love. But the love which is blended of these two kinds is that which we have described just now as third. Since, then, love has so many varieties, ought the law to prohibit them all and prevent them from existing in our midst, or shall we not plainly wish that the kind of love which belongs to virtue and desires the young to be as good as possible should exist within our State, while we shall prohibit, if possible, the other two kinds? Or what is our view, my dear Megillus?

meg. Your description of the subject, Stranger, is perfectly correct.

ath. It seems that, as I expected, I have gained your assent; so there is no need for me to investigate your law, and its attitude towards such matters, but simply to accept your agreement to my statement. Later on I will try to charm Clinias also into agreeing with me on this subject. So let your joint admission stand at that, and let us by all means proceed with our laws.

meg. Quite right.

¹ Cp. Symp. 183 D ff.
² A play on the assonance ὑπᾶν = ἐπᾶν.
PLATO

Α. Τέχνην δή τιν' αὐτούτου τοῦ νόμου τῆς
θέσεως ἐν τῷ νῦν παρόντε τῇ μὲν ῥαδίαν ἔχω, τῇ
d' αὖ τινὰ τρόπον παντάπασιν ὡς οἶον τε χαλε-
pωτάτην.

ΜΕ. Πῶς δὴ λέγεις;
Α. Ἡσυχεῖν ποιεῖ καὶ τὰ νῦν τοὺς πλείστους τῶν
ἀνθρώπων, καίπερ παρανόμους οὖνας, ὡς εὖ τε
καὶ ἀκριβῶς εἰργοῦνται τῆς τῶν καλῶν συνουσίας
οὐκ ἀκούντες, ὡς οἶον τε ἐμ' ἐμίστα ἐκούντες.

ΜΕ. Πότε λέγεις;
Α. Ὅταν ἀδελφὸς ἢ ἀδελφή τω γεννωται
καλοί, καὶ περί νεών ἡ θυγατρὸς ὁ αὐτὸς νόμος
Β ἄγγαρος ὃς οἶον τε ἱκανωτάτα φυλάττει μήτε
φανερῶς μήτε λάθρα συγκαθεύδουτα ἢ πὼς ἄλλως
ἀσταξάμενον ἀπτεσθαι τούτων ἀλλ' οὔθε ἐπιθυ-
μία ταύτης τῆς συνουσίας τὸ παράπαν εἰσέρχεται
tοὺς πολλοὺς.

ΜΕ. Ἀληθῆ λέγεις.
Α. Οὐκοῦν σμικρὸν ῥῆμα κατασβέννυσι
πάσας τὰς τοιαύτας ἥδονάς;
ΜΕ. Τὸ πολὺν δὴ λέγεις;
Α. Τὸ ταύτα εἶναι φάναι μηδαμῶς ὅσια,
θεομισὴ δὲ καὶ αἰσχρῶν αἰσχιστα. τὸ δ' ἀἵτιον
ἀρ' οὐ τοῦτ' ἑστι, τὸ μηδένα ἄλλως λέγειν αὑτά,
ἀλλ' εὐθὺς γενόμενον ἡμῶν ἐκαστὸν ἀκούειν τε
λεγόντων ἅν καὶ πανταχοῦ ταῦτα, ἐν γελοίοις τε
μα ἐν πάσῃ τε σπουδῇ τραγικῇ λεγόμενα 1 πολ-
lάκις, ὅταν ἡ Θυέστας ἡ τινᾶς Ὀλίποπος εἰσάγω-
σιν, ἡ Μακάρεας τινὰς ἀδελφαῖς μιχθέντας
λαθραίως, ὀφθέντας δὲ ἐτοίμως θάνατον αὐτοῖς
ἐπιτιθέντας δίκην τῆς ἀμαρτίας;

1 λεγόμενα Orelli: λεγομένη MSS.

156
LAWS, BOOK VIII

ATH. I know of a device at present for enacting this law, which is in one way easy, but in another quite the hardest possible.

MEG. Explain your meaning.

ATH. Even at present, as we are aware, most men, however lawless they are, are effectively and strictly precluded from sexual commerce with beautiful persons,—and that not against their will, but with their own most willing consent.

MEG. On what occasions do you mean?

ATH. Whenever any man has a brother or sister who is beautiful. So too in the case of a son or daughter, the same unwritten law is most effective in guarding men from sleeping with them, either openly or secretly, or wishing to have any connexion with them,—nay, most men never so much as feel any desire for such connexion.

MEG. That is true.

ATH. Is it not, then, by a brief sentence that all such pleasures are quenched?

MEG. What sentence do you mean?

ATH. The sentence that these acts are by no means holy, but hated of God and most shamefully shameful. And does not the reason lie in this, that nobody speaks of them otherwise, but every one of us, from the day of his birth, hears this opinion expressed always and everywhere, not only in comic speech, but often also in serious tragedy—as when there is brought on to the stage a Thyestes or an Oedipus, or a Macareus having secret intercourse with a sister, and all these are seen inflicting death upon themselves willingly as a punishment for their sins?
ME. Ὅρθότατα λέγεις τὸ γε τοσοῦτον, ὅτι τὸ
D τῆς φήμης θαυμαστὴν τινα δύναμιν εἰληχεῖν, ὅταν
μηδεὶς μηδαμῶς ἀλλώς ἀναπνεῖν ἑπιχειρήσῃ ποτὲ
παρὰ τὸν νόμον.

ΑΘ. Οὔκοιν ὅρθῳν τὸ νῦν δὴ ρηθέν, ὅτι νομο-
θέτη βουλομένῳ τινὰ ἐπιθυμίαι δουλώσασθαι τῶν
diaφερόντως τοὺς ἀνθρώπους δουλουμένων χάδιων
gυναικὶ γε ὅντινα τρόπον χειρώσατ' ἀν ὅτι καθ-
ιερώσας ταύτην τὴν φήμην παρὰ πᾶσι δούλοις
tε καὶ ἑλευθέρως καὶ παισὶ καὶ γυναιξί καὶ ἠλη
tῇ πόλει κατὰ τὰ αὐτά, οὕτω τὸ βεβαιότατον
Ε ἀπειργασμένος ἔσται περὶ τούτου τὸν νόμον.

ME. Πάνω μὲν οὔν ὅπως δὲ αὖ τὸ τοιοῦτον
ἐθέλοντας λέγειν πάντας δυνατὸν ἔσται ποτὲ
παραχεῖν—

ΑΘ. Καλῶς ὑπέλαβες· αὐτὸ γὰρ τοῦτο ἦν τὸ
παρ’ ἐμοῦ λεχθέν, ὅτι τέχνην ἐγὼ πρὸς τούτου τὸν
νόμον ἔχομι τοῦ κατὰ φύσιν χρήσασθαι τῇ τῆς παιδο-
γονίας συμνοσίᾳ, τοῦ μὲν ἀρρενὸς ἀπεχομένους μὴ
kτείνοντάς τε ἐκ προνοίας τὸ τῶν ἀνθρώπων γένος,
839 μηδὲ εἰς πέτρας τε καὶ λίθους σπείροντας, οὐ
μὴ ποτε φύσιν τὴν αὐτοῦ μιξωθέν λήψεται γόνιμον,
ἀπεχομένους δὲ ἀρούρας θηλείας πάσης, ἐν ἥ μὴ
βούλοιο ¹ ἀν σοι φύσεσθαι τὸ σπαρέν. ὁ δὲ νόμος
οὕτος διηνέκης μὲν γενόμενος ἁμα καὶ κρατήσας,
καθάπερ νῦν περὶ τὰς τῶν γονέων συμμίξεις κρα-
teῖ, ἔαν καὶ περὶ τὰς ἄλλας νυκήσῃ δικαίως, μυρία
ἀγαθὰ ἔχει. κατὰ φύσιν μὲν γὰρ πρῶτον κεῖτα,
λύττῃς δὲ ἐρωτικῆς καὶ μανίας καὶ μοιχείων πασῶν
καὶ πωμάτων καὶ σιτίων εἰργεσθαι ποιεῖ τῶν

¹ βούλοιο some MSS., Hermann: βούλωι τ' al, MSS., Zur.,
vulg.

158
MEG. Thus much at least you are quite right in saying—that public opinion has a surprising influence, when there is no attempt by anybody ever to breathe a word that contradicts the law.

ATH. Then is it not true, as I said just now, that when a lawgiver wishes to subdue one of those lusts which especially subdue men, it is easy for him at least to learn the method of mastering them,—that it is by consecrating this public opinion in the eyes of all alike—bond and free, women and children, and the whole State—that he will effect the firmest security for this law.

MEG. Certainly; but how it will ever be possible for him to bring it about that all are willing to say such a thing—

ATH. A very proper observation. That was precisely the reason why I stated that in reference to this law I know of a device for making a natural use of reproductive intercourse,—on the one hand, by abstaining from the male and not slaying of set purpose the human stock, nor sowing seed on rocks and stones where it can never take root and have fruitful increase; and, on the other hand, by abstaining from every female field in which you would not desire the seed to spring up. This law, when it has become permanent and prevails—if it has rightly become dominant in other cases, just as it prevails now regarding intercourse with parents,—is the cause of countless blessings. For, in the first place, it follows the dictates of nature, and it serves to keep men from sexual rage and frenzy and all kinds of fornication, and from all excess in meats.
Β ἀμέτρων πάντων, γνωσεί τε αὐτῶν οἰκείους εἶναι καὶ φίλους, ἀλλὰ τε πάμπολλα ἀγαθὰ γίγνοντ' ἀν, εἰ τοῦ νόμου τις τοῦτον δύνατο ἐγκρατης εἶναι. τάχα δ' ἂν ἡμῖν τις παραστάς ἀνήρ σφοδρός καὶ νέος, πολλοὶ σπέρματος μεστὸς, ἀκούων τιθεμένου τοῦ νόμου λοιδορήσειν ἂν ὡς ἀνόητα καὶ ἀδύνατα τιθέντων νόμιμα, καὶ βοής πάντα ἐμπλήσειε. πρὸς ἄ δὴ καὶ βλέψας ἐγὼ τοῦτο εἴπον τὸ ῥήμα,

C ὡς τινα τέχνην κεκτήμην, τῇ μὲν ῥάστην ἀπασῶν, τῇ δὲ χαλεπωτάτην, πρὸς τὸ τοῦτον τεθέντα ἐμ-μεῖνα τὸν νόμον. νοήσαι μὲν γὰρ δὴ ῥάστον ὡς δυνατὸν τέ ἐστι καὶ ὅπῃ φαμὲν γὰρ δὴ καθερω-θέν τούτῳ ἱκανῶς τὸ νόμιμον πάσαν ψυχὴν δου-λώσεσθαι καὶ παντάπασι μετὰ φόβου ποιήσειν πείθεσθαι τοῖς τεθείσι νόμοις: ἄλλα γὰρ εἰς τοῦτο προβέβηκε νῦν ὡστ' οὐδ' ἂν ποτὲ γενέσθαι δοκεῖ, καθάπερ τὸ τῶν ἔυσσιτίων ἐπιτήδευσμα ἄπιστειται, μὴ δυνατὸν εἶναι δύνασθαι διὰ βίου

D πόλιν ὅλην ζῆν πράττουσαν τοῦτο ἐλεγχθὲν δ' ἕργῳ καὶ γενόμενον παρ' ὑμῖν, ὠμώς ἐπὶ τὸ γε γνωσακὼν οὐδὲ ἐν ταῖς υμετέραις πόλεσι δοκεῖ φύσιν ἕχειν γύνεσθαι. ταῦτη δ' ἂν διὰ τὴν τῆς ἀπιστίας ρώμην εἰρήκα ἀμφότερα ταῦτα εἶναι παγχάλεστα μεῖναι κατὰ νόμον.

ME. Ὁρθῶς γε σὺ λέγων.

ΑΘ. Ὁμιλήθω τὲ ἡμῖν ὑπὲρ ἄνθρωπον, οἷον τε δὲ γενέσθαι, βούλεσθε οἷον πειραθῶ τινὰ λόγον ἐχόμενον πιθανότητος εἰπέων τινὸς;

ΚΑ. Πῶς γὰρ οὐ;

1 838 B.
and drinks, and it ensures in husbands fondness for their own wives: other blessings also would ensue, in infinite number, if one could make sure of this law. Possibly, however, some young bystander, rash and of superabundant virility, on hearing of the passing of this law, would denounce us for making foolish and impossible rules, and fill all the place with his outcries; and it was in view of this that I made the statement that I knew of a device to secure the permanence of this law when passed which is at once the easiest of all devices and the hardest. For while it is very easy to perceive that this is possible, and how it is possible—since we affirm that this rule, when duly consecrated, will dominate all souls, and cause them to dread the laws enacted and yield them entire obedience,—yet it has now come to this, that men think that, even so, it is unlikely to come about,—just in the same way as, in the case of the institution of public meals, people refuse to believe that it is possible for the whole State to be able to continue this practice constantly; and that, too, in spite of the evidence of facts and the existence of the practice in your countries; and even there, as applied to women, the practice is regarded as non-natural. Thus it was that, because of the strength of this unbelief, I said that it is most difficult to get both these matters permanently legalised.

MEG. And you were right in that.

ATH. Still, to show that it is not beyond the power of man, but possible, would you like me to try to state an argument which is not without some plausibility?

CLIN. Certainly.
Ε ἈΘ. Πότερον οὖν τις ἀφροδισίων ῥᾶν ἄν ἀπέχωστο, καὶ τὸ ταχθέν ἑθέλοι περὶ αὐτὰ μετρῖσαι ποιεῖν, εὖ τὸ σῶμα ἔχων καὶ μὴ ἰδιωτικῶς ἡ φαύλως;

κλ. Πολὺ ποιν μᾶλλον μὴ ἰδιωτικῶς.

ἈΘ. Ἄρ' οὖν οὐκ ἦσαν τῶν Ταραγνίνων Ἱκκοῦ ἀκοὴ διὰ τὸν Ὀλυμπίασι τε ἀγώνα καὶ τοὺς [τε] 1 840 ἄλλους, ὡς 2 διὰ φιλονεικίαν καὶ τέχνην καὶ τὸ μετὰ τοῦ σωφρονεῖν ἀνδρεῖον ἐν τῇ ἰδιωτικῇ κεκτημένοι, ὡς λόγος, οὔτε τινὸς πόσποτε γνωστος ἐγγὺς ἀν' αὖ παίδος ἐν ὥλη τῇ τῆς ἀσκήσεως ἀκμῇ; καὶ δὴ καὶ Κρίσσωνα καὶ Ἀστύλου καὶ Διόππου καὶ ἄλλους παμπόλλους ὁ αὐτὸς ποιν λόγος ἔχει. καὶ τοὶ τῶν γ' ἐμῶν καὶ σῶν πολιτῶν, ὅ Kleinion, πολὺ κάκιον ἥσαν πεπαιδευμένοι τὰς Β ἰδιωτικάς, τὰ δὲ σώματα πολὺ μᾶλλον σφραγῶντες.

κλ. Ἀληθῆς ταύτα λέγεις, ὅτι σφόδρα ὑπὸ τῶν παλαιῶν ἐστὶν εἰρήμενα περὶ τούτων τῶν ἀθλητῶν ὡς ὄντως ποτὲ γενόμενα.

ἈΘ. Τὶ οὖν; οἱ μὲν ἄρα νίκης ἐνεκα πάλης καὶ δρόμων καὶ τῶν τοιούτων ἐτόλμησαν ἀπέχεσθαι λεγομένου πράγματος ὑπὸ τῶν πολλῶν εὐδαίμονοι, οἱ δὲ ἡμέτεροι παίδες ἀδυνατήσουσι καρπερεὺς πολὺ καλλίονος ἐνεκα νίκης, ἢν ἥμεις καλλίστῃν ἐκ παίδων πρὸς αὐτοὺς λέγοντες ἐν μύθοις τε C καὶ ἐν ρήμασι καὶ ἐν μέλεσιν ἄδοντες, ὡς εἰκός, κηλήσομεν;

κλ. Ποίας;

ἈΘ. Τῆς τῶν ἡδονῶν νίκης <· ἦς> 3 ἐγκρατεῖς

1 [τε] bracketed by Hermann.
2 ὡς Heindorf: ὡν MSS.
3 <· ἦς> added by England.

162
LAWS, BOOK VIII

ATH. Would a man be more ready to abstain from sex-indulgence, and to consent to carry out the law on this matter soberly, if he had his body not ill-trained, but in good condition, than if he had it in bad condition?

CLIN. He would be much more ready if it were not ill-trained.

ATH. Do we not know by report about Iccus\(^1\) of Tarentum, because of his contests at Olympia and elsewhere,—how, spurred on by ambition and skill, and possessing courage combined with temperance in his soul, during all the period of his training (as the story goes) he never touched a woman, nor yet a boy? And the same story is told about Crison and Astylus and Diopompus and very many others. And yet, Clinias, these men were not only much worse educated in soul than your citizens and mine, but they also possessed much more sexual vigour of body.

CLIN. That this really happened in the case of these athletes is indeed, as you say, confidently affirmed by the ancients.

ATH. Well then, if those men had the fortitude to abstain from that which most men count bliss for the sake of victory in wrestling, running, and the like, shall our boys be unable to hold out in order to win a much nobler victory—that which is the noblest of all victories, as we shall tell them from their childhood's days, charming them into belief, we hope, by tales and sentences and songs.

CLIN. What victory?

ATH. Victory over pleasures,—which if they win,

\(^1\) Cp. Protag. 316 D.
Ωντας ἄν ξῆν εὐδαιμόνως, ἦττωμένους δὲ τούναντίον ἄπαν. πρὸς δὲ τούτους ἐτὶ φόβος ὁ τοῦ μηδαμῆς μηδαμῶς ὁσιον αὐτὸ ἐναι δύναμιν ἡμῖν οὐκ ἁρὰ ἐξει κρατεῖν ὧν ἄλλοι κεκρατήκασι τούτων ὄντες χειρονες;

κλ. Εἰκὸς γ′ ὄνω.

α. Ἐπειδὴ τούνυν ἐνταῦθα ἔσμεν τούτον τοῦ

D νομίμου πέρι, διὰ κάκην δὲ τὴν τῶν πολλῶν εἰς ἀπορίαν ἐπέσομεν, φημὶ τὸ μὲν ἡμέτερον νόμιμον ἀτεχνὸν δεῖν περὶ αὐτῶν τούτων πορεύεσθαι λέγον ὡς οὐ δεῖ χεῖρος ἡμῖν εῖναι τοὺς πολίτας ὀρνίθων καὶ ἄλλων θηρίων πολλῶν, οἱ κατὰ μεγάλας ἀγέλας γεννηθέντες μέχρι μὲν παιδογονίας ήθεσεν καὶ ἀκήρατοι γάμων τε ἀγνοὶ ζῷσιν, ὅταν δὲ εἰς τοῦτο ἡλικίας ἐλθοσί, συνηνασθέντες ἀρρήν θηλεία κατὰ χάριν καὶ θήλεια ἀρρένι τῶν λοιπῶν

Ε χρόνου ὀσίως καὶ δικαίως ζῷσιν, ἐμμένοντες βεβαίως ταῖς πρώταις τῆς φιλίας ὁμολογίαις: δεῖν δὴ θηρίων γε αὐτούς ἀμείνους εἶναι. ἔαν δ' οὖν ὑπὸ τῶν ἄλλων Ἐλλήνων καὶ βαρβάρων τῶν πλείστων διαφθείρωται, τὴν λεγομένην ἀτακτον Ἀφροδίτην ἐν αὐτοῖς ὀρώντες τε καὶ ἀκούοντες μέγιστον δυναμένην, καὶ οὕτω δὴ μὴ δυνατοὶ γίνονται κατακρατεῖν, δεύτερον νόμον ἐπ' αὐτοῖς μηχανάσθαι χρή τοὺς νομοφύλακας νομοθέτας γενομένους.

841 κλ. Τίνα δὴ συμβουλεύεις αὐτοῖς τίθεσθαι νόμον, ἕαν ὁ νῦν τιθέμενος αὐτοὺς ἐκφύγῃ;

α. Δῆλον ὅτι τῶν ἐχόμενον τούτου δεύτερον, ὅ Kleínia.

κλ. Τίνα λέγεις;

α. 'Αγύμναστον ὃτι μάλιστα ποιεῖν τὴν τῶν

164
they will live a life of bliss, but if they lose, the very opposite. Furthermore, will not the dread that this is a thing utterly unholy give them power to master those impulses which men inferior to themselves have mastered?

CLIN. It is certainly reasonable to suppose so.

ATH. Now that we have reached this point in regard to our regulation, but have fallen into a strait because of the cowardice of the many, I maintain that our regulation on this head must go forward and proclaim that our citizens must not be worse than fowls and many other animals which are produced in large broods, and which live chaste and celibate lives without sexual intercourse until they arrive at the age for breeding; and when they reach this age they pair off, as instinct moves them, male with female and female with male; and thereafter they live in a way that is holy and just, remaining constant to their first contracts of love: surely our citizens should at least be better than these animals. If, however, they become corrupted by most of the other Hellenes or barbarians, through seeing and hearing that among them the “lawless Love” (as it is called) is of very great power, and thus become unable to overcome it, then the Law-wardens, acting as lawgivers, must devise for them a second law.

CLIN. What law do you recommend them to make if that which is now proposed slips out of their grasp?

ATH. Evidently that law which comes next to it as second.

CLIN. What is that?

ATH. One ought to put the force of pleasures as
Plato

ηδονῶν ῥώμην, τήν ἐπίχυσιν καὶ τροφὴν αὐτῆς
dιὰ πόνων ἄλλοσε τρέποντα τοῦ σώματος. εἰὴ δ᾽
ἀν τοῦτο, εἰ ἀναίδεια μὴ ἐνείη τῇ τῶν ἀφροδισίων
χρήσει: σπανίω γὰρ αὖ τῷ τοιούτῳ δι᾽ ἀισχύνην
Β Χρώμενοι ἀσθενεστέραν ἂν αὐτὴν δέσποιναν
κτόντο, ὁλιγάκις χρώμενοι. τὸ δὲ λανθάνειν
toτῶν δρόντα τι καλὸν παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς ἐστὼ
νόμιμον, ἐθεὶ καὶ ἀγράφῳ νομισθὲν νόμῳ, τὸ δὲ
μὴ λανθάνειν αἰσχρῶν, ἀλλ᾽ οὐ τὸ μὴ πάντως
δράν. οὔτω τοῦτο ἀσχρὸν αὖ καὶ καλὸν δευτέρος
ἀν ἡμῖν ἐν νόμῳ γενόμενον κέοιτο, ὀρθότητα ἔχον
dευτέραν, καὶ τοὺς τὰς φύσεις διεφθαρμένους, οὐς
ήττους αὐτῶν προσαγορεύομεν, ἐν γένος ὁν, περι-

C λαβόντα τρῖα γένη βιαζοίτ' ἂν μὴ παρανομεῖν.

κα. Πολία δή;

α. Τὸ τε θεοσεβὲς ἁμα καὶ φιλότιμον καὶ
τὸ μὴ τῶν σωμάτων ἀλλὰ τῶν τρόπων τῆς
ψυχῆς ὄντων καλῶν γεγονός ἐν ἐπιθυμίᾳ. ταῦτα
dὴ καθάπερ ἰσώς ἐν μύθῳ τὰ νῦν λεγόμεν
ἔστιν εὐχαί, πολύ γε μὴν ἄριστα, εἶπερ γίγνοιτο,
ἐν πάσαις πόλεσὶ γίγνοιτο ἄν. τάχα δ᾽ ἂν, εἰ

D θεὸς ἔθέλω, κἂν δυνὸν θάτερα βιασάσθεθα περὶ
ἐρωτικῶν, ἦ μηδένα τολμᾶν μηδενὸς ἀπτεσθαί
τῶν γενναίων ἁμα καὶ ἐλευθέρων πλῆν γαμμετῆς
ἐαυτοῦ γυναικός, ἀθυα δὲ παλλακῶν στέρματα
καὶ νόθα μὴ σπείρειν μηδὲ ἄγονα ἄρρέων
παρὰ φύσιν. ἦ τὸ μὲν τῶν ἀρρέων πάρμπαν
ἀφελοίμεθ᾽ ἂν, τὸ δὲ γυναικῶν, εἰ τις συγγίγνοιτο
τινὶ πλῆν ταῖς μετὰ θεῶν καὶ ιερῶν γάμων

1 περιλαβόντα Stallb.: περιλαβόν tā MSS.

1 Cp. 626 E ff.
far as possible out of gear, by diverting its increase and nutriment to another part of the body by means of exercise. This would come about if indulgence in sexual intercourse were devoid of shamelessness; for if, owing to shame, people indulged in it but seldom, in consequence of this rare indulgence they would find it a less tyrannical mistress. Let them, therefore, regard privacy in such actions as honourable—sanctioned both by custom and by unwritten law; and want of privacy—yet not the entire avoidance of such actions—as dishonourable. Thus we shall have a second standard of what is honourable and shameful established by law and possessing a second degree of rectitude; and those people of depraved character, whom we describe as "self-inferior," 1 and who form a single kind, shall be hemmed in by three kinds of force and compelled to refrain from law-breaking.

CLIN. What kinds?

ATH. That of godly fear, and that of love of honour, and that which is desireous of fair forms of soul, not fair bodies. The things I now mention are, perhaps, like the visionary ideals in a story; yet in very truth, if only they were realized, they would prove a great blessing in every State. Possibly, should God so grant, we might forcibly effect one of two things in this matter of sex-relations,—either that no one should venture to touch any of the noble and freeborn save his own wedded wife, nor sow any unholy and bastard seed in fornication, nor any unnatural and barren seed in sodomy,—or else we should entirely abolish love for males, and in regard to that for women, if we enact a law that any man who has intercourse with any women save those who have been brought to his house under the sanction

167
Εξελθούσας εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν, ὁνηταῖς εἶτε ἄλλων οτρών τρόπῳ κτηταῖς, μὴ λανθάνων ἄνδρας τέ καὶ γυναῖκας πάσας, τάχ' ἀν ἄτιμον αὐτὸν τῶν ἐν τῇ πόλει ἐπαίνων νομοθετούντες ὥρθως ἂν δόξαμεν νομοθετεῖν, ὡς ὑπόστως ὡντα ξενικον. οὗτος δὴ νόμος, εἰτε εἰς εἰτε δύο αὐτοὺς χρὴ προσαγο- 
ρεῖνειν, κείσθω περὶ ἀφροδισίων καὶ ἀπάντων τῶν ἑρωτικῶν, ὅσα πρὸς ἄλληλους διὰ τὰς τοιαύτας 
812 ἐπιθυμίας ὁμιλοῦντες ὥρθως τε καὶ οὐκ ὥρθως πράττομεν.

ΜΕ. Καὶ τοίνυν, ὦ ξένε, ἐγὼ μὲν τοι σφόδρα 
δεχόμην ἀν τούτον τὸν νόμον, ὁ δὲ δὴ Κλεινίας 
αὐτὸς φραζέτω τί ποτε περὶ αὐτῶν διανοεῖται.

ΚΑ. Ἕσται ταῦτα, ὦ Μέγιλλε, ὅπως γε δὴ 
μοι δόξῃ τις παραπεπτωκέναι καιρὸς: νῦν μὴν 
ἐόμεν τον ξένον ἔτι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν προῖνειν τῶν 
νόμων.

ΜΕ. Ὡρθῶς.

Β ΑΘ. Ἀλλὰ μὴν νῦν γε προϊόντες ἣδη σχέδων 
ἔσμεν ἐν τῷ κατεσκευάσθαι μὲν ἔσκοιτιμα, ὁ φαμεν 
ἄλλοθι μὲν ἀν χαλεπὸν εἶναι, ἐν Κρήτῃ δὲ οὐδεὶς 
ἄλλως ἀν ὑπολάβοι δεῖν γίγνεσθαι. τὸ δὲ τίνα 
τρόπον, πότερον ὡς ἐνθάδε ἢ καθάπερ ἐν Λακε- 
δαίμονι, ἢ παρὰ ταῦτα ἐστὶ τι τρίτον εἴδος ἔσκοι- 
τίων ἀμφότερον τούτων ἀμείνων ἄν ἔχων, τοῦτο οὖτ' 
ἐξευρεῖν μοι χαλεπὸν εἶναι δοκεῖ μέγα τε ἀγαθὸν ήρεθεν οὖν δὲν ἀπεργάσεσθαι: καὶ γὰρ νῦν 
C ἐμμελῶς ἔχειν κατεσκευασμένα.

Τούτων δ' ἐστὶν ἀκόλουθον ἡ τοῦ βίου κατα-
σκευή, τὶν αὐτοῖς ἀν τρόπον ἔποιτο. βίος δὴ 
ἄλλως μὲν πόλεις παντοδαπῶς ἀν καὶ πολλάχο-
θεν εἰ, μάλιστα δὲ εκ διπλασίων ἡ τούτοις: εκ 
168
of Heaven and holy marriage, whether purchased or otherwise acquired, if detected in such intercourse by any man or woman, shall be disqualified from any civic commendation, as being really an alien,—probably such a law would be approved as right. So let this law—whether we ought to call it one law or two—be laid down concerning sexual commerce and love affairs in general, as regards right and wrong conduct in our mutual intercourse due to these desires.

MEG. For my own part, Stranger, I should warmly welcome this law; but Clinias must tell us himself what his view is on the matter.

CLIN. I shall do so, Megillus, when I deem the occasion suitable; but for the present let us allow the Stranger to proceed still further with his laws.

MEG. You are right.

ATH. Well, now we have arrived at this point in our progress, that common meals have been established—a thing which elsewhere, as we say, would be difficult, but in Crete no one would question its correctness. As concerns the manner of them,—whether we should adopt the Cretan fashion, or the Lacedaemonian, or whether we can find a third fashion that is better than either,—this does not seem to me a difficult problem to decide, nor indeed would its decision prove of much benefit, since these meals are now actually established in a satisfactory way.

Next to this comes the question of organising the food-supply, and how to make this fit in with the meals. In other States this supply would include all kinds of food and come from many sources, certainly from twice as many sources as it will in
γῆς γὰρ καὶ ἐκ θαλάττης τοῖς πλείστοις τῶν Ἐλλήνων ἐστὶ κατεσκευασμένα τὰ περὶ τὴν τροφὴν, τοῦτοις δὲ μόνον ἐκ γῆς. τῷ μὲν οὖν νομοθέτῃ τούτο ῥᾴδος οὗ γὰρ μόνον ἡμίσεις αὐτὸς γίγνονται νόμοι μέτριοι, πολὺ δὲ ἐλάττους, ἐτι δὲ ἐλευθέρους ἀνθρώπους μᾶλλον πρέποντες. ναυκληρικῶν μὲν γὰρ καὶ ἐμπορικῶν καὶ κατηλευτικῶν καὶ παιδοκεύεσθε καὶ τελωνικῶν καὶ μεταλλείων καὶ δανεισμῶν καὶ ἑπιτόκων τόκων καὶ ἄλλων μυρίων τοιούτων τὰ πολλὰ ἀπῆλλακται χαῖρειν αὐτοῖς εἰπὼν ὁ περὶ ταύτην τὴν πόλιν νομοθέτης, γεωργοῖς δὲ καὶ νομεύσει καὶ μελέτουργοῖς καὶ τοῖς περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα φυλακτηρίων τε καὶ ἐπιστάταις ὀργάνων νομοθετήσει, τὰ μέγιστα ἦδη νευμονετηκός περὶ γάμους ἀμα καὶ γενέσεις παιδών καὶ τροφάς, ἐτι δὲ καὶ παιδείας ἀρχῶν τε καταστάσεις ἐν τῇ πόλει. μὴν δὲ ἐπὶ [τοὺς] 1 τὴν τροφὴν καὶ ὁσοὶ περὶ αὐτὴν ταύτην συνδιαπονοῦσιν ἀναγκαίῳ νομοθετούντα ἔστι τρέπεσθαι.

Πρὸτον δὴ νόμοι ἐστωσαν λεγόμενοι τούνομα γεωργικοῖ. Δίος ὀρίου μὲν πρῶτος νόμος ὧδε εἰρήσθω: μὴ κινεῖτω γῆς ὀρια μιδεῖς μήτε οἰκείον πολίτου γείτονος μήτε ὀμοτέρμονος, ἐπ' ἐσχατιᾶς κεκτημένοι ἄλλῳ ξένῳ γειτονῶν, νομίσας τὸ τάκεινητα κινεῖν ἄληθῶς τούτο εἶναι βουλέσθω δὲ πᾶς πέτρον ἐπιχειρῆσαι κινεῖν τὸν μέγιστον ἄλλουν [πλῆν ὁρον] 2 μᾶλλον ἡ σμικρὸν λίθου ὄριζοντα

our State; for most of the Greeks arrange for their food to be derived from both land and sea, but our people will derive it only from the land. This makes the lawgiver’s task easier; for in this case half the number of laws, or less, will suffice, and the laws, too, will be better fitted for free men. For the lawgiver of our State is rid, for the most part, of shipping and merchandise and peddling and inn-keeping and customs and mines and loans and usury, and countless matters of a like kind; he can say good-bye to all such, and legislate for farmers and shepherds and bee-keepers, and concerning the preservation and supervision of the instruments employed in these occupations. This he will do, now that he has already enacted the most important laws, which deal with marriage, and with the birth and nurture and education of the children, and with the appointment of magistrates in the State. For the present he must turn, in his legislating, to the subject of food and of those whose labours contribute to its supply.

First, then, let there be a code of laws termed “agricultural.” The first law—that of Zeus the Boundary-god—shall be stated thus: No man shall move boundary-marks of land, whether they be those of a neighbour who is a native citizen or those of a foreigner (in case he holds adjoining land on a frontier), realising that to do this is truly to be guilty of “moving the sacrosanct”\(^1\); sooner let a man try to move the largest rock which is not a boundary-mark than a small stone which forms a boundary, sanctioned by Heaven, between friendly

---

\(^1\) For the proverbial saying μὴ κινεῖν τὰ κίνητα (like “Hands off!” or “Let sleeping dogs lie”), cp. 684 E, 913 B.
philian te kai êxthraú énorokov parà thewv: toû mêv
yâr ómôfulos Zeus mûrtus, toû dé ëxenios, oû metà
polêmouv tôn êkhistôn ëgeirontai kai o mêv
peistheis toû nómov anáishtos tôn ap' autôn
kakôn gînvoit' án, katafronhîsas dé diittais
dîkaîs ènouchos èstov, miâ mêv parà thewv kai
prôth, deuterâ dé ëpô nómov. mûdeis yâr

B èkow kineîtow ëgës òria geitonov: òs d' ãn kinhsh,
mênuetô mêv o boulómenos tois geowmòrous, oû dé
eis to dikasthîrion âgontov: ën tois ëfllh tû
toiaûttn dîknî, òs ánâdastov ëgën lâthra kai bîa
poioûntos toû ëfllntos, tîmatov to dikasthîrion o
ti ãn dêh pâchéin ñ apotînein tûn ëttshênta.

To dê metâ toûto blâbâi pollalâi kai smikrâi
geitonov ñegronvnaî, diâ to thamìzein êxthras
ógkôn mëgavn èntiktovsai, xaléptn kai sfôдра

C pîkrâv geitonvâv âperevàvntai. didî chrî pântovs
eûlabêthai geîtona geîtovn mëdev poieîn dialfó-
rov, tôvn te allôv prî kai ëh kai èperevâsia
xumprási sfôдра dienulaboumenon: tô mêv yâr
blâpptein ovdeîn xaléptov, all' ánðrîpov pântovs,
to d' èpôfvelen ovûÎmê òpântos. òs d' ãn èpere-
gázntai tâ toû geîtonov ùperebavnw tôvns òrînov,
tô mêv blâbos ãpotevntov, tôs dê ãnaiideias ãma
kai ãnèlevtheriâs ènêka iatrevômenos diplâsion
 tôû blâbôv ãlllo èktisâtw tô blâfthênî.
tôvtov dê kai ápântov tôv tôôûtvov èpînûmâvov
s te kai dikastai kai timîtai ñegnèsthov ágnovmòv,
tôn mêv meiîvovn, kathûper en tôvns prôsthèn
èrhtaî, pâsâ ñ tôv dôdekatmôrov tâzîs, tôv

1 760 A ff. The "phrourarchs" were the (5) officers of the
(60) country police.

172
and hostile ground. For of the one kind Zeus the Clansmen's god is witness, of the other Zeus the Strangers' god; which gods, when aroused, bring wars most deadly. He that obeys the law shall not suffer the evils which it inflicts; but whoso despises it shall be liable to a double penalty, the first from the hand of Heaven, the second from the law. No one shall voluntarily move the boundary-marks of the land of neighbours: if any man shall move them, whosoever wishes shall report him to the land-holders, and they shall bring him to the law court. And if a man be convicted,—since by such an act the convicted man is secretly and violently merging lands in one,—the court shall estimate what the loser must suffer or pay.

Further, many small wrongs are done against neighbours which, owing to their frequent repetition, engender an immense amount of enmity, and make of neighbourhood a grievous and bitter thing. Wherefore every neighbour must guard most carefully against doing any unfriendly act to his neighbour, and must above all things take special care always not to encroach in the least degree on his land; for whereas it is an easy thing and open to anyone to do an injury, to do a benefit is by no means open to everyone. Whosoever encroaches on his neighbour's ground, overstepping the boundaries, shall pay for the damage; and, by way of cure for his shamelessness and incivility, he shall also pay out to the injured party twice the cost of the damage. In all such matters the land-stewards shall act as inspectors, judges and valuers,—the whole staff of the district, as we have said above, in respect of the more important cases, and, in respect of the
ελαττόνων δὲ οἱ φρούραρχοι τούτων. καὶ εὰν τις
βοσκήματα ἐπινέμη, τὰς βλάβας ὁρῶντες κρινοῦν-
tων καὶ τιμῶντων. καὶ εὰν ἐσμοὺς ἀλλοτρίους
σφετερίζῃ τις τῇ τῶν μελιττῶν ἥδονή ἐξυπόμενος,
Ε καὶ κατακρούον οὕτως οἰκειώτατι, τινέτω τὴν
βλάβην. καὶ έὰν πυρεύων τῇν ὤλην μὴ διευλα-
βηθῇ τῇν1 τοῦ γείτονος, τὴν δόξαςαν ζημίαν
τοῖς ἀρχουσι ζημιοῦσθω. καὶ έὰν φυτεύων μὴ
ἀπολείπῃ τὸ μέτρον τῶν τοῦ γείτονος χωρίων,
καθάπερ ἐρήται καὶ πολλοῖς νομοθέταις ἰκανῶς,
δι᾿ τοῖς νόμοις χρή προσχρῆσθαι καὶ μὴ πάντα
ἀξίων πολλὰ καὶ σμικρὰ καὶ τοῦ ἐπιτυχόντος
νομοθέτου γνωνόμενα τὸν μείζων πόλεως κοσμητὴν
844 νομοθετεῖν. ἐπεὶ καὶ τῶν ὑδάτων πέρι γεωργοῦσι
παλαιοὶ καὶ καλοὶ νόμοι κείμενοι οὐκ ἄξιοι παρ-
οχετεύειν λόγοις, ἀλλ’ ὁ Βουληθεὶς ἐπὶ τὸν αὐτὸν
tοπὸν ἄγειν ὑδωρ ἄγετο μὲν, ἀρχόμενος ἐκ τῶν
κοινῶν ναμάτων, μὴ ὑποτεμνῶν πηγάς φανερὰς
ιδιώτου μηδενὸς, ἦ δὴ ἃν βούληται ἄγειν, πλὴν δὲ
οἰκίας ἢ ἱερῶν τινῶν ἢ καὶ μνημάτων, ἄγετο, μὴ
βλάπτων πλὴν αὐτῆς τῆς ὁχεταγωγίας· ἀυδρία δὲ
ἐὰν τισὶ τόποις εὐμφυτος ἐκ γῆς τὰ ἐκ Δίως ἱοντα
Β ἀποστέγει νάματα, καὶ ἐλλείπει τῶν ἀναγκαίων
πωμάτων, ὄρυττῖτω μὲν ἐν τῷ αὐτοῦ χωρίῳ
μέχρι τῆς κεραμίδος γῆς, ἐὰν δ’ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ
βάθει μηδαμῶς ὑδατὶ προστυχάνῃ, παρὰ τῶν
γείτόνων ὑδρευσθω μέχρι τοῦ ἀναγκαίου πώματος
ἐκάστου τῶν οἰκετῶν ἐὰν δὲ δ’ ἀκριβείας ἢ καὶ
tοῖς γείτοσι, τάξιν τῆς ὑδρείας ταξάμενος παρὰ
1 τὴν Stephens, England: τῶν MSS.
less important, those of them who are "phourarchs." If anyone encroaches on pasture-land, these officials shall inspect the damage, and decide and assess it. And if any, yielding to his taste for bees, secures for himself another man's swarm by attracting them with the rattling of pans, he shall pay for the damage. And if a man, in burning his own stuff, fails to have a care for that of his neighbour, he shall be fined in a fine fixed by the officials. So too if a man, when planting trees, fail to leave the due space between them and his neighbour's plot: this has been adequately stated by many lawgivers, whose laws we should make use of, instead of requiring the Chief Organiser of the State to legislate about all the numerous small details which are within the competence of any chance lawgiver. Thus, regarding water-supplies also, there are excellent old laws laid down for farmers, which we, in our exposition, need not draw upon. Let this suffice:— he that desires to bring water to his own land may do so, commencing at the public cisterns, but he must not undercut the exposed wells of any private person: he may lead it by whatever way he wishes, except through a house, temple or tomb, and he must do no damage beyond the actual work of channelling. If, in any spot, the rain-water filters through owing to the natural dryness of the soil, and there is a scarcity of necessary moisture, then the owner shall dig in his own ground down to the chalk subsoil, and if he fails to find water at this depth, he shall procure from his neighbours just so much as he requires for drinking purposes for all his household; and if his neighbours also are stinted in their supplies, he shall apply for a ration of water.
τοὶς ἀγρονόμοις, ταύτην ἡμέρας ἐκάστης κομιζόμενος, οὕτω κοινωνεῖτω τοῖς γείτοσιν ὑδατος. 

C εὖν δὲ ἐκ Δίδω ὑδατα γεγυμένα, τὸν ἑπάνω γεωργοῦντα ἣ καὶ ὁμότοιχον οἴκοιστα τῶν ὑποκάτω βλάπτη τις, μή διδοὺς ἐκροῆν, ἢ τούναντίον ὁ ἑπάνω μεθεις εἰκή τα ῥεύματα βλάπτη τὸν κάτω, καὶ περὶ ταύτα μὴ ἐθέλωσι διὰ ταύτα κοινωνεῖν ἀλλήλοις, ἐν ἀστεὶ μὲν ἀστυνόμον, ἐν ἀγρῷ δὲ ἀγρονόμον ἑπάγων ὁ βουλόμενος ταξάζω τὸ χρῆ ποιεῖν ἐκάτερον· ὁ δὲ μὴ ἐμμένων ἐν τῇ τάξει φθόνου θ' ἀμα καὶ δυσκόλου ψυχῆς ὑπεχέ-

D τῷ δίκην, καὶ ὄφλων διπλάσιον τὸ βλάβος ἀποτινέτω τῷ βλαφθέντι, μὴ ἐθελήσας τοῖς ἀρχουσι πειθεσθαι. 

Ὁπώρας δὲ δὴ χρῆ κοινωνιαν ποιεῖσθαι πάντας τοιάνδε τινά. δυττάς ἤμων ὅρων δῦρας ἡ θεός ἐχαρίσατο 1 αὐτή, τὴν μὲν παϊδίαν Διονυσιάδα ἀθησαυρίστου, τὴν δ' εἰς ἀπόθεσιν γενομένην κατὰ φύσιν. ἐστω δὴ περὶ ὁπώρας οδε νόμος ταχθεΐς· ὅς ἂν ἀγροίκου ὁπώρας γεύσηται, βοτρύων εἴτε καὶ σύκων, πρίν ἐλθεῖν τὴν ὀραν τὴν τοῦ τρυγάν

Ε ἀρκτοῦρος ξύνυρομον, εἴτ' ἐν τοῖς αὐτοῖς χωρίοις εἴτε καὶ ἐν ἄλλων, ιερὰς μὲν πεντήκοντα οφειλέτω τῷ Διονύσῳ δραχμάς, ἐὰν ἐκ τῶν ἐαυτοῦ δρέπη, ἐὰν δ' ἐκ τῶν γειτῶν, μνᾶν, ἐὰν δ' εξ ἄλλων, δύο μέρη τῆς μνᾶς. ὅς δ' ἂν τὴν γενναίαν νῦν λεγομένην σταφυλῆν ἢ τὰ γενναία σὺκα ἐπονομαζόμενα ὀπωρίζειν βούληται, ἐὰν μὲν ἐκ τῶν οἰκείων 1 ἐχαρίσατο Badham: ἐχει χάριτος MSS., edd.

176
from the land-stewards, and fetch it day by day, and so share the water with his neighbours. And if, when rain comes, any dweller on lower ground damages the farmer above him, or the adjoining dweller, by preventing its outflow,—or if, conversely, the man on higher ground damages the man below by letting out the floods carelessly,—and if, in consequence, they refuse to accommodate one another in this matter, any person who wishes shall call in a city-steward, if it is in the city, or a land-steward, if in the country, and get an order as to what each party is to do: and the man who does not abide by the order shall be liable to be charged with envy and frowardness, and if convicted he shall pay to the injured party double the damage, for refusing to obey the magistrates.

As concerns the fruit-harvest, the rule of sharing for all shall be this:—this goddess has bestowed on us two gifts, one the plaything of Dionysus which goes unstored, the other produced by nature for putting in store.¹ So let this law be enacted concerning the fruit-harvest:—whosoever shall taste of the coarse crop of grapes or figs before the season of vintage, which coincides with the rising of Arcturus, whether it be on his own land or on that of others, shall owe fifty sacred drachmas to Dionysus if he has cut them from his own trees, if from his neighbour’s trees, a mina, and if from others, two-thirds of a mina. And if any man wishes to harvest “choice” grapes or “choice” figs (as they are now called), he shall gather them how and when he will if they are from

¹ i.e. (1) choice (or “dessert”) fruit, for immediate use, and (2) coarse fruit, of poorer quality, for storing in bulk or making into wine.
λαμβάνη, ὃπως ἄν ἔθελη καὶ ὅποταν βούληταί καρποῦσθω, ἐὰν δὲ ἐξ ἄλλων μὴ πείσας, ἐπομένως τῷ νόμῳ τῷ μὴ κινεῖν ὃ τι μὴ κατέθετο, ἐκείνως 845 ἀεὶ ζημιοῦσθω. ἐὰν δὲ δὴ δοῦλος μὴ πείσας τὸν δεσπότην τῶν χωρίων ἀπτηταί του τῶν τοιούτων, κατὰ ῥάγα βοτρύων καὶ σύκους συκῆς ἰσαρίθμους πληγάς τούτοις μαστιγοῦσθω. μέτοικος δὲ ὁ νόμου· μενος τὴν γενναίαν ὑποράν ὑπωριζέτω, εὰν βούληται. ἐὰν δὲ ἦνος ἐπιθυμήσας ὑπώρας ἐπιθυμῆ φαγεῖν διαπρεπομένος τὰς ὁδούς, τῆς μὲν γενναίας ἀπτέσθω, εὰν βούληται, μεθ' ἐνος

Β ἀκολούθου χωρίς τιμῆς, ξένων δεχόμενος, τῆς δὲ ἀγροίκου λεγομένης καὶ τῶν τοιούτων ὁ νόμος εἰρήνετ' μὴ κοινωνεῖν ἤμων τοὺς ξένους: ἐὰν δὲ τις οὔτω ὅν αὐτὸς ἢ δοῦλος ἀψῆται, τὸν μὲν δούλου πληγαῖς κολάζειν, τὸν δὲ ἐλευθερον ἀποπέμπειν νοοθετήσαντα καὶ διδάξαντα τῆς ἀλλης ὑπώρας ἀπτεσθαι τῆς εἰς ἀπόθεσιν ἀσταφίδος οἴουν τε καὶ ἦρων σύκων ἀνεπιτηδείου κεκτήσθαι. ἀπίων δὲ πέρι καὶ μήλων καὶ ῥοῦν καὶ πάντων τῶν τοιούτων,

C αἰσχρῶν μὲν μηδέν ἔστω λάθρα λαμβάνειν, ὅ δὲ ληφθεὶς ἐντὸς τριάκοντα ἐτῶν γεγονός τυπτέσθω καὶ ἀμυνέσθω ἄνευ τραυμάτων, δίκην δ' εἶναι ἐλευθέρω τῶν τοιούτων πληγῶν μηδεμίαν ἦνος δὲ, καθάπερ ὑπώρας, ἐξέστω καὶ τῶν τοιούτων μέτοχον εἶναι: ἐὰν δὲ προσβύτερος ὅν ἀπτηται τούτων, φαγὼν αὐτοῦ καὶ ἀποφέρων μηδέν, καθάπερ ὁ ξένος, ταύτη κοινωνεῖτο τῶν τοιούτων ἀπάντων, μὴ πεθόμενος δὲ τῷ νόμῳ κινδυνεύετω ἀναγώνιστος

D γίγνεσθαι περὶ ἄρετῆς, ἐὰν εἰς τότε τὰ τοιαῦτα περὶ αὐτοῦ τοὺς τότε κριτάς τις ἀναμμυνήσκη.
his own trees, but if they are from another man's, and without his consent, he shall be fined every time, in pursuance of the law, "thou shalt not shift what thou hast not set." And if a slave, without the consent of the master of the plots, touches any of such fruit, he shall be beaten with stripes as many as the grapes in the bunch or the figs on the fig-tree. If a resident alien buys a choice crop, he shall harvest it if he wishes. If a foreigner sojourning in the country desires to eat of the crop as he passes along the road, he, with one attendant, shall, if he wishes, take some of the choice fruit without price, as a gift of hospitality; but the law shall forbid our foreigners to share in the so-called "coarse" fruit, and the like; and should either a master or a slave touch these, in ignorance, the slave shall be punished with stripes, and the free man shall be sent off with a reproof and be instructed to touch only the other crop, which is unfitted for storing to make raisins for wine or dried figs. As to pears, apples, pomegranates, and all such fruits, it shall be no disgrace to take them privily; but the man that is caught at it, if he be under thirty years of age, shall be beaten and driven off without wounds; and for such blows a free man shall have no right to sue. A foreigner shall be allowed to share in these fruits in the same way as in the grape crop; and if a man above thirty touch them, eating on the spot and not taking any away, he shall have a share in all such fruits, like the foreigner; but if he disobeys the law, he shall be liable to be disqualified in seeking honours, in case anyone brings these facts to the notice of the judges at the time.

1 Cp. 913 C, D.
Τῶν δὲ πάντων μὲν τὸ περὶ τὰς κητείας διαφε-ρόντως τρόφιμοι, εὐδιάφθαρτον δὲ ὁ γὰρ γῆν οὔτε ἦλιον οὔτε πνεῦμα, τοῖς ὑδαίς ξύντροφαι τῶν ἐκ γῆς ἀναβλαστανόντων, ῥάδιον φθείρειν φαρμακεύσεσιν ἢ ἀποτροπαίας ἢ καὶ κλοπαίας, περὶ δὲ τὴν ὕδατος φύσιν ἐστὶ τὰ τοιαύτα ξύμπαντα

Εὔνατα γίγνεσθαι. διὸ δὴ βοηθοῦ δεῖται νόμου.

Τοίνυν ὅδε περὶ αὐτοῦ· ἂν τὸς διαφθείρη ἕκων ὕδωρ ἀλλότριον, εἰτε καὶ πηγαίον εἰτε καὶ συναγυρτὸν, φαρμακείαις ἢ σκάμμασιν ἢ κλοπαίας, ὁ βλαπτόμενος δικαζέσθω πρὸς τοὺς ἀστυνόμους, τὴν ἀξίαν τῆς βλάβης ἀπογραφόμενος· ἂν δὲ τὶς ὀφλη φαρμακείαις τισὶ βλάπτων, πρὸς τὸ τιμή-ματι καθημάτω τᾶς πηγᾶς ἢ τάγγειον τοῦ ὕδατος, ὁππιτερ ἂν οἱ τῶν ἐξηγητῶν νόμοι ἀφηγών-ται δεῖν γίγνεσθαι τὴν κάθαρσιν ἐκάστοτε καὶ ἕκαστοις.

Περὶ δὲ ξυγκομιδῆς τῶν ὦραιῶν ἀπάντων, 846 ἔξεστω τῷ βουλομένῳ τὸ ἑαυτοῦ διὰ παντὸς τόπου κομίζεσθαι, ὁππιτερ ἂν ἡ μὴ δὲν μηδὲν ἡμιοῦ ἢ τριπλάσιον αὐτὸς κέρδος τῆς τοῦ γεί-τονος ξημίας κερδαίνῃ· τούτων δὲ ἐπιγνώμονας τοὺς ἀρχοντας γίγνεσθαι, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀπάν-των ὅσα τις ἂν ἐκὼν ἀκούτα βλάπτη βία ἢ λάθρα, αὐτὸν ἢ τῶν αὐτοῦ τι, διὰ τῶν αὐτοῦ κτημάτων πάντα τὰ τοιαύτα τοῖς ἀρχουσιν ἐπίδεικνύσ τιμωρείσθω μέχρι τριῶν μνῶν ὄντος τοῦ βλάβους· ἐὰν δ’ ἐγκλημά τῷ μείζον ἄλλω

Β πρὸς ἄλλου γίγνεσθαι, πρὸς τὰ κοινὰ δικαστή-ρια φέρων τὴν δίκην τιμωρείσθω τῶν ἀδικοῦντα. ἐὰν δὲ τὶς τῶν ἀρχοντῶν δοκῆ μετ’ ἀδίκου γνώμης

180
Water above all else in a garden is nourishing; but it is easy to spoil. For while soil and sun and wind, which jointly with water nourish growing plants, are not easy to spoil by means of sorcery or diverting or theft, all these things may happen to water; hence it requires the assistance of law. Let this, then, be the law concerning it:—if anyone wantonly spoil another man's water, whether in spring or in pond, by means of sorcery, digging, or theft, the injured party shall sue him before the city-stewards, recording the amount of the damage sustained; and whosoever is convicted of damaging by poisons shall, in addition to the fine, clean out the springs or the basin of the water, in whatever way the laws of the interpreters declare it right for the purification to be made on each occasion and for each plaintiff.

Touching the bringing home of all crops, whoso wills shall be permitted to fetch his own stuff through any place, provided that either he does no damage or else gains himself three times as much profit as the damage he costs his neighbour; the authority in this matter shall rest with the magistrates, as in all other cases where a man willingly injures an unwilling party either by force or secretly—whether it be the party himself he injures or some of his chattels, by means of his own chattels; in all such cases the plaintiff must report to the magistrates to get redress, where the damage is under three minas; but if a man makes a larger claim than this against another, he shall bring a suit before the public courts and punish the injurer. If any of the magistrates be thought to have given an unjust verdict in deciding the penalties, he shall
κρίνειν τὰς ξημίας, τῶν διπλασίων ὑπόδικος ἔστω τῷ βλαφθέντι· τὰ δὲ αὐτῶν ἀρχόντων ἀδική-
µάτα εἰς τὰ κοινὰ δικαστήρια ἐπανάγειν τῶν
βουλόμενον <ἐν> ἐκάστῳ τῶν ἐγκληµάτων.
µυρία δὲ ταῦτα ὄντα καὶ σµικρὰ νόµιµα, καθ'
ἀ δεῖ τὰς τιµωρίας γίγνεσθαι, λήξεών τε πέρι
C δικὼν καὶ προσκλήσεων καὶ κλητήρων, εἶτ' ἐπὶ
dυεὶν εἶτ' ἐφ' ὀπόσων δεῖ καλεῖσθαι, καὶ πάντα
ὀπόσα τοιαύτα ἔστων, οὐτ' ἀνοµοθέτητα οἶον τ'
eῖναι γέροντός τε οὔκ ἄξια νοµοθέτου, νοµοθε-
tούντων δ' αὐτὰ οἱ νέοι πρὸς τὰ τῶν πρόσθεν
νοµοθετήµατα ἀποµιµούµενοι σµικρὰ πρὸς µεγάλα,
καὶ τῆς ἀναγκαίας αὐτῶν χρείας ἐµπείρως
ἐχοντες, μέχριπερ ἀν πάντα ἰκανῶς δόξῃ κεῖ-
σθαι· τότε δὲ ἀκίνητα ποιησάµενοι ζώντων τοῦτοις
ἡδ' χρώµενοι µέτρον 2 ἔχουσι.
D Τὸ δὲ τῶν ἄλλων δηµιουργῶν ποιεῖν χρὴ κατὰ
tάδε. πρῶτον μὲν ἐπιχώριος µηδεὶς ἔστω τῶν
περὶ τὰ δηµιουργικὰ τεχνήµατα διαπονούντων,
µηδὲ οἰκήτης ἀνδρὸς ἐπιχώριος· τέχνην γὰρ ἰκανὴ
pολλῆς ἀσκήσεως ἀµα καὶ µαθηµάτων πολλῶν
dεοµένην κέκτηται πολιτῆς ἀνὴρ τὸν κοινὸν τῆς
πόλεως κόσµου σώζων καὶ κτῶµενος, οὐκ ἐν
παρέχων δεοµένων ἐπιτηδεύειν· δύο δὲ ἐπιτηδεύ-
µατα ἢ δύο τέχναι ἀκριβῶς διαπονεῖσθαι σχεδὸν
Ε οὐδεµία φύσις ἰκανὴ τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων, οὐδ' αὐ
tὴς µὲν αὐτὸς ἰκανῶς ἀσκεῖν, τὴν δὲ ἄλλον
ἀσκοῦντα ἐπιπροπεύειν· τοῦτ' οὖν ἐν πόλει
ὑπάρχον δεῖ πρῶτον γίγνεσθαι, µηδὲις χαλκεῦνο
ἀµα τεκταίνεσθω, µηδ' αὐ τεκταίνοµενος χαλκευ-

1 <ἐν> ἐκάστῳ: ἐκάστων MSS. (ἐκαστον Ast).
be liable to pay to the injured party double the amount; and whoso wishes shall bring up the wrongdoings of the magistrates before the public courts in the case of each complaint. And since there are countless petty cases for which penalties must be laid down, concerning written complaints and citations and evidence of citation,—whether the citation requires two or more witnesses,—and all matters of the like kind,—these cases cannot be left without legal regulation, but at the same time they do not deserve the attention of an aged lawgiver; so the young lawgivers shall make laws for these cases, modelling their small rules on the great ones of our earlier enactments, and learning by experience how far they are necessary in practice, until it be decided that they are all adequately laid down; and then, having permanently fixed them, they shall live in the practice of them, now that they are set out in due form.

Moreover, for craftsmen we ought to make regulations in this wise. First, no resident citizen shall be numbered among those who engage in technical crafts, nor any servant of a resident. For a citizen possesses a sufficient craft, and one that needs long practice and many studies, in the keeping and conserving of the public system of the State, a task which demands his full attention: and there hardly exists a human being with sufficient capacity to carry on two pursuits or two crafts thoroughly, nor yet to practise one himself and supervise another in practising a second. So we must first of all lay down this as a fundamental rule in the State: no man who is a smith shall act as a joiner, nor shall

---

2 μέτρον Baiter: μέτριον MSS.
όντων ἄλλων ἐπιμελεῖσθω μᾶλλον ἡ τῆς αὐτοῦ τέχνης, πρόφασιν ἔχων ὡς πολλῶν οἰκετῶν ἐπιμελούμενος ἐαυτῷ δημιουργοῦντων εἰκότως μᾶλλον ἐπιμελεῖται ἐκείνων διὰ τὸ τὴν πρόσοδον

847 ἐκείθεν αὐτῷ πλείω γίγνεσθαι τῆς αὐτοῦ τέχνης, ἀλλ' εἰς μίαν ἐκαστὸς τέχνην ἐν πόλει κεκτημένος ἀπὸ ταύτης ἀμα καὶ τὸ ξῆν κτάσθω. τούτον δὴ τὸν νόμον ἀστυνόμοι διαπονούμενοι σωζόντων, καὶ τὸν μὲν ἐπιχώριον, εὰν εἰς τινα τέχνην ἀποκλίνῃ μᾶλλον ἡ τῆς τῆς ἀρετῆς ἐπιμέλειαν, κολαξοῦντων ὅνειδείς τε καὶ ἀτιμίας, μέχριπερ ἀν κατευθύνωσιν εἰς τὸν αὐτοῦ δρόμον, ξένων δὲ ἀν τις ἐπιτη- δεύῃ δύο τέχνας, δεσμοίσι τε καὶ χρημάτων ἐξημιαὶς καὶ ἐκβολαῖς ἐκ τῆς πόλεως κολαξοῦτες ἀναγκαζόντων ἔνα μόνον ἄλλα μὴ πολλοὺς εἶναι. μισθῶν δὲ αὐτοῖς πέρι καὶ τῶν ἀναιρέσεων τῶν ἔργων, καὶ εὰν τις αὐτοὺς ἔτερος ἢ 'κεῖνοι τινα ἄλλου ἀδικίωςι, μέχρι δραχμῶν πεντήκοντα ἀστυνόμοι διαδικαζόντων, τὸ δὲ πλέον τούτου τὰ κοινὰ δικαστήρια διακρινόντων κατὰ νόμον.

Τέλος δὲ ἐν τῇ πόλει μηδένα μηδὲν τελεῖν μήτε ἐξαγομένων χρημάτων μήτε εἰσαγομένων λιβανω- τον δὲ καὶ ὅσα πρὸς 1 θείους τὰ τοιαύτ᾽ ἐστὶ ξεικάθυμιματα, καὶ πορφύραν καὶ ὅσα βαπτᾶ χρώ- ματα, μὴ φερούσας τῆς χώρας, ἢ περὶ τινα ἄλλην τέχνην δεομένην ξεικῶν τινῶν εἰσάγωγίμων μηδενὸς ἀναγκαῖον χάριν μήτε τις ἄγετω, μήτε αὐ τῶν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ἀναγκαίων ἐμμένειν ἐξαγετῶ. τούτων δ' αὐτὸν τῶν εἰσγρώμονας εἶναι καὶ ἐπιμελητὰς τῶν νομοφυλάκων, πέντε ἀφαιρεθέντων τῶν πρεσβυτέρων, τοὺς ἐξῆς δώδεκα.

1 πρὸς MSS. : περὶ Zur., vulg.

184
a joiner supervise others at smith-work, instead of his own craft, under the pretext that, in thus supervising many servants working for him, he naturally supervises them more carefully because he gains more profit from that source than from his own craft; but each several craftsman in the State shall have one single craft,¹ and gain from it his living. This law the city-stewards shall labour to guard, and they shall punish the resident citizen, if he turn aside to any craft rather than to the pursuit of virtue, with reproofs and degradation, until they restore him to his own proper course; and if a foreigner pursue two crafts, they shall punish him by imprisonment, money-fines, and expulsion from the State, and so compel him to act as one man and not many. And as regards wages due to craftsmen, and the cancellings of work ordered, and any injustices done to them by another, or to another by them, the city-stewards shall act as arbitrators up to a value of fifty drachmae, and in respect of larger sums the public courts shall adjudicate as the law directs.

No toll shall be paid in the State by anyone either on exported goods or on imports. Frankincense and all such foreign spices for use in religious rites, and purple and all dyes not produced in the country, and all pertaining to any other craft requiring foreign imported materials for a use that is not necessary, no one shall import; nor, on the other hand, shall he export any of the stuff which should of necessity remain in the country: and of all such matters the inspectors and supervisors shall consist of those twelve Law-wardens who remain next in order when five of the oldest are left out.

¹ Cp. Rep. 369 Eff., 434 A.
ΠΕΡΙ ΔΕ ὍΠΛΩΝ ΚΑΙ ὍΣΑ ΠΕΡΙ ΤΩΝ ΠΟΛΕΜΟΝ

Δ ἈΠΑΝΤΑ ὈΡΓΑΝΑ, ΕἲΝ ΤΙΝΟΣ Ή ΤΕΧΝΗΣ ΕΙΣΑΓΩΓΗΜΟΝ

ΔΕΗ ΓΩΝΥΣΘΑΙ ᾨ ΦΥΤΟΥ ᾨ ΜΕΤΑΛΛΕΥΤΙΚΟΥ ΚΤΗΜΑΤΟΣ

Η ΔΕΣΜΕΥΤΙΚΟΥ Η ΖΩΩΝ ΤΙΝΩΝ ΕΝΕΚΑ ΤΗΣ ΤΟΙΑΥΤΗΣ

ΧΡΕΙΑΣ, ὩΠΠΑΡΧΟΙ ΚΑΙ ΣΤΡΑΤΗΓΟΙ ΤΟΥΤΩΝ ἙΣΤΩΣΑΝ

ΚΥΡΙΟΙ ΕΙΣΑΓΩΓΗΣ ΤΕ ΚΑΙ ΕΞΑΓΩΓΗΣ, ΔΙΔΟΥΣΗΣ ΤΕ

ΑΜΑ ΚΑΙ ΔΕΧΟΜΕΝΗΣ ΤΗΣ ΠΟΛΕΩΣ, ΝΟΜΟΥΣ ΔΕ ΠΕΡΙ

ΤΟΥΤΩΝ ΝΟΜΟΦΥΛΑΚΕΣ ΤΟΥΣ ΠΡΕΠΟΝΤΑΣ ΤΕ ΚΑΙ ἘΚΑ-

ΝΟΥΣ ΘΗΣΟΥΝ ΚΑΠΗΛΕΙΑΝ ΔΕ ΕΝΕΚΑ ΧΡΗΜΑΤΙΣΜΩΝ

ΜΗΤΕ ΟΥΝ ΤΟΥΤΟΥ ΜΗΤΕ ἈΛΛΟΥ ΜΗΔΕΝΟΣ ΕΝ Τῇ ΧΩΡΑ

Ε ὍΛΗ ΚΑΙ ΠΟΛΕΙ ὍΜΙΝ ΓΩΝΥΣΘΑΙ.

ΤΡΟΦΗΣ ΔΕ ΚΑΙ ΔΙΑΝΟΜΗΣ ΤΩΝ ΕΚ ΤΗΣ ΧΩΡΑΣ

ΕΓΓΥΣ ΤΗΣ ΤΟΥ ΚΡΗΤΙΚΟΥ ΝΟΜΟΥ ΕΟΙΚΕΝ ΟΡΘΌΤΗΣ ΑΝ

ΤΗΣ ΓΙΓΝΟΜΕΝΗ ΚΑΤΑ ΤΡΟΠΟΝ ΓΩΝΥΣΘΑΙ. ΔΩΔΕΚΑ

ΜΕΝ ΓΑΡ ΔΗ ΜΕΡΗ ΤΑ ΠΑΝΤΑ ΕΚ ΤΗΣ ΧΩΡΑΣ ΓΙΓΝ-

ΟΜΕΝΑ ΝΕΜΕΙΝ ΧΡΕΩΝ ΠΑΝΤΑΣ, ᾨΠΕΡ ΚΑΙ ἈΝΑΛΩΤΕΑ:

ΤΟ ΔΕ ΔΩΔΕΚΑΤΟΝ ΜΕΡΟΣ ΕΚΑΣΤΟΝ, ΟΙΟΝ ΠΥΡΩΝ ΚΑΙ

ΚΡΙΘΩΝ, ΟΙΣΙ ΔΗ ΚΑΙ ΤΑ ἈΠΑΝΤΑ ἈΚΟΛΟΥΘΕΙΤΩ ΤΑ

ἈΛΛΑ ὩΡΑΙΑ ΝΕΜΟΜΕΝΑ, ΚΑΙ ὍΣΑ ξΩΑ ΞΥΜΠΑΝΤΑ

ΠΡΑΣΙΜΗ ἌΝ ΕΚΑΣΤΟΙΣ η, ΤΡΙΧΗΔΙΑΙΡΕΙΣΘΩ ΚΑΤΑ

ΛΟΓΟΝ, ἘΝ ΜΕΝ ΜΕΡΟΣ ΤΟΙΣ ἙΛΕΥΘΕΡΟΙΣ, ἘΝ ΔΕ ΤΟΙΣ

ΤΟΥΤΩΝ ΟΙΚΕΤΑΙΣ, ΤΟ ΔΕ ΤΡΙΤΟΝ ΔΗΜΙΟΥΡΓΟΙΣ ΤΕ ΚΑΙ

ΠΑΝΤΩΝ ΤΟΙΣ ΞΕΝΟΙΣ, ΟΙ ΤΕ ΤΙΝΕΣ ἈΝ ΤΩΝ ΜΕΤΟΙΚΟΥΝ-

ΤΩΝ ὩΣΙ ΞΥΝΟΙΚΟΙΤΕΣ, ΤΡΟΦΗΣ ἈΝΑΓΚΑΙΟΥ ΔΕΟΜΕΝΟΙ,

ΚΑΙ ὍΣΟΙ ΧΡΕΙΑ ΤΙΝΙ ΠΟΛΕΩΣ ᾨ ΤΙΝΟΣ ἸΔΙΩΤΩΝ

ΕΙΣΑΓΙΚΟΙΝΤΑΙ ΕΚΑΣΤΟΤΕ ΠΑΝΤΩΝ ΤΩΝ ἈΝΑΓΚΑΙΩΝ

ἈΠΟΝΕΜΗΘΕΝ ΤΡΙΤΟΝ ΜΕΡΟΣ ὩΝΙΟΝ ἘΞ ἈΝΑΓΚΗΣ ἘΣΤΩ

ΤΟΥΤΟ ΜΟΝΟΝ, ΤΩΝ ΔΕ ΔΥΟ ΜΕΡΩΝ ΜΗΔΕΝ ἘΠΑΝΑΓΚΕΣ

ἘΣΤΩ ΠΩΛΕΙΝ. ΠΩΣ ΟΥΝ ΔΗ ΤΑΥΤΑ ὍΡΘΟΤΑΤΑ ΝΕΜΟΙΤ'

186
In regard to arms and all instruments of war, if there is need to import any craft or plant or metal or rope or animal for military purposes, the hipparchs and generals shall have control of both imports and exports, when the State both gives and takes, and the Law-wardens shall enact suitable and adequate laws therefor; but no trading for the sake of gain, either in this matter or in any other, shall be carried on anywhere within the boundaries of our State and country.

Touching food-supply and the distribution of agricultural produce, a system approaching that legalised in Crete would probably prove satisfactory. The whole produce of the soil must be divided by all into twelve parts, according to the method of its consumption. And each twelfth part—of wheat and barley, for instance (and all the rest of the crops must be distributed in the same way as these, as well as all marketable animals in each district)—must be divided proportionately into three shares, of which the first shall be for the freeborn citizens, and the second for their servants; the third share shall be for craftsmen and foreigners generally, including any resident aliens who may be dwelling together and in need of necessary sustenance, and all who have come into the country at any time to transact either public or private business; and this third share of all the necessaries shall be the only one liable to compulsory sale,\(^1\) it being forbidden to sell any portion of the other two shares compulsorily. What, then, will be the best way of making these

\(^1\) For sales to foreigners, see below 849 A ff.; they had to buy their share of food-stuff, but the other two shares were not to be forced on to the market.
Β ἂν ὑπὸ τῶν μὲν δῆλον ὅτι τῇ μὲν ὑσα, τῇ δ' οὐκ ὑσα νέμομεν.

ΚΑ. Πῶς λέγεις;

ΑΘ. Χείρῳ ποι ἐλεύθερον τούτων ἑκάστα ἀνάγκη φύειν καὶ ἐκτρέφειν τῇ γῇν.

ΚΑ. Πῶς γὰρ οὐ;

ΑΘ. Τῷ μὲν τοίνυν τοιούτῳ τῶν μερῶν τριῶν ὀντων μηδὲν πλέουν ἐχέτω μήτε τὸ τοῖς διεσποταῖς ἡ δούλων νεμόμενον, μήτε αὐτὸ τῶν ξένων, ἀλλὰ τὴν τῆς ὁμοιότητος ἵστοτα ἡ νομὴ πᾶσιν ἀπο-

C διδότω τὴν αὐτήν' λαβὼν ὁ ἑκάστος τῶν πολιτῶν τὰ δύο μέρη κύριος ἐστὼ τῆς νομῆς δούλως τε καὶ ἐλευθέρους, ὅποι' ἂν καὶ ὑποίδα βούληται διανέμειν τὸ δὲ πλέον τούτων μέτροις τε καὶ ἀριθμῷ τῇδε χρῆ διανέμεσθαι, λαβόντα τὸν ἀριθμὸν πάντων τῶν ζώων οἷς ἐκ τῆς γῆς δεὶ τὴν τροφὴν γίγνεσθαι, διανέμειν.

Τὸ δὲ μετὰ τούτῳ αὐτοῖς οἰκήσεις δεὶ χωρὶς διατεταγμένας εἶναι. τάξις δὲ ἢδε πρέπει τοῖς τοιούτοις' δωδέκα κώμας εἶναι χρῆ, κατὰ μέσον D τὸ δωδεκατημόριον ἑκάστον μίαν, ἐν τῇ κώμῃ δὲ ἐκάστη πρώτων μὲν ιερὰ καὶ ἀγόραν ἐξηρήσθαι θεών τε καὶ τῶν ἐπομένων θεοῖς δαιμόνων, εἶτε τινὲς ἐντοποῦ Μαγνήτων εἰτ' ἄλλων ἱδρύματα παλαιῶν μνήμη διασεσωμένων εἰς, τούτοις ἀπο-

dιδόντας τὰς τῶν πάλα τιμᾶς ἀνθρώπων, Ἐστίας δὲ καὶ Δίος Ἀθηνᾶς τε καὶ ὃς ἂν ἄρχηγός ἦ τῶν ἄλλων τοῦ δωδεκάτου ἑκάστου μέρους, ἱερὰ παν-

188
It is plain, to begin with, that our division is in one way equal, in another, unequal.

**CLIN.** How do you mean?

**ATH.** Of each of these products of the soil, necessarily some parts are worse and some better.

**CLIN.** Of course.

**ATH.** In respect of this, no one of the three shares shall have an undue advantage,—neither that given to the masters, nor that of the slaves, nor that of the foreigners,—but the distribution shall assign to all the same equality of similarity. Each citizen shall take two shares and have control of the distribution of them to slaves and free men respectively, in the quantity and of the quality he desires to distribute. The surplus over and above this must be distributed by weight and number as follows,—the owner must take the number of all the animals that have to be fed on the produce of the soil, and make his distribution accordingly.

In the next place, there must be dwellings for the citizens separately arranged. A suitable arrangement for them will be this. There should be twelve villages, one in the middle of each of the twelve districts; and in each village we shall first select temples and a market-place for the gods and demi-gods; and if there exist any local deities of the Magnetes or any shrines of other ancient gods whose memory is still preserved, we shall pay to them the same worship as did the men of old; and everywhere we shall erect temples to Hestia and Zeus and Athena, and whatever other deity is the patron of

---

1 The original inhabitants of the site of Clinias's new colony (cp. 702 B, 860 E): they subsequently migrated to Magnesia in Asia Minor.
ταχοῦ ἵδρυσασθαι. πρῶτον δὲ οἰκοδομίας εἶναι περὶ τὰ ἱερὰ ταῦτα, ὅτι ἄν ὁ τόπος υψηλότατος
Ε ὡς, τοῖς φρουροῖς ύποδοχὴν ὅτι μάλιστα εὐερκῆ·
tὴν δὲ ἄλλην χώραν κατασκευάζεις πᾶσαν ὁμορρογῶν τριακάδεκα μέρη διελομένους, καὶ τὸ
μὲν ἐν ἀστεὶ κατοικίζεις, διελομένους αὐτὸ καὶ τοῦτο εἰς τὰ δώδεκα μέρη τῆς πόλεως ἀπάσης, ἔξω τε
καὶ ἐν κύκλῳ κατανεμηθέντας, ἐν τῇ κόμη δὲ ἐκάστη τὰ πρόσφορα γεωργοῦσι γενὴ τῶν ὁμορρο-
γῶν συνοικίσεων. τοὺς δὲ ἐπιμελητὰς εἶναι τούτων πάντων τοὺς τῶν ἀγροῦμων ἀρχοντας,
όσων τε καὶ ὄντων ὁ τόπος ἐκαστὸς δεῖται, καὶ ὅπου κατοικοῦντες ἀλυποτατοί τε καὶ οὐφελι-
849
μῶτατοι ἐσονται τοῦτο γεωργοῦσι. τῶν δὲ ἐν
ἀστεὶ κατὰ τὰ αὐτὰ ἐπιμεληθῆναι [καὶ ἐπιμε-
λείσθαι] 1 τὴν τῶν ἀστυνόμων ἀρχήν.
Τοῖς δὲ δὴ ἀγορανόμοις τὰ περὶ ἀγοράν πο

Β τοῖς ἀστοῖς σκοπεῖν εἰ γίγνεται κατὰ τὸν νόμον ἐκαστα. νόμος δὲ εἰς ἔστω, 2 μηνὸς τῇ νέα ὑπὲρ ὁ ἀ

1 [καὶ ἐπιμελείσθαι] I bracket.
2 δ' εἰς ἔστω: δ' ἐκάστῳ MSS.; δ' ἔστω Zur., vulg.
the district concerned. First, buildings shall be erected round about these temples, and wherever the ground is highest, to form a stronghold, as well fenced as possible, for the garrison; and all the rest of the land we shall provide for by dividing the craftsmen into thirteen sections, of which one shall settle in the city (and this section shall be subdivided again into twelve parts, like the whole city itself, and distributed round about it in the suburbs); and in each village we shall settle the classes of craftsmen that are serviceable to farmers. Of all these the chiefs of the land-stewards shall be the supervisors, determining how many and what craftsmen each place requires, and where they shall dwell so as to be of least trouble and greatest use to the farmers. And in like manner the board of city-stewards shall diligently supervise the craftsmen in the city.

All matters concerning the markets must be managed by the market-stewards. In addition to supervising the temples adjoining the market, to prevent any damage being done to them, they shall, secondly, supervise personal conduct, keeping an eye on temperate and outrageous behaviour, so as to punish him who needs punishment. They shall watch over commodities put up for sale, to see that the sales which citizens are directed to make to foreigners are always legally conducted. There shall be this one law—that on the first day of the month the portion of the goods which is to be sold to foreigners shall be brought out by the managers—that is, the foreigners or slaves who act as managers for the citizens; and the first commodity shall be the twelfth share of corn, and the foreigner shall
καὶ ὁσα περὶ σιτοῦ ἀγορᾶ τῇ πρώτῃ δεκάτῃ δὲ τοῦ μηνὸς τὴν τῶν ύγρῶν οἱ μὲν πρᾶσιν, οἱ δὲ ἀνήρ ποιεῖσθωσαν δὲ ὅλου τοῦ μηνὸς ἱκανῆν τρίτη \( \text{τρίτη} \) 1 δὲ εἰκάδι τῶν ξών ἔστο τράπεζες, ὁσα ὑρίατε οὐτοῖς δεομένοις καὶ ὅπόσον σκευῶν ἡ χρημάτων γεωργοίς μὲν πρᾶσιν, οἶνον δερμάτων ἢ καὶ πάσης ἐσθήτου ἢ πλοκῆς ἢ πιλήσεως ἢ τινων ἄλλων τοιούτων, ξένοις δὲ ἀναγκαίου ὄνεισθαι παρ’ ἄλλων κτωμένοις. κατηλείας δὲ τούτων ἢ κριθῶν ἢ πυρῶν εἰς ἄλφητα νεμηθέντων, ἢ καὶ τὴν ἄλλην ἐνυπασάν τροφήν, ἀστοῖς μὲν καὶ τούτων δούλοις μήτε τις πωλεῖτω

D μήτε ὄνεισθω παρὰ τοιούτου μηδείς μηδενός, ἐν δὲ ταῖς τῶν ξένων ξένοις ἄγοραῖς πωλεῖτω τοῖς δημομυργοῖς τε καὶ τούτων δούλοις, οἶνον τε μεταβαλλόμενος καὶ σῖτου πρᾶσιν, ὃ δὴ κατηλεῖαν ἐπονομάζουσιν οἱ πλεῖστοι καὶ ζῶνων διαμερισθέντων μάγειροι διατιθέσθων ξένοις τε καὶ δημομυργοῖς καὶ τούτων οἰκέταις. πᾶσαι δὲ ἕλην καύσιμου ὁσμῆραι ξένους ὁ βουληθεὶς ὄνεισθω μὲν ἄθροιν παρὰ τῶν ἐν τοῖς χωρίοις ἐπιτρόπων, πωλεῖτω δὲ αὐτοῖς τοῖς ξένοις, καθ’ ὅσον ἄν

E βούληται καὶ ὅποταν βούληται. τῶν δὲ ἄλλων χρημάτων πάντων καὶ σκευῶν ὅπόσων ἐκάστοις χρεία, πωλεῖσθαι εἰς τὴν κοινὴν ἄγορὰν φέροντας εἰς τῶν τόπων ἐκαστοῦ, ἐν οἷς ἄν νομοφύλακας τε καὶ ἄγορανομοι μετ’ ἀστυνόμων τεκμηρίσθεν έδρας πρεποῦσας ὡρους θῶνται τῶν ὁμίων ἐν τούτοις ἀλλάττεσθαι νόμισμα τε χρημάτων καὶ χρήματα νομίσματος, μὴ προσειμένων ἄλλων ἐτέρω τῇ ἄλλῃ ἀλλαγῆν, ὃ δὲ προσειμένος ὡς πιστεύων,

1 τρίτη W. R. Paton; τρίτη MSS., edd.
LAWS, BOOK VIII

buy corn, and all that goes with it, at this first market. On the tenth day of the month, fluids sufficient to last through the month shall be sold by the one party and bought by the other. Thirdly, on the twentieth day, there shall be a sale of livestock, as much as each party can buy or sell to suit their requirements, and also of all utensils or goods which the farmers have for sale, such as skins or any kind of clothing or woven stuff or felt or any such material; and these the foreigners must obtain from others by purchase. But neither these goods, nor barley or wheat ground into flour, nor any other kind of foodstuff whatsoever, may be sold by way of retail trade to the citizens or their slaves, or bought from any such retailer (but to the craftsmen and their slaves in the foreigners' market a foreigner may sell and traffic in wine and corn by way of what is generally termed "retail trade"); and the butchers shall cut up the animals and distribute the meat to the foreigners and craftsmen and their servants. Any foreigner who wishes shall buy any kind of fuel in bulk, on any day, from the managers in the districts; and he shall sell it to the foreigners in what quantity and at what time he pleases. As to all other goods and utensils that each party requires, they shall be brought for sale to the public market, each kind to its appointed place, wherever the Lawwardens and market-stewards, with the help of the city-stewards, have marked out suitable sites and set up the stalls for market-stuff: there they shall exchange coins for goods and goods for coins, and no man shall give up his share to the other without receiving its equivalent; and if any does thus give
PLATO

ἐάν τε κομισῆται καὶ ἂν μὴ, στεργέτω ώς οὐκέτι δίκης οὐσίας τῶν τοιούτων πέρι συναλ-850 λάξεων. τὸ δὲ ὄνηθὲν ἢ πραθὲν ὅσῳ πλέον ἢ καὶ πλέονος ἢ κατὰ τὸν νόμον, ὃς εἴρηκε πόσον προσγενομένου καὶ ἀπογενομένου δεὶ μηδέτερα τούτων ποιεῖν, ἀναγραφήτω τὸτ' ἤδη παρὰ τοῖς νομοφύλαξι τὸ πλέον, ἐξαλειφέσθω δὲ τὸ ἑναντίον. τὰ αὐτὰ δὲ καὶ περὶ μετοίκων ἐστὶ τῆς ἀναγραφῆς πέρι τῆς οὐσίας. ιέναι δὲ τῶν βουλόμενων εἰς τὴν μετοίκησιν ἐπὶ ῥητοῖς, ὡς οἰκήσεως οὐσίας τῶν ξένων τῷ βουλόμενῳ καὶ Β δυναμένῳ μετοίκειν, τέχνην κεκτημένω καὶ ἐπιδη-μουντὶ μὴ πλέον ἐτῶν εἴκοσιν, ἀφ' ὧς ἂν γράψη-ται, μετοίκιοι μηδὲ σμικρόν τελοῦντι πλὴν τοῦ σωφρονεῖν, μηδὲ ἂλλο αὐ τέλος ἐνεκά τινος οὐνής ἢ καὶ πράσεως· ὅταν δ' ἐξήκωσιν οἱ χρόνοι, τὴν αὐτοῦ λαβόντα οὐσίαν ἀπίέναι. ἐὰν δ' ἐν τοῖς ἐτεσὶ τούτοις αὐτῷ ἔμβη λόγου ἄξιῶν πρὸς εὗρ-γεσίαν τῆς πόλεως γεγονέναι τινὰ ἵκανην, καὶ πιστεύῃ πείσειν βουλήν καὶ ἐκκλησίαν ἢ τινα

C ἀναβολὴν τῆς ἐξοικήσεως ἂξιῶν αὐτῷ γίγνεσθαι κυρίως ἢ καὶ τὸ παράπαν διὰ βίου τινὰ μονῆν, ἐπελθῶν καὶ πείσας τὴν πόλιν, ἀπερ ἂν πείσῃ, ταῦτα αὐτῷ τέλεα γιγνέσθω. παισὶ δὲ μετοίκων, δημιουργοῖς οὔσι καὶ γενομένοις ἐτῶν πεντεκαί-δεκα, τῆς μὲν μετοικίας ἄρχετω χρόνος ὁ μετὰ τὸ πέμπτον καὶ δέκατον ἔτος, ἐπὶ τούτοις δὲ εἴκοσιν

1 Cp. 742C, 915E.

194
it up, as it were on credit, he shall make the best of his bargain, whether or not he recovers what is due to him, since in such transactions he can no longer sue. And if the purchase or sale is greater or more costly than is allowed by the law stating the limits of increase or decrease of property beyond which both of these transactions are forbidden, the amount of difference must at once (in the case of excess) be registered with the Law-wardens, and (in the case of deficiency) be cancelled. The same rule shall hold good regarding the registration of property in the case of resident aliens. Whosoever wishes shall enter on residence as an alien on fixed terms, since residence is permitted to a foreigner who is willing and able to reside, provided that he has a craft and remains in the country not more than twenty years from the date of his registration, without the payment of even a small aliens' tax, except virtuous conduct, or indeed any other tax for any buying or selling; and when his time has expired, he shall depart, taking with him his own property. And if within the period of twenty years it should happen that he has proved his merit by doing some signal service to the State, and if he believes that he can persuade the Council and Assembly to grant his request and authorize a postponement of his departure, or even an extension of his residence for life, whatever request he thus succeeds in persuading the State to grant to him shall be carried out for him in full. For the children of resident aliens, who are craftsmen and over fifteen years of age, the period of residence shall commence from the fifteenth year, and such an one, after remaining for twenty years from that date, shall depart whither
PLATO

ἐτή μένας ἵτω ὅπῃ αὐτῷ φίλον μένειν δὲ ἄν βούληται, κατὰ τὰ αὐτὰ μενέτω πείσας. ὁ δὲ ἀπιῶν ἐξαλειψάμενος ἵτω τὰς ἀπογραφὰς, αἰτίνης ἄν αὐτῷ παρὰ τοῖς ἀρχουσι γεγραμμέναι πρότερον ὅσιν.
he pleases, or if he desires to remain, he shall gain permission in like manner, and so remain: and he that departs shall go after first cancelling the entries which were previously made by him in the register at the magistrates' office.
853 ΑΘ. Δίκαι δὴ τὰ μετὰ ταύτα ἀκόλουθοι ταῖς ἐμπροσθεν πράξεις ἀπάσαις οὕσαι κατὰ φύσιν γίγνοντο ἀν τὴν τῆς διακοσμήσεως τῶν νόμων. ὥστινον οὖν δὴ πέρι δεῖ γίγνεσθαι δίκας, τὰ μὲν εἰρήται, τὰ κατὰ γεωργίας τε καὶ ὁσα τούτοις εἴπετο, τὰ δὲ μέγιστα οὔτε εἰρήται πω, καθ' ἐν ἐκαστὸν τε λεγόμενον [ῥηθέν], ἢν δεῖ λαμβάνειν αὐτὸ τιμωρίαν καὶ τῖνων ποτὲ δικαστῶν Βτυγχάνειν, μετ' ἐκείν' αὐτὰ ἐξῆς ταύτα ῥητέον.

κλ. Ὁρθῶς.

ΑΘ. Αἰσχρόν μὲν δὴ τινα τρόπων καὶ νομοθετεῖν πάντα ὁπόσα νῦν μέλλομεν τοῦτο δρᾶν ἐν τοιαύτῃ πόλει, ἢν φαμεν οἰκίσεσθαι τε εὗ καὶ τεύξεσθαι πάσης ὀρθότητος πρὸς ἔπιτηδευσιν ἀρετῆς. ἐν δὲ τῇ τοιαύτῃ τῷ καὶ ἄξιοιν τῆς τῶν ἄλλων μοχθηρίας τῶν μεγίστων ἐμφύεσθαι τινα μεθέξοντα, ὥστε δεῖν νομοθετεῖν προκαταλαμβάνοντα καὶ ἀπειλοῦντα ἐάν τις τοιοῦτος

Σγύγηται, καὶ τούτων ἀποτροπής τε ἐνεκα καὶ γενομένων κολάσεως τιθέναι ἐπ' αὐτοῖς νόμοις, ὥς ἐσομένους, ὅπερ εἴπον, αἰσχρὸν μὲν τινα τρόπων ἐπειδὴ δὲ οὖ, καθάπερ οἱ παλαιοὶ νομοθέται θεῶν παισὶ νομοθετούμενοι τοῖς ἤρωσιν, ὥς ὁ νῦν λόγος, αὐτοὶ τ' ἐκ θεῶν ὑπετε ἄλλοις τε ἐκ τοιοῦτων γεγονόσιν ἐνομοθέτουν, ἀλλ' 1 [ῥηθέν] bracketed by Ast.
2 ἐσομένου Steph., Hermann: ἐσομένους MSS.

198
BOOK IX

ATH. The method of our legislation requires that we should deal next with the judicial proceedings connected with all the transactions hitherto described. The matters which involve such proceedings have been stated\(^1\) in part (those, namely, which concern farming and all industries dependent thereon), but we have not stated as yet the most important of such matters; so our next step must be to state them in full, enumerating in detail what penalty must attach to each offence, and before what court it must be tried.

CLIN. True.

ATH. It is, in a sense, a shameful thing to make all those laws that we are proposing to make in a State like ours, which is, as we say, to be well managed and furnished with all that is right for the practice of virtue. In such a State, the mere supposition that any citizen will grow up to share in the worst forms of depravity practised in other States, so that one must forestall and denounce by law the appearance of any such character, and, in order to warn them off or punish them, enact laws against them, as though they were certain to appear,—this, as I have said, is in a sense shameful. But we are not now legislating, like the ancient lawgivers, for heroes and sons of gods,\(^2\)—when, as the story goes, both the lawgivers themselves and their subjects were men of divine descent: we, on the contrary,

\(^1\) S42 E ff. \(^2\) Cp. 713 B ff.
Ἀνθρώποι τε καὶ ἀνθρώπων σπέρματι νομοθετοῦμεν τὰ νῦν, ἀνεμέσητον δὴ φοβεῖσθαι μὴ τις ἐγγίγνῃται τῶν πολιτῶν ἡμῖν οἶνον κερασθόλος,

D ὃς ἀτεράμων εἰς τοσοῦτον φύσει γίγνοντ' ἂν ὡστε μὴ τίκεσθαι, καὶ καθαρπὲ ἕκεινα τὰ σπέρματα πυρί, νόμοις οὗτοι καὶ περ οὕτως ἵσχυροίς οὕσων ἀτηκτοὶ γίγνονται. ἢν δὴ χάριν οὐκ ἐπίχαριν λέγοιμ' ἂν πρῶτον νόμον ἵερων περὶ συλήσεως, ἂν τις τούτο δρᾶν τολμᾶ, καὶ πολιτὴν μὲν τῶν τεθραμμένων ὁρθῶς οὕτ' ἂν βουλοίμεθα οὕτε ἐλπιστῶν πάννι τι νοσῆσαι ποτε ἂν ταύτην τὴν νόσον, οἰκείατε δὲ ἂν τούτων καὶ ξένων καὶ ξένων δούλων πολλὰ ἂν ἐπιχειρήσειαν τοιαῦτα. ἢν ἔνεκα μὲν μάλιστα, ὅμως δὲ καὶ ξύμπασαν τὴν τῆς ἀνθρωπίνης φύσεως ἀσθένειαν εὐλαβούμενος, ἐρώ τὸν τῶν ἱεροσυλιῶν 1 πέρι νόμον καὶ τῶν ἄλλων πάντων τῶν τοιούτων ὡς δυσίτα καὶ ἀνίατα. προοίμια δὲ τούτους κατὰ τῶν ἐμπροσθεν λόγον ὀμολογηθέντα προρρήτευν ἀπασαν ὡς βραχύτατα. λέγοι δὴ τις ἂν ἔκεινω διαλεγόμενος ἁμα καὶ παραμυθούμενος, ὅν ἐπιθυμία κακῇ παρακαλοῦσα μεθ' ἡμέραν τε καὶ ἐπεγείρουσα νύκτωρ ἐπὶ τῶν ἱερῶν ἄγει συλήσοιτα, τάδε.

Β' Ὡς θαυμάσιε, οὐκ ἀνθρώπινον σε κακὸν οὐδὲ θείον κινεῖ τὸ νῦν ἐπὶ τὴν ἱεροσύλλιαν προτρέπον ἱέναι, οἰστρος δὲ σὲ τις ἐμφύομενος ἐκ παλαιῶν καὶ ἀκαθάρτων τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἀδικημάτων, περιφερόμενος ἀλτηριώδης, ὧν εὐλαβείσθαι χρεών παντὶ σθενεῖ. τίς δ' ἔστιν εὐλάβεια μαθὲν

1 ἱεροσυλιῶν Ast: ἱεροσύλων MSS.
are but mortal men legislating for the seed of men, and therefore it is permitted to us to dread lest any of our citizens should prove horny-hearted and attain to such hardness of temper as to be beyond melting; and just as those "horn-struck" beans cannot be softened by boiling on the fire, so these men should be uninfluenced by laws, however powerful. So, for the sake of these gentlemen, no very gentle law shall be stated first concerning temple-robbery, in case anyone dares to commit this crime. That a rightly nurtured citizen should be infected with this disease is a thing that we should neither desire nor expect; but such attempts might often be made by their servants, and by foreigners or foreigners' slaves. Chiefly, then, on their account, and also as a precaution against the general infirmity of human nature, I will state the law about temple-robbing, and all other crimes of a like kind which are hard, if not impossible, to cure. And, in accordance with our rule as already approved, we must prefix to all such laws preludes as brief as possible. By way of argument and admonition one might address in the following terms the man whom an evil desire urges by day and wakes up at night, driving him to rob some sacred object—"My good man, the evil force that now moves you and prompts you to go temple-robbing is neither of human origin nor of divine, but it is some impulse bred of old in men from ancient wrongs unexpiated, which courses round wreaking ruin; and it you must guard against with all your strength. How you must thus guard, now learn.

1 i.e. "hard-shelled"; seeds struck by a beast's horn were vulgarly supposed to become "horny" and unfit for cooking.

2 Cp. 718 B ff.
ὅταν σοι προσπίπτη τι τῶν τουιούτων δογμάτων, ἵνα ἔπι τὰς ἀποδιοικμητήσεις, ἵνα ἔπι θεῶν ἀποτροπαίων ἵερα ἱκέτης, ὅτι ἔπι τὰς τῶν λεγομένων ἀνδρῶν ὑμῶν ἀγαθῶν ἐξουσίας, καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄκουσε, τὰ δὲ πειρῶ λέγειν αὐτός, ὡς δὲ τὰ καλὰ καὶ τὰ δίκαια πάντα ἄνδρα τιμῶν τὰς δὲ τῶν κακῶν ἐξουσίας φεύγε ἀμεταστρεπτεί. καὶ ἐὰν μὲν σοι ὄρθωτι ταῦτα λωφᾶ τι τὸ νόσημα—εἰ δὲ μή, καλλίω θάνατον σκεψάμενος ἀπαλλάττων τοῦ βίου.

Ταῦτα ἰμῶν ἄδωντον προοίμια τοῖς πάνται ταῦτα ἐπινοοῦσιν ὅσα ἀνόσια ἔργα καὶ πολυτοφόρα, τῷ μὲν πειθομένῳ τὸν νόμον ἔαν συγγε δεῖ, τῷ δὲ ἀπειθοῦντι μετὰ τὸ προοίμιον άδειον δέμα, ὁ δὲ ἁμείστως ληπθή, ἐὰν μὲν ἡ δοῦλος ἡ ἔνευ, εὕ τῷ προσώπῳ καὶ ταῖς χερσὶ γραφεῖς τὴν συμφορὰν καὶ μαστυγωθεῖς ὀπόσας ἀν δόξη τοῖς δικασταῖς, ἐκτὸς τῶν ὅρων τῆς χώρας γυμνός ἐκβληθήτω. τάχα γὰρ ἄν δοῦν τάντην τὴν δίκην γένουτ’ ἂν βελτίων, σωφρονισθείς. οὐ γὰρ ἔπι κακῶ δίκη γίγνεται οὐδεμία γενομένη κατὰ νόμον, δυοῖν δὲ θατεροῦ ἀπεργαζε- Ε ταῖς σχεδοῦν· ἡ γὰρ βελτίων η μοχθεροτέρων ὡττον ἐξειράγασατο τὸν τὴν δίκην παρασχόντα. πολίτης δὲ ἂν τῖς ποτὲ τι τοιούτων δρῶν ἀναφανῇ, περὶ θεοῦ ἣ περὶ γονέας ἢ περὶ πόλιν ἡδικηκῶς τῶν μεγάλων τινὰ καὶ ἀπορρήτων ἀδικιῶν, ὡς ἀνίστατον ἡδι τούτων ὡντα ὁ δικαστής διαινοεῖσθω, λογιζόμενος οίας παιδείας τε καὶ τροφῆς ἐκ παιδός τυχχάνων οὐκ ἀπέσχετο τῶν μεγίστων κακῶν. δίκη δὴ

1 Cp. 871 A. 2 Cp. 862 D f., 934 A f.
LAWS, BOOK IX

When there comes upon you any such intention, betake yourself to the rites of guilt-averting; betake yourself as suppliant to the shrines of the curse-lifting deities, betake yourself to the company of the men who are reputed virtuous; and thus learn, partly from others, partly by self-instruction, that every man is bound to honour what is noble and just; but the company of evil men shun wholly, and turn not back. And if it be so that by thus acting your disease grows less, well; but if not, then deem death the more noble way, and quit yourself of life."

As we chant this prelude to those who purpose all these unholy deeds, destructive of civic life, the law itself we must leave unvoiced 1 for him who obeys; but for him who disobeys we must suffer the law, following on the prelude, to utter aloud this chant: "Whosoever is caught robbing a temple, if he be a foreigner or a slave, his curse shall be branded on his forehead and on his hands, and he shall be scourged with so many stripes as the judges decree, and he shall be cast out naked beyond the borders of the country: for, after paying this penalty, he might perchance he disciplined into a better life. For no penalty that is legally imposed aims at evil, but it effects, as a rule, one or other of two results,—it makes the person who suffers it either better or less bad. 2 But if any citizen is ever convicted of such an act,—that is, of committing some great and infamous wrong against gods, parents, or State—the judge shall regard him as already incurable, reckoning that, in spite of all the training and nurture he has had from infancy, he has not refrained from the worst iniquity. For him
τούτω θάνατος ἐλάχιστον τῶν κακῶν, τοὺς δὲ 855 ἄλλους παράδειγμα ὑνήσει γενόμενος ἀκλεῖς καὶ ὑπὲρ τοὺς τῆς χώρας ὀροὺς ἀφανισθεὶς: παισὶ δὲ καὶ γένει, ἕαν φύγωσι τὰ πατρῷα ἥθη, κλέος ἔστω καὶ λόγος ἐντιμὸς λεγόμενος, ὡς εὐ τε καὶ ἀνδρεῖως εἰς ἀγαθὸν ἐκ κακοῦ διαπεφευγότων. δημόσια δὲ χρήματα οὐδὲνος τῶν τοιούτων τῇ πολιτείᾳ πρέπον ἂν εἰπῇ γίγνεσθαι, ἐν ᾗ δεῖ τοὺς αὐτοὺς ἄει καὶ ἱσους ὄντας διατελεῖν κλήρους. ζημίας δ' ἐκτίσεις, ὅταν ἀδικεῖν ἄξια δοκὴ τις χρημάτων, ἐκτίσειν, ἂν ᾗ τὶ τῷ 1 τοῦ κλήρου κατεσκευασμένον περιττεύον, μέχρι τοσοῦτον

Β ζημιωθέντα, τὸ δὲ πλέον μη, τάς δ' εἰς ταῦτα ἀκριβείας ἐκ τῶν ἀπογραφῶν νομοφύλακες σκοποῦντες τὸ σαφὲς ἐξαγγελλόμενον ἂεί τοῖς δικασταῖς, ὅπως ἂν τῶν κλήρων ἀργοὺς μηδεῖς μηδέποτε γίγνηται δι' ἀπορίαν χρημάτων. ζημίας δὲ ἂν τις πλέονοι ἄξιοι εἶναι δοκὴ, ἐὰν ἁρα μὴ τινες ἐθέλωσιν αὐτὸν τῶν φίλων ἐγγυᾶσθαι τε καὶ ἐνυκτίνοντες ἀπελευθεροῦν, δεσμοῖς τε χρυσίος καὶ

C ἐμφανείσι καὶ τἰσι προτηλακισμοῖς κολάξειν, ἀτίμων δὲ παντάπασι μηδένα εἶναι μηδέποτε μηδ' ἐφ' ἐν τῶν ἀμαρτημάτων, μηδ' ὑπερόμοιον φυγάδα· θάνατον δὲ ἡ δεσμοῦς ἡ πληγάς ἡ τινας ἀμόρφους ἔδρας ἡ στάσεις ἡ παραστάσεις εἰς ἱερὰ ἐπὶ τὰ τῆς χώρας ἔσχατα, ἡ χρημάτων καθάπερ ἐμπροσθεν εἴπομεν ἐκτίσεις γίγνεσθαι δεῖν τὴν δίκην ταύτην, γιγνέσθω. δικασταῖ δὲ ἐστοσανθανάτου πέρι νομοφύλακες τε καὶ τὸ τῶν περισσινῶν ἀρχόντων

1 τὶ τῷ W. R. Paton, England: τὶ τῶν MSS.

the penalty is death, the least of evils; and, moreover, by serving as an example, he will benefit others, when himself disgraced and removed from sight beyond the borders of the country; but his children and family, if they shun their father's ways, shall be honoured, and honourable mention shall be made of them, seeing that they have done well and bravely in leaving the ways of vice for those of virtue. That the goods of any such criminal should be confiscated would not be fitting in a State in which the allotments must remain always identical and equal in number. Whosoever is held to have done a wrong which deserves a money-fine must pay the fine exacted when the fine comes within the limits of the surplus he has over when his allotment has been equipped, but not what exceeds this: the precise facts in such cases the Law-wardens must find out from the registers,¹ and they must inform the judges of the true state of each case, in order to prevent any allotment falling out of cultivation through lack of money. And if any man is held to deserve a larger fine, in case none of his friends are willing to go bail or, by clubbing together, to pay the sum and set him free, then we must punish him by long imprisonment, of a public kind, and by measures of degradation; but no one shall be absolutely outlawed for any single crime, even though he be banished from the country.² The punishments to be inflicted shall be death, or imprisonment, or stripes, or seats or stations or exposures of a degrading kind at temples or at outermost boundaries, or money-fines of the kind we have stated,—where such punishments are required. In cases where the penalty is death, the judges shall be the Law-wardens together with
PLATO

ἀριστίνδην ἀπομερισθὲν δικαστήριον· εἰσαγωγάς

D ὃς ὁδὲ τούτων καὶ προσκλήσεις καὶ ὅσα τοιαύτα, καὶ

ὡς ὃς δὲ γίγνεσθαι, τοῖς νεωτέροις νομοθέταις χρή

μέλειν τὴν διαψήφισιν δὲ ἴμετέρων ἔργον νομο-

θετεῖν. ἔστω δὴ φανερὰ μὲν ἡ ψήφος τιθεμένη,

πρὸ τούτου δὲ κατὰ τὸ στόμα τοῦ διώκοντός τε καὶ

φεύγοντος ὁ δικαστὴς ἔξης ἥμιν ἐγγύτατα

κατὰ πρέσβιν ἱζέσθω, πάντες δ' ὅποι πολίται, ὁσοιπερ

ἄν ἄγωσι σχολήν, ἔτηκοι έστωσαν σπουδὴ τῶν

Ε τοιούτων δικῶν. λέγειν δὲ ἔνα λόγον, πρῶτον

μὲν τὸν διώκοντα, τὸν δὲ φεύγοντα δεύτερον· μετὰ

δὲ τοὺς λόγους τούτους ἀρχεσθαι μὲν τὸν γεραι-

τατον ἀνακρίνοντα, ἱόντα εἰς τὴν τῶν λεχθέντων

σκέψιν ἰκανὴν, μετὰ δὲ τὸν πρεσβύτατον ἔξης

ἀπαντας χρή διεξελθεῖν ὃ τι ἄν παρ' ἑκατέροις τις

τῶν ἀντιδίκων ῥηθὲν ἢ μὴ ῥηθὲν ἐπιποθῆ τινὰ

τρόπον· ὁ δὲ μηδὲν ποθῶν ἄλλω τὴν ἀνάκρισιν

παραδιδότω. τῶν δὲ ῥηθέντων ἐπισφραγισά-

μένους ὁσα ἄν εἰναι καίρια δοκῇ, γράμμασι σημεία

856 ἐπιβάλλοντας πάντων τῶν δικαστῶν, θεῖαι ἐπὶ

τὴν Ἑστίαν, καὶ πάλιν αὐρίον εἰς ταῦτον ξυνελ-

θόντας ὡσαύτως τε ἀνακρίνοντας διεξελθεῖν τὴν

δίκην, καὶ σημεία ἐπιβάλλοντας αὐτοῖς λεχθεῖσιν·

καὶ τρίς δράσαντας τοῦτο, τεκμηρία τε καὶ

μάρτυρας ἰκανῶς παραλαβόντας, ψήφου ἱερὰν

ἐκαστὸν φέροντα καὶ ὑποσχόμενον πρὸς τῆς

Ἑστίας εἰς δύναμιν τὰ δίκαια καὶ ἄληθῆ κρίνειν,

οὔτω τέλος ἐπιθεῖναι τῇ τοιαύτῃ δίκῃ.

1 Cp. 767 D.

206
the court of last year's magistrates selected by merit. In respect of these cases the younger lawgivers must attend to the indictments and summonses and all such matters, and the procedure involved, while it is our task to regulate by law the method of voting. The votes shall be cast openly, and, before this takes place, our judges shall be seated, facing the plaintiff and defendant, in a closely-packed row in order of seniority, and all the citizens who have leisure to do so shall attend and listen attentively to the trials. One speech shall be made by the plaintiff first, and secondly one by the defendant; and after these speeches the oldest judge shall lead off with his survey of the case, in which he shall review in detail the statements made; and after the oldest, each of the other judges in turn must discuss every point which he has noticed in which either of the litigants has been guilty of making any kind of omission or blunder in his statement; and he that has no such criticism to make shall pass on the task of reviewing to his neighbour; and when such of the statements as the judges have pronounced relevant have been confirmed by affixing to the documents the signatures of all the judges, they shall lay them up at the altar of Hestia. On the morrow again they shall assemble at the same place and discuss the case, and they shall make their pronouncements in the same manner, and shall again sign the statements. And after doing this thrice,—during which proceedings they shall pay full attention to evidence and witnesses,—each of the judges shall cast a sacred vote, promising by Hestia to give just and true judgment to the best of his power; and thus they shall bring to its end this form of trial.
ΠΛΑΤΟ

Β Μετά δὲ τὰ περὶ θεοὺς τὰ περὶ κατάλυσιν τῆς πολιτείας ὃς ἂν ἄγων εἰς ἀρχὴν ἀνθρωπον δουλῶται μὲν τοὺς νόμους, ἐταφείας δὲ τὴν πόλιν ὑπήκουν ποιή, καὶ βιαίως δὴ πὰν τοῦτο πράττον καὶ στάσιν ἐγείρων παρανομῆ, τοῦτον δὴ διανοεῖσθαί δεῖ πάντων πολεμιώτατον ὀλη τῇ πόλει. τὸν δὲ κοινονοῦντα μὲν τῶν τοιούτων μηδενὶ, τῶν μεγίστων δὲ μετέχοντα ἄρχων ἐν τῇ πόλει, λειψθότα τε ταῦτα αὐτῶν ἢ μὴ λειψθότα, δειλία δ' ὑπὲρ

C πατρίδος αὐτοῦ μὴ τιμωρούμενον, δεὶ δεύτερον ἤγείσθαι τὸν τοιούτον πολίτην κάκη. πᾶς δὲ ἄνηρ οὐ καὶ σμικρὸν ἀφελος ἐνδεικνύω ταῖς ἄρχαις εἰς κρίσιν ἄγων τὸν ἐπιβουλεύοντα βιαίον πολιτείας μεταστάσεως ἁμα καὶ παρανόμων. δικασταὶ δὲ ἐστωσαν τοῦτοι οὐπερ τοὺς ἱεροσύλους, καὶ πᾶσαν την κρίσιν ὁσαύτως αὐτοῖς γίγνεσθαι καθάπερ ἐκείνους, τὴν ψήφον δὲ θάνατον φέρειν τὴν πλῆθει νικῶσαν. εὐὶ δὲ λόγῳ, πατροὶ ὁνείδη καὶ τιμωρίας παῖδων μηδενὶ ξυν-ἐπεσθαί, πλὴν ἐὰν τινὶ πατὴρ καὶ πάππος καὶ πάππου πατὴρ ἐφεξῆς ὁφλωσι θανάτου δίκην τοῦτος δὲ ἢ πόλις ἔχοντας τὴν αὐτῶν οὐσίαν, πλὴν ὅσον κατεσκευασμένου τοῦ κληρον παντελῶς, εἰς τὴν αὐτῶν ἀρχαίαν ἐκεμπεπέθεθα πατρίδα καὶ πόλιν. οἷς δ' ἂν τῶν πολιτῶν νεῖς ὅντες τυγχάνωσι πλείους ἐνός, μὴ ἐλαττὸν δέκα ἑτη γεγονότες, κληρώσαι μὲν τοῦτων δέκα οὖς ἂν ἀποφήνῃ πατὴρ ἢ πάππος ὁ πρὸς πατρὸς ἢ μητρός· τῶν

D ἐπεσθαί, πλὴν ἐὰν τινὶ πατὴρ καὶ πάππος καὶ πάππου πατὴρ ἐφεξῆς ὁφλωσι θανάτου δίκην· τοῦτος δὲ ἢ πόλις ἔχοντας τὴν αὐτῶν οὐσίαν, πλὴν ὅσον κατεσκευασμένου τοῦ κληρον παντελῶς, εἰς τὴν αὐτῶν ἀρχαίαν ἐκεμπεπέθεθα πατρίδα καὶ πόλιν. οἷς δ' ἂν τῶν πολιτῶν νεῖς ὅντες τυγχάνωσι πλείους ἐνός, μὴ ἐλαττὸν δέκα ἑτη γεγονότες, κληρώσαι μὲν τοῦτων δέκα οὖς ἂν ἀποφήνῃ πατὴρ ἢ πάππος ὁ πρὸς πατρὸς ἢ μητρός· τῶν

Ε ἐπεσθαί, πλὴν ἐὰν τινὶ πατὴρ καὶ πάππος καὶ πάππου πατὴρ ἐφεξῆς ὁφλωσι θανάτου δικήν· τοῦτος δὲ ἢ πόλις ἔχοντας τὴν αὐτῶν οὐσίαν, πλὴν ὅσον κατεσκευασμένου τοῦ κληρον παντελῶς, εἰς τὴν αὐτῶν ἀρχαίαν ἐκεμπεπέθεθα πατρίδα καὶ πόλιν. οἷς δ' ἂν τῶν πολιτῶν νεῖς ὅντες τυγχάνωσι πλείους ἐνός, μὴ ἐλαττὸν δέκα ἑτη γεγονότες, κληρώσαι μὲν τοῦτων δέκα οὖς ἂν ἀποφήνῃ πατὴρ ἢ πάππος ὁ πρὸς πατρὸς ἢ μητρός· τῶν

208
Next to cases which concern religion come those which concern the dissolution of the polity. Whosoever enslaves the laws by making them subject to men, and makes the State subject to a faction, and acts illegally in doing all this by violence and in stirring up civil strife,—such a man must be deemed the worst of all enemies to the whole State. And the man who, though he takes part in none of these doings, yet fails to observe them, while he has a share in the chief offices of State, or else, though he observes them, fails to defend his country and punish them, owing to his cowardice,—a citizen of such a kind must be counted second in order of badness. Every man who is of the least worth shall inform the magistrates by prosecuting the plotter on a charge of violent and illegal revolution: they shall have the same judges as the temple-robbers had, and the whole trial shall be conducted just as it was in their case, and the death penalty shall be imposed by a majority of votes. As a summary rule, the disgrace or punishment inflicted on a father shall not descend upon his children, except in a case where not only the father, but his father and grandfather before him, have all been condemned on a capital charge: in such a case, the children, while retaining their own property, excepting only the allotment with its full equipment, shall be deported by the State to their original country and State. And from the sons of citizens who happen to have more than one son over ten years old, ten shall be chosen by lot—after application made by the father or by the paternal or maternal grandfather,—and the names thus chosen shall be sent to Delphi; and that man whom the oracle names shall be established as the allotment-holder in the house of those departed,—be it with happier fortune!
ΚΛ. Καλώς.
ΑΘ. Κοινός δ' ἐτι τρῖτος κείσθω 1 νόμος, περὶ
dικαστῶν τε οὐς δεῖ δικάζειν αὐτοῖς, καὶ ὁ τρόπος
tῶν δικών, οἷς ἀν προδόσεως αἰτίαν ἐπιφέρων τις
eἰς δικαστήριον ἀγγ. καὶ μονής ὁσαύτως ἐκγόνοις
καὶ ἐξόδου τῆς πατρίδος eἰς ἔστω περὶ ταῦτα
857 νόμος οὗτος τρισὶ, προδότη καὶ ἱεροσύλῳ καὶ τῷ
tούς τῆς πόλεως νόμους βία ἀπολλύντι. κλέπτη
dὲ, ἐὰν τε μέγα ἐὰν τε σμικρὸν κλέπτη τις, εἱς
ἀν νόμος κείσθω καὶ μία δίκης τιμωρία ξύμπασι:
tὸ μὲν γὰρ κλαπέν ὅτι χρεῶν διπλάσιον πρῶτον
ἐκτίνειν, ἐὰν ὄφλῃ τις τὴν τοιαύτην δίκην καὶ
ἰκανὴν ἔχῃ τὴν ἄλλην οὐσίαν ἀποτίνειν ὑπὲρ
tῶν κλήρων, ἐὰν δὲ μὴ, δεδέσθαι ἔως ἀν ἐκτίςῃ
ἡ πείσῃ τὸν καταδικασάμενον. ἐὰν δὲ τις ὄφλῃ
Β. κλοπῆς δημοσίᾳ δίκην, πείσας τὴν πόλιν ἢ τὸ
κλέμμα ἐκτίσας διπλοῦν ἀπαλλαττέσθω τῶν
dεσμῶν.

ΚΛ. Πῶς δὴ λέγομεν, ὦ ξένε, μηδὲν διαφέρειν
tῷ κλέπτοντι, μέγα ἢ σμικρὸν ὕφελομένω καὶ ἐξ
ἰερῶν ἡ ὁσίων καὶ ὅσα ἀλλὰ ἐστὶ περὶ κλοπῆς
πᾶσαν ἀνομοιώτητα ἔχοντα, οἷς δεὶ ποικίλους
οὕσιν ἐπεσθαι τὸν νομοθέτην μηδὲν ὁμοίας ξημίας
ξημιωύντα;
ΑΘ. Ἀριστ', ὦ Κλεινία: σχεδὸν τί με ὀσπερ
C. φερόμενον ἀντικρούσας ἀνήγειρας, ἐννενηκότα δὲ
καὶ πρότερον ὑπέμνησας ὅτι τὰ περὶ τὴν τῶν
νόμων θέσιν οὖν ἐν τρόπῳ πώποτε γέγονεν ὅρθως


1 But cp. 859 B ff., 933 E ff.
CLIN. Very good.

ATH. Moreover, a third general law shall be laid down, dealing with the judges to be employed and the manner of the trials, in cases where one man prosecutes another on a charge of treason; and concerning the offspring, likewise, whether they are to remain in their country or be expelled, this one law shall apply to the three cases of the traitor, the temple-robber, and the man who wrecks the State laws by violence. For the thief also, whether he steals a great thing or a small, one law and one legal penalty shall be enacted for all alike: first, he must pay twice the value of the stolen article, if he loses his case and possesses enough property over and above his allotment wherewith to pay; but if not, he must be put in prison until either he has paid the sum or has been let off by the prosecutor. And if a man be cast in a suit for theft from the State, on obtaining pardon from the State, or after payment of double the sum stolen, he shall be let out of prison.

CLIN. How comes it, Stranger, that we are ruling that it makes no difference to the thief whether the thing he steals be great or small, and whether the place it is stolen from be holy or unhallowed, or whatever other differences may exist in the manner of a theft; whereas the lawgiver ought to suit the punishment to the crime by inflicting dissimilar penalties in these varying cases?

ATH. Well said, Clinias! You have collided with me when I was going, as it were, full steam ahead, and so have woken me up. You have reminded me of a previous reflection of mine, how that none of the attempts hitherto made at legislation have ever
διαπεπονημένα, ὡς γε ἐν τῷ νῦν παραπεπτωκότι ¹ λέγειν. πῶς δ’ αὖ καὶ τοῦτο λέγομεν; οὐ κακῶς ἀπηκάσαμεν, ὅτε δούλοις ὡς ἱατρευομένοις ὕπο δούλων ἀπηκάζομεν πάντας τοὺς νῦν νομοθετομένους. εὖ γὰρ ἐπίστασθαι δεῖ τὸ τοιόνυμε, ὡς εὶ καταλάβοι τοτε τις ἱατρὸς τῶν ταῖς ἐμπειρίαις

D ἀνευ λόγου τὴν ἱατρικὴν μεταχειριζομένων ἐλευθερον ἐλευθέρω νοσοῦντι διαλεγόμενον ἱατρόν, καὶ τοῦ φιλοσοφείν ἑγγὺς χρώμενον [μὲν] ² τοῖς λόγοις, ἐξ ἀρχῆς τε ἀπτόμενον τοῦ νοσήματος, περὶ φύσεως πάσης ἐπανότα τῆς τῶν σωμάτων, ταχύ καὶ σφόδρα γελάσειεν ἃν καὶ οὐκ ἂν ἄλλους εἰποὶ λόγους ἢ τοὺς περὶ τὰ τοιαύτ’ ἀεὶ προχείρους ὡντας τοῖς πλείστοις λεγομένοις ἱατροῖς: φαίη γὰρ ἃν Ὡ μῶρε, οὐκ ἱατρεύεις τὸν νοσοῦντα, ἄλλα σχεδὸν παιδεύεις, ὥς ἱατρὸν ἄλλ’

Ε οὐχ ὑγιῆ δεόμενον γιγνεσθαι.

ΚΛ. Ὁὐκοῦν λέγων τὰ τοιαύτα ὅρθως ἂν λέγοι;

ΑΘ. Τάχ’ ἂν, εἰ προσδιανοοῦτό γε ὡς ὅστις περὶ νόμων οὕτω διεξέρχεται, καθάπερ ἥμεις τὰ νῦν, παιδεύει τοὺς πολίτας, ἄλλ’ οὐ νομοθετεί. ἀρ’ οὐν οὐ καὶ τοῦτ’ ἂν πρὸς τρόπον λέγειν φαινοιτο;

ΚΛ. ’Ἰσως.

ΑΘ. Εὔτυχες δὲ ἥμων τὸ παρὸν γέγονεν.

ΚΛ. Τὸ ποίον δή ;

ΑΘ. Τὸ μηδεμίαν ἀνάγκην εἶναι νομοθετεῖν,

858 ἄλλ’ αὐτοὺς ἐν σκέψει γενομένους περὶ πάσης πολιτείας πειράσσαθαι κατιδεῖν τὸ τε ἄριστον καὶ

¹ παραπεπτωκότι MSS. : παρόντι MSS. marg., Zur., vulg.
² [μὲν] bracketed by W.-Möllendorff.
been carried out rightly—as in fact we may infer from the instance before us. What do I mean to imply by this remark? It was no bad comparison we made when we compared all existing legislation to the doctoring of slaves by slaves. For one should carefully notice this, that if any of the doctors who practise medicine by purely empirical methods, devoid of theory, were to come upon a free-born doctor conversing with a free-born patient, and using arguments, much as a philosopher would, dealing with the course of the ailment from its origin and surveying the natural constitution of the human body,—he would at once break out into a roar of laughter, and the language he would use would be none other than that which always comes ready to the tongue of most so-called “doctors”: “You fool,” he would say, “you are not doctoring your patient, but schooling him, so to say, as though what he wanted was to be made, not a sound man, but a doctor.”

CLIN. And in saying so, would he not be right?

ATH. Possibly, provided that he should also take the view that the man who treats of laws in the way that we are now doing is schooling the citizens rather than legislating. Would he not seem to be right in saying that, too?

CLIN. Probably.

ATH. How fortunate we are in the conclusion we have now come to!

CLIN. What conclusion?

ATH. This,—that there is no need to legislate, but only to become students ourselves, and endeavour to discern in regard to every polity how the best

1 720 A ff.
PLATO

to anagkaiotaton, tîna tropou òn gignomevon gîgnoito. kai òn kai to vûn exeistin ëmîn, òs èoukev, ei mev bouloîmeva, to bèltiston skopeîn, ei de bouloîmeva, to anagkaiotaton perî nómov. aîrômeva ouv òpôteron dokei.

Kl. Gełoiai, ò ëne, protiđêmeva tîn aîresin, kai âtechnos ñsper katechoménois vromothetais B ómouoi gignomeveth' òn upò megálhs tînos anâgkh ëðh vromotheteîn, òs oukét' êxôn eis aûrinon. ëmîn d', eîpêin sun theî, exeistî, katháper ë theîolo-gois ë kai tînos é téras arxh monksous svostásos, paraforhâsathai ñûðhn êx òn èkplexeômëva tâ prósfora tî melloûsì gevînsethai svostásiei, kai òh kai katá sxholh ëkplexeôsai. tîdômèn ouv ëmîas vûn einai mh tōus êx anâgkh ëkcodomoûtatai, ìllâ tōus ëpi sxholhìs ëti tâ mnèv para differedénoi, tâ ëxvustántatai, òste orðhôs èxei tâ mnèv ëdëh C tōn nómov lhgein òs tîdêmëna, tâ d' òs para deterâ-

Aô. Gînöito goûn òn, ò Klênia, kata phûsîn málloûn ëmîn ë svûnoseis tîn nómov. ìdômen gâr ouv, ò prós theîon, tî toîndîe perî vromothetôn.

Kl. Tî poîôn dh';

Aô. Grahmata mnèn tîn kai én grâmâmasi lógoi kai álloûn eisì pollòwv ân tâis poîlesi gevram-
mênoi, grâmmata de kai tâ tûv vromothetôn kai lógoi.

Kl. Poûs gâr ou';

Aô. Poîteron ouv tûs mnèn tûn álloûn svugrâm-

D masî, poihtôn kai õsou âneu métrôn kai metà métrôn tîn autôn eis mnêmën xvmboûlîn perî

214
form might come about, and how that which is the least elaborate possible. Moreover, we are now allowed, as it seems, to study, if we choose, the best form of legislation, or, if we choose, the least elaborate. So let us make our choice between these two.

CLIN. The choice we propose, Stranger, is an absurd one: we should be acting like legislators who were driven by some overpowering necessity to pass laws on the spot, because it is impossible for them to do so on the morrow. But for us (if Heaven will) it is quite possible to do as bricklayers do, or men starting on any other kind of construction,—that is, to collect material piecemeal, from which we may select what is suitable for the edifice we intend to build, and, what is more, select it at our leisure. Let us assume, then, that we are not now building under compulsion, but that we are still at leisure, and engaged partly in collecting material and partly in putting it together; so that we may rightly say that our laws are being in part already erected and in part collected.

ATH. In this way, Clinias, our survey of laws will at any rate follow nature's course more closely. Now let us consider, I adjure you, the following point about legislators.

CLIN. What point?

ATH. We have in our States not only the writings and written speeches of many other people, but also the writings and speeches of the lawgiver.

CLIN. Certainly.

ATH. Are we, then, to pay attention to the compositions of the others—poets, and all who, either with or without metre, have composed and
βίον κατέθεντο συγγράφαντες, προσέχωμεν τὸν νοῦν, τοῖς δὲ τῶν νομοθέτων μὴ προσέχωμεν; ἢ πάντων μάλιστα;

κα. Πολύ γε.

α. Ἀλλὰ δήτα ὑν χρή τὸν νομοθέτην μόνον τῶν γραφόντων περὶ καλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν καὶ δι-καίων ξυμβουλεύειν, διδάσκοιτα οἶα τέ ἐστι καὶ ὡς ἐπιτηδευτέον αὐτὰ τοῖς μέλλουσιν εὐδαιμοσιν ἔσεσθαι.

κα. Καὶ πῶς οὐ;

Ε α. Ἀλλὰ αἰσχρὸν δὴ μᾶλλον Ὀμήρῳ τε καὶ Τυρταίῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ποιηταῖς περὶ βίου τε καὶ ἐπιτηδευμάτων κακῶς θέσθαι γράφαντας, Δυκούριῳ δὲ ὡττον καὶ Σόλωνι καὶ ὅσοι δὴ νομοθέται γενόμενου γράμματα ἐγραψαν; ἢ τὸ γε ορθὸν πάντων δεὶ γραμμάτων τῶν ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν τὰ περὶ τοὺς νόμους γεγραμμένα φαίνεσθαι δια-πτυττόμενα μακρῷ κάλλιστά τε καὶ ἄριστα, τὰ δὲ τῶν ἄλλων ἢ κατ’ ἔκεινα ξυνεπόμενα

859 ἢ διαφωνοῦντα αὐτῶις εἶναι καταγέλαστα; οὔτω διανοῶμεθα περὶ νόμων δεῖν γραφῆς γίγ-

νεσθαι ταῖς πόλεσιν, ἐν πατρός τε καὶ μητρός σχήμασι φιλούντων τε καὶ νοῦν ἄχοντων φαί-

νεσθαι τὰ γεγραμμένα, ἢ κατὰ τύραννοι καὶ

δεσπότην, τάξαντα καὶ ὀπειλόσαντα, γράφαντα ἐν τοῖχοις ἀπηλλαχθαί; σκοπῶμεν οὖν δὴ καὶ

τα νῦν ἢμεῖς πότερα ταύτῃ πειρώμεθα λέγειν

Β διανοηθέντες περὶ νόμων, εἴτε οὖν δυνάμεθα εἴητε μὴ, ἀλλ’ οὖν τὸ γε πρόθυμον παρεχόμενοι καὶ

κατὰ ταύτην τῆν ὁδὸν ἴοντες, ἀν ἀρα τι καὶ δεῖ

πᾶσχειν, πᾶσχωμεν. ἀγαθῶν δ’ εἰη γε,1 καὶ ἂν

θεὸς ἑθέλη, γύρνοιτ’ ἂν ταύτῃ.

216
put on record their counsels concerning life,—but to pay no attention to those of the lawgivers? Or should we not attend to them above all others?

CLIN. Yes, far above all.

ATH. But we surely do not mean that the lawgiver alone of all the writers is not to give counsel about what is noble, good and just, teaching what these are, and how those who intend to be happy must practise them.

CLIN. Of course he must do so.

ATH. Well then, is it more disgraceful on the part of Homer and Tyrtaeus and the rest of the poets to lay down in their writings bad rules about life and its pursuits, and less disgraceful on the part of Lycurgus and Solon and all the legislators who have written? Or rather, is it not right that, of all the writings which exist in States, those which concern laws should be seen, when unrolled, to be by far the fairest and best, and all other writings to be either modelled on them or, if disagreeing with them, contemptible? Are we to conceive that the written laws in our States should resemble persons moved by love and wisdom, such as a father or a mother, or that they should order and threaten, like some tyrant and despot, who writes his decree on the wall, and there is an end of it? So let us now consider whether we are going to try to discuss laws with this intention—showing zeal, at any rate, whether or not we may prove successful; and if, in proceeding on this course, we must meet with mishap, so be it. Yet we pray that it may be well with us, and if God wills, it shall be well.

---

1 γε England: τε MSS.
κα. Καλῶς εἰρηκασ, ποιῶμεν τε ὡς λέγεις.

α. Διασκέπτεόν ἄρα πρῶτον, ὡσπερ ἐπεξερή-

σαμεν, ἀκριβῶς τὸν περὶ τῶν τε ἱεροσυνούντων καὶ

κλοπῆς πάσης πέρι καὶ ἀδικημάτων ἐμπαντῶν;

καὶ οὐ δυσχεραντεον εἰ μεταξὺ νομοθετοῦντες τὰ

C μὲν ἔθεμεν, τῶν δ' ἐτὶ διασκοποῦμεν πέρι νομο-

θέται γὰρ γιγνόμεθα, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἔσμεν πτω, τάχα δὲ

ἴσως ἂν γενοίμηθα. εἰ δὴ δοκεῖ περὶ ὃν εἰρήκα, ὡς εἰρήκα, σκοπεῖσθαι, σκοπώμεθα.

κα. Παντάπασι μὲν οὖν.

α. Περὶ δὴ καλῶν καὶ δικαίων ἐμπάντων

πειρώμεθα κατιδεύν το τοιοῦδε, ὅτι ὑποτε ὀμολο-

γούμεν νῦν καὶ ὅτι διαφερόμεθα ἡμεῖς τε ἡμῖν

αὐτοῖς, οὐ δὴ φαίμεν ἂν προθυμεῖσθαι γε, εἰ μηδὲν

D ἄλλο, διαφέρειν τῶν πλείστων, οἱ πολλοὶ τε αὐτὸν

πρὸς αὐτοὺς αὐ.

κα. Τὰς ποιας δὲ δὴ διαφορᾶς ἡμῶν ἐνυπηθεῖς

λέγεις;

α. 'Εγὼ πειράσομαι φράζεων. περὶ δικαιο-

σύνης ὅλως καὶ τῶν δικαίων ἀνθρώπων τε καὶ

πραγμάτων καὶ πράξεων πάντες πως ἐνυπομο-

λογούμεν πάντα εἶναι ταύτα καλά, ὡστε οὐδ' εἰ
tis διεξαρύζοντο [εἰναι] 1 τοὺς δικάιους ἀνθρώ-

πους, ἀν καὶ τυγχάνωσιν ὡστε αἰσχροί τὰ σώ-

ματα, κατ' αὐτό γε τὸ δικαίοτατον ἤθος ταῦτη

Ε παγκόλους εἶναι, σχεδὸν οὔδεις ἂν λέγων ὡτοῦ

πλημμέλως δόξειε λέγειν.

κα. Οὐκοῦν ὁρθῶς;

α. Ἰσως: ἵδωμεν δὲ ὡς, εἰ πάντ' ἐστὶ καλὰ

ὁσα δικαιοσύνης ἐχεται, τῶν πάντων τοι καὶ τὰ

παθήματα ἡμῶν ἐστὶ σχεδὸν τοῖς ποιήμασιν ἢσα.

1 [εἰναι] bracketed by Hermann.
LAWS, BOOK IX

CLIN. You are right: let us do as you say.

ATH. First of all, since we have started on it, we must examine closely the law about temple-robbers and all forms of thieving and wrong-doing; nor should we be vexed by the fact that, although we enacted some points while legislating, there are some points still under consideration: for we are in process of becoming lawgivers, and may perhaps become so, but we are not lawgivers as yet. So if we agree to consider the matters I have mentioned in the way I have mentioned, let us so consider them.

CLIN. Most certainly.

ATH. In respect of goodness and justice as a whole, let us try to discern this,—how far we now agree with ourselves, and how far we differ (for we should certainly say that we desire, if nothing else, to differ at least from the majority of men), and how far also the majority agree or differ among themselves.

CLIN. What differences of ours have you in mind?

ATH. I will try to explain. Concerning justice in general, and men, things, or actions that are just, we all agree that these are all beautiful, so that no one would be regarded as saying what was wrong even if he should maintain that just men, however ugly in body, are quite beautiful in respect of their very just character.

CLIN. Would not that be right?

ATH. Perhaps; but let us observe this,—that if all things which belong to justice are beautiful, that "all" includes for us passions\(^1\) nearly as much as actions.

\(^1\) i.e. "sufferings."
ΚА. Τί οὖν δή;
ΑΘ. Ποίημα μέν, ὅπερ ἂν ἦ πίστις, σχέδον ὁσοῦν ἂν τοὺς πίστεὺς κοινωνη, κατὰ τοσοῦτον καὶ τὸν καλὸν μετέχον ἐστίν.
ΚΑ. Τί μήν;
ΑΘ. Οὐκοῦν καὶ πάθος ὅπερ ἂν πίστις κοινωνη, 860 κατὰ τοσοῦτον γίγνεσθαι καλὸν ὁμολογοῦμενον, οὐκ ἂν διαφωνοῦντα παρέχοι τὸν λόγον;
ΚΑ. Ἀληθῆ.
ΑΘ. Ἐάν δὲ γεί δικαίως μὲν ὁμολογῶμεν, αἰσχρὸν δὲ εἶναι πάθος, διαφωνήσει τὸ τε δικαίως καὶ τὸ καλὸν λεγθέντων τῶν δικαίων αἰσχρῶν εἶναι.
ΚΑ. Πῶς τούτῳ εἴρηκας;
ΑΘ. Οὐδὲν χαλεπτὸν ἐννοεῖν· οἱ γὰρ ὄλγοι πρόσθεν τεθέντες ἡμῖν νόμοι πάντων ἐναντίωτα παραγγέλλειν δόξειαν ἂν τοῖς νῦν λεγομένοις.
ΚΑ. Πολίοις;
Β ΑΘ. Τὸν ἱερόσυλον που ἐτίθημεν δικάιῳς ἂν ἀποθνήσκειν καὶ τὸν τῶν εὐ κειμένων νόμων πολέμιον, καὶ μέλλοντες δὴ νόμιμα τοιαῦτα τιθέωμεν πάμπολλα ἐπέσχομεν, ἱδόντες ὡς ταύτα ἐστι μὲν ἀπειρα παθήματα πλήθει καὶ μεγέθει,1 δικαιότατα δὲ πάντων παθημάτων καὶ εὐμπάντων αἰσχρώτα. μῶν οὖς οὕτως ἡμῖν τὰ τε δίκαια καὶ τὰ καλὰ τοτε μὲν ὡς ταύτα ἔσχοιν, τοτε δὲ ὡς ἐναντίωτα φανεῖται;
ΚΑ. Κινδύνευει.
ΑΘ. Τοῖς μὲν τοίνυν πολλοῖς οὕτως περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἀσυμφόνως τὰ καλὰ καὶ τὰ δίκαια διεφρημένα προσαγορεύεται.
ΚΑ. Φαίνεται γοῦν, ὡς ξένε.1

1 μεγέθεσι MSS.: μεγέθει Zur., vulg.
LAWS, BOOK IX

CLIN. Well, what then?

ATH. Every just action, in so far as it shares in justice, practically in the same degree partakes of beauty.

CLIN. Yes.

ATH. It is agreed also—if our argument is to be consistent—that a passion which shares in justice, becomes, so far, beautiful.

CLIN. True.

ATH. But if we agree that a passion though just is unseemly, then justice and beauty will be at discord, when just things are called most unseemly.

CLIN. What do you mean by that?

ATH. It is not hard to grasp. The laws we enacted a short time ago might seem to enjoin what is absolutely contrary to our present statements.

CLIN. What statements?

ATH. We laid it down\(^1\) that it is just to put to death the temple-robber and the enemy of the rightly-enacted laws; and then, when we were minded to enact a host of similar rules, we held our hand, since we perceived that such rules involve passions infinite both in number and in magnitude, and that, although they are eminently just, they are also eminently unseemly. Thus the just and the beautiful will seem to us at one moment wholly identical, at another, utterly opposed, will they not?

CLIN. I am afraid so.

ATH. Thus it is that by the multitude the beautiful and the just are flung apart, and inconsistent language is used about them.

CLIN. It certainly seems so, Stranger.

\(^1\) 854 B ff.
In what follows, the Athenian, adopting the Socratic dictum that "vice is involuntary" (cp. Tim. 86 E ff.), applies it to the special vice of injustice; but here his view is found to conflict with the popular view which distinguishes between voluntary

LAWS, BOOK IX

ATH. Then let us look again at our own view, and see how far it is consistent in this respect.

CLIN. What kind of consistency, and in respect of what, do you mean?

ATH. I believe that I expressly stated in our previous discourse,—or, if I did not do it before, please assume that I now assert—

CLIN. What?

ATH. That all bad men are in all respects unwillingly bad; and, this being so, our next statement must agree therewith.

CLIN. What statement do you mean?

ATH. This,—that the unjust man is, indeed, bad, but the bad man is unwillingly bad. But it is illogical to suppose that a willing deed is done unwillingly; therefore he that commits an unjust act does so unwillingly in the opinion of him who assumes that injustice is involuntary—a conclusion which I also must now allow; for I agree that all men do unjust acts unwillingly; so, since I hold this view—and do not share the opinion of those who, through contentiousness or arrogance, assert that, while there are some who are unjust against their will, yet there are also many who are unjust willingly,—how am I to prove consistent with my own statements? Suppose you two, Megillus and Clinias, put this question to me—"If this is the state of the case, Stranger, what counsel do you give us in regard to legislating for

and involuntary acts of injustice, and assigns to them different legal penalties. If this popular distinction is wrong, the lawgiver must either (a) simply apply the Socratic rule, and enact that all unjust acts are involuntary and deserve therefore equal penalties, or (b) draw a new distinction, which Ath. proceeds to do in 861 Elff. (see note ad loc.)
Mαγνήτων πόλει; πότερον νομοθετεῖν ἢ μή; Πῶς γὰρ οὖ; φήσω. Διοριεῖς οὖν αὐτοῖς ἄκουσία τε καὶ ἐκούσια ἀδικήματα, καὶ τῶν μὲν ἐκούσιων ἀμαρτημάτων τε καὶ ἀδικημάτων μείζους τὰς ξημιὰς

861 θήσομεν, τῶν δὲ ἐλάττους; ἢ πάντων ἐξ ἵσης, ὡς οὐκ ὄντων ἀδικημάτων τὸ παράπαν ἐκούσιων;

κ. Ορθῶς μέντοι λέγεις, δὲ ξένε. καὶ τούτοις δὴ τὶ χρησόμεθα τῶν νῦν λεγομένων;

α. Καλῶς ἦρον. πρῶτον μὲν τοῖνυν αὐτοῖς τὸδε χρησόμεθα——

κ. Τὸ ποῖον;

α. Ἀναμνησθῶμεν ὡς ἐμπροσθεν νῦν δὴ καλῶς ἐλέγομεν ὅτι περὶ τὰ δίκαια εἰς παμπόλλη τις ἡμῶν ταραχῇ τε καὶ ἄσυμφωνίᾳ. τοῦτο δὲ λαβόντες πάλιν ἐρωτῶμεν ἡμᾶς αὐτοῦ, Ἀρ' οὖν περὶ τὴν τούτων ἀπορίαν οὔτ' ἐξευπορήσαντες οὔτε διορισάμενοι τί ποτ' ἐστὶ ταῦτα ἀλλήλων διαφέροντα, ἃ δὴ κατὰ πάσας τὰς πόλεις ὑπὸ νομοθετῶν πάντων τῶν πῶς ποτὲ γενομένων ὡς δύο ἐιδὴ τῶν ἀδικημάτων ὅντα, τὰ μὲν ἐκούσια, τὰ δὲ ἄκουσία, ταύτῃ καὶ νομοθετεῖται· ὃ δὲ παρ' ἡμῶν νῦν δὴ ἥθεις λόγος, ὡσπερ παρὰ θεοῦ λεχθεῖς, τοσοῦτον μόνον εἰπὼν ἀπαλλάξεται, δοὺς δὲ οὐδένα λόγον ὡς ὀρθῶς εἴρηκε κατανοομεθήσει C τινὰ τρόπον; Οὐκ ἔστιν, ἀλλὰ ἀνάγκη πως ταῦτα ἐμπροσθεν τοῦ νομοθετεῖν δηλῶσαι δύο τε ὄντα καὶ τὴν διαφορὰν ἀλλήλων, ὡς ἀντὶ ἔκατορφος της τὴν δίκην ἐπιτιθῆ, πᾶς ἔπακολουθη τοῖς λεγο-

1 ἀλλήλων Hermann: ἀλλὴ MSS.
the Magnesian State? Shall we legislate or shall we not?" "Legislate by all means," I shall reply. "Will you make a distinction, then, between voluntary and involuntary wrong-doings, and are we to enact heavier penalties for the crimes and wrong-doings that are voluntary, and lighter penalties for the others? Or shall we enact equal penalties for all, on the view that there is no such thing as a voluntary act of injustice?"

clin. What you say, Stranger, is quite right: so what use are we to make of our present arguments?

ath. A very proper question! The use we shall make of them, to begin with, is this ——

clin. What?

ath. Let us recall how, a moment ago, we rightly stated that in regard to justice we are suffering from the greatest confusion and inconsistency. Grasping this fact, let us again question ourselves,—"As to our perplexity about these matters, since we have neither got it clear nor defined the point of difference between those two kinds of wrong-doing, voluntary and involuntary, which are treated as legally distinct in every State by every legislator who has ever yet appeared,—as to this, is the statement we recently made to stand, like a divine oracle, as a mere ex cathedra statement, unsupported by any proof, and to serve as a kind of master-enactment¹?" That is impossible; and before we legislate we are bound first to make it clear somehow that these wrong-doings are two-fold, and wherein their difference consists, in order that when we impose the penalty on either kind, everyone may follow our rules, and be able to

¹ Literally, "to legislate down" (i.e. over-rule the popular objection to our Socratic view).
μένοις καὶ δυνατός ἢ τὸ τε πρεπόντως τεθὲν ἀμή γε πη κρίναι καὶ τὸ μή.

κα. Καλῶς ἡμῖν φαίνει λέγειν, ὥς ξένει δυοίν γὰρ θάτερον ἡμᾶς χρεών, ἢ μὴ λέγειν ὡς πάντα ἀκούσια τὰ ἀδικήματα, ἢ τοῦτο ὡς ὄρθως εἰρηταὶ διὰ τοῦτον διορίσαντας δηλώσαι.

α. Τούτων τοίνυν τοίνυν δυοίν τὸ μὲν οὖν ἀνεκτὸν ἐμοὶ πάντως ποὺ γίγνεσθαι, τὸ γε δὴ μὴ λέγειν οὕτως οἴσωνον ἐχειν τάληθες· οὐ γὰρ ἂν νόμιμον οὐδ᾽ ὀσιον ἂν εἶη· κατὰ τίνα δὲ τρόπον ἐστὸν δύο, εἰ μὴ τὸ τε ἀκούσιω καὶ τῷ ἐκούσιῳ διαφέρετον ἐκατερον, [ἀλλὰ] ¹ ἀλλὰς τινὶ δὴ ποτὲ πειρατέων ἀμῶς γε πως δηλοῦν.

κα. Παντάπασι μὲν οὖν, ὥς ξένε, τούτο γε οὖχ οἴον τε ἄλλως πως ἡμᾶς διανοηθήναι.

Ε ἀ. Ταύτα ἐσται. φέρε δὴ, βλάβαι μὲν, ὡς ἐοικεν, ἀλλήλων τῶν πολιτῶν ἐν ταῖς κοινωνίαις τε καὶ ὀμιλίαις πολλαὶ γίγνονται, καὶ τὸ γε ἐκούσιον τε καὶ ἀκούσιον ἐν αὐταῖς ἀφθονον ἐστιν.

κα. Πῶς γὰρ οὖ; ¹

ἀ. Μὴ τοίνυν τις τὰς βλάβας πᾶσας ἀδικίας τιθεῖς οὕτως οἴηται καὶ τὰ ἀδικα ἐν αὐταῖς ταύτῃ γίγνεσθαι διπλα, τὰ μὲν ἐκούσια δή, τὰ δ᾽ ἀκούσια βλάβαι γὰρ ἀκούσιοι τῶν πάντων οὕτ' ἀριθμοῖς οὔτε μεγέθεσιν ἐλάττους εἰσὶ τῶν

¹ [ἀλλὰ] bracketed by W.-Möllendorff.

¹ The proper distinction to be drawn (as Ath. proceeds to argue) is not that between voluntary and involuntary acts of injustice (since there are no such voluntary acts), but that between "injuries" (βλάβαι, "acts causing loss") and "acts of injustice." Injustice is really a quality of the agent rather than...
form some judgment regarding the suitability or otherwise of our enactments.

Clin. What you say, Stranger, appears to us to be excellent: we ought to do one of two things,—either not assert that all unjust acts are involuntary, or else make our distinctions first, then prove the correctness of that assertion.

Ath. Of these alternatives the first is to me quite intolerable—namely, not to assert what I hold to be the truth,—for that would be neither a lawful thing to do nor a pious. But as to the question how such acts are two-fold,—if the difference does not lie in that between the voluntary and the involuntary, then we must try to explain it by means of some other distinction. ¹

Clin. Well, certainly, Stranger, about this matter there is no other plan we can possibly adopt.

Ath. It shall be done. Come now, in dealings and intercourse between citizens, injuries committed by one against another are of frequent occurrence, and they involve plenty of the voluntary as well as of the involuntary.

Clin. To be sure!

Ath. Let no one put down all injuries as acts of injustice and then regard the unjust acts involved as two-fold in the way described, namely, that they are partly voluntary and partly involuntary (for, of the total, the involuntary injuries are not less than the voluntary either in number or in magnitude); but

than of the act, and (like all vice) is a form of un-reason: as the slave of un-reason, the unjust man is never a free agent. Hence the task of the lawgiver is two fold, (1) to make good the "injuries," and (2) to cure the agent of his "injustice" by restoring the power of reason ("moral sense") in his soul.
εκουσίων· σκοπεῖσθε δὲ εἰ τέ τι λέγω λέγων ἃ
682 μέλλω λέγειν, εἴτε καὶ μηδὲν τὸ παράπαν. οὐ
γάρ φημι ἔγγοιγε, ὁ Κλεινία καὶ Μέγιλλε, εἰ τίς
τινά τι πημαίνει μὴ βουλόμενος, ἀλλ' ἀκων,
ἀδικεῖν μὲν, ἄκοντα μὴν, καὶ ταύτῃ μὲν δὴ νομο-
θετήσω τούτο ὡς ἄκουσιον ἀδίκημα νομοθετῶν,
ἀλλ' οὔδε ἀδικίαν τὸ παράπαν θῆσ' τὴν τοιαύτην
βλάβην, οὔτε ἂν μείζων οὔτε ἂν ἐλάττων τῷ
γίγνυται. πολλάκις δὲ ὁφέλειάν οὐκ ὅρθην γενο-
μένην, τὸν τῆς ὁφέλειας αὐτιῶν ἀδικεῖν φήσομεν,
Β' έαν ἢ γ' ἐμ' νικᾶ. σχέδουν γάρ, ὁ φίλοι, οὔτ'
ei tis tw διδωσι τι τών ὄντων, οὔτ' εἰ τούνατίον
ἀφαιρεῖται, δίκαιον ἀπλῶς ἢ ἀδικον χρή τὸ
toιοῦτον οὔτω λέγειν, ἀλλ' εάν ἦθει καὶ δικαίω
τρόπῳ χρώμενος τις ὁφελή τινά τι καὶ βλάπτη,
tou'to èstti to νομοθήση θεατέον, καὶ πρὸς δύο
tauta ἡ βλεπτέον, πρὸς τε ἀδικίαν καὶ βλάβην,
καὶ τὸ μὲν βλαβέν ᾧ βλαβές ὁ τοῖς νόμοις εἰς τὸ
δυνατὸν ποιητέον, τὸ τε ἀπολόμενον σώζουται καὶ
τὸ πεσόν υπὸ τοῦ πάλιν ἐξορθοῦντα καὶ τὸ
C θανατωθέν ἡ τρωθέν ύγιές, τὸ δὲ ἀποίνους ἔξιλα-
σθέν τοῖς δρόσι καὶ πάσχουσιν ἐκάστας τῶν
βλάψεων ἐκ διαφοράς εἰς φιλίαν πειρατέον αἰὲ
καθιστάναι τοῖς νόμοις.
κλ. Καλῶς ταύτα γε.
α. Θ. Τὰς τοιῶν ἀδικοὺς αὖ βλάβας καὶ κέρδη
έαν τις ἀδικῶν τινὰ κερδαίνειν ποιή, τούτων ὀπόσα
μὲν ἱατά, ὡς οὔσων ἐν ψυχῇ νόσων, ἴασθαι τὸ
δὲ τῆς ἵάσεως ἦμιν τῆς ἀδικίας τῇδε ῥέπειν χρῆ
φάναι——

1 βλαβέν ἀβλαβές Badham; ἀβλαβές ύγίες MSS. (βλαβέν in
marg.): βλαβέν ύγίες Zur., al.

228
consider whether in saying what I am now going to say I am speaking sense or absolute nonsense. For what I assert, Megillus and Clinias, is not that, if one man harms another involuntarily and without wishing it, he acts unjustly though involuntarily, nor shall I legislate in this way, pronouncing this to be an involuntary act of injustice, but I will pronounce that such an injury is not an injustice at all, whether it be a greater injury or a less. And, if my view prevails, we shall often say that the author of a benefit wrongly done commits an injustice; for as a rule, my friends, neither when a man gives some material object to another, nor when he takes it away, ought one to term such an act absolutely just or unjust, but only when a man of just character and disposition does any benefit or injury to another,—that is what the lawgiver must look at; he must consider these two things, injustice and injury, and the injury inflicted he must make good so far as possible by legal means; he must conserve what is lost, restore what has been broken down, make whole what is wounded or dead; and when the several injuries have been atoned for by compensation, he must endeavour always by means of the laws to convert the parties who have inflicted them and those who have suffered them from a state of discord to a state of amity.

CLIN. He will be right in doing that.

ATH. As regards unjust injuries and gains, in case one man causes another to gain by acting unjustly towards him, all such cases as are curable we must cure, regarding them as diseases of the soul. And we should affirm that our cure for injustice lies in this direction——
κλ. Πή; 

Д α. Ὅπως ὁ τί τις ἂν ἀδικήσῃ μέγα ἡ σμικρόν, ὁ νόμος αὐτὸν διδάξει καὶ ἀναγκάσει τὸ παράπαυ·

κλ. ἞σοκε μὲν πώς λέγεσθαι τὰ παρὰ σοῦ καὶ μάλα μετρίως, ἦδιον δὲ ἂν ἔτι σαφέστερον ἀκούσαμεν ταῦτα ῥηθέντα, τὸ τῆς ἀδικίας τε καὶ θλάβης διάφορον καὶ τὸ τῶν ἐκουσίων καὶ ἀκουσίων ὡς ἐν τούτοις διαπέποικλται.

Πειρατέον τοῖς, ὡς κελευτέρ δραῖν καὶ Β λέγειν. δῆλον γὰρ ὅτι τοσοῦτοι γε περὶ ψυχῆς καὶ λέγετε πρὸς ἄλληλους καὶ ἀκούετε, ὡς ἐν μὲν ἐν αὐτῇ τῆς φύσεως εἴτε τι πάθος εἴτε τι

1 Cp. 957 E, Rep. 410 A.
CLIN. What direction?

ATH. In this,—that whenever any man commits any unjust act, great or small, the law shall instruct him and absolutely compel him for the future either never willingly to dare to do such a deed, or else to do it ever so much less often, in addition to paying for the injury. To effect this, whether by action or speech, by means of pleasures and pains, honours and dishonours, money-fines and money-gifts, and in general by whatsoever means one can employ to make men hate injustice and love (or at any rate not hate) justice,—this is precisely the task of laws most noble. But for all those whom he perceives to be incurable in respect of these matters, what penalty shall the lawgiver enact, and what law? The lawgiver will realise that in all such cases not only is it better for the sinners themselves to live no longer, but also that they will prove of a double benefit to others by quitting life—since they will both serve as a warning to the rest not to act unjustly, and also rid the State of wicked men,—and thus he will of necessity inflict death as the chastisement for their sins, in cases of this kind, and of this kind only.

CLIN. What you have said seems very reasonable; but we should be glad to hear a still clearer statement respecting the difference between injury and injustice, and how the distinction between the voluntary and the involuntary applies in these cases.

ATH. I must endeavour to do as you bid me, and explain the matter. No doubt in conversing with one another you say and hear said at least thus much about the soul, that one element in its nature (be it affection or part) is "passion," which is an inbred
μέρος δὲν ὁ θυμός, δύσερι καὶ δύσμαχον κτήμα ἐμπεφυκός, ἀλογίστω βία πολλά ἀνατρέπει.

κλ. Πῶς δ’ οὖ;

ἀ. Καὶ μὴν ἢδονήν γε οὐ ταῦτα τῷ θυμῷ προσαγορεύομεν, εξ ἔναντίας δὲ αὐτῷ φαμέν ῥώμης δυναστεύουσαν πειθοὶ μετὰ ἀπάτης [βιαίου]¹ πράττειν ὁ τί περ ἄν αὐτῆς ἡ βούλησις ἐθελήσῃ.

κλ. Καὶ μάλα.

C ἀ. Τρίτων μὴν ἁγνοιαν λέγων ἂν τις τῶν ἀμαρτημάτων αἰτίαν ὅυκ ἂν ψευδοίτο. διετελείμενος αὐτὸ ὁ νομοθέτης ἂν βελτίων εἰ, τὸ μὲν ἀπλοῦν αὐτοῦ κούφων ἀμαρτημάτων αἰτίων ἠγούμενος, τὸ δὲ διπλοῦν, ὅταν ἀμαθαίνῃ τις μὴ μόνον ἁγνοία ἐυνεχόμενος, ἀλλὰ καὶ δόξῃ σοφίας, ὡς εἰδὼς παντελῶς περὶ ἁ μηδαμῶς οἴδε, μετὰ μὲν ἵσχυς καὶ ῥώμης ἐπομένης μεγάλων καὶ ἁμούσων ἀμαρτημάτων τιθείς αἰτία τὰ τοιαῦτα, ἄσθενείας

D δὲ ἐπομένης, παίδεια τε ἀμαρτήματα καὶ πρεσβυτέρων γιγνόμενα, θήσει μὲν ἀμαρτήματα καὶ ὡς ἀμαρτάνουσι νόμους τάξει, πραστάτους γε μὴν πάντων καὶ συγγνώμης πλείστης ἐχομένους.

κλ. Εἰκότα λέγεις.

ἀ. ἢδονής μὲν τοίνυν καὶ θυμοῦ λέγομεν σχεδὸν ἀπαντεὶ ὡς ὁ μὲν κρείττων ἡμῶν, ὁ δὲ ἦττων ἐστὶ καὶ ἔχει ταύτη.

κλ. Παντάπασι μὲν οὖν.

ἀ. Ἀγνοίας δὲ γε ὡς ὁ μὲν ἡμῶν κρείττων, ὁ δὲ ἦττων, οὐκ ἥκουσαμεν πώποτε.

¹ [βιαίου] I bracket (οὐ βία England).

1 Cp. 864 D f., 908 E; Ar. Eth. N. 1110 & 18 ff.
232
quality of a contentious and pugnacious kind, and one that over-turns many things by its irrational force.

CLIN. Of course.

ATH. Moreover, we distinguish "pleasure" from passion, and we assert that its mastering power is of an opposite kind, since it effects all that its intention desires by a mixture of persuasion and deceit.

CLIN. Exactly.

ATH. Nor would it be untrue to say that the third cause of sins is ignorance. This cause, however, the lawgiver would do well to subdivide into two, counting ignorance in its simple form to be the cause of minor sins, and in its double form—where the folly is due to the man being gripped not by ignorance only, but also by a conceit of wisdom, as though he had full knowledge of things he knows nothing at all about,—counting this to be the cause of great and brutal sins when it is joined with strength and might, but the cause of childish and senile sins when it is joined with weakness; and these last he will count as sins and he will ordain laws, as for sinners, but laws that will be, above all others, of the most mild and merciful kind.

CLIN. That is reasonable.

ATH. And pretty well everyone speaks of one man being "superior," another "inferior," to pleasure or to passion; and they are so.

CLIN. Most certainly.

ATH. But we have never heard it said that one man is "superior," another "inferior," to ignorance.

---

2 Cp. 732 A, Phileb. 48 E.

3 i.e. ignorance is not regarded as an active force (like passion or pleasure) capable of opposing reason and tyrannizing over the soul.
E  κλ.  Ἀληθέστατα.

ἀθ.  Πάντα δὲ γε προτρέπειν ταύτα φαμεν εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ βούλησιν ἐπιστῶμενον ἐκαστὸν εἰς τάναυτία πολλάκις ἁμα.

κλ.  Πλειστάκις μὲν οὖν.

ἀθ.  Νῦν δὴ σοι τὸ τε δίκαιον καὶ τὸ ἄδικον, ὡς ἐγὼ λέγω, σαφῶς ἂν διορίσαιμην οὐδὲν ποι-κίλλων. τὴν γὰρ τοῦ θυμοῦ καὶ φόβου καὶ ἡδονῆς καὶ λύπης καὶ φθόνου καὶ ἐπιθυμιῶν ἐν ψυχῇ τυραννίδα, εὰν τὲ τι βλάπτῃ καὶ ἐὰν μὴ, πάντως ἄδικιαν προσαγορεῦω, τὴν δὲ τοῦ ἀρίστου
dόξαν, ὅπηπερ ἂν ἐφέσθαι τούτον 1 ἡγήσωμαι πόλις εἴτε ἱδίωτα τινες, ἐὰν αὐτὴ κρατοῦσα ἐν ψυχῇ διακοσμῇ πάντα ἄνδρα, καὶ σφάλληται τι, δίκαιον μὲν πάν εἶναι φατέων τὸ ταύτη πραξάθεν καὶ τὸ τῆς τοιαύτης ἁρχῆς γεγονόμενον ὑπήκοον ἐκάστων καὶ ἐπὶ τὸν ἀπαντᾷ ἄνθρωπον βίον ἀρίστον, δοξάζεσθαι δὲ ὑπὸ πολλῶν ἀκούσιον ἄδικιαν εἶναι τὴν τοιαύτην βλάβην. ἦμιν δὲ οὖν
Β ἔστι τὰ νῦν ὅνομάτων πέρι δύσερις λόγος, ἀλλ' ἐπειδῆ τῶν ἄμαρτανομένων τρία εἴδη δεδήλωται γεγονόμενα, ταύτα εἰς μνήμην πρῶτον ἐτὶ μᾶλλον ἀναληπτέον. λύπης μὲν οὖν, ἢν θυμὸν καὶ φόβον ἐπονομάζομεν, ἐν εἴδος ἦμῖν ἔστιν.

κλ.  Πάνω μὲν οὖν.

ἀθ.  Ἡδονῆς δ' αὐ καὶ ἐπιθυμιῶν δεύτερον, ἐλπίδων δὲ καὶ δόξης τῆς <µῆ> 2 ἀληθοῦς περὶ τὸ <τοῦ> ἀρίστου ἐφέσθαι 3 τρίτον ἔτερον. τούτου δὲ αὐ τοῦ τρίτου διχῇ τμηθέντος πέντε εἴδη γέγο-

1 ἐφέσθαι τούτον: ἐσεσθαι τούτων MSS.
2 <µῆ> added by Ritter (ἀμαθοῦς for ἀληθοῦς England).
LAWS, BOOK IX

CLIN. Quite true.

ATH. And we assert that all these things urge each man often to go counter to the actual bent of his own inclination.

CLIN. Very frequently.

ATH. Now I will define for you, clearly and without complication, my notion of justice and injustice. The domination of passion and fear and pleasure and pain and envies and desires in the soul, whether they do any injury or not, I term generally "injustice"; but the belief in the highest good—in whatsoever way either States or individuals think they can attain to it,—if this prevails in their souls and regulates every man, even if some damage be done, we must assert that everything thus done is just, and that in each man the part subject to this governance is also just, and best for the whole life of mankind, although most men suppose that such damage is an involuntary injustice. But we are not now concerned with a verbal dispute. Since, however, it has been shown that there are three kinds of sinning, we must first of all recall these still more clearly to mind. Of these, one kind, as we know, is painful; and that we term passion and fear.\(^1\)

CLIN. Quite so.

ATH. The second kind consists of pleasure and desires; the third, which is a distinct kind, consists of hopes and untrue belief regarding the attainment of the highest good. And when this last kind is subdivided into three,\(^2\) five classes are made, as we

---

\(^1\) Cp. Phileb. 40 D, E.  
\(^2\) Cp. 863 C, D.

---

\(^3\) τὸ \(\tauοῦ\) ἄριστον ἐφέσθαι: τὸ ἄριστον ἐφεσὶς MSS., edd. (ἐφεσὶς cf. Grou, ἐφεσὶς H. Jackson).
νεν, ὡς νῦν φαμέν' οἷς νόμους διαφέροντας
C ἀλλήλων πέντε εἶδεςι θετέον ἐν δυοῖν γένεσιν.

κα. Τίσι τούτοις;

α. Τὸ μὲν διὰ βιαίων καὶ ξυμφανῶν 1 πράξεων
πραττόμενον ἐκάστοτε, τὸ δὲ μετὰ σκότους καὶ
ἀπάτης λαθραίως γιγνόμενον, ἔστι δ’ ὅτε καὶ δι’
ἀμφοῖν τούτων πραξθέν: ὃ δὴ καὶ νόμοι τρα-
χύτατοι γίγνοντο ἂν, εἰ τὸ προσήκον μέρος ἔχοιεν.

κα. Εἰκὸς γοῦν.

α. 'Ἰωμεν δὴ τὰ μετὰ ταῦτα ἐκεῖσε ὅποθεν
ἐξέβημεν δεύρο, περαίνοντες τὴν θέσιν τῶν νόμων.

δὴ δὲ ἡμῖν κείμενα περὶ τε τῶν συλώντων, οἴμαι,
τοὺς θεοὺς καὶ τὰ περὶ τῶν προδοτῶν, ἔτι δὲ τῶν
tοὺς νόμους διαφθειρόντων ἐπὶ καταλύσει τῆς
παρούσης πολιτείας, τούτων δὴ τις ἂν ἴσως
πράξει τι μανεῖς, ἢ νόσοις ἢ γῆρα ὑπερμέτρον
ξυνεχόμενος ἢ παιδία χρώμενος, οὐδὲν ποιῶν
τοὺς νομοὺς διαφέρων: ὅν ἂν γίγνηται τι φανερὸν
τὸ ἐκλεκθεῖσιν ἐκάστοτε δικασταῖς ἀναφέροντος
tοῦ δράσαντος ἢ τοῦ σκηπτομένου ὑπὲρ τοῦ
ποιήσαντος, κριθῇ δὲ οὖν διατεθεὶς παρανομήσαι,

καθ’ ην μὲν βλάβην ἢν ἂν τινα καταβλάψῃ πάντως
ἀπλὴν ἀποτινέτω, τῶν δὲ ἄλλων δικαιωμάτων
ἀφείσθω, πλὴν ἂν ἄρα τινὰ ἀποκτείνας μὴ καθα-
ρῶς ἡ τὰς χεῖρας φόνου. οὔτω δ’ εἰς ἄλλην χώραν
καὶ τόπον ἀπελθόν οἰκεῖτο τὸν ἐνιαυτὸν ἐκδημῶν,
πρότερον δὲ ἐλθὼν τοῦ χρόνου ὃν ὁ νόμος ὀρίσεν,
ἡ καὶ πάσης ἐπιβάς τῆς οἰκείας χώρας, ἐν δημοσίῳ

1 ξυμφανῶν Faehse: ξυμφόνων MSS.: ἄξυμφανων Zur.
now assert; and for these five classes we must enact distinct laws, of two main types.

CLIN. What are they?

ATH. The one concerns acts done on each occasion by violent and open means, the other acts done privily under cover of darkness and deceit, or sometimes acts done in both these ways,—and for acts of this last kind the laws will be most severe, if they are to prove adequate.

CLIN. Naturally.

ATH. Let us revert next to that point from which we digressed,¹ and proceed with our enactment of the laws. We had, I believe, laid down the laws dealing with those who plunder the gods and with traitors, and also with those who wreck the laws with intent to overthrow the existing constitution. An act of this kind a man might commit when mad, or when suffering from some disease or from excessive senility, or in a state of childishness, whereby he is no better than a madman. If any case of this kind is ever brought to the notice of the selected judges, either on the information of the doer of the act or on that of him who is pleading for the doer, and if it be judged that he was in this state of madness when he broke the law, then he shall certainly pay for the damage he has done, but only the exact sum, and he shall be acquitted of the other charges, unless it be that he has killed a man and has not purged his hands from blood: in this case he shall depart into another country and place, and dwell there as an exile for a year; and should he return within the time fixed by the law or set foot at all within his own country, he shall be put in the public gaol by

¹ i.e. 857 B.
δεσμῷ δεθεὶς υπὸ τῶν νομοφυλάκων δύο ἐναυ-865 τοὺς οὖτος ἀπαλλαττέσθω τῶν δεσμῶν.

Φθόνος οὐδείς,1 καθάπερ ἢρξάμεθα, [πειρώμεθα] 2 διὰ τέλους παντὸς εἴδους πέρι φόνου θείαι τοὺς νόμους, καὶ πρῶτον μὲν τὰ βλαίαι καὶ ἀκούσια λέγωμεν. εἰ τις ἐν ἀγώνι καὶ ἄθλοις δημοσίοις ἁκων, εἴτε παραχρήμα εἴτε καὶ ἐν ὑστέροις χρόνοις ἐκ τῶν πληγών, ἀπέκτεινε τινὰ φίλιον, ἢ κατὰ πόλεμον ὅσαύτως ἢ κατὰ μελέτην τὴν πρὸς πόλεμον, ποιομένων ἂνσκησιν τῶν ἀκοντίων3 ψυλλοῖς σώμασιν ἢ μετὰ τινῶν ὀπλῶν ἀπομιμομένων τὴν πολεμικὴν πράξιν, καθαρθεὶς κατὰ τὸν ἐκ Δελφῶν κομισθέντα περὶ τούτων νόμουν ἐστω καθαρός. ίατρῶν δὲ πέρι πάντων, ἀν ὁ θεραπευόμενος ὑπ’ αὐτῶν ἀκόντων τελευτᾶ, καθαρός ἐστω κατὰ νόμον.

Ἐὰν δὲ αὐτόχειρ μὲν, ἁκων δὲ ἀποκτείνῃ τις ἑτερος ἑτερον, εἰτε τῷ ἑαυτού σώματι ψυλῳ εἰτε ὀργανῷ ἢ ἐλεί ἡ πῶματος ἡ σῖτου δὸςε ἡ πυρὸς ἢ χειμῶνος προσβολῆ ἢ στερήσει πνεύματος, αὐτὸς τῷ ἑαυτοῦ σώματι ὡς ἑτερον σωμάτων, ἂν ἐστω µὲν ὡς αὐτόχειρ, δίκας δὲ τινέτω τὰς τοιάσθε: εὰν µὲν δούλου κτείνῃ, νομίζον τὸν ἑαυτοῦ διειργάσθαι τὸν τοῦ τελευτήσατος δεσπότην ἀβλαβῆ παρεχέτω καὶ ἀξίμιον, ἢ δίκην εἰς τὴν ἄξιαν τοῦ τελευτήσατος ὑπεχέτω διπλήν τής δὲ ἄξιας οἱ δικασταὶ διάγρωσιν ποιεῖσθωσαν καθαρμοῖς δὲ χρήσασθαι μείζοσι τε καὶ πλείσσι τῶν

1 Φθόνος οὐδείς, φόνον δὴ MSS. φόνον δὴ Zur., vulg. 238
the Law-wardens for the space of two years, and not let out of gaol until after that time.

We need not hesitate to enact laws about every class of murder on similar lines, now that we have made a beginning. First we shall deal with the cases that are violent and involuntary. If a man has killed a friend in a contest or in public games—whether his death has been immediate or as the after-effect of wounds,—or similarly if he has killed him in war or in some action of training for war, either when practising javelin-work without armour or when engaged in some warlike manoeuvre in heavy armour,—then, when he has been purified as the Delphic rule on this matter directs, he shall be accounted pure. So too with respect to all doctors, if the patient dies against the will of his doctor, the doctor shall be accounted legally pure.

And if one man kills another of his own act, but involuntarily,—whether it be with his own unarmed body, or by a tool or a weapon, or by a dose of drink or of solid food, or by application of fire or of cold, or by deprivation of air, and whether he does it himself with his own body or by means of other bodies,—in all cases it shall be accounted to be his own personal act, and he shall pay the following penalties. If he kill a slave, he shall secure the master against damage and loss, reckoning as if it were a slave of his own that had been destroyed, or else he shall be liable to a penalty of double the value of the dead man,—and the judges shall make an assessment of his value,—and he must also employ means of purification greater and more numerous than those

---

2 [πειράμεθα] I bracket, as wanting in best MSS.
3 ἀκοντίων: ἀρχόντων MSS. (Burnet brackets τῶν ἀρχόντων).
D ἐὰν δὲ αὐτῷ δοῦλον, καθηράμενος ἀπαλλαττέσθω τοῦ φόνου κατὰ νόμον. ἐὰν δὲ τις ἐλευθεροῦν ἄκον ἀποκτείνῃ, τοὺς μὲν καθορμοὺς τοὺς αὐτοὺς καθαρθήτω τῷ τὸν δοῦλον ἀποκτείνατι, παλαιῶν δὲ τινὰ τῶν ἀρχαίων μύθων λεγόμενον μὴ ἀτιμαζέτω. Λέγεται δὲ ὡς ὁ θανατωθεὶς ἀρα βιαίως, ἐν ἐλευθέρῳ φρονήματι βεβιωκός, θυμοῦταί τε τῷ δράσαντι Εὐεσθνήνην ὃν, καὶ φόβον καὶ δείματος ἀμα διὰ τὴν βίαιον πάθην αὐτὸς πεπληρωμένος, ὅρων τε τὸν ἐαυτοῦ φονεὰ ἐν τοῖς ἥθεσι τοῖς τῆς ἐαυτοῦ συνηθείας ἀναστρεφόμενον ἐκεῖνοί, καὶ ταραττόμενος αὐτὸς ταράττει κατὰ δύναμιν πᾶσαν τὸν δράσαντα, μνήμην ἔξω ἀπὸ ἔχων, αὐτὸν τε καὶ τὰς πράξεις αὐτοῦ. διὸ δὴ χρεὼν ἐστὶν ἁρα ὑπεξελθεῖν τῷ παθόντι τὸν δράσαντα τὰς ὤρισας πάσας τοῦ ἐπιλαυνοῦ καὶ ἔρημωσαι πάντας τοὺς οἰκείους τόπους ἐξυμπάσης τῆς πατρίδος. εἰ δὲ ἕξους ὁ τελευτήσας ἦ, καὶ τῆς τοῦ ἔξους χώρας εἰργέσθω τοὺς αὐτοῦς χρόνους. τοῦτο δὴ τῷ νόμῳ ἐὰν μὲν ἐκὸν πειθήται τις, ὁ τοῦ τελευτήσαντος γένει ἐγγυτατα, ἐπίσκοπος ὃν τοῦτων πάντων γενομένων, ἐχέτω συγγυμνὰς τε καὶ ἄγων πρὸς αὐτὸν εἰρήνην μέτριος ἀν εἴη πάντως. εἰ δὲ τις ἀπειθή καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἀκάθαρτος ὃν εἰς τὰ ἱερὰ τολμᾶ πορεύεσθαι καὶ θύειν, ἐτὶ δὲ τοὺς χρόνους μὴ Β ἔθελῃ πληροῦν ἀποξενούμενος τοὺς εἰρημένους, ὁ τοῦ τελευτήσαντος γένει ἐγγύτατα ἐπεξίτῳ μὲν 240
LAWS, BOOK IX

employed by persons who kill a man at games, and those interpreters\(^1\) whom the oracle names shall be in charge of these rites; but if it be a slave of his own that he has killed, he shall be set free after the legal purification. And if anyone kill a free man involuntarily, he shall undergo the same purifications as the man that has killed a slave; and there is an ancient tale, told of old, to which he must not fail to pay regard. The tale is this,—that the man slain by violence, who has lived in a free and proud spirit, is wroth with his slayer when newly slain, and being filled also with dread and horror on account of his own violent end, when he sees his murderer going about in the very haunts which he himself had frequented, he is horror-stricken; and being disquieted himself, he takes conscience as his ally, and with all his might disquiets his slayer—both the man himself and his doings. Wherefore it is right for the slayer to retire before his victim for a full year, in all its seasons, and to vacate all the spots he owned in all parts of his native land; and if the dead man be a Stranger, he shall be barred also from the Stranger’s country for the same period. If a man willingly obeys this law, he that is nearest of kin to the dead man, having the supervision of the performance of all these rules, shall pardon him and live at peace with him, and in doing so he will be acting with perfect propriety; but if a man disobeys, and dares, in the first place, to approach the altars and to do sacrifice while still unpurified, and if he refuses, further, to fulfil the times appointed in exile, then the next of kin to the dead man shall

\(^1\) Cp. 759 C.
PLATO

φόνου τῷ κτείναντι, διπλὰ δὲ πάντα ἐστώ τὰ τιμωρήματα τῷ ὁφλόντι. έὰν δ' ὁ προσήκων ἐγγύτατα μὴ ἐπεξῆγῃ τῷ παθήματι, τὸ μίασμα ὡς εἰς αὐτὸν περιεληλυθός τοῦ παθόντος προστρεπο-
μένου τὴν πάθην, ὁ βουλόμενος ἐπεξελθὼν τούτῳ δίκην πέντε ἐτή ἀποσχέσθαι τῆς αὐτοῦ πατρίδος ἀναγκαζέτω κατὰ νόμον.

'Εὰν δὲ κένες ἀκώς ξένον κτείνῃ τῶν ἐν τῇ πόλει, ἐπεξῆγεῖ τοὺς αὐτοὺς νόμοις, τὸ μέτοικος δὲ ὁ παντοτικός, ξένος δὲ ἄν ἦ 

παντόπασι, πρὸς τῷ καθαρμῷ, εάν τοὺς κένες ἐὰν τὸ 

μέτοικον ἀκῶς ἄν τοὺς κτείνῃ, τὰς ξένους τῶν 

χώρας τῆς τῶν νόμων τῶν κυρίας εἰργάσθων 

εάν δὲ ἠλθῇ παρανόμως, οἱ νομοφύλακες θανάτῳ 

ξημιοῦντον αὐτὸν, καὶ εάν ἔχῃ οὐσίαν τινὰ, τῷ 

D τοῦ παθόντος ἐγγύτατα γένει παραδιδόντων. εάν 

dὲ ἀκὼς ἠλθῆ, ἂν μὲν κατὰ θάλατταν ἐκπίπτη 

πρὸς τὴν χώραν, σκηνισάμενος ἐν θαλάσσῃ τέγγαν 

τοὺς πόδας πλοῖω ἐπιφυλαττότω, κατὰ γῆν δὲ 

ἀν βίᾳ ὑπὸ τινῶν ἄχθη, ἡ πρώτῃ προστυχοῦσα 

ἀρχῇ τῶν ἐν τῇ πόλει λύσασα εἰς τὴν ὑπερβοῖαν 

ἐκπεμπέτω ἀσυλον.

'Εὰν δ' ἄρα τις αὐτόχειρ μὲν κτείνῃ ἐλεύθερου, 

θυμῷ δὲ ἦ τὸ πεπραγμένον ἐκπραχθὲν, διεκὴ δὲ 

πρῶτον τὸ τοιοῦτον διαλαβεῖν. θυμῷ γὰρ δὴ 

πέπρακται καὶ τοῖς ὅσοι ἄν ἐξαίφνης μὲν καὶ 

E ἀπροβολεύτως τοῦ ἀποκτεῖναι πληγαῖς ἡ τῶν 

τοιοῦτος διαφθείρωσε τινὰ παραχρῆμα τῆς ὀρμῆς

242
prosecute the slayer for murder, and in case of conviction all the penalties shall be doubled. And should the nearest relative fail to prosecute for the crime, it shall be as though the pollution had passed on to him, through the victim claiming atonement for his fate; and whoso pleases shall bring a charge against him, and compel him by law to quit his country for five years.

And if a Stranger involuntarily kills a Stranger who is resident in the State, whoso pleases shall prosecute him under the same laws; and if he be a resident alien, he shall be exiled for a year, while if he be altogether a Stranger—whether the man slain be a Stranger or resident alien or citizen—in addition to the purifications imposed, he shall be barred for all his life from the country which ordains these laws; and if he transgresses the law, and comes back to it, the Law-wardens shall punish him with death; and if he has any property, they shall hand it over to the next of kin of the victim. And should he come back unwillingly, in case he be shipwrecked off the coast of the country, he shall camp with his feet in the sea, and watch for a ship to take him off; or in case he be brought in by people forcibly by land, the first magistrate of the State that meets with him shall loose him, and send him out over the border unharmed.

If a person with his own hand kills a free man, and the deed be done in passion, in a case of this kind we must begin by making a distinction between two varieties of the crime. For murder is committed in passion by those who, on a sudden and without intent to kill, destroy a man by blows or some such means in an immediate attack, when the
γενομένης, μεταμέλειαί τε εὐθὺς τοῦ πεπραγμένου γίγνηται, θυμῷ δὲ καὶ ὦσοι προσηλακισθέντες λόγοις ἢ καὶ ἀτίμως ἔργοις, μεταδιάκοντες τὴν τιμωρίαν, ὥστε τον ἄποκτείνωσί τινα θουληθέντες κτείναι, καὶ τὸ πεπραγμένον αὐτοῖς ἀμεταμέλητον γίγνηται. διότι οὓς μὲν δὴ τοὺς φόνους, ὡς ἐσικε, θετέον, καὶ σχεδὸν ἀμφοτέρους θυμῷ γεγονότας, μεταξὺ δὲ ποὺ τὸν τε ἐκουσίον καὶ ἀκουσίον δικαιῶταν ἂν λεγομένους. οὐ μὴν ἀλλὶ ἐκάκων ἐσθε ἐκάτερος· ὁ μὲν τὸν θυμὸν φυλάττων καὶ οὐκ ἐκ τοῦ παραχρῆμα ἐξαίφνης ἀλλὰ μετὰ ἐπιβουλῆς ὥστε τοῖς ἐπιρήμοις καὶ ἐκ τοῦ παραχρῆμα εὐθὺς χρόμενος ἀπροβουλεύτως ὥσοις μὲν ἀκουσίως, ἐστι δὲ οὐδ’ οὕτος αὖ παντάπασιν ἀκουσίοις, ἀλλ’ ἐκῶν ἀκουσίου. διὸ χαλεποὶ διορίζειν οἱ τὸν θυμὸ πραξάθεντες φόνοι, πότερον ἐκουσίους αὐτοὺς ἢ τινας ὡς ἀκουσίους νομοθετητέον. βέλτιστον μὴν καὶ ἀληθέστατον εἰς ἐκόνα μὲν ἄμφω θείαι, τεμείν δὲ αὐτῷ χωρὶς τῇ ἐπιβουλῇ καὶ ἀπροβουλίᾳ, καὶ τοῖς μὲν μετ’ ἐπιβουλῆς τε καὶ ὀργῆς κτείναι τὰς τιμωρίας χαλέπωτέρας, τοῖς δὲ ἀπροβουλ- λέυτως τε καὶ ἐξαίφνης πραοτέρας νομοθετεῖν· τὸ γὰρ ἐοικὸς μεῖξοι κακῷ μειξόνως, τὸ δ’ ἐλάττων tοῦς tιμωρητέον ἐλαττόνως. ποιητέοι δὴ καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις νόμοις οὕτως.

κα. Παντάπασι μὲν οὖν.

α. Πάλιν ἔπανελθόντες τοῖς νῦν λέγομεν· "Ἄν ἄρα τις αὐτόχειρ μὲν κτείνῃ ἐλεύθερον, τὸ δὲ

244
deed is at once followed by repentance; and it is also a case of murder done in passion whenever men who are insulted by shameful words or actions seek for vengeance, and end by killing a man with deliberate intent to kill, and feel no repentance for the deed. We must lay it down, as it seems, that these murders are of two kinds, both as a rule done in passion, and most properly described as lying midway between the voluntary and the involuntary. None the less, each of these kinds tends to resemble one or other of these contraries; for the man who retains his passion and takes vengeance, not suddenly on the spur of the moment, but after lapse of time, and with deliberate intent, resembles the voluntary murderer; whereas the man who does not nurse his rage, but gives way to it at once on the spur of the moment and without deliberate intent, has a likeness to the involuntary murderer; yet neither is he wholly involuntary, but bears a resemblance thereto. Thus murders done in passion are difficult to define,—whether one should treat them in law as voluntary or involuntary. The best and truest way is to class them both as resemblances, and to distinguish them by the mark of deliberate intent or lack of intent, and to impose more severe penalties on those who slay with intent and in anger, and milder penalties on those who do so without intent and on a sudden. For that which resembles a greater evil must be more heavily punished, that which resembles a lesser evil more lightly. So our laws also must do likewise.

Clin. They must, most certainly.

Ath. Returning, then, to our task, let us make this pronouncement:—If a man with his own hand
πεπραγμένον ἀπροβουλεύτως ὅργῃ τινὶ γένηται πραχθεῖν, τὰ μὲν ἀλλὰ, καθάπερ ἂνεν θυμοῦ κτείναυτι προσηκὸς τῷ πάσχειν, πασχέτω, δῦο δὲ ἔξ ἀνάγκης ἔτη φευγέτω κολάζων τῶν αὐτοῦ θυμοῦ. ὃ δὲ θυμῷ μὲν, μετ᾿ ἐπὶβουλῆς δὲ κτείνας, τὰ μὲν ἀλλὰ κατὰ τὸν πρόσθεν αὐ, τρία δὲ ἔτη, καθάπερ ἀτέρος ἐφευγε τὰ δῦο, φευγέτω, μεγέθει θυμοῦ πλείω τιμωρηθεὶς χρόνον. καθόδου δὲ πέρι τούτοις ὡδ᾿ ἐστω. χαλεπὸν μὲν ἀκριβῶς νομοθετεῖν ἐστὶ γὰρ ὅτε τούτου ὁ τῷ νόμῳ ταχθεῖς χαλεπώτερος ἥμερωτερος ἂν, ὃ δὲ ἥμερωτερος χαλεπώτερος ἂν εἴη, καὶ τὰ περὶ τῶν φόνων ἄγριωτέρως ἂν πράξειν, ὃ δὲ ἥμερωτέρως· ὡσ δὲ τὸ πολὺ κατὰ τὰ νῦν ἐρημένα ἔνυμβαϊνει Ἐγγυνομενα· τούτων οὖν πάντων ἐπιγνώμονας εἶναι χρῆ νομοφύλακας, ἐπειδὰν δὲ ὁ χρόνος ἔλθῃ τῆς φυγῆς ἐκατέρω, πέμπειν αὐτῶν δικαστὰς δώδεκα ἐπὶ τοὺς ὅρους τῆς χώρας, ἐσκεμμένους ἐν τῷ χρόνῳ τούτῳ τὰς τῶν φυγόντων πράξεις ἐτε σαφέστερον, καὶ τῆς αἴδους τε πέρι καὶ καταδοχῆς τούτων δικαστὰς γύγνουσθαι· τοὺς δὲ αὐ τοῖς δικασθεισῶν ὑπὸ τῶν τοιούτων ἀρχόντων 868 ἐμμένειν. ἐὰν δ᾿ αὐτῆς ποτε κατελθὼν ὄπότερος αὐτῶν ἡττηθεὶς ὅργῃ πράξῃ ταύτῳ τούτῳ, φυγὸν μηκέτι κατέλθῃ, κατελθὼν δὲ κατὰ τὴν τοῦ ξένου ἀφιξίν, ταύτῃ πασχέτω. δοῦλον δὲ ὁ κτείνας ἑαυτοῦ μὲν καθημάσθω, ἐὰν δὲ ἀλλότριον θυμῷ,
slay a free man, and the deed be done in rage without deliberate intent, he shall suffer such other penalties as it is proper for the man to suffer who has slain without passion, and he shall be compelled to go into exile for two years, thereby chastising his own passion. And he that slays in passion and with deliberate intent shall be treated in other respects like the former, but shall be exiled for three years—instead of two, like the other,—receiving a longer period of punishment because of the greatness of his passion. As regards the return home, in such cases it shall be on this wise. (It is a difficult matter to legislate for with exactness; for sometimes the more dangerous of the two murderers in the eye of the law might prove the more gentle and the gentler the more dangerous, and the latter might have committed the murder more savagely, the former more gently; though as a rule matters turn out in the way we have stated: so, regarding all these regulations the Law-wardens must act as supervisors). When the period of exile in each case has elapsed, they must send twelve of their number to the borders of the country to act as judges—they having made during the interval a still closer investigation into the actions of the exiles; and these men shall serve also as judges in regard to the matter of giving them pardon and admitting them back; and the exiles must abide by the verdicts of these magistrates. And if either of them, after his return, again yields to rage and commits the same act, he shall be exiled, and never again return; and if he returns, he shall suffer the same fate as the returned Stranger.¹ He that slays a slave of his own shall purify himself; and if he kill another man's slave in rage, he shall
διπλῇ τὸ βλάβος ἐκτισάτω τῷ κεκτημένῳ. ὡστὶς δ' ἀν τῶν ἀποκτεινάντων πάντων μὴ πείθηται τῷ νόμῳ, ἀλλ' ἀκάθαρτος ὃν ἀγοράν τε καὶ ἄθλα καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ίερὰ μιαίνῃ, ὁ βουλόμενος τὸν τε ἐπι-

B τρέποντα τῶν προσηκόντων τῷ τελευτήσαντι καὶ τὸν ἀποκτεινάντα εἰς δίκην καταστήσας τὴν διπλασίαν χρημάτων τε καὶ τῶν ἄλλων πράξεων ἀναγκαζέτω πράττειν τε καὶ ἐκτίνειν, τὸ δὲ ἐκτίσμα αὐτὸς αὐτῷ κομιζέσθω κατὰ τὸν νόμον. ἐὰν δὲ τις θυμῷ δοῦλος δεσπότην αὐτοῦ κτεῦν, τοὺς προσήκοντας τοῦ τελευτήσαντός χρωμένους τῷ κτείναντι χρείαν ἢν ἀν ἑθέλωσι, πλὴν μηδαμῆ ἢ μηδαμὸς ἔσχεροντας, καθαροὺς εἶναι. ἐὰν δὲ ἄλλον τις δοῦλος ἐλεύθερον ἀποκτείνῃ θυμῷ, παραδιδόντων οὶ δεσπόται τὸν δοῦλον τοῖς προσή-

κοσι τοῦ τελευτήσαντος, οὶ δὲ ἐξ ἀνάγκης μὲν 

θανατωσάντων τὸν δράσαντα, τρόπῳ δὲ ὡ ἀν ἑθέλωσιν.

'Εὰν δὲ, ὃ γίγνεται μὲν, ὀλιγάκις δέ, διὰ θυμὸν πατήρ ἢ μήτηρ νίον ἢ θυγατέρα πληγαῖς ἢ των τρόπῳ βιαίῳ κτείνῃ, καθάρσεις μὲν τὰς αὐτὰς τοῖς ἄλλοις καθαίρεσθαι 1 καὶ ἐνιαυτοῖς τρεῖς

D ἀπειναυτεῖν, κατέλθοντων δὲ τῶν κτεινάντων ἀπαλλάττεσθαι γυναῖκα τε ἀπ' ἄνδρος καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα ἀπὸ γυναίκος, καὶ μὴ ποτ' ἐτὶ κοινῇ παιδο-

ποιήσασθαι μηδὲ ἐξενέστιον ὃν ἐκγονοῦ ἢ ἀδελφὸν ἀπεστέρηκε γίγνεσθαι ποτε μηδὲ κοινωνῶν ίερῶν· ὁ δὲ ἀσεβῶν τε περὶ ταῦτα καὶ ἀπειθῶν ὑπόδικος ἀσεβεῖας γίγνεσθαι τῷ ἑθέλοντι. γυναῖκα δὲ γαμετῇ ἐὰν ἄνὴρ δι' ὀργῆν κτείνῃ τινὰ τις, ἢ γυνὴ ἑαυτῆς ἄνδρα ταύτον τοῦτο ὁσαύτως ἐργάσηται,

1 καθαίρεσθαι Euseb., Hermann: καθαίρεσθω MSS.

248
pay to the owner twice the damage. And if anyone of all these types of slayers disobeys the law and, being unpurified, defiles the market and the games and other sacred assemblies, whoso pleases shall prosecute both that member of the dead man's kindred who permits this and the slayer himself, and shall compel the one of them to exact, and the other to pay, double the amount of the money-fines and of the other exactions; and the sum so paid he shall keep for himself as the law directs. If a slave kills his own master in rage, the kindred of the dead man shall treat the slayer how they please,—save that they must not in any wise let him live,—and shall be held guiltless. And if a slave kill a free man (other than his master) in rage, his masters shall hand over the slave to the kindred of the dead man, and they shall be compelled to put the criminal to death, doing so in whatever manner they choose.

If in a fit of rage a father or mother slays a son or daughter by means of blows or some kind of violence,—an occurrence which, though rare, does sometimes happen,—the slayer must make the same purifications as the other slayers, and be exiled for three years; and when the slayers have returned, the wife must be separated from the husband and the husband from the wife, and they must never again have a child, nor shall they ever share a home with those whom the slayer has robbed of child or brother, nor shall they take part in their worship; he that is disobedient and impious concerning this matter shall be liable to an action for impiety at the hands of whoso pleases. And if a husband in a fit of rage kills his wedded wife, or if a wife in like manner

1 Such as the costs of the purification-rites.
Ε καθαίρεσθαι μὲν τοὺς αὐτοὺς καθαρμούς, τριετεῖς
de ἀπενιατήσεις διατελεῖν. κατελθὼν de ὁ τι
toioúton drάσαις τοῖς αὐτοῦ παισίν ἱερῶν μὴ
κοινωνεῖτο μηδὲ ὁμοτράπεζος γιγνέσθω ποτὲ
ἀπειθῶν de ὁ γεννήτωρ ἢ ὁ γεννήθησαι ἀσεβείας αὐ
ὑπόδικοις γιγνέσθω τῶ ἑθέλοιτι. καὶ εἶν ἀδελφὸς
ἀδελφον ἢ ἀδελφὴν ἢ ἀδελφὸν ἢ ἀδελφὴν
θυμῷ κτείνῃ, τὰ μὲν τῶν καθαρμῶν καὶ ἀπενια-
tήσεων ὁσαύτως, καθάπερ εὑρήται τοῖς γονέοις καὶ
tοῖς ἑκγόνοις, εἰρήσθω δεῖν γίγνεσθαι καὶ τούτοις
ἂν ἀδελφοὺς τε ἀδελφῶν καὶ γονέας ἐστέρηκε
παῖδων, τοῦτοις ὑπὲρ ἑυνεστίος αὐτῶς 1 μηδέποτε γιγ-
869 νέσθω μηδὲ κοινώνος ἱερῶν· εἀν de τις ἀπειθῇ, τῷ
tῆς περὶ ταῦτα ἀσεβείας εἰρημένῳ νόμῳ ὑπόδικος
ὁρθῶς ἂν γίγνοιτο μετὰ δίκης.

'Εαν δ' ἀρα τις εἰς τοσοῦτον ἀκρατής θυμὸν
γίγνηται πρὸς τοὺς γεννήσαντας, ὡστε μανίας
ὀργῆς τῶν γεννητόρων τολμῆται κτεῖναι τινα, εὰν
μὲν ὁ τελευτήσας πρὶν τελευτῆσαι τὸν δράσαντα
φόνον ἀφιῇ ἔκων, καθάπερ οἱ τὸν ἀκούσιον φόνον
ἐξεργασάμενοι καθαρθεῖς καὶ τάλλα ὁσαπέρ ἐκεί-

Β νοὶ πράξας καθαρὸς ἔστω, εὰν de μὴ ἀφῇ, πολλοῖς
ἔνοχοις ἔστω νόμοις ὁ δράσας τὶ τοιοῦτον καὶ γὰρ
αικίας δίκαιας ταῖς ἐσχάταις ἐνοχοῖς ἂν γίγνοιτο
καὶ ἀσεβείας ὁσαύτως καὶ ἱερουσλίας, τὴν τοῦ
γεννήτου ψυχήν συλήσας, ὡστ' εὑπερ οἰνὸν τ' ἦν
tὸ πολλάκις ἀποθυνήσακεν τὸν αὐτὸν, καὶ τὸν πατρο-
φόνον ἢ μητροκτόνων ἐξεργασάμενον θυμῷ τοῦτο
dικαιότατον θανάτων πολλῶν ἢν τυγχάνειν. Ὁ
γὰρ μόνῳ οὐδ' ἀμυνομένῳ θανάτον [μελλοντὶ ύπὸ

LAWS, BOOK IX

kills her husband, they must undergo the same purifications, and remain exiled for three years. And when one who has committed such a crime returns, he shall never take part in worship with his children, nor sit at table with them; and if either the parent or the child disobeys, he shall be liable to a charge of impiety at the hands of whoso pleases. And if in rage a brother kill a brother or a sister, or a sister kill a brother or a sister, it shall be declared that they must undergo the same purifications and banishment as have been ordained for parents and children,—namely, that the homicide shall never share in the house or in the worship of those brothers or parents whom he has robbed of brothers or of children; and if anyone disobeys, he will rightly and justly be liable to the law laid down concerning such cases of impiety.

If any man gets into such an uncontrollable rage with his parents as actually to dare to kill a parent in the madness of his rage, then, in case the dead person before dying voluntarily acquits the culprit of murder, he shall be held pure, after he has purified himself in the same manner as those who have committed an involuntary murder, and done as they in all other respects; but in case the dead person does not so acquit him, then he that has done such a deed is liable to a number of laws: for outrage he will be liable to most heavy penalties, and likewise for impiety and temple-robbing, since he has robbed his parent of life; so that if "to die a hundred deaths" were possible for any one man, that a parricide or a matricide, who did the deed in rage, should undergo a hundred deaths would be a fate most just. Since every law will forbid
τῶν γονέων τελευτήσεσθαι]. 1 παρέξει νόμος οúdeis
C κτείναι τῶν πατέρα ἡ μητέρα, τοὺς εἰς φῶς τὴν
ἐκείνου φύσιν ἀγαγόντας, ἀλλ' ὑπομείναντα τὰ
πάντα πᾶσχειν πρὶν τι δράν τοιοῦτον νομο-
θετήσει, πῶς τούτω δίκης γε ἀλλως προσήκον
tυγχάνειν ἂν γίγνοιτο ἐν νόμῳ; κείσθω δὴ τῷ
πατέρα ἡ μητέρα ἀποκτείναντι θυμὸ θάνατός ἡ
ξημία.

Ἀδελφός δ' ἦν ἄδελφον κτείνῃ ἐν στάσει
μάχης γενομένης ἡ τινὶ τρόπῳ τοιοῦτῳ, ἀμνύμε-
D νος ἀρχοντα χειρῶν πρότερον, καθάπερ πολέμιον
ἀποκτείνας ἐστὶ καθαρός· καὶ ἐὰν πολιτὴς πο-
λίτην ὁσαύτως ἢ ξένος ξένον· ἦν δὲ ἀστός ξένου
ἡ ξένος ἀστὸν ἀμνύμενος κτείνη, κατὰ ταυτὰ
ἐστὶ τοῦ καθαρὸς εἶναι. καὶ ἐὰν δοῦλος δοῦλον,
ὡσαύτως· ἦν δὲ αὐ δοῦλος ἐλεύθερον ἀμνύμενος
ἀποκτείνη, καθάπερ ὁ κτείνας πατέρα, τοῖς αὐτοῖς
ξένοχος ἐστὶ νόμος. ὁ δὲ περὶ τῆς ἀφέσεως
εἰρηται φόνου πατρί, ταυτὸν τοῦτο ἐστὶν περὶ
Ε ἀπάσης τῶν τοιούτων ἀφέσεως, ἦν ὀστισοῦν
ὄντων ἀφίη τοῦτο ἑκὼν, ὡς ἀκούσιον γεγονότος
τοῦ φόνου οὗ τῷ καθαρῷ γιγνέσθωσαν τῷ
δράσαντι καὶ ἐνιαυτὸς εἰς ἐστὶ τῆς ἐκδημίας ἐν
νόμῳ.

Καὶ τὰ μὲν δὴ βιαία τε καὶ ἀκούσια καὶ κατὰ
τῶν θυμῶν γιγνόμενα περὶ φόνους μετρίως εἰρήσθω·
tὰ δὲ περὶ τὰ ἐκούσια καὶ κατ' ἀδικίαι πᾶσαν
γιγνόμενα τούτων περὶ καὶ <ἐξ> 2 ἐπιβουλῆς δὲ
ήτται ἡδονῶν τε καὶ ἐπιθυμίων καὶ φθόνων, ταῦτα
μετ' ἐκείνα ἡμῖν λεκτέον.

2 <ἐξ> I add.

252
the man to kill father or mother, the very authors of his existence, even for the sake of saving his own life, and will ordain that he must suffer and endure everything rather than commit such an act,—in what other way than this can such a man be fitfully dealt with by law, and receive his due reward? Be it enacted, therefore, that for the man who in rage slays father or mother the penalty is death.

If a brother kill a brother in fight during a civil war, or in any such way, acting in self-defence against the other, who first started the brawl, he shall be counted as one who has slain an enemy, and be held guiltless; so too, when a citizen has killed a citizen in like manner, or a Stranger a Stranger. And if a citizen kill a Stranger in self-defence, or a Stranger a citizen, he shall be accounted pure in the same way. So likewise, if a slave kill a slave; but if a slave kill a free man in self-defence, he shall be liable to the same laws as he that kills a father. And what has been said about remission of the charge in the case of the murder of a father shall hold equally good in all such cases—if any man voluntarily acquit any culprit of this charge, the purifications for the culprit shall be made as though the murder were involuntary, and one year of exile shall be imposed by law.

Let us take this as an adequate statement respecting murder-cases that involve violence, and are involuntary and done in passion. Next to these we must state the regulations regarding such acts when voluntary and involving iniquity of all kinds and premeditated,—acts caused by yielding to pleasure or lust or envy.
κα. Ἀρθός λέγεις.

α. Πάλιν δὴ πρῶτον περὶ τῶν τοιούτων εἰς δύναμιν εἴπομεν ὅπόσα ἂν εἴη. τὸ μὲν δὴ μέγιστον ἐπιθυμία κρατοῦσα ψυχῆς εξηγηρισμένης υπὸ πόθων. τούτο δὲ ἐστὶ μάλιστα ἐνταῦθα οὐ πλεῖστος τε καὶ ἴσχυρότατος ἤμερος ὃν τυγχάνει τοῖς πολλοῖς, ἢ τῶν χρημάτων τῆς ἀπλήστου καὶ ἀπείρου κτῆσεως ἔρωτας μυρίους ἐντίκτουσα δύναμις διὰ φύσιν τε καὶ ἀπαίδευσιν τὴν κακήν. τῆς δὲ ἀπαίδευσίας ἢν τὸ κακὸς ἐπαινεῖσθαι πλοῦτον αὐτία φήμη¹ πρὸς τῶν Ἑλλήνων τε καὶ βαρβάρων πρῶτον γὰρ τῶν ἁγαθῶν αὐτὸ Β προκρίνοντες τρίτον ὅν τοὺς τ’ ἐπιγυμνομένους λωβῶνται καὶ ἑαυτούς. τὸ γὰρ ἀληθὲς λέγεσθαι περὶ τοῦ πλοῦτος κατὰ πόλεις πᾶσας, πάντων κάλλιστον καὶ ἀριστον, ὡς ἐνεκα σώματὸς ἐστὶ, καὶ σῶμα ψυχῆς ἐνεκα· ἁγαθῶν μὲν τῶν ὄντων ὃν ἐνεκα ο̣̇ πλοῦτος εἶναι πέφυκε, τρίτον ἄν εἰὴ μετὰ σώματος ἄρετην καὶ ψυχῆς. διδάσκαλος οὐν ἂν ὁ λόγος οὗτος γίγνοιτο ὡς ὁ χρὴ πλουτεῖν ξητεῖν τὸν εὐδαιμονα ἐσόμενον, ἀλλὰ δικαίως πλουτεῖν Σ καὶ σωφρόνως· καὶ φόνοι οὕτως οὐκ ἂν γίγνοιτο ἐν πόλεσι φόνοις δεόμενοι καθαίρεσθαι. νῦν δὲ, ὡπερ ἄρχόμενοι τοιούτων εἴπομεν, ἐν μὲν τούτ’ ἐστὶ καὶ μέγιστον ὁ ποιεῖ φόνου ἐκοισίον τὰς μεγίστας δίκας· δεύτερον δὲ φιλοτίμου ψυχῆς εξις, φθόνους ἐντίκτουσα, χαλεποὺς ἐνυοίκουσ

¹ ἦν τὸ . . . φήμη: ἦ τοῦ . . . φήμη MSS., edd.


254
You are right.

First, let us once more state, as best we can, how many these causes are likely to be. The greatest is lust, which masters a soul that is made savage by desires; and it occurs especially in connexion with that object for which the most frequent and intense craving afflicts the bulk of men,—the power which wealth possesses over them, owing to the badness of their nature and lack of culture, to breed in them countless lustings after its insatiable and endless acquisition. And of this lack of culture the cause is to be found in the ill-praising of wealth in the common talk of both Greeks and barbarians; for by exalting it as the first of "goods,"¹ when it should come but third, they ruin both posterity and themselves. The noblest and best course of all in all States is that the truth should be stated about wealth,—namely, that it exists for the sake of the body, and the body for the sake of the soul; so that, while the objects for which it really exists are "goods," yet wealth itself will come third, after goodness of body and of soul. So this law will serve as an instructor, to teach that the man who intends to be happy must seek not to be wealthy, but to be justly and temperately wealthy; and if this were so, no murders that needed purging by murders would occur in States. But, as things now stand, this love of riches is—as we said ² when we began this subject—one cause, and a very great cause, which produces the most serious of trials for wilful murder. A second cause is the temper of the ambitious soul, which breeds envies that are

² 831 C ; cp. Ar. Pol. 1271a 17.
μάλιστα μὲν αὐτῷ τῷ κεκτημένῳ τὸν φθόνον, δευτέροις δὲ τοῖς ἀρίστοις τῶν ἐν τῇ πόλει. τρίτον δὲ οἱ δειλοὶ καὶ ἄδικοι φόβοι πολλοὺς δὴ φόνους εἰσὶν ἐξειργασμένοι, ὅταν ἦ τῷ πραττόμενῳ ἡ πεπραγμένα ἡ μηδένα βουλοῦνται σφίσι ξυνειδέναι γιγνόμενα ἡ γεγονότα. τοὺς οὖν τούτων μηνυτὰς ἀναρχοῦσι θανάτοις, ὅταν ἄλλω μηδενὶ δύνωνται τρόπῳ.

Τούτων δὴ πάντων πέρι προοίμια μὲν εἰρημένα ταύτ' ἔστω, καὶ πρὸς τούτοις, ὅν καὶ πολλοὶ λόγου τῶν ἐν ταῖς τελεταῖς περὶ τὰ τοιαύτα ἐσπουδακότων ἀκούοντες σφόδρα πείθονται, τὸ τῶν τοιούτων τίσιν ἐν "Ἀδιδον γίγνεσθαι καὶ πάλιν ἀφικομένοις δεῦρο ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι τὴν Εκκατὰ φύσιν δίκην ἐκτίσαι, τὴν τοῦ παθόντος ἀπερ ἀυτὸς ἔδρασεν, ὡπ' ἄλλου τοιαύτη μοίρα τελευτήσαι τὸν τότε βίον. πειθομένῳ μὲν δὴ καὶ πάντως φοβουμένῳ ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ προοίμιον τὴν τοιαύτην δίκην οὐδὲν δεῖ τὸν ἐπὶ τούτῳ νόμον ὑμνεῖν, ἀπειθοῦντι δὲ νόμος ὄδε εἰρῆσθω τῇ γραφῇ. Ὑ' ὅν ἐκ προοίμιας τε καὶ ἄδικως ὀντιναύον τῶν ἐμφυλίων αὐτόχειρ κτείνῃ, πρῶτον μὲν τῶν νομίμων εἰργέσθω, μῆτε ἱερὰ μῆτε ἀγορὰν μῆτε λιμένας μῆτε ἄλλον κοινῶν ξύλλογον μηδένα μιαίνα, εἰάν τέ τις ἀπαγορεύῃ τῷ δράσαντι ταύτα ἄνθρώπων καὶ ἀνὰ μή' ὁ γὰρ νόμος ἀπαγορεύει, καὶ ἀπαγορεύουν ὑπὲρ πάσης τῆς πόλεως ἀεὶ φαίνεται τε καὶ φανεῖται. ὃ δὲ μὴ ἐπ-

1 Cp. 722 D: whereas the law coerces, its “prelude” seeks to persuade.
2 This implies the (Pythagorean) doctrine of re-incarnation: cp. 904 C, Rep. 614 EfE, Tim. 90 EfE.

256
dangerous associates for the man that feels the envy, in the first place, and dangerous also for the best citizens in the State. Thirdly, fears bred of cowardice and iniquity have wrought many murders,—in cases where men do or have done things concerning which they desire that no one should share their secret; consequently, if there are any who might expose their secret, they remove them by death, whenever they can do so by no other means.

Concerning all these matters, the preludes mentioned shall be pronounced, and, in addition to them, that story which is believed by many when they hear it from the lips of those who seriously relate such things at their mystic rites,—that vengeance for such acts is exacted in Hades,¹ and that those who return again to this earth² are bound to pay the natural penalty,—each culprit the same, that is, which he inflicted on his victim,—and that their life on earth must end in their meeting a like fate at the hands of another. To him who obeys, and fully dreads such a penalty, there is no need to add to the prelude by reciting the law on the subject; but to the disobedient this is the law which shall be stated in the written code:—Whosoever of deliberate intent and unjustly slays with his own hand any of the tribesmen shall, in the first place, be debarred from the lawful assemblies, and shall not defile either temples or market or harbours or any other place of meeting, whether or not any person warns off the doer of such deeds—for he is warned off by the law, which is, and always will continue, warning him thus publicly, on behalf of the whole State; and the
Εξιῶν δέον ἡ μὴ προαγορεύον εἴργεσθαι τῶν ἐντὸς ἀνεψιότητος, πρὸς αὐτῶν τε καὶ γυναικῶν προσήκων τῷ τελευτᾶντι, πρῶτον μὲν τὸ μίασμα εἰς αὐτὸν καὶ τὴν τῶν θεῶν ἔχθραν δέχοντο, ὡς ἢ τοῦ νόμου ἢ ἢ τὴν φήμης¹ προτρέπεται, τὸ δὲ δεύτερον ὑπόδικος τῷ ἐθέλοντι τιμωρεῖν ὑπὲρ τοῦ τελευτᾶσαντος γιγνέσθω. ὦ δὲ ἐθέλων τιμωρεῖν, τῶν τε ἐπὶ τούτοις λοντρῶν φυλακῆς πέρι καὶ ὅσον ἄν ἐτέρων ὁ θεὸς περὶ ταῦτα νόμμα

καὶ παραδῷ, πάντα ἀποτελῶν καὶ τὴν πρὸς ἀδίκησιν προαγορεύων, ἵτω ἀναγκάζων τὸν δράσαντα ὑπέχειν τὴν τῆς δίκης πρᾶξιν κατὰ νόμον. ταύτα δὲ ὅτι μὲν γίγνεσθαι χρεών ἐστὶ διὰ τινῶν ἐπευχῶν καὶ θυσίων θεοῖς τισιν, οἷς τῶν τοιοῦτων μέλει, φόνους μὴ γίγνεσθαι κατὰ πόλεις, ῥάδιον ἀποφαίνεσθαι νομοθέτῃ τίνες δ’ εἰσίν οἱ θεοὶ καὶ τίς ² τρόπος τῶν τοιοῦτων δικών τῆς εἰσαγωγῆς ὀρθότατα πρὸς τὸ θεῖον ἄν γιγνόμενος εἰς, νομοφύλακες μετ’ ἐξηγητῶν καὶ μάντεων καὶ τοῦ θεοῦ νομοθετησάμενοι τὰς δίκας εἰσαγόντων ταύτας. δικαστᾶς δὲ αὐτῶν εἶναι τοὺς αὐτοὺς οὐσπερ τοῖς τὰ ιερὰ συλώσι διαδικάζειν ἐρρήθη κυρίως. ὦ δὲ ὀφλῶν θανάτω υἱοῦσθος καὶ μὴ ἐν τῇ τοῦ παθῶντος χώρα θαπτέοσθω, ἀναιδείας ἐνεκα πρὸς τῷ ἀσβεσθεῖν. φυγῶν δὲ καὶ μὴ ‘θελήσας κρίσιν ὑποσχεῖν φευγέτω ἀειφυγίαν’ ἐὰν δὲ τὶς ἐπιβῇ

¹ φήμης: φήμην MSS., edd.

¹ Cp. 877 C, D. ² 855 C ff.
man who fails to prosecute him when he ought, or fails to warn him of the fact that he is thus debarred, if he be of kin to the dead man on either the male or female side, and not further removed than a cousin,\(^1\) shall, first, receive upon himself the defilement and the wrath of the gods, since the curse of the law brings also upon him that of the divine voice, and, secondly, he shall be liable to the action of whosoever pleases to punish him on behalf of the dead man. And he that wishes to punish him shall duly perform all that concerns the observance of the purifications proper therefor, and whatsoever else the god prescribes as lawful in these cases, and he shall recite the pronouncement of warning; and thus he shall go and compel the culprit to submit to the execution of the penalty according to law. That it is necessary that these proceedings should be accompanied by certain invocations and sacrifices to those gods whose concern it is that murders should not occur in States, it is easy for the lawgiver to demonstrate: who these gods are, and what method for bringing such prosecutions would be the most correct in point of ritual,—this the Law-wardens, in conjunction with the interpreters and seers and with the god, shall ordain; and so they shall bring these prosecutions. And the judges in these cases shall be the same persons who form—as we described\(^2\)—the final court of trial for robbers of temples. He that is convicted shall be punished by death, and he shall not be buried in the land of the victim, because of the shamelessness as well as impiety of his act. If the culprit flees and refuses to come up for judgment, he shall be exiled with an unending exile; and if any such
τούτων τῆς τοῦ φονευθέντος χώρας, ὁ προστυχὼν πρῶτος τῶν οίκειων τοῦ ἀποθανόντος ἢ καὶ τῶν Ἑπολιτῶν ἀνατί κτεινέτω ἡ δήσας τοῖς ἀρχουσι τῶν τὴν δίκην κρινόντων κτεῖναι παραδότω. ὁ δὲ ἐπισκηπτόμενος ἀμα καὶ κατεγνωσμένων τοῦ ἤ ἢ ἐπισκηπτήσατο: ὁ δὲ παρεξέτω τρεῖς ἐγγυητὰς ἁξιόχρεως, οὐδὲ ἢ τῶν περὶ ταύτα δικαστῶν ἀρχὴ κρίνη, τρεῖς ἐγγυητὰς ἁξιόχρεως παρέξειν ἐγγυωμένους εἰς δίκην· εάν δὲ ἢ μὴ ἐθέλῃ ἢ ἀδυνατῇ τις καθιστᾶναι, τὴν ἀρχὴν παραλαβοὺσαν δήσασαν φυλάττειν καὶ παρέχειν εἰς 872 τὴν κρίσιν τῆς δίκης. εάν δὲ αὐτόχειρ μὲν μή, βουλεύῃ δὲ βάνατόν τις ἄλλος ἐτέρῳ καὶ τῇ βουλήσει τε καὶ ἐπιβουλεύσει αποκτείνας αὐτίος ἤν καὶ μὴ καθαρὸς τὴν φυχὴν τοῦ φόνου ἐν πόλει ἐνοικῇ, γιγνέσθων καὶ τούτω κατά ταύτα αἰ κρίσεις τούτων πέρι, πλὴν τῆς ἐγγύης, τῷ δὲ ὄφλοντι ταφῆς τῆς οἰκείας ἐξέστω τυχεῖν, τά δὲ ἄλλα κατὰ ταύτα ὦσαυτῶς τῷ πρόσθεν ῥηθέντι περὶ αὐτὸν γιγνέσθω· τὰ αὐτὰ δὲ ἕστω ταύτα ξένους τε πρὸς ξένους καὶ ἄστοισι καὶ ξένους ἐπὶ πρὸς ἄλληλοις, δούλοις τε αὐ τρός δούλους, τῆς τε αὐτόχειριας πέρι καὶ ἐπιβουλεύσεως, πλὴν τῆς ἐγγύης· ταύτην δὲ, καθαρός ἐξήτατα τοὺς αὐτό- χειρας κατεγνωσθαί, τοὺς δὲ προαγορεύουσα τοῦ φόνου ἀμα κατεγνωσμένοι καὶ τούτους. εάν δὲ δούλος ἐλεύθερον ἐκών, εἶτε αὐτόχειρ εἶτε βουλεύσας, ἀποκτείνη καὶ ὀφλῇ τὴν δίκην, ἢ τῆς

1 τρεῖς: τοὺς MSS.,edd.
2 [τρεῖς ἐγγυητὰς ἁξιόχρεως] I bracket (Hermann brackets the previous τοὺς ἐγγυητὰς ἁξιόχρεως).
260
person sets foot in the country of the murdered man, he of the dead man's relatives or of the citizens that first meets with him shall slay him with impunity, or else bind him and hand him over to those magistrates who have judged the case, to be slain. The prosecutor, in a murder-charge, must at once demand bail from the defendant; and the latter shall provide three substantial securities—as approved by the court of the judges in such cases—, who guarantee to produce him at the trial; and if a man be unwilling or unable to provide these sureties, the court must take, bind and keep him, and produce him at the trial of the case. If a man does not slay another with his own hand, but plots death for him, and after killing him by design and plotting resides in the State, being responsible for the murder and not innocent or pure of heart in respect of it,—in his case the prosecutions on this charge shall proceed in the same way, except in the matter of bail. And the person convicted shall be allowed to have burial at home; but all else shall be carried out in his case in the same way as in the case last described. And these same regulations shall govern all cases where Strangers are at law with Strangers, or citizens and Strangers at law with each other, or slaves with slaves, in respect both of actual murder and of plotting to murder, except as regards bail; and as to this, just as it has been said that the actual murderers must be secured by guarantors, so these persons too must provide security to the person who proclaims the murder. If a slave wilfully slay a free man, either by his own hand or by plotting, and be convicted at the trial, the public executioner

* [5%] bracketed by England.
πόλεως κοινὸς δήμησις ἀγων πρὸς τὸ μνῆμα τοῦ ἀποθανόντος, ὥθεν ἂν ὅρα τὸν τύμβον, μαστι-

C γώσας ὅποσας ἂν ὁ ἔλων προστάτη, ἐἀνπερ ἔως παῖδευμον ὁ φονεύς, θανατοσάτω. ἐὰν δὲ τις δούλον κτείνῃ μηδὲν ἀδικοῦντα, φόβῳ δὲ μὴ μηνυτῇς αἰσχρῶν ἐργῶν καὶ κακῶν αὐτοῦ γίγνη-
tαι, ἦ τινος ἕνεκα ἄλλου τοιοῦτο, καθάπερ ἂν εἰ πολίτην κτείνας ὑπείχε φόνου δίκας, ὡσαύτως 
καὶ τοῦ τοιοῦτον δούλου κατὰ τὰ αὐτὰ ἀποθα-

νόντος οὕτως ὑπεχέτω.

'Εὰν δὲ δὴ γίγνηται ἐφ' οἷς καὶ νομοθετεῖν δεινόν καὶ οὐδαμῶς προσφιλές, μὴ νομοθετεῖν 

D δὲ ἐπὶ βουλεύσεως γενομένους, ἐκουσίους τε καὶ 

ἀδίκους πάντως, οὐ τὰ μὲν πολλὰ ἐν κακῶς 

οἰκούσας καὶ τρεφομένας γίγνονται πόλεσι, 

γένοιτο δ' ἂν ποὺ τι καὶ ἐν ἢ μὴ ποτέ τις ἂν 

προσδοκήσει χώρα, λέγειν μὲν δὴ χρεῶν αὐτ 

πάλιν τὸν ἐμπροσθε σμικρῷ ρηθέντα λόγου, ἂν 

ἀρὰ τις ἀκούσῃ ἡμῶν οἷος ἀποσχέσθαι γένηται 

μᾶλλον ἐκὸν διὰ τὰ τοιαύτα φόνων τῶν πάντῃ 

ἀνοσιωτάτων. ὁ γὰρ δὴ μῦθος ἢ λόγος, ἢ ὁ τι 

Ε χρῆ προσαγορεύειν αὐτὸν, ἐκ παλαιῶν ἱερῶν 

εἰρηταὶ σαφῶς, ὡς ἢ τῶν ἐγκακῶν αἰμάτων 

τιμωρῶς δίκη ἐπίσκοπος νόμω χρῆται τῷ νῦν δὴ 

λεχθέντι καὶ ἔταξεν ἄρα δράσαστι τοῖς τοιοῦτον 

παθεῖν ταῦτα ἀναγκαῖος ἀπερ ἔδρασεν· εἰ πατέρα 

ἀπέκτεινε ποτέ τις, αὐτὸν τοῦτο ὑπὸ τέκνων 

τολμῆσαι βίᾳ πάσχοντα ἐν τισὶ χρόνοις, καὶ 1

1 καὶ: κἂν MSS.
of the State shall drag him in the direction of the
tomb of the dead man to a spot from which he
can see the tomb, and there scourge him with as
many stripes as the prosecutor shall prescribe; and
if the murderer be still alive after the beating, he
shall put him to death. And if a man kill a slave
when he is doing no wrong, actuated by fear lest
the slave should expose his own foul and evil deeds,
or for any other such reason, just as he would have
been liable to a charge of murder for slaying a
citizen, so likewise he shall be liable in the same
way for the death of such a slave.

Should cases occur of a kind for which it is a formid-
able and most unwelcome task to legislate, and yet
impossible not to legislate,—such as murders of kins-
folk, either by a man's own hand or by plotting, which
are wholly wilful and wicked,—crimes that occur for
the most part in States with bad organisation and
nurture, but may occur at times even in a country
where one would not expect them,—we must again
recite the story we uttered\(^1\) a moment ago, if
haply anyone, on hearing us, may become more
strongly disposed in consequence voluntarily to
abstain from murders of the most impious kind.
The myth or story (or whatever one should call it)
has been clearly stated, as derived from ancient
priests, to the effect that Justice, the avenger of
kindred blood, acting as overseer, employs the law
just mentioned, and has ordained that the doer of
such a deed must of necessity suffer the same as
he has done: if ever a man has slain his father,
he must endure to suffer the same violent fate at
his own children's hands in days to come; or if he

\(^1\) 870 D, E.
εἰ μητέρα, γενέσθαι τε αύτῶν θηλείας μετασχόντα
φύσεως ἀναγκαῖον γενόμενον τε ὑπὸ τῶν γεννη-
θέντων λιπείν τῶν βίων ἐν χρόνοις ὑστέροις· τοῦ
γὰρ κοινὸν μιανθέντος αἵματος οὐκ εἶναι κάθαρσιν
ἀλλην, οὔδε ἐκπλευτὸν ἐθέλειν γίγνεσθαι τὸ μι-
873 ανθέν πρὶν φόνῳ φόνῳ ὁμοίῳ ὁμοίῳ ἡ δράσασα
ψυχῇ τίσῃ καὶ πάσης τῆς ξυγγενείας τῶν θυμῶν
ἀφιλασαμένη κοιμίσῃ. ταῦτα δὴ παρὰ θεῶν μὲν
τινα φοβοῦμεν τὰς τιμωρίας εἰργασθαι χρη τὰς
τοιαύτας· εἰ δὲ τινὰς υότως ἀθλία ξυμφορὰ
καταλάβοι, ὡστε πατρὸς ἢ μητρὸς ἢ ἀδελφῶν
ἡ τέκνων ἐκ προνοίας ἐκουσίως ψυχὴν τομὴ-
σαι ἀποστείρειν σῶματος, οὐ παρὰ τοῦ θυητοῦ
νομοθέτου νόμος ὑδε περὶ τῶν τοιούτων νομοθετεῖ,
B προρήσεις μὲν τὰς περὶ τῶν νομίμων εἰργασθαι
καὶ ἐγγύας τὰς αὐτὰς εἶναι, καθάπερ ἐρήμηθη
τοῖς ἐμπροσθεν, ἐὰν δὲ τις ὄφλη φόνου τοιούτου
τούτων κτείνας τινά, οἱ μὲν τῶν δικαστῶν ὑπηρε-
tαι καὶ ἀρχοντες ἀποκτείναντες εἰς τεταγμένην
τρίοδον ἐξο τῆς πόλεως ἐκβαλλόντων γυμνῶν, αἰ
δὲ ἄρχαι πᾶσαι ὑπὲρ ὅλης τῆς πόλεως, λίθον
ἐκαστος φέρων, ἐπὶ τὴν κεφαλὴν τοῦ νεκροῦ
βάλλων ἀφοσιώτω τῆς πόλεως ὅλην, μετὰ δὲ
τούτο εἰς τὰ τῆς χώρας ὀρία φέροντες ἐκβαλ-
C λόντων τὸ νόμῳ ἀταφοῦ. τὸν δὲ δὴ πάντων
οἰκειότατον καὶ λεγόμενον φίλτατον ὅς ἂν ἀπο-
κτείνῃ, τί χρὴ πάσχειν; λέγω δὲ ὅσ ᾗ ἂν ἐαυτὸν
κτείνῃ, τὴν τῆς εἰμαρμένης βία ἀποστερῶν μοῖραν,
μῆτε πόλεως ταξίσης δίκη, μῆτε περιωδύνω
264
has slain his mother, he must of necessity come to birth sharing in the female nature, and when thus born be removed from life by the hands of his offspring in afterdays; for of the pollution of common blood there is no other purification, nor does the stain of pollution admit of being washed off before the soul which committed the act pays back murder for murder, like for like, and thus by propitiation lays to rest the wrath of all the kindred. Wherefore, in dread of such vengeances from Heaven a man should refrain himself; if, however, any should be overtaken by a disaster so lamentable that they have the audacity deliberately and of free will to reave soul from body for father, mother, brethren or children, in such cases the ordinance of the law of the mortal lawgiver stands thus:—The warnings of exclusion from customary places, and the sureties, are the same as those prescribed for former cases; and if any man be convicted of such a murder, and of having slain any of the persons named, the officers of the judges and magistrates shall kill him and cast him out naked at an appointed cross-roads outside the city; and all the magistrates, acting on behalf of the whole State, shall take each a stone and cast it on the head of the corpse, and thus make atonement for the whole State; and after this they shall carry the corpse to the borders of the land and cast it out unburied, according to law.

Now he that slays the person who is, as men say, nearest and dearest of all,—what penalty should he suffer? I mean the man that slays himself,—violently robbing himself of his Fate-given share of life, when this is not legally ordered by the State, and when he is not compelled to it by the occurrence of some intoler-
ἀφύκτω προσπεσούση τούχη ἀναγκασθείς, μηδὲ αἰσχύνης τινὸς ἀπόρου καὶ ἀβίον μεταλαχῶν, ἀργία δὲ καὶ ἀνανδρίας δειλία ἑαυτῷ δίκην ἀδίκουν ἐπιθῆ. τούτῳ δὴ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα θεὸς οἶδεν ἄ χρῆν

D νόμιμα γίγνεσθαι περὶ καθαρμοὺς τε καὶ ταφάς, ὥν ἐξηγητάς τε ἀμα καὶ τοὺς περὶ ταύτα νόμους ἐπανερμένους χρῆ τοὺς ἐγγύτατα γένει ποιεῖν αὐτοῖς κατὰ τὰ προστατόμενα: τάφους δ' εἶναι τοῖς οὕτω φθαρεῖσι πρῶτον μὲν κατὰ μόνας μηδὲ μεθ' ἐνὸς ξυντάφου, εἶτα ἐν τοῖς τῶν δῶδεκα ὀρίζοισι μερῶν τῶν ὁσα ἀργὰ καὶ ἀνώνυμα, θάπτειν ἀκλεεῖς αὐτούς, μήτε στίλλαις μήτε ὑνόμασι δηλοῦντας τοὺς τάφους.

'Εὰν δ' ἀρα ὑποξύγιον ἢ ξῶνον ἀλλο τι φονεύσῃ

Ε τινὰ, πλὴν τῶν ὁσα ἐν ἀγῶνι τῶν δημοσίᾳ τιθεμένων ἀθλεύοντα τι τοιοῦτον ὅρας, ἐπεξίτωσαν μὲν οἱ προσήκοντες τοῦ φόνου τῳ κτείναντι, διαδικαζόντων δὲ τῶν ἀγρονόμων οἰσιν ἃν καὶ ὑπόσοις προστάξη ὁ προσήκων, τὸ δὲ ὄφλον ἔξω τῶν ὅρων τῆς χώρας ἀποκτείναντας διορίσαι. εὰν δὲ ἄψυχον τι ψυχῆς ἀνθρωπὸν στερήσῃ, πλὴν ὁσα κεραυνὸς ἢ τι παρὰ θεοῦ τοιοῦτον βέλος ἰόν, τῶν δὲ ἄλλων ὁσα τινὸς προσπεσόντος, ἢ αὐτὸ ἐμπεσὸν κτείνῃ τινὰ, δι- καστὴν μὲν αὐτῷ καθιζέτω τῶν γειτῶν τῶν 874 ἐγγύτατα ὁ προσήκων γένει, ἀφοσιούμενος ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τε καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς συγγενείας ὀλῆς, τὸ δὲ ὄφλον ἔξοριζειν, καθάπερ ἐρῆθη τὸ τῶν ζῶν ἄνδρον γένος. εὰν δὲ πεθεῦσας μὲν αὐ τίς φανῆ, ἄδηλος δὲ ὁ κτείνας ἢ καὶ μὴ ἀμελῶς ξητούσιν ἀνεύρετος 266
able and inevitable misfortune, nor by falling into some disgrace that is beyond remedy or endurance,—but merely inflicting upon himself this iniquitous penalty owing to sloth and unmanly cowardice. In this case, the rest of the matters—concerning the rules about rites of purification and of burial—come within the cognizance of the god, and regarding these the next of kin must seek information from the interpreters and the laws dealing with these matters, and act in accordance with their instructions: but for those thus destroyed the tombs shall be, first, in an isolated position with not even one adjacent, and, secondly, they shall be buried in those borders of the twelve districts which are barren and nameless, without note, and with neither headstone nor name to indicate the tombs.

If a mule or any other animal murder anyone,—except when they do it when taking part in a public competition,—the relatives shall prosecute the slayer for murder, and so many of the land-stewards as are appointed by the relatives shall decide the case, and the convicted beast they shall kill and cast out beyond the borders of the country. If a lifeless thing rob a man of life—except it be lightning or some bolt from heaven,—if it be anything else than these which kills someone, either through his falling against it or its falling upon him, then the relative shall set the nearest neighbour to pass judgment on it, thus making atonement on behalf of himself and all his kindred, and the thing convicted they shall cast beyond the borders, as was stated in respect of animals.

If anyone be found evidently dead, and if his slayer be unknown and undiscoverable after
γίγνηται, τὰς μὲν προθήκεις τὰς αὐτὰς γίγνεσθαι καθάπερ τοῖς ἄλλοις, προαγορεύειν δὲ τὸν φόνον
Β τῷ δράσαντι καὶ ἐπιδικασάμενον ἐν ἁγορᾷ κηρύξαι τῷ κτείναντι τὸν καὶ τὸν καὶ ὁφληκότι φόνον
μὴ ἐπιβαίνειν ἵερῶν μηδὲ ὅλης χῶρας τῆς τοῦ
παθόντος, ὥς, ἄν φανῇ καὶ γνωσθῇ, ἀποθανοῦ-
μενον καὶ ἐξω τῆς τοῦ παθόντος χῶρας ἐκβλη-
θησόμενον ἀταφον. οὕτως δὴ νόμος εἰς ἡμῖν ἐστω
κυρίως περὶ φόνου κείμενος.
Καὶ τὰ μὲν περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα μέχρι τούτων οὕτως:
ὅν δὲ ὁ κτείνας ἐφ’ οίς τε ὁρθῶς ἄν καθάρος εἴη, τάδ’
ἐστω. νῦκτωρ φῶρα εἰς οἰκίαν εἰσίοντα ἐπὶ κλοπῆ
χρημάτων ἐὰν ἐλὼν κτείνη τις, καθάρος ἐστω.
C καὶ ἐὰν λωποδύτην ἀμνόμενος ἀποκτεῖνη, κα-
θαρὸς ἐστω καὶ ἐὰν ἑλευθέραν γυναῖκα βιάζηται
τις ἡ πάϊδα περὶ τὰ ἀφροδίσια, νηποὺς τεθυνάτω
ὑπὸ τε τοῦ ὑβρισθέντος βία καὶ ὑπὸ πατρὸς ἢ
ἀδελφῶν ἢ νύεων. ἐὰν τε ἀνήρ ἐπιτύχῃ γαμετῇ
γυναικὶ βιαζομένῃ, κτείνας τὸν βιαζόμενον ἐστω
καθάρος ἐν τῷ νόμῳ. καὶ ἐὰν τις πατρὶ βοηθῶν
θάνατον, μηδὲν ἁνόσιον δρώντι, κτείνη τινά, ἢ
μητρὶ ἢ τέκνους ἢ ἀδελφοῖς ἢ ἐγγυγεννητοῖ
D τέκνων, πάντως καθαρὸς ἐστω.
Τὰ μὲν τοίνυν περὶ τροφῆν τε ζώσης ψυχῆς
cαι παιδείαν, ὃν αὐτή τυχούσῃ μὲν βιωτόν,
ἀτυχησάγη δὲ τούναντιον, καὶ περὶ θανάτων τῶν
βιαίων ἀς δὲι τιμωρίας γίγνεσθαι, νεομοθετήσθω-
tα δὲ περὶ τὴν τῶν σωμάτων τροφῆν μὲν καὶ
268
careful search, then the warnings shall be the same as in the other cases, including the warning of death to the doer of the deed, and the prosecutor, when he has proved his claim, shall give public warning in the market-place to the slayer of So-and-so, convicted of murder, not to set foot in holy places nor anywhere in the country of the victim, since, if he appears and is known, he shall be put to death and be cast out from the country of the victim without burial. So let this stand as one section of our code of law dealing with murder.

Thus far we have dealt with crimes of the kind described; in what follows we shall describe the cases and the circumstances under which the slayer will rightly be pronounced guiltless. If a man catch and slay a thief who is entering his house by night to steal goods, he shall be guiltless; and if a man in self-defence slay a footpad, he shall be guiltless. The man who forcibly violates a free woman or boy shall be slain with impunity by the person thus violently outraged, or by his father or brother or sons. And should a man discover his wedded wife being violated, if he kills the violator he shall be guiltless before the law. And if a man slay anyone when warding off death from his father (when he is doing no wrong), or from his mother or children or brethren, or from the mother of his own children, he shall be wholly guiltless.

Thus let it be laid down by law respecting the nurture and training of living souls,—which when gained make life livable, but when missed, unlivable,—and respecting the punishments which ought to be imposed in cases of violent death. The regulations regarding the nurture and training of the body
παιδείαν εἰρηταί, τὸ δ’ ἐχόμενον τούτων, αἱ βδαιοὶ πράξεις ὑπ’ ἀλλήλων ἀκούσιοί τε καὶ ἐκούσιοι γιγνόμεναι διοριστέον εἰς δύναμιν αἱ τε εἰσι καὶ Ἐδοσαί, καὶ ἃν ἂν τυγχάνουσαι τιμωρήσεων τὸ πρόσφορον ἔχοιεν ἂν ἐκασταί: ταῦτα μετ’ ἐκείνα, ὡς ἐσικει, ὀρθῶς ἂν νομοθετοῖς.

Τραύματα δὴ καὶ πηρώσεις ἐκ τραυμάτων τὰ γε δεύτερα μετὰ θανάτους καὶ ὁ φαινότατος ἂν τάξειε τῶν ἐπὶ νόμων τρεπομένων <τάξιν>.1 τὰ δὴ τραύματα, καθάπερ οἱ φόνοι διήρητον, διαιρέτεον, τὰ μὲν ἀκούσια, τὰ δὲ θυμῷ, τὰ δὲ φόβῳ, τὰ δὲ ὀπόσα ἐκ προνοίας ἐκούσια ξυμβαίνει γιγνόμενα. προρη-

tέον δὴ τι περὶ πάντων τῶν τοιούτων τοιόνδε, ὡς ἀρα νόμους ἀνθρώπως ἀναγκαῖον τῖθεσθαι καὶ
ξὴν κατὰ νόμους, ἣ μηδὲν διαφέρειν τῶν πάντη

875 ἀγριωτάτων θηρίων. ἢ δὲ αἰτία τούτων ἡδε, ὅτι
φύσεις ἀνθρώπων οὐδενὸς ἰκανή φύτευαι ὡστε
γνῶναι τε τὰ συμφέροντα ἀνθρώπως εἰς πολι-
tείαν καὶ γνῶσα τὸ βέλτιστον ἀεὶ δύνασθαι τε καὶ ἐθέλειν πράττειν. γνῶναι μὲν γὰρ πρῶτον
χαλεπὸν ὅτι πολιτικὴ καὶ ἄλληθε τέχνη ὡς τὸ
ἴδιον ἀλλὰ τὸ κοινὸν ἀνάγκη μέλειν—τὸ μὲν γὰρ
κοινὸν ξυνδεῖ, τὸ δὲ ἱδίον διασπᾶ τὰς πόλεις—καὶ
ὅτι ξυμφερεῖ τῷ κοινῷ τε καὶ ἱδίῳ, τοῖς ἀμφότεροι,
ἡν τὸ κοινὸν τιθῆται καλῶς μᾶλλον ἡ τὸ ἱδίον.

Β δεύτερον δὲ, ἐὰν ἀρα καὶ τὸ γρῶναι τις ὅτι ταῦτα
οὔτω πέφυκε λάβῃ ἰκανὸς ἐν τέχνῃ, μετὰ δὲ
τούτῳ ἀνυπεύθυνος τε καὶ αὐτοκράτωρ ἄρξῃ
πόλεως, οὐκ ἂν ποτὲ δύνατο ἐμμείναι τούτῳ τῷ
dόγματι καὶ διαβιῶναι τὸ μὲν κοινὸν ἡγούμενον

1 νόμων . . . <τάξιν>: νόμων MSS.: νόμων Zur., vulg.
(Winckelmann adds τάξιν before τρεπομένων).

270
have been stated: but what comes next, namely, violent actions, both voluntary and involuntary, done by one against another,—these we must define as clearly as we can, stating their character and number and what punishment each duly deserves: such enactments, as it seems, will rightly follow on the foregoing.

Next in order after cases of death even the least competent of those who essay legislation would place cases of wounds and maiming. Wounds, just like murders, must be classed under several heads,—the involuntary, those done in passion, those done in fear, and all those that are voluntary and deliberate. Concerning all such cases we must make a prefatory pronouncement to this effect:—It is really necessary for men to make themselves laws and to live according to laws, or else to differ not at all from the most savage of beasts. The reason thereof is this,—that no man's nature is naturally able both to perceive what is of benefit to the civic life of men and, perceiving it, to be alike able and willing to practise what is best. For, in the first place, it is difficult to perceive that a true civic art necessarily cares for the public, not the private, interest,—for the public interest bind States together, whereas the private interest rends them asunder,—and to perceive also that it benefits both public and private interests alike when the public interest, rather than the private, is well enacted. And, secondly, even if a man fully grasps the truth of this as a principle of art, should he afterwards get control of the State and become an irresponsible autocrat, he would never prove able to abide by this view and to continue always fostering

1 813 Diff.
τρέφων ἐν τῇ πόλει, τὸ δὲ ἴδιον ἐπόμενον τῷ κοινῷ, ἀλλὰ ἐπὶ πλεονεξίαν καὶ ἴδιοπραγίαν ἢ θνητῇ φύσις αὐτῶν ὀρμήσει ἀεὶ, φεύγουσα μὲν C ἀλόγως τὴν λύπην, διώκουσα δὲ τὴν ἠδονὴν, τοῦ δὲ δικαιοτέρου τε καὶ ἀμείνονος ἐπὶ προσθεν ἀμφοθέρων προστήσει, καὶ σκότος ἀπεργαζομένη ἐν αὐτῇ πάντων κακῶν ἐμπλῆσε πρὸς τὸ τέλος αὐτῆς τε καὶ τῆς πόλεως ὅλην· ἐπεὶ ταῦτα εὖ ποτὲ τις ἀνθρώπων φύσει ἰκανός, θεία μοῖρα γεννηθεῖς, παραλαβεῖν δυνατὸς εἰς, νόμων οὐδὲν ἀν δέοιτο τῶν ἀρξὸντων ἑαυτοῦ ἐπιστήμης γὰρ οὔτε νόμος οὔτε τάξις οὐδεμία κράττων, οὐδὲ θέμις ἐστὶ νοῦν οὐδενὸς ὑπήκουν οὐδὲ δοῦλον ἀλλὰ πάντων

D ἀρχοντα εἶναι, ἐάνπερ ἀληθινὸς ἐλεύθερός ἐστιν ὑπὸ τοῦ ἢ κατὰ φύσιν. νῦν δὲ—οὐ γὰρ ἐστὶν οὐδαμον οὐδαμῶς, ἀλλὰ ἢ κατὰ βραχὺ· διὸ δὴ τὸ δεύτερον αἱρετέον, τάξιν τε καὶ νόμον, ἃ δὴ τὸ μεν ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ ὀρᾶ καὶ βλέπει, τὸ δ' ἐπὶ πάν ἀδύνατε. ταῦτα δὴ τῶν δε εἶναι εἰρηται νῦν ἥμεις τάξιμεν τι χρῆ τοῦ τρῶσαντα ἢ τι βλάψαντα ἐπερ άλλων παθεῖν ἢ ἀποτίνειν. πρόχειρον δὴ παντὶ περὶ παντὸς ὑπολαβεῖν όρθῶς, Τὸν τι

E τρῶσαντα ἢ τίνα ἢ πῶς ἢ ποτὲ λέγεις; μυρία γὰρ ἐκαστά ἐστι τοῦτων καὶ πάμπολυ διαφέροντα ἀλλήλων. ταῦτ' οὖν δὴ δικαστηρίως ἐπιτρέπειν κρίνειν πάντα ἢ μηδὲν ἀδύνατον. ἐν μὲν γὰρ κατὰ πάντων ἀναγκαῖον ἐπιτρέπειν κρῖναι, τὸ

the public interest in the State as the object of first importance, to which the private interest is but secondary; rather, his mortal nature will always urge him on to grasping and self-interested action, irrationally avoiding pain and pursuing pleasure; both these objects it will prefer above justice and goodness, and by causing darkness within itself it will fill to the uttermost both itself and the whole State with all manner of evils. Yet if ever there should arise a man competent by nature and by a birthright of divine grace to assume such an office, he would have no need of rulers over him; for no law or ordinance is mightier than Knowledge, nor is it right for Reason to be subject or in thrall to anything, but to be lord of all things, if it is really true to its name and free in its inner nature. But at present such a nature exists nowhere at all, except in small degree; wherefore we must choose what is second best, namely, ordinance and law, which see and discern the general principle, but are unable to see every instance in detail.

This declaration has been made for the sake of what follows: now we shall ordain what the man who has wounded, or in some way injured, another must suffer or pay. And here, of course, it is open to anyone, in regard to any case, to interrupt us, and quite properly, with the question — "What wounds has the man you speak of inflicted, and on whom, and how and when? For cases of wounding are countless in their variety, and they differ vastly from one another." So it is impossible for us either to commit all these cases to the law courts for trial, or to commit none of them. Yet in regard to them all there is one point that we must of necessity commit for decision,—the question of
πότερον ἐγενετο ᾗ οὐκ ἐγένετο ἐκαστὸν τούτων. 876 τὸ δὲ μηδὲν ἐπιτρέπειν αὖ περὶ τοῦ τί δεὶ ξημιοῦσθαι καὶ πᾶσχειν τῷ χρεῶν τῶν ἀδικήσαντα τούτων τί, ἀλλ᾽ αὐτὸν περὶ πάντων νομοθετήσαι σμικρῶν καὶ μεγάλων, σχεδὸν ἀδύνατον.

κα. Τῆς οὖν ὁ μετὰ τοῦτον λόγος;

ἀθ. "Οδε, ὅτι τὰ μὲν ἐπιτρεπτεόν δικαστήριοις, τὰ δὲ οὐκ ἐπιτρεπτεόν, ἀλλ᾽ αὐτῷ νομοθετητέον."

κα. Ποία δὴ νομοθετήτεον τε καὶ ποίαι ἀποδοτέον κρίνειν τοῖς δικαστήριοις;

ἀθ. Τάδε δὴ μετὰ ταῦτα ὀρθότατ᾽ ἀν εἰπεῖν Βειη, ὡς εὖ πόλει ἐν ᾗ δικαστήρια φαιλα καὶ ἀφωνα κλέπτοντα τὰς αὐτῶν δόξας κρύβδην τᾶς κρίσεις διαδικάζει, καὶ ὁ τούτον δεινότερον, ὅταν μηδὲ σιγῶντα ἀλλὰ θορύβον μεστὰ, καθάπερ θέατρα, ἐπαινοῦντα τε βοῆ καὶ ψέγοντα τῶν ῥητόρων ἐκάτερον ἐν μέρει κρίνη, χαλεπῶν τότε πάθος ὦλη τῇ πόλει γίγνεσθαι φιλεῖ. τοῖς οὖν δὴ τοιούτοις δικαστήριοις νομοθετεῖν ύπὸ τίνος ἀνάγκης ληφθέντα οὐκ εὐνυχές μὲν, ὅμος δὲ ἡξ ἀνάγκης εἰλήμμενον ὅτι περὶ σμικρότατα ἐπιτρέπειν τὰ πεῖν αὐτοῖς τάττειν τὰς ζημίας, τὰ δὲ πλεῖστα αὐτῶν νομοθετεῖν διαφρήδην, ἂν τις ἄρα τοιαύτη πολιτεία νομοθετὴ ποτὲ. ἐν ᾗ δὲ ἀν πόλει δικαστήρια εἰς δύναμιν ὀρθῶσ καθεστώτα ἡ τραφεντῶν τε εὐ τῶν μελλόντων δικάζειν δοκιμασθέντων τε διὰ πάσης ἀκριβείας, ἐνταῦθα ὀρθῶν καὶ ἔχουν εὐ καὶ καλῶς τὰ πολλὰ ἐπιτρέπειν κρίνειν τοῖς τοιούτοις δικασταῖς τῶν ὁφλόντων πέρι, τί χρῆ
fact, whether or not each of the alleged acts took place; and it is practically impossible for the lawgiver to refuse in all cases to commit to the courts the question regarding the proper penalty or fine to be inflicted on the culprit, and himself to pass laws respecting all such cases, great and small.

CLIN. What, then, is to be our next statement?

ATH. This,—that some matters are to be committed to the courts, while others are not to be so committed, but enacted by the lawgiver.

CLIN. What are the matters to be enacted, and what are to be handed over to the law courts for decision?

ATH. It will be best to make the following statement next,—that in a State where the courts are poor and dumb and decide their cases privily, secret- ing their own opinions, or (and this is a still more dangerous practice) when they make their decisions not silently but filled with tumult, like theatres, roaring out praise or blame of each speaker in turn,—then the whole State, as a rule, is faced with a difficult situation. To be compelled by some necessity to legislate for law courts of this kind is no happy task; but when one is so compelled, one must commit to them the right of fixing penalties only in a very few cases, dealing oneself with most cases by express legislation—if indeed one ever legislates at all for a State of that description. On the other hand, in a State where the courts have the best possible constitution, and the prospective judges are well-trained and tested most strictly, there it is right, and most fitting and proper, that we should commit to such judges for decision most of the questions regarding what penalties convicted criminals should
πάςχειν αὐτοὺς ἢ ἀποτίνειν. ἢμῖν δὴ τὰ νῦν

Δ ἀνεμέσθην τὸ μῆ νομοθετεῖν αὐτοῖς τὰ μέγιστα καὶ πλείστα, ἀ καὶ φαντοτέρως ἀν ἐπεαίδευ-

μένοι δικασταὶ δύναιντο κατιδεῖν καὶ προσάπτειν ἐκάστῳ τῶν ἀμαρτημάτων τὴν ἄξιαν τοῦ πάθους

τε καὶ πράξεως ἑπειδὴ δὲ ὦτι ἡμεῖς νομοθετοῦμεν,

οὐχ ἤκιστα ἐμμελείς αὐτοὺς οἰόμεθ' ἂν τὸν

τοιοῦτον γέγρεσθαι κριτάς, ἐπιτρέπτεόν δὴ τὰ

πλείστα. οὐ μὴν ἀλλ' ὅπερ πολλάκις εἰπομεν

τε καὶ ἐδράσαμεν ἐν τῇ τῶν ἐμπροσθεν νομο-

Ε βεβήσει νομων, τὸ περιγραφὴν τε καὶ τοὺς τύπους

tῶν τιμωριῶν εἰπόντας δοῦνα τὰ παραδείγματα

tοῦ δικασταὶ τοῦ μήποτε βαίνειν ἔξω τῆς

dίκης, τότε τε ἢν ὀρθότατα ἔχουν καὶ δὴ καὶ νῦν

tούτ' αὐτὸ ποιητέον, ἐπανελθόντας ἡδὴ πάλιν

ἐπὶ τοὺς νόμους.

Ἐ ἢ γραφὴ περὶ τραύματος ὅτε ἢμῖν κείσθω.

ἐάν τις διανοηθεῖς τῇ βουλήσει κτεῖναι τινα

φίλον, πλὴν ὅπερ ἦν τό νόμος ἐφίησι, τρώσῃ μὲν,

ἀποκτεῖναι δὲ ἀδυνατήσῃ, τὸν διανοηθέντα τε

καὶ τρώσαντα οὕτως οὐκ ἄξιον ἔλεεῖν, οὐδὲ

αἰδούμενον ἄλλως ἢ καθάπερ ἀποκτείναντα

ὑπέχειν τῆς δίκης φόνον ἀναγκάζειν τὴν δὲ

οὐ παντάπασι κακὴν τής νυχιν αὐτοῦ σεβόμενον καὶ

tὸν δαιμόνα, ὃς αὐτοὶ καὶ τὸν τρωθέντα ἐλεήσας

ἀπότροπος αὐτοῖς ἐγένετο μὴ τῷ μὲν ἀνίατον

ἐλκος γενέσθαι, τῷ δὲ ἐπάρατον τῆς ἡμώ

καὶ ἐξιμφορία, τοῦτο δὴ χάριν τῷ δαιμόνι διδόντα

καὶ μὴ ἐναντιούμενον τὸν μὲν θάνατον ἀφελείν

tὸν τρώσαντος, μετάστασιν δὲ εἰς τινα

1 eis τινα H. Richards : eis τὴν MSS., edd.

1 Cp. 770 B, 846 B, C.
suffer or pay. On the present occasion we may well be pardoned if we refrain from ordaining for them by law the points that are most important and most numerous, which even ill-educated judges could discern, and could assign to each offence the penalty merited by the wrong as suffered and committed; and seeing that the people for whom we are legislating are themselves likely, as we suppose, to become not the least capable of judges of such matters, we must commit most of them to them. None the less, that course which we frequently adopted when laying down our former laws, both by word and action—when we stated an outline and typical cases of punishments, and gave the judges examples, so as to prevent their ever overstepping the bounds of justice,—that course was a perfectly right one then, and now also we ought to adopt it, when we return again at last to the task of legislation.

So let our written law concerning wounding run thus:—If any man purposing of intent to kill a friendly person—save such as the law sends him against,—wounds him, but is unable to kill him, he that has thus purposed and dealt the wound does not deserve to be pitied; rather he is to be regarded exactly as a slayer, and must be compelled to submit to trial for murder; yet out of respect for his escape from sheer ill-fortune and for his Genius—who in pity alike for him and for the wounded man saved the wound of the one from proving fatal and the fortune and crime of the other from proving accursed,—in gratitude to this Genius, and in compliance therewith, the wounder shall be relieved of the death-penalty, but

2 For "daemon" in this sense of "tutelary Genius" or "Guardian-angel," cp. 732 C, Rep. 619 D, E.
ΠŁATO

Β πόλιν αὐτῷ γίγνεσθαι διὰ βίου, καρπούμενον ἀπασαν τὴν αὐτοῦ κτήσιν. Βλάβος δὲ, εἰ κατέ-
βλαψε τὸν τρωθέντα, ἐκτίνειν τῷ βλαφθέντι-
tιμᾶν δὲ τὸ δικαστήριον ὅπερ ἂν τὴν δίκην κρίνῃ-
κρίνειν δὲ οἴτερ ἂν τοῦ φόνου ἐδίκασαν, εἰ ἔτε-
λεύτησεν ἐκ τῆς πληγῆς τοῦ τραύματος.

Γονέας δ’ ἂν παῖς ἢ δοῦλος δεσπότην ὁσαύτως ἐκ-
προνοίας τρώσῃ, θάνατον εἶναι τὴν ξημίαν. καὶ ἐὰν-
ἀδελφὸς ἀδελφὸν ἢ ἄνευ θυγα-
tέρες αὐτοῖς ὡς παῖδες ἔτι, τοὺς ἐπιτρόπους
ἐπιτροπεύειν καὶ ὡς ὅφανῶν τῶν παίδων ἐπι-
μελεῖσθαι, ἐὰν δὲ ἄνδρα ἑαυτῆς ἐξ ἐπιθυμής τοῦ ἀποκτεῖναι
τρώσασα, ἢ ἀνήρ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ γυναίκα, φευγέτω
ἀειφυγίαν τὴν δὲ κτίσιν, ἐὰν μὲν υἱεῖς ἢ θυγα-
tέρες αὐτοῖς ὡς παῖδες ἔτι, τοὺς ἐπιτρόπους
ἐπιτροπεύειν καὶ ὡς ὅφανῶν τῶν παίδων ἐπι-
μελεῖσθαι, ἐὰν δὲ ἄνδρα ἑδή, ἐπάναγκες ἐστο
τρέφοντα τὸν φέουντα ὑπὸ τῶν ἐκγόνων, τὴν
δὲ οὐσίαν [ἐὰν] αὐτοὺς κεκτήσατε. ἀπαίς δὲ
ὕστις ἂν τοιαύταις ξυμβοραῖς περιπέσῃ, τοὺς

Συγγενεῖς συνελθόντας μέχρι ἀνεψιῶν παίδων
tοῦ πεθευοῦντος ἀμφοτέρωθεν, πρὸς τε ἄνδρῶν
cαὶ πρὸς γυναικῶν, κληρονομὸν εἰς τῶν ὀικῶν
tοῦτον τῇ πόλει τετταρακοῦντα καὶ πεντάκισιχλιοσ-
tον καταστήσαντα βουλευομένους μετὰ νομοφυ-
λάκων καὶ ἱερέων, διανοηθέντας τρόπου καὶ λόγῳ
tοιωθέ, ὡς οὐδεὶς οἰκὼς τῶν τετταράκοντα καὶ
πεντακισχιλίων τοῦ ἐνοικοῦντός ἐστιν οὐδὲ ἐξυμ-
pαντός τοῦ γένους οὐτός ὡς τῆς πόλεως δημόσιος

Τε καὶ ἰδίος. δεῖ δὴ τὴν γε πόλιν τὸν αὐτῆς
οἴκους ὡς ὀσιωτάτους τε καὶ ἐντυχεστάτους
κεκτήσατε κατὰ δύναμιν. ὅταν οὖν τῆς ἂμα

278
shall be deported for life to a neighbouring State, enjoying the fruits of all his own possessions. If he has done damage to the wounded man, he shall pay for it in full to him that is damaged; and the damage shall be assessed by the court which decides the case, which court shall consist of those who would have tried the culprit for murder if the man had died of the wound he received.

If in like manner, deliberately, a son wound his parents or a slave his master, death shall be the penalty; and if a brother wound in like manner a brother or sister, or a sister wound a brother or sister, and be convicted of wounding deliberately, death shall be the penalty. A wife that has wounded her husband, or a husband his wife, with intent to kill, shall be exiled for life: if they have sons or daughters who are still children, the guardians shall administer their property, and shall take charge of the children as orphans; but if they be already grown men, the offspring shall be compelled to support their exiled parent, and they shall possess his property. If any person overtaken by such a disaster be childless, the kinsfolk on both sides, both male and female, as far as cousins’ children, shall meet together and appoint an heir for the house in question—the 5040th in the State,—taking counsel with the Law-wardens and priests; and they shall bear in mind this principle, that no house of the 5040 belongs as much, either by private or public right, to the occupier or to the whole of his kindred as it belongs to the State; and the State must needs keep its own houses as holy and happy as possible. Therefore, whenever any house is at once

1 ἄνδρες ἀνή, Jernstedt, England: ἄνδρες, μη MSS.
δυστυχήσῃ 1 καὶ ἀσεβηθῇ τῶν οίκων, ὡστε τόν
κεκτημένον ἐν αὐτῷ παῖδας μὲν μὴ καταλιπεῖν,
ἡθεον δὲ ἥ καὶ γεγαμηκότα ἀπαίδα τελευτήσαι
φόνου ὠφλόντα ἐκουσίον ἢ τινος ἀμαρτήματος
άλλου τῶν περὶ θεοῦ ἢ πολίτας, δὲν ἂν θάνατος
ἐν τῷ νόμῳ ξημία διαρρήδην ἢ κειμένη, ἢ καὶ ἐν
ἀειφυγία τις φεύγῃ τῶν ἀνδρῶν ἄπαις, τοῦτον
πρῶτον μὲν καθήρασθαι καὶ ἀποδιοσπομίσασθαι
tὸν οίκον χρεῶν ἔστω κατὰ νόμον, ἔπειτα συνελ-
878 θόντας, καθάπερ εἴπομεν νῦν δῆ, τοὺς οἰκεῖους ἁμα
νομοφύλαξι σκέψασθαι γένος ὃ τι περὶ ἄν ἃ τῶν
ἐν τῇ πόλει εὐδοκιμώτατον πρὸς ἄρετήν καὶ ἁμα
εὔτυχες, ἐν ὥ ἂν παῖδες γεγονότες ὅσι πλείους·
ointments ἐνα τῷ τοῦ τελευτήσαντος πατρὶ καὶ τοῖς
ἄνω τοῦ γένους ύπὸ ὡς ἐκείνων εἰσποιοῦντας,
φημῆς ἕνεκα ἐπονομάζοντας, γεννήτορά τε αὐτοῖς
καὶ ἐστιούχον καὶ θεραπευτὴν ὡσίων τε καὶ ἱερῶν
ἐπ' ἁμείνοις τύχαις γίγνεσθαι τοῦ πατρὸς τούτῳ
Β τῶν τρόπω ἐπευξαμένους αὐτῶν κληρονόμον κατα-
στήσαι κατὰ νόμον, τὸν δ' ἐξαμαρτόντα ἀνώνυ-
μον ἐὰν καὶ ἀπαίδα καὶ ἁμοιρον κεῖσθαι, ὅποταν
αὐτῶν καταλάβωσιν αἰ τοιαῦτα ξυμφοράι.
'Εστὶ δὲ οὐ πάντων, ὡς ἑοικε, τῶν οὐτῶν ὄρος
ὁρῶ προσμυγνύς, ἀλλ' ὦς ἐστὶ μεθόριον, τοῦτο ἐν
μέσῳ ὄρων προτείνων 2 ἐκατέρῳ προσβάλλον
γίγνοιτ' ἂν ἁμφότερον μεταξὺ, καὶ δὴ καὶ τῶν
ἀκουσίων τε καὶ ἐκουσίων τὸ θυμὸ γυγνόμενον

1 δυστυχήσῃ H. Richards; δυστυχηθῇ MSS.
2 προτείνων: πρότερον MSS., edd.
unhappy and unholy, in that the owner thereof leaves no children, but—being either unmarried or, though married, childless—dies, after having been convicted of wilful murder or of some other offence against gods or citizens for which death is the penalty expressly laid down in the law; or else if any man who is without male issue be exiled for life;—then they shall be in duty bound, in the first place, to make purifications and expiations for this house, and, in the next place, the relatives, as we said just now, must meet together and in consultation with the Law-wardens consider what family there is in the State which is pre-eminent for goodness, and prosperous withal, and containing several children. Then from the family selected they shall adopt one child on behalf of the dead man's father and ancestors to be a son of theirs, and they shall name him after one of them, for the sake of the omen—with a prayer that in this wise he may prove to them a begetter of offspring, a hearth-master and a minister in holy and sacred things, and be blest with happier fortune than his (official) father; him they shall thus establish legally as lot-holder, and the offender they shall suffer to lie nameless and childless and portionless, whenever such calamities overtake him.

It is not the fact, as it would seem, that in the case of all objects boundary is contiguous with boundary; but where there is a neutral strip, which lies between the two boundaries, impinging on each, it will be midway between both. And that is precisely the description we gave\(^1\) of the passionate action as one which lies midway between in-

\(^1\) S67 A.
εφαμεν είναι τοιούτον. τραυμάτων οὖν έστω τών ὁργῆς γενομένων ἡν ὄφλη τις, πρῶτον μὲν τίνειν
C τού βλάβοις τήν διπλασίαν, ἀν τὸ τραύμα ἱάσιμον ἀποβη, τῶν δὲ ἀνιμάτων τήν τετραπλασίαν. εἰν δὲ ἱάσιμον μὲν, αἰσχύνην δὲ μεγάλην τινὰ προσβάλλῃ τῷ πρωθέτη καὶ ἐπονειδίστουν, τήν τριπλασίαν 2 ἐκτίνειν. ὁσα δὲ τις τρόσας τινὰ μὴ μόνον βλάπτῃ τὸν παθόντα, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν πόλιν, ποιήσας ἀδύνατον τῇ πατρίδι πρὸς πολεμίους βοηθεῖν, τούτον δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ξημιῶν ἐκτίνειν καὶ τῇ πόλει τὴν βλάβην πρὸς γὰρ ταῖς αὐτοῦ στρατείαις καὶ ὑπὲρ τοῦ ἀδυνατοῦντος στρατευεσθεὶ καὶ τὰς ὑπὲρ ἐκείνου πολεμικὰς ταττέσθω τάξεις, ἡ μὴ δρῶν ταῦτα ὑπόδικος τῷ θέλοντι τῆς ἀστρατείας γεγένθη κατὰ νόμον. τὴν δὲ δὴ τῆς βλάβης ἄξιαν, εἴτε διπλὴν εἴτε τριπλὴν εἴτε καὶ τετραπλασίαν, οἱ καταψηφισάμενοι δικασταὶ ταττόνων. εἰν δὲ ὁμόγονος ὁμόγονον τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον τοῦτῳ τρώσῃ, τοὺς γεννήτας καὶ τοὺς συγγενεῖς, μέχρι ἀνεψίων παίδων πρὸς γυναικῶν καὶ ἀνδρῶν, γυναικάς τε
D καὶ ἀνδρας συνελθόντας, κρίναντας παραδιδόναι τιμᾶν τοῖς γεγένθεσι κατὰ φύσιν· εἰν δὲ ἀμφισβητήσιμος ἡ τίμησις γίγνεται, τοὺς πρὸς ἀνδρῶν εἰναι τιμῶντας κυρίους· εἰν δὲ ἀδυνατῶσιν αὐτοῖ, τοῖς νομοφύλαξι τελευτῶντας ἐπιτρέπειν. εκγόνοις δὲ πρὸς γονέας εἰναι τῶν τοιούτων τραυμάτων δικασταὶ μὲν τοὺς ὑπὲρ ἐξήκοντα ἔτη

1 έστω τῶν MSS.: ενεστάτων Zur. vulg.
2 τριπλασίαν Sydenham, Orelli: τετραπλασίαν MSS.
LAWS, BOOK IX

voluntary and voluntary actions. So let the law stand thus respecting woundings committed in anger:—If a person be convicted, in the first place he shall pay double the damage, in case the wound prove to be curable, but four times the damage in case of incurable wounds. And if the wound be curable, but cause great shame and disgrace to the wounded party, the culprit shall pay three times the damage. And if ever a person, in wounding anyone, do damage to the State as well as to the victim, by rendering him incapable of helping his country against its enemies, such a person, in addition to the rest of the damages, shall pay also for the damage done to the State: in addition to his own military service, he shall do service also as a substitute for the incapacitated man, and carry out his military duties in his place, or, if he fails to do so, he shall by law be liable to prosecution for shirking military service, at the hands of anyone who pleases. The due proportion of the damage payable—whether two, three, or four times the actual amount—shall be fixed by the judges who have voted on the case. If a kinsman wound a kinsman in the same way as the person just mentioned, the members of his tribe and kin, both males and females, as far as cousins' children on both the male and female side, shall meet together and, after coming to a decision, shall hand over the case to the natural parents for assessment of the damage; and if the assessment be disputed, the kindred on the male side shall be authorized to make a binding assessment; and if they prove unable to do so, they shall refer the matter finally to the Law-wardens. When woundings of this kind are inflicted by children on parents, the judges shall be, of necessity, men
γεγονότας ἐπάναγκες, οἷς ἂν παιδεῖς μὴ ποιητοῖ ἀληθινοὶ δὲ ὄσιν· ἂν δὲ τις ὀφλη, τιμὰν εἰ τεθνάναι χρὴ τὸν τοιοῦτον εἴτε τι μείζον ἐτερον τούτου πᾶσχειν ἢ καὶ μὴ πολλῷ σμικρότερον· καὶ τῶν ἔννοενῶν τοῦ δράσαντος μηδένα δικάζειν,

879 μὴ δὲ ἂν γεγονὼς ἢ τὸν χρόνον ὅσον ὁ νόμος εἲρηκε. δοῦλος δ' ἂν τις ἐλεύθερον ὀργῇ τρώσῃ, παραδότω τὸν δοῦλον ὁ κεκτημένος τῷ τρωθέντι χρὴσθαι ὃ τι ἂν ἔθέλῃ· ἂν δὲ μὴ παραδίδῃ, αὐτὸς τὴν βλάβην ἐξιάσω. ἂν δὲ ἐκ συνθήκης αἰτιᾶται τοῦ δούλου καὶ τοῦ τρωθέντος μηχανῆν εἶναι τὶς τὸ γεγονός, ἀμφισβητησάτω· ἂν δὲ μὴ ἔλη, τριπλασίαν ἐκτισάτω τὴν βλάβην, ἐλῶν δὲ ἀνδραποδισμοῦ ὑπόδικον ἐχέτω τὸν τεχνάζοντα

Β μετὰ τοῦ δούλου. ὅς δ' ἂν ἄκων ἄλλος ἄλλον τρώσῃ, τὸ βλάβος ἀπλοῦν ἀποτινέτω· τύχης γὰρ νομοθέτης οὐδεὶς ἰκανὸς ἀρχεῖν· δικασταὶ δὲ ὄντων οὖπερ τοὺς ἐκγόνους πρὸς τοὺς γεννήτορας ἐρρήθησαν, καὶ τιμῶντων τὴν ἁξίαν τῆς βλάβης.

Βίαια μὲν δὴ πάνθ' ἢμῖν τὰ προειρήμενα πάθη, βλαιον δὲ καὶ τὸ τῆς αἰκίας πᾶν γένος. ὥδε οὖν χρὴ περὶ τῶν τοιοῦτων πάντα ἀνδρὰ καὶ παῖδα καὶ γυναῖκα ἀεὶ διανοεῖσθαι, τὸ πρεσβύτερον ὡς οὖ σμικρῷ τοῦ νεωτέρου ἐστὶ πρεσβευόμενον ἐν τε θεοῖσι καὶ ἐν ἀνθρώποις τοῖς μέλλουσι σωζέσθαι

C καὶ ἐνδαίμονεῖν. αἰκίαν οὖν περὶ πρεσβύτερον ἐν πόλει γενομένην ὑπὸ νεωτέρου ἰδεῖν αἰσχρόν

284
over sixty years of age who have genuine, and not merely adopted, children of their own; and if a person be convicted, they shall assess the penalty—whether such a person ought to be put to death, or ought to suffer some other punishment still more severe, or possibly a little less severe: but none of the relatives of the culprit shall act as a judge, not even if he be of the full age stated in the law. If a slave wound a free man in rage, his owner shall hand over the slave to the wounded man to be dealt with just as he pleases; and if he do not hand over the slave, he shall himself make good the damage to the full. And if any man alleges that the deed was a trick concocted by the slave in collusion with the wounded party, he shall dispute the case: if he fail to win it, he shall pay three times the damage, but if he win, he shall hold liable for kidnapping the man who contrived the trick in collusion with the slave. Whoever wounds another involuntarily shall pay a single equivalent for the damage (since no lawgiver is able to control fortune), and the judges shall be those designated to act in cases of the wounding of parents by children; and they shall assess the due proportion of damage payable.

All the cases we have now dealt with are of suffering due to violence, and the whole class of cases of "outrage" involve violence. Regarding such cases, the view that should be held by everyone,—man, woman and child,—is this, that the older is greatly more revered than the younger, both among the gods and among those men who propose to keep safe and happy. An outrage perpetrated by a younger against an older person is a shameful thing to see happening in a State, and a thing hateful to God:
καὶ θεομισές· ἐοικε δὲ νέω παντὶ ὑπὸ γέροντος πληγέντι ῥαθύμως ὀργὴν ὑποφέρειν, αὐτῷ τιθεμένω τιμήν ταύτην εἰς γῆρας. ὥσε ὄνω ἐστωπᾶς ἡμῖν αἰδείσθω τὸν ἐαυτὸν πρεσβύτερον ἐρών τε καὶ ἔπει· τὸν δὲ προέχοντα εἰκοσιν ἡλικίας ἔτεσιν, ἀρρήνα ὡθήνυ, νομίζων ὡς πατέρα ἡ μητέρα διειλαβείσθω, καὶ πᾶσης τῆς δυνατῆς

Δ ἡλικίας αὐτὸν φιτύσαι καὶ τεκεῖν ἀπέχοντο ἀεὶ θεῶν γενεθλίων χάριν· ὡς δ' αὐτῶς καὶ ξένου ἀπείργοιτο, εἰτε πάλαι ἐνοικοῦντος εἰτε νεήλυδος ἀφιγμένον· μὴτε γὰρ ὑπάρχων μὴτε ἀμυνόμενος τὸ παράπαν τολμᾶτω πληγαῖς τὸν τοιοῦτον νουθετέων. ξένου δὲ ἀν ἀσελγαίνοντα καὶ θρασυνόμενον, ἐαυτὸν τύπτοντα, οἰηται δείν κολασθήναι, λαβῶν πρὸς τὴν ἀρχὴν τῶν ἀστυνόμων ἀπαγέτων, τοῦ τύπτειν δὲ εἰργέσθω, ἢν πόρρῳ γίγνηται τοῦ

Ε τὸν ἐπιχώριον ἀν τολμῆσαι ποτε πατάξαι. οἱ δ' ἀστυνόμοι παραλαβόντες τε καὶ ἀνακρίναντες, τὸν ἔξεικὸν αὐθεντεύοντες, ἐκεῖ ἄρα ἀδίκως δοκῇ ὁ ξένος τὸν ἐπιχώριον τύπτειν, τῇ μάστιγι τὸν ξένου, ὅσας ἂν αὐτῶς πατάξῃ, τοσαῦτας δόντες τῆς θρασυξείας πανότων· ἐάν δὲ μὴ ἀδική, ἀπειλήσαντες τε καὶ ὀνειδίσαντες τῷ ἀπαγομείνῳ μεθειντων ἀμφότερος· ἡλικίᾳ ἡ ἡλικία ἡ ἠθέταν η ἠθέταν· ἡ τυπτη ἡ τυπτη, ἱέρων τε ἱέρων, καὶ ἠθέταν νέου, ἀμυνόμενος κατὰ φύσιν ἀνεν βέλους ψιλαῖς ταῖς

1 <ἡ> added by Ast, Burges.

---

1 For the respect due to Strangers as a religious duty, cp. 729 E ff.
when a young man is beaten by an old man, it is meet that, in every case, he should quietly endure his anger, and thus store up honour for the time of his own old age. Therefore let the law stand thus:—Everyone shall reverence his elder both by deed and word; whosoever, man or woman, exceeds himself in age by twenty years he shall regard as a father or a mother, and he shall keep his hands off that person, and he shall ever refrain himself, for the sake of the gods of birth, from all the generation of those who are potentially his own bearers and begetters. So likewise he shall keep his hands off a Stranger, be he long resident or newly arrived; neither as aggressor nor in self-defence shall he venture at all to chastise such an one with blows. If he deems that a Stranger has shown outrageous audacity in beating him and needs correction, he shall seize the man and take him before the bench of the city-stewards (but refrain from beating him), so that he may flee the thought of ever daring to strike a native. And the city-stewards shall take over the Stranger and examine him—with due respect for the God of Strangers; and if he really appears to have beaten the native unjustly, they shall give the Stranger as many strokes of the scourge as he himself inflicted, and make him cease from his foreign frowardness; but if he has not acted unjustly, they shall threaten and reprove the man who arrested him, and dismiss them both. If a man of a certain age beat a man of his own age, or one above his own age who is childless,—whether it be a case of an old man beating an old man, or of a young man beating a young man,—the man attacked shall defend himself with bare hands, as nature dictates, and without a weapon.
χερσίν. ο δὲ ὑπὲρ τετταράκοντα γεγονὸς ἐτή ἐὰν τὸλμᾶ τῷ μάχεσθαι εἴτε ἄρχων εἴτε ἀμφιόμενος, ἀγροίκος καὶ ἀνελεύθερος ἄν λεγόμενος ἀνδραπο-
δῶδης τε, δίκης ἂν ἐπονειδίστοι τυγχάνων τὸ πρέπον ἔχοι. καὶ ἐὰν μὲν τις τοιούτοις παραμυ-
θίοις εὐπειθῆς γίγνηται, εὐήνιος ἂν εἰη. ο δὲ δυσπειθῆς καὶ μηδὲν προομίου φροντίζων δέχοιτ' 

B ἂν τὸν τοιόνδε ἐτοίμως νόμον· ἐὰν τις τύπτῃ τὸν πρεσβύτερον εἰκοσιν ἔτεσιν ἢ πλεῖσιν ἑαυτοῦ, 
πρῶτον μὲν ὁ προστυγχάνων, ἐὰν μὴ ἡλιξ μηδὲ 

νεώτερος ἢ [τῶν μαχομένων], 1 διειργέτω ἢ κακὸς 

ἐστώ κατὰ νόμον· ἐὰν δὲ ἐν τῇ τοῦ πληγέντος 

ηλικία ἢ ἐτί νεώτερος, ἀμυνέτω ὡς ἀδελφῷ ἢ πατρί 

ἡ ἐτί ἀνωτέρῳ τῷ ἀδικουμένῳ. πρὸς δ' ἐτί δίκην 

ὑπεχέτω τῆς αἰκίας ὁ τὸν πρεσβύτερον, ὡς εἰρη-

ται, τολμήσας τύπτειν, καὶ ἐὰν ὅφη τὴν δίκην, 

C δεδέσθω μηδὲν ἐναυτοῦ σμικρότερον· ἐὰν δὲ οἱ 

dικασταὶ τιμήσωσι πλείονος, ἔστω κύριος ὁ τιμη-

θεῖς αὐτῷ χρώνος. ἐὰν δὲ ξένος ἢ τῶν μετοικῶν 

τις τύπτῃ τὸν πρεσβύτερον εἰκοσιν ἔτεσιν ἢ 

πλεῖσιν ἑαυτοῦ, περί μὲν τῶν παραγενομένων 

τῆς βοηθείας ὁ αὐτὸς νόμος ἔχετο τὴν αὐτῇ 

dύναμιν, ὁ δὲ τῆς τοιαύτην δίκην ἡττηθεῖς, ξένος 

μὲν ὃν καὶ μὴ ἄνυσικος, δύο ἐτή δεδεμένος ἐκτινέτω 

tαύτῃ τὴν δίκην, ὁ δὲ μετοικὸς τε ὃν καὶ 

ἀπειθῶν τοῖς νόμοις τρία ἐτή δεδέσθω, ἐὰν μὴ 

tὸ δικαστήριον πλείονος αὐτῷ χρώνου τιμήσῃ τὴν 

D δίκην. ξημιούσθω δὲ καὶ ὁ παραγενόμενος ὅτι ὁ 

τούτων καὶ μὴ βοηθήσας κατὰ νόμον, ὁ μὲν μεγίσ-

του τιμήματος ἄν μὴ, δευτέρου δὲ ὧν πεντήκοντα 

1 [τῶν μαχομένων] I bracket.
LAWS, BOOK IX

But if a man over forty ventures to fight, whether as aggressor or in self-defence, he shall be called a knave and a boor, and if he finds himself incurring a degrading sentence, he will be getting his deserts. Any man who lends a ready ear to such exhortations will prove easy to manage; but he that is intractable and pays no regard to the prelude will hearken readily to a law to this effect:—If anyone beats a person who is twenty or more years older than himself, in the first place, whoever comes upon them, if he be neither of equal age nor younger, shall try to separate them, or else be held to be a coward in the eyes of the law; and if he be of a like age with the man assaulted or still younger, he shall defend him who is wronged as he would a brother or a father or a still older progenitor. Further, he that dares to strike the older man in the way described shall be liable also to an action for outrage, and if he be convicted, he shall be imprisoned for not less than a year; and if the judges assess the penalty at a longer period, the period so assessed shall be binding on him. And if a Stranger or a resident alien beat a man older than himself by twenty or more years, the same law regarding help from bystanders shall be equally binding; and he that is cast in a suit of this kind, if he be a non-resident Stranger, shall be imprisoned for two years and fulfil this sentence; and he that is a resident alien and disobeys the laws shall be imprisoned for three years, unless the court assess his penalty at a longer period. And the man who is a bystander in any of these cases of assault, and who fails to give help as the law prescribes, shall be penalised—by a fine of a mina, if he be a man of the highest property-class; of fifty drachmae, if he be of the second class; of thirty
δραχμαῖς, τρίτον δὲ τριάκοντα, εἶκοσι δὲ τοῦ
tetártou. δικαστήριον δὲ γιγνέσθω τοῖς τοιού-
tоιοι στρατηγοὶ καὶ ταξίαρχοι φύλαρχοι τε καὶ
ἵππαρχοι.

Νόμοι δὲ, ὡς ἐσικευ, οἱ μὲν τῶν χρηστῶν
Ε ἀνθρώπων ἑνεκα γίγνονται, διδαχῆς χάριν τοῦ
tίνα τρόπον ὁμιλοῦντες ἀλλήλοις ἄν φιλοφρό-
νως οἴκοιν, οἱ δὲ τῶν τὴν παιδείαν διαφυγόντων,
ἀπεράμον χρωμένων τίνι φύσει καὶ μηδὲν τεγ-
χθέντων, ὡστε μὴ οὐκ ἐπὶ πᾶσαν ἴεναι κάκην.
οὕτω τοὺς μέλλοντας λόγους ῥηθῆσεσθαι πεποι-
ηκότες ἀν εἶν· οἰς δὴ τοὺς νόμους ἕξ ἀνάγκης
ὁ νομοθέτης ἄν νομοθετοῖ, βουλόμενος αὐτῶν
μηδέποτε χρείαν γίγνεσθαι. πατρὸς γὰρ ἡ μητρὸς
ἡ τούτων ἐτὶ προγόνων ὡστὶς τολμήσει ἁγασθαί
ποτε βιαζόμενος αἰκία τινί, μήτε τῶν ἄνω δείσας
θεῶν μὴν μήτε τῶν ὑπὸ γῆς τιμωρῶν ¹ λεγομένων,

881 ἄλλα ὡς εἰδὼς ἃ μηδαμῶς οἶδε, καταφρονῶν τῶν
παλαιῶν καὶ ὑπὸ πάντων εἰρημένων παρανομεῖ,
tοῦτῳ δὲ τινὸς ἀποτροπῆς ἔσχατης. θάνατος
μὲν οὐν οὐκ ἐστὶν ἔσχατον, οἱ δὲ ἐν "Αἰδοῦ
τούτουι λεγόμενοι πόνοι ἐτὶ τε τοῦτον ² εἰσὶ
μᾶλλον ἐν ἔσχατος, καὶ ἀληθεύτατα λέγοντες
οὐδὲν ἀνύτουσι ταῖς τοιαύταις ψυχαῖς ἀποτροπῆς·
οὐ γὰρ ἄν εἰγόνυντό ποτε μητραλοία τε καὶ τῶν
Β ἄλλων γεννητόρων ἀνόσιοι πληγῶν τόλμαι. δεὶ
dὴ τὰς ἐνθάδε κολάσεις περὶ τὰ τοιαύτα τούτοις

¹ τιμωρῶν Winckelmann: τιμωρῶν MSS.

290
drachmae, if of the third; and of twenty drachmae, if of the fourth class. And the court for such cases shall consist of the generals, taxiarchs, phylarchs, and hipparchs.

Laws, it would seem, are made partly for the sake of good men, to afford them instruction as to what manner of intercourse will best secure for them friendly association one with another, and partly also for the sake of those who have shunned education, and who, being of a stubborn nature, have had no softening treatment\(^1\) to prevent their taking to all manner of wickedness. It is because of these men that the laws which follow have to be stated,—laws which the lawgiver must enact of necessity, on their account, although wishing that the need for them may never arise. Whosoever shall dare to lay hands on father or mother, or their progenitors, and to use outrageous violence, fearing neither the wrath of the gods above nor that of the Avengers (as they are called) of the underworld, but scorning the ancient and worldwide traditions (thinking he knows what he knows not at all), and shall thus transgress the law,—for such a man there is needed some most severe deterrent. Death is not a most severe penalty; and the punishments we are told of in Hades for such offences, although more severe than death and described most truly, yet fail to prove any deterrent to souls such as these,—else we should never find cases of matricide and of impiously audacious assaults upon other progenitors. Consequently, the punishments inflicted upon these men here in their lifetime

\(^1\) Cp. 853 D.

\(^2\) τούτου my conj. (so too Burges) : τούτων MSS., edd.
τὰς ἐν τῷ ξῆν μηδὲν τῶν ἐν "Ἀιδοῦ λείπεσθαι κατὰ δύναμιν. ἔστω δὴ λεγόμενον τὸ μετὰ τούτο τῆς· ὃς ἂν τολμήσῃ πατέρα ἢ μητέρα ἢ τούτων πατέρας ἢ μητέρας τύπτειν μὴ μανίας ἔχομενος, πρῶτον μὲν ὁ προστυγχάνων καθάπερ ἐν τοῖς ἐμπροσθεν βοηθεῖτω, καί ὁ μὲν μέτοικος [ἡ] ἕνεος εἰς προεδρίαν τῶν ἀγώνων καλείσθω βοηθῶν, μὴ βοηθήσας δὲ ἀείφυγίαν ἐκ τῆς χώρας

C φευγέτω· ὁ δὲ μὴ μέτοικος βοηθῶν μὲν ἐπαίνου ἐχέτω, μὴ βοηθῶν δὲ φόγου· δοῦλος δὲ βοηθήσας μὲν ἐλεύθερος ἡγυνέσθω, μὴ βοηθήσας δὲ πληγᾶς ἐκατὸν τῇ μάστυγι τυπτέσθω, ἐν ἁγορᾷ μὲν ἂν γίγνηται τὸ γυγρόμενον, ὑπὸ ἁγορανόμου, ἕαν δ' ἐκτὸς ἁγορᾶς ἐν ἀστεί, τῶν ἀστυνόμων κολάζειν τὸν ἐπιδημοῦντα, ἕαν δὲ κατ' ἁγροῦς τῆς χώρας ποῦ, τοὺς τῶν ἁγορόμων ἄρχοντας. ἕαν δ' ἐπι-
χώριος ὁ παρατυγχάνων ἢ τις, ἕαν τε παῖς ἕαν τε ἀνήρ ἕαν τῷ οὖν γυνῇ, ἀμυνέτω πᾶς τὸν ἀνόσιον

D ἐπονομάζων· ὁ δὲ μὴ ἀμύνων ἀρὰ ἐνεχέσθω Διὸς ὁμογνίοι καὶ πατρόφου κατὰ νόμον. ἕαν δὲ τις ὅφλῃ δίκην αἰκίας γονέων, πρῶτον μὲν φευγέτω ἀειφυγίαν ἐξ ἀστεος εἰς τὴν ἀλλήν χώραν καὶ πάντων ιερῶν εἰργέσθω· μὴ δὲ εἰργόμενον κολάζον-
tων αὐτῶν ἁγορόμοι πληγαίς καὶ πάντως ὡς ἂν ἐθέλωσι· κατελθὼν δὲ θανάτῳ ζημοούσθω. ἕαν δὲ τις τῷ τοιοῦτῳ ὅσοι ἐλεύθεροι συμφάγη ἢ συμπίγῃ ἢ τίνα τοιαύτην ἀλλήν κοινωνίαν κοινω-

LAWS, BOOK IX

for crimes of this kind must, so far as possible, fall in no way short of the punishments in Hades. So the next pronouncement shall run thus:—Whosoever shall dare to beat his father or mother, or their fathers or mothers, if he be not afflicted with madness,—in the first place, the bystander shall give help, as in the former cases, and the resident Stranger who helps shall be invited to a first-row seat at the public games, but he who fails to help shall be banished from the country for life; and the non-resident Strangers shall receive praise if he helps, and blame if he does not help; and the slave who helps shall be made free, but if he fails to help he shall be beaten with 100 stripes of a scourge by the market-stewards, if the assault occur in the market, and if it occur in the city, but outside the market-place, the punishment shall be inflicted by the city-steward in residence, and if it occur in any country district, by the officers of the country-stewards. And the bystander who is a native—whether man, woman, or boy—shall in every case drive off the attacker, crying out against his impiety; and he that fails to drive him off shall be liable by law to the curse of Zeus, guardian-god of kinship and parentage. And if a man be convicted on a charge of outrageous assault upon parents, in the first place he shall be banished for life from the city to other parts of the country, and he shall keep away from all sacred places; and if he fails to keep away, the country-stewards shall punish him with stripes, and in any other way they choose, and if he returns again he shall be punished with death. And if any free man voluntarily eat or drink or hold any similar intercourse with such an one, or even give him merely a greet-
Εὐνήση, ἢ καὶ μόνον ἐντυγχάνων ποι προσάπτηται ἐκών, μήτε εἰς ἰερὸν ἔλθῃ μηδὲν μήτε εἰς ἄγορὰν μήτε εἰς πόλιν ὅλως πρότερον ἢ καθήρηται, νομίζων κεκοιμωνηκέναι ἀληθειώδους τύχης· ἓαν δὲ ἀπειθῶν νόμῳ ἵππα καὶ πόλιν μιαίνῃ παρανόμως, ὥσ ἄν τῶν ἀρχόντων αἰσθόμενος μὴ ἐπάγγη δίκην τῷ τοιούτῳ, ἐν εὐθύναις ἐστώ τῶν κατηγορημάτων τῶν μεγίστων ἐν τούτῳ αὐτῷ.

882 ἕαν δὲ αὐν δούλος τύπτῃ τὸν ἐλεύθερον, εἴτ' οὖν ἤένον εἴτε ἀστόν, βοηθεῖτο μὲν ὁ προστυγχάνων ἢ κατὰ τὸ τίμημα τὴν εἰρημένην ζημιὰν ἀποτυνέτω, συνδιήσαντες δὲ οἱ προστυγχάνοντες μετὰ τοῦ

Β πληγέντος παραδόντων τῷ ἀδικουμένῳ· οὐ δὲ παραλαβῶν, δήσας ἐν πέδαις καὶ μαστιγώσας ὀπόσας ἀν ἐθέλη, μηδὲν βλάπτων τὸν δεσποτήν, παραδότω ἐκείνῳ κεκτήσθαι κατὰ νόμον. ὁ δὲ νόμος ἔστω· "Οσ ἄν ἐλεύθερον δούλος ὄν τύπτῃ μὴ τῶν ἀρχόντων κελεύων, παραλαβὼν ο/gpio κεκτημένος παρὰ τοῦ πληγέντος διεδέμενον αὐτὸν μὴ λύσῃ πρὶν ἄν ὁ δούλος πείσῃ τὸν πληγέντα ἄξιος εἶναι

C τοῦ λευμένου ζῆν. τὰ αὐτὰ δὲ γυναιξὶ̣ τε ἐστω πρὸς ἀλλήλας περὶ πάντων τῶν τοιούτων νόμων, καὶ πρὸς ἄνδρας γυναιξὶ̣ καὶ ἀνδράσι πρὸς γυναῖκας.

1 ἐν τούτῳ Bekker: ἐν τούτῳ MSS., Zur.
ing when he meets him, he shall not enter any holy place or the market or any part of the city until he be purified, but he shall regard himself as having incurred a share of contagious guilt; and should he disobey the law and illegally defile sacred things and the State, any magistrate who notices his case and fails to bring him up for trial shall have to face this omission as one of the heaviest charges against him at his audit. If it be a slave that strikes the free man—stranger or citizen—the bystander shall help, failing which he shall pay the penalty as fixed according to his assessment;¹ and the bystanders together with the person assaulted shall bind the slave, and hand him over to the injured person, and he shall take charge of him and bind him in fetters, and give him as many stripes with the scourge as he pleases, provided that he does not spoil his value to the damage of his master, to whose ownership he shall hand him over according to law. The law shall stand thus:—Whosoever, being a slave, beats a free man without order of the magistrates,—him his owner shall take over in bonds from the person assaulted, and he shall not loose him until the slave have convinced the person assaulted that he deserves to live loosed from bonds. The same laws shall hold good for all such cases when both parties are women, or when the plaintiff is a woman and the defendant a man, or the plaintiff a man and the defendant a woman.

¹ Cp. 880 D.
884 Π. Μετὰ δὲ τὰς αἰκίας περὶ παντὸς ἐν εἰρήνῃς τοιόνδε τι νόμιμον βιαίων πέρι τῶν ἀλλοτρίων μηδένα μηδὲν φέρειν μηδὲ ἄγειν, μηδ' αὖ χρησθαι μηδὲν τῶν τοῦ πέλας, ἕαν μὴ πείσῃ τὸν κεκτημένον' ἐκ γὰρ δὴ τοῦ τοιούτου πάντα ἦρτημένα τὰ εἰρημένα κακὰ γέγονε καὶ ἐστὶ καὶ ἐσται. μέγιστα δὲ δὴ τῶν λοιπῶν αἱ τῶν νέων ἀκολασίαι τε καὶ ύβρεις· εἰς μέγιστα δὲ, ὅταν εἰς ίερὰ γίγνωνται, καὶ διαφερόντως αὖ μεγάλα, ὅταν εἰς δημόσια καὶ ἄγια ἡ κατὰ μέρη κοινὰ φυλετῶν ἢ τινῶν ἄλλων τοιούτων κεκοιμηκότων· εἰς ίερὰ δὲ ἢδια καὶ τάφους δεύτερα καὶ δευτέρως. 885 εἰς δὲ γονέας τρίτα, χωρὶς τῶν ἐμπροσθεν εἰρημένων ὅταν ύβρίζῃ τις. τέταρτον δὲ γένος ύβρεως, ὅταν ἀφροντιστῶν τις τῶν ἀρχόντων ἄγη ἢ φέρη ἡ χρήται τινὶ τῶν ἐκείνων μὴ πείσας αὐτοὺς πέμπτων δὲ τὸ πολιτικὸν ἄν εἰς ἐκάστος τῶν πολιτῶν ύβρισθέν δίκην ἑπικαλούμενον. οἷς δὴ δοτέον εἰς κοινὸν νόμον ἐκάστοις. ἱεροσυλία μὲν γὰρ εἰρηται ξυλλήβδην, βιαίοις τε καὶ λάθρᾳ ἐὰν Β γίγνηται, τι χρὴ πάσχειν· οὔσα δὲ λόγῳ καὶ

2 Cp. 941 D, E.
3 Cp. 854 B ff.
BOOK X

Ath. Next after cases of outrage we shall state for cases of violence one universally inclusive principle of law, to this effect:—No one shall carry or drive off anything which belongs to others, nor shall he use any of his neighbour's goods unless he has gained the consent of the owner; for from such action proceed all the evils above mentioned—past, present and to come. Of the rest, the most grave are the licentious and outrageous acts of the young; and outrages offend most gravely when they are directed against sacred things, and they are especially grave when they are directed against objects which are public as well as holy, or partially public, as being shared in by the members of a tribe or other similar community. Second, and second in point of gravity, come offences against sacred objects and tombs that are private; and third, offences against parents, when a person commits the outrage otherwise than in the cases already described.¹ A fourth² kind of outrage is when a man, in defiance of the magistrates, drives or carries off or uses any of their things without their own consent; and a fifth kind will be an outrage against the civic right of an individual private citizen which calls for judicial vindication. To all these severally one all-embracing law must be assigned. As to temple-robbing,³ whether done by open violence or secretly, it has been already stated summarily what the punishment should be; and in respect of all the outrages, whether
όσα ἔργω περὶ θεοῦ ύβρίζει τις λέγων ἢ πράττων, τὸ παραμύθιον ὑποθεμένῳ ῥητόν ἃ δεῖ πᾶσχειν. ἦστῳ δὴ τόδε: θεοὺς ἴηγούμενοι εἶναι κατὰ νόμους οὔδεὶς πῶς τοτε ὑπερ ἔργον ἁσεθὸς εἰργάσατο ἐκών ὑπερ λόγου ἄφηκεν ἄνομον, ἀλλὰ ἐν δὴ τί τῶν τριῶν πάσχων, ἢ τούτῳ ὑπὲρ εἰπον οὐχ ἴηγούμενος, ἢ τὸ δεύτερον οὔτας οὐ φροντίζειν ἀνθρώπων, ἢ τρίτον εὐπαραμυθήτους εἶναι θυσίαις τε καὶ εὐχαίς παραγομένους.

C κα. Τὶ οὖν δὴ δρῆμεν ἢν ἢ καὶ λέγομεν πρὸς αὐτοὺς;

ΑΘ. Ἡ ᾽Ω γαθέ, ἐπακούσωμεν αὐτῶν πρῶτον ἢ τῷ καταφρονείν ἡμῶν προσπαίζοντας αὐτοὺς λέγειν μαντεύομαι.

κα. Ποία δὴ;

ΑΘ. Ταῦτα τάξιν ἐν ἑρεσχηλοῦντες εἴποιεν, Ἡ ᾽Ω ξένε Ἀθηναίε καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιε καὶ Κνώσιε, ἀληθῇ λέγετε. ἡμῶν γὰρ οἱ μὲν τὸ παράπαν θεοὺς οὔδαμῳς νομίζομεν,1 οἱ δὲ [μηδὲν ἡμῶν φροντίζειν, οἱ δὲ εὐχαίς παράγομεθα,] οἶον ὡς ὑμεῖς λέγετε. ἀξιοῦμεν δὴ, καθάπερ ὑμεῖς θείωκατε D περὶ νόμων, πρὸν ἀπειλεῖν ἡμῖν σκληρῶς ὡς πρότερον ἐπιχειρεῖν πείθειν καὶ διδάσκειν ὡς εἰσὶ θεοί, τεκμηρία λέγοντας ἰκανά, καὶ ὡς βελτίως ἢ παρὰ τὸ δίκαιον ὑπὸ τινων δῶρων παρατρέπεσθαι κηλούμενοι. νῦν μὲν γὰρ ταῦτα ἀκοῦντες τε καὶ τοιαύθ' ἐτέρα τῶν λεγομένων ἀρίστων εἶναι ποιητῶν τε καὶ ῥητόρων καὶ μάντεων καὶ ἱερέων καὶ ἀλλων μυριάκις2 μυρίων οὐκ ἐπὶ τὸ μὴ δρᾶν τὰ ἀδικα τρεπόμεθα οἱ

1 νομίζομεν MSS.: νομίζουσιν Zur., vulg.
2 μυριάκις MSS.: πολλάκις Zur., vulg.
of word or deed, which a man commits, either by tongue or hand, against the gods, we must state the punishment he should suffer, after we have first delivered the admonition. It shall be as follows:—No one who believes, as the laws prescribe, in the existence of the gods has ever yet done an impious deed voluntarily, or uttered a lawless word: he that acts so is in one or other of these three conditions of mind—either he does not believe in what I have said; or, secondly, he believes that the gods exist, but have no care for men; or, thirdly, he believes that they are easy to win over when bribed by offerings and prayers.¹

CLIN. What, then, shall we do or say to such people?

ATH. Let us listen first, my good sir, to what they, as I imagine, say mockingly, in their contempt for us.

CLIN. What is it?

ATH. In derision they would probably say this: "O Strangers of Athens, Lacedaemon and Crete, what you say is true. Some of us do not believe in gods at all; others of us believe in gods of the kinds you mention. So we claim now, as you claimed in the matter of laws, that before threatening us harshly, you should first try to convince and teach us, by producing adequate proofs, that gods exist, and that they are too good to be wheeled by gifts and turned aside from justice. For as it is, this and such as this is the account of them we hear from those who are reputed the best of poets, orators, seers, priests, and thousands upon thousands of others; and consequently most of us, instead of seeking to avoid wrong-doing, do the

πλείστοι, δράσαντες δ’ ἔξακείσθαι πειρώμεθα. 
Επαρά δὲ δὴ νομοθετῶν φασκόντων εἶναι μὴ ἁγρίων ἀλλὰ ἡμέρων, ἄξιον μὲν πειθοὶ πρῶτον χρησθαι πρὸς ἡμᾶς, εἰ μὴ πολλῷ βελτίω τῶν ἄλλων λέγοντας περὶ θεῶν ὡς εἰσίν, ἀλλ’ οὖν βελτίω γε πρὸς ἀλήθειαν καὶ τάχα πειθοἶμεθ’ ἀν ἵσως ύμῖν. ἀλλ’ ἐπιχειρεῖτε, εἰ τι μέτριον λέγομεν, εἰπέν ἂ τροκαλοῦμεθα. 
κλ. Οὐκοῦν, ὥς ἔνεν, δοκεῖ ράδιον εἶναι ἀληθευόν-886 τας λέγειν ὡς εἰσὶ θεοὶ; 
α. Πῶς; 
κλ. Πρῶτον μὲν γῆ καὶ ἡλίος ἀστρα τε τὰ ἔσπαντα καὶ τὰ τῶν ὀρῶν διακεκοσμημένα καλῶς οὕτως, ἐναιστὸι τε καὶ μηδὲ διειλημμένα· καὶ ὅτι πάντες “Ελληνες τε καὶ βάρβαροι νομίζουσι εἶναι θεοὺς. 
α. Φοβοῦμαι γε, ὥ μακάριε, τοὺς μοχθηροὺς, οὐ γὰρ δὴ ποτε εἰποιμ’ ἀν ὡς γε αἴδούμαι, μή πως ἡμῶν καταφρονήσωσιν. ὑμεῖς μὲν γὰρ οὐκ ἵστε αὐτῶν πέρι τὴν τῆς διαφθορᾶς 1 αἰτίαν, ἀλλ’ ἤγεισθε ἀκρατεία 2 μόνον ἡδονῶν τε καὶ ἐπιθυ-Β μιῶν ἐπὶ τὸν ἀσεβὴ βίον ὀρμᾶσθαι τὰς ψυχὰς αὐτῶν. 
κλ. Τὸ δὲ τὶ πρὸς τούτοις αἰτίων ἂν, ὥ ἔνεν, εἴη; 
α. Σχεδὸν ὁ παντάπασιν ὑμεῖς ἔξω ζῶντες οὐκ ἄν εἰδείητε, ἀλλὰ ὑμᾶς ἄν λαρθάνοι. 
κλ. Τὶ δὴ τούτο φράξεις τὰ νῦν; 
α. Ἀμαθία τις μάλα χαλεπὴ δοκοῦσα εἶναι μεγίστῃ φρόνησις.
wrong and then try to make it good. Now from law-givers like you, who assert that you are gentle rather than severe, we claim that you should deal with us first by way of persuasion; and if what you say about the existence of the gods is superior to the arguments of others in point of truth, even though it be but little superior in eloquence, then probably you would succeed in convincing us. Try then, if you think this reasonable, to meet our challenge."

CLIN. Surely it seems easy, Stranger, to assert with truth that gods exist?

ATH. How so?

CLIN. First, there is the evidence of the earth, the sun, the stars, and all the universe, and the beautiful ordering of the seasons, marked out by years and months; and then there is the further fact that all Greeks and barbarians believe in the existence of gods.

ATH. My dear sir, these bad men cause me alarm—for I will never call it "awe"—lest haply they scoff at us. For the cause of the corruption in their case is one you are not aware of; since you imagine that it is solely by their incontinence in regard to pleasures and desires that their souls are impelled to that impious life of theirs.

CLIN. What other cause can there be, Stranger, besides this?

ATH. One which you, who live elsewhere, could hardly have any knowledge of or notice at all.

CLIN. What is this cause you are now speaking of?

ATH. A very grievous unwisdom which is reputed to be the height of wisdom.
κλ. Πῶς λέγεις;

αθ. Εἰσὶν ἡμῖν ἐν γράμμασι λόγοι κείμενοι, οἱ παρ’ ὑμῖν οὐκ εἰσὶ δ’ ἀρετὴν πολιτείας, ὡς ἐγὼ C μανθάνω, οἱ μὲν ἐν τισι μέτροις, οἱ δὲ καὶ ἄνευ μέτρων, λέγοντες περὶ θεῶν, οἱ μὲν παλαιότατοι, ὡς γέγονεν ἡ πρώτη φύσις οὐρανὸν τῶν τε ἄλλων, προϊόντες δὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς οὐ πολὺ θεογονιάν διεξέρχονται, γενόμενοι τε ὡς πρὸς ἀλλήλους ὡμίλησαν. ἂ τοῖς ἀκούονσιν εἰ μὲν εἰς ἄλλο τι καλῶς ἢ μὴ καλῶς ἔχει, οὐ βάδιον ἐπιτιμᾶν παλαιὸς οὕσιν, εἰς μέντοι γονέων τε θεραπείας καὶ τιμᾶς οὐκ ἂν ἐγωγεί ποτε ἐπαινῶν εἴπομι οὕτε ὡς ὕφελμι οὕτε ὡς τὸ παράπαν ὄντως D εἰρηται. τὰ μὲν οὖν δὴ τῶν ἀρχαίων πέρι μεθεισθὼ καὶ χαίρετῳ, καὶ ὡς θεοῦς φίλον λεγέσθω ταύτην τὰ τῶν νέων ἡμῖν καὶ σοφῶν αἰτιαθήτω ὡς ἀκακῶν αὕτια. τόδε οὖν οἱ τῶν τοιοῦτων ἐξεργάζονται λόγοι. ἐμοὶ γὰρ καὶ σοῦ, ὅταν τεκμηρία λέγωμεν ὡς εἰσὶ θεοὶ, ταῦτα αὐτὰ προφέροντες, ἦλιόν τε καὶ σελήνην καὶ ἀστρα καὶ γῆν ὡς θεοὺς καὶ θεῖα ὅντα, ὑπὸ τῶν σοφῶν τούτων ἀναπεπεισμένου ἂν λέγομεν ὡς γῆν τε E καὶ λίθους ὅντα αὐτὰ καὶ οὐδὲν τῶν ἀνθρωπείων πραγμάτων φροντίζειν δυνάμενα, λόγοισι δὲ ταῦτα εὗ τως εἰς τὸ πιθανὸν περιπετεμένα.

κλ. Χαλεπῶν γε λόγου, ὡς δὲ γε ἐγὼ, εἰρηκὼς τυγχάνεις, εἰ γε εἰς ἣν μόνον νῦν δὲ ὅτε πάμπολλοι τυγχάνουσιν, ἐτι χαλεπῶτερον ἂν εἰη.

1 By Hesiod, Pherecydes, etc.
2 Materialists such as Democritus.

302
CLIN. What do you mean?

ATH. We at Athens have accounts preserved in writing (though, I am told, such do not exist in your country, owing to the excellence of your polity), some of them being in a kind of metre, others without metre, telling about the gods: the oldest of these accounts relate how the first substance of Heaven and all else came into being, and shortly after the beginning they go on to give a detailed theogony, and to tell how, after they were born, the gods associated with one another. These accounts, whether good or bad for the hearers in other respects, it is hard for us to censure because of their antiquity; but as regards the tendance and respect due to parents, I certainly would never praise them or say that they are either helpful or wholly true accounts. Such ancient accounts, however, we may pass over and dismiss: let them be told in the way best pleasing to the gods. It is rather the novel views of our modern scientists that we must hold responsible as the cause of mischief. For the result of the arguments of such people is this,—that when you and I try to prove the existence of the gods by pointing to these very objects—sun, moon, stars, and earth—as instances of deity and divinity, people who have been converted by these scientists will assert that these things are simply earth and stone, incapable of paying any heed to human affairs, and that these beliefs of ours are speciously tricked out with arguments to make them plausible.

CLIN. The assertion you mention, Stranger, is indeed a dangerous one, even if it stood alone; but now that such assertions are legion, the danger is still greater.
Α.Τ. Τί οὖν δή; τί λέγομεν; τί χρή δραν ἡμᾶς; πότερον ἀπολογησόμεθα οἶνον κατηγο-ρήσαντος τινος ἐν ἀσεβέσιν ἀνθρώποις ἡμῶν, 887 [φεύγουσι περὶ τῆς νομοθεσίας, λέγουσιν] 1 ὡς δεινὰ ἐργαζόμεθα νομοθετοῦντες ὡς ὄντων θεῶν; ἢ χαίρειν εἰσαντες ἐπὶ τοὺς νόμους τρεπόμεθα πάλιν, μή καὶ τὸ προσίμων ἡμῖν μακρότερον γίγνεται τῶν νόμων; οὐ γὰρ τι βραχὺς ὁ λόγος ἐκταθεὶς ἄν γίγνοιτο, εἰ τοῖς ἐπιθυμοῦσιν ἀσεβείην τὰ μὲν ἀποδείξαμεν μετρίως τοῖς λόγοις, ἢν ἔφραζον δείν πέρι λέγειν, τῶν δὲ εἰς φόβον τρέψαμεν, τὰ δὲ δυσχεραίνεις ποιήσαντες, ὅσα πρέπει μετὰ ταύτα ἤδη νομοθετοῖμεν.

Β ΚΛ. ἈΛΛ', ο ξένε, πολλάκις μὲν ὡς γε ἐν ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ τοῦτ' αὐτὸ εἰρήκαμεν, ὡς οὐδὲν ἐν τῷ παρόντι δεὶ προτιμᾶν βραχυλογίαν μᾶλλον ἡ μὴ καὶ οὔδεὶς γὰρ ἡμᾶς, τὸ λεγόμενον, ἐπείγον διώκει' γελοιόν δὴ καὶ φαύλον τὸ πρὸ τῶν βελτίστων τὰ βραχύτερα αἰρούμενοι φαίνεσθαι. δια-φέρει δ' οὐ σμικρὸν ἄμοις γέ πως πιθανότητά τινα τοὺς λόγους ἡμῶν ἔχειν, ὡς θεοὶ τ' εἰσὶ καὶ ἁγαθοί, δίκην τιμῶντες διαφερόντως ἀνθρώπων·

Σ σχεδὸν γὰρ τοῦτο ἡμῖν ὑπὲρ ἀπάντων τῶν νόμων κάλλιστον τε καὶ ἀριστον προσίμων ἄν εἴη. μηδὲν οὖν δυσχεραίνατες μηδὲ ἐπειχθέντες, ἤπνινα ποτε ἔχομεν δύναμιν εἰς πειθῶ τῶν τοιοῦτων

1 [φεύγουσι . . . λέγουσιν] I bracket.
LAWS, BOOK X

ATH. What then? What shall we say? What must we do? Are we to make our defence as it were before a court of impious men, where someone had accused us of doing something dreadful by assuming in our legislation the existence of gods? Or shall we rather dismiss the whole subject and revert again to our laws, lest our prelude prove actually more lengthy than the laws? For indeed our discourse would be extended in no small degree if we were to furnish those men who desire to be impious with an adequate demonstration by means of argument concerning those subjects which ought, as they claimed, to be discussed, and so to convert them to fear of the gods, and then finally, when we had caused them to shrink from irreligion, to proceed to enact the appropriate laws.

CLIN. Still, Stranger, we have frequently (considering the shortness of the time) made¹ this very statement,—that we have no need on the present occasion to prefer brevity of speech to lengthiness (for, as the saying goes, "no one is chasing on our heels"); and to show ourselves choosing the briefest in preference to the best would be mean and ridiculous. And it is of the highest importance that our arguments, showing that the gods exist and that they are good and honour justice more than do men, should by all means possess some degree of persuasiveness; for such a prelude is the best we could have in defence, as one may say, of all our laws. So without any repugnance or undue haste, and with all the capacity we have for endowing such arguments with

¹ Cp. 701 C, D; 858 A ff.: all this discussion is supposed to have taken place on one and the same day,—hence the ref. to "shortness of time."
λόγων, μηδὲν ἀποθέμενοι διεξέλθωμεν εἰς τὸ δυνατὸν ἴκανός.

α. Εὐχήν μοι δοκεῖ παρακαλεῖν ὁ λεγόμενος ὑπὸ σοῦ νῦν λόγος, ἐπειδὴ προθύμως συντείνεις· μέλλειν δὲ οὐκέτι ἐγχωρεῖ λέγειν. φέρε δὴ, πῶς ἂν τις μὴ θυμῶ λέγοι περὶ θεῶν ὡς εἰσίν; ἀνάγκη γὰρ δὴ χαλεπῶς φέρειν καὶ μισεῖν ἐκεῖνος οἱ τούτων ἡμῶν αὐτοῖς τῶν λόγων γεγένηται καὶ γίγνονται νῦν, οὐ πειθομένοι τοῖς μῦθοις, οὐς ἐκ νέων παΐδων ἐτί ἐν γάλαξι τρεφόμενοι τροφῶν τε ἢκουν καὶ μητέρων, οἷον ἐν ἐπιφάνειας μετὰ τε παιδιᾶς καὶ μετὰ σπουδῆς λεγομένων, καὶ μετὰ θυσίων ἐν εὐχαῖς αὐτοὺς ἀκούοντες τε, καὶ ὃσεις ὀρθῶτες ἐπομένας αὐτοῖς δὴ ἡδίστα ὁ γε νέος ὥρα τε καὶ ἀκούει πραττομένας θυντῶν, ἐν σπουδῇ <τε> ¹ τῇ μεγίστῃ τοὺς αὐτῶν γονέας ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν τε καὶ ἐκεῖνων ἐσπουδακότας, <καὶ> ² ὡς ὅτι μάλιστα οὐσὶ θεοὶς εὐχαῖς προσδιαλεγομένους καὶ ἰκετείαις, ἀνατέλλοντός τε ἡλίου καὶ

Ε σελήνης καὶ πρὸς δυσμᾶς ἰόντων προκυλίσεις ἁμα καὶ προσκυνῆσεις ἀκούοντες τε καὶ ὀρθῶτες Ἑλλήνων τε καὶ βαρβάρων πάντων ἐν συμφοραῖς παντοίαις ἐχωμένων καὶ ἐν εὐπραγίαις, οὐχ ὡς οὐκ ὄντων, ἀλλ' ὡς ὅτι μάλιστα ὄντων καὶ οὐδαμῆ ύποψίαν ἐνδιόντων ὡς οὐκ. εἰς θεοὶ,—τούτων δὴ πάντων ὁσοὶ καταφρονήσαντες οὔδε ἐξ ἐνὸς ἴκανοῦ λόγου, ὃς φαίνει ἀν ὁσοὶ καὶ σμικρὸν νοῦ κέκτηται, νῦν ἀναγκάζονσιν ἡμᾶς λέγειν ἃ 838 λέγομεν, πῶς τούτων ἄν τις ἐν πραείς λόγοις

---

² <καὶ> added by Ast, England.
LAWS, BOOK X

persuasiveness, let us expound them as fully as we can, and without any reservation.

ATH. This speech of yours seems to me to call for a prefatory prayer, seeing that you are so eager and ready; nor is it possible any longer to defer our statement. Come, then; how is one to argue on behalf of the existence of the gods without passion? For we needs must be vexed and indignant with the men who have been, and now are, responsible for laying on us this burden of argument, through their disbelief in those stories which they used to hear, while infants and sucklings, from the lips of their nurses and mothers—stories chanted to them, as it were, in lullabies, whether in jest or in earnest; and the same stories they heard repeated also in prayers at sacrifices, and they saw spectacles which illustrated them, of the kind which the young delight to see and hear when performed at sacrifices; and their own parents they saw showing the utmost zeal on behalf of themselves and their children in addressing the gods in prayers and supplications, as though they most certainly existed; and at the rising and setting of the sun and moon they heard and saw the prostrations and devotions of all the Greeks and barbarians, under all conditions of adversity and prosperity, directed to these luminaries, not as though they were not gods, but as though they most certainly were gods beyond the shadow of a doubt—all this evidence is contemned by these people, and that for no sufficient reason, as everyone endowed with a grain of sense would affirm; and so they are now forcing us to enter on our present argument. How, I ask, can one possibly use mild terms in admonishing such men, and at the same


PLATO

δύνατο νουθετῶν ἀμα διδάσκειν περὶ θεῶν πρῶτον ὡς εἰσί; τολμητέον δέ· οὐ γὰρ ἀμα γε δεῖ μανῆναι τοὺς μὲν ὕπὸ λαμαργίας ἠδονῆς ἡμῶν, τοὺς δ' ὑπὸ τοῦ θυμοῦσθαι τοῖς τοιούτοις.

'Ἰτω δὴ πρόβρῃσις τοιάδε τις ἀθυμος τοῖς οὕτω τὴν διάνοιαν διεφθαρμέοις, καὶ λέγωμεν πράως, σβέσαντε τὸν θυμόν, ὡς ἐνι διαλεγόμενοι τῶν τοιούτων, 'Ὡ παί, νέος εἰ· προϊόν δὲ σε ὁ χρόνος Β ποιήσει πολλὰ ὄν νῦν δοξάζεις μεταβαλόντα ἐπὶ τἀναντία τίθεσθαι. περίμεινον οὖν εἰς τότε κρίτης περὶ τῶν μεγίστων γίγνεσθαι· μέγιστον δὲ ὁ νῦν οὐδὲν ἤγει σὺ, τὸ περὶ τοὺς θεοὺς ὅρθῶς διανοηθέντα ξῆν καλῶς ἡ μή. πρῶτον δὲ περὶ αὐτῶν ἐν τι μέγα σοι μηνύων οὐκ ἂν ποτέ φανεῖν ψευδῆς, τὸ τοιόνυν· οὔ σὺ μόνος οὐδὲ οἱ σοι φίλοι πρῶτοι καὶ πρῶτον ταύτην δόξαν περὶ θεῶν ἐσχετε, γίγνονται δὲ ἀεὶ πλείους ἡ ἐλάττους ταύτην τὴν νόσον ἔχοντες. τόδε τοῖνυν σοι παραγεγονὸς αὐτῶν πολλοὶς φράξοµι· ἀν, τὸ μηδένα ζ πώποτε λαβῶντα ἐκ νέου ταύτην τὴν δόξαν περὶ θεῶν, ὡς οὐκ εἰσί, διατελέσαι πρὸς γῆρας μείναντα ἐν ταύτη τῇ διανοήσει· τὰ δύο μέντοι πάθη περὶ θεοὺς μεῖναι, πολλοὶς μὲν οὐ, μεῖναι δὲ οὐν τισί, τὸ τοὺς θεοὺς εἶναι μὲν, φροντίζειν δὲ οὐδὲν τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων, καὶ τὸ μετὰ τοῦτο, ὡς φροντίζοντα μὲν, εὐπαραμύθητοι δ' εἰςι θύμασι καὶ εὐχαίς. τὸ δὴ σαφὲς ἂν γενόμενον σοι περὶ 308
time teach them, to begin with, that the gods do exist? Yet one must bravely attempt the task; for it would never do for both parties to be enraged at once,—the one owing to greed for pleasure, the other with indignation at men like them.

So let our prefatory address to the men thus corrupted in mind be dispassionate in tone, and, quenching our passion, let us speak mildly, as though we were conversing with one particular person of the kind described, in the following terms: "My child, you are still young, and time as it advances will cause you to reverse many of the opinions you now hold: so wait till then before pronouncing judgment on matters of most grave importance; and of these the gravest of all—though at present you regard it as naught—is the question of holding a right view about the gods and so living well, or the opposite. Now in the first place, I should be saying what is irrefutably true if I pointed out to you this signal fact, that neither you by yourself nor yet your friends are the first and foremost to adopt this opinion about the gods; rather is it true that people who suffer from this disease are always springing up, in greater or less numbers. But I, who have met with many of these people, would declare this to you, that not a single man who from his youth has adopted this opinion, that the gods have no existence, has ever yet continued till old age constant in the same view; but the other two false notions about the gods do remain—not, indeed, with many, but still with some,—the notion, namely, that the gods exist, but pay no heed to human affairs, and the other notion that they do pay heed, but are easily won over by prayers and offerings. For a doctrine about them
αὐτῶν κατὰ δύναμιν δόγμα, ἀν ἐμοὶ πείθῃ, περι-

μενεῖς ἀνασκοπῶν εἴτε οὗτως εἴτε ἄλλως ἔχει,

D πυθαθαύμομενος παρά τε τῶν ἄλλων καὶ δὴ καὶ

μάλιστα καὶ παρά τοῦ νομοθέτου. ἐν δὲ δὴ
tοῦτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ μὴ τολμήσῃς περὶ θεοὺς μηδὲν

ἀσεβῆσαι. πειρατέον γὰρ τῷ τούς νόμους σοι
tιθέντι νῦν καὶ εἰς ἀνθίς διδάσκειν περὶ αὐτῶν
tούτων ὡς ἔχει.

κλ. Κάλλισθ᾽ ἥμιν, ὦ ξένε, μέχρι γε τοῦ νῦν

εἰρηται.

ἀθ. Παντάπασι μὲν οὖν, ὦ Μέγιλλε τε καὶ

Κλεινία: λελήθαμεν δ' ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς εἰς θαυμασ-

τὸν λόγον ἐμπεπτωκότες.

κλ. Τὸν ποίον δὴ λέγεις;

Ε ἀθ. Τὸν παρὰ πολλοῖς δοξαζόμενον εἶναι

σοφώτατον ἀπάντων λόγων.

κλ. Φράζ᾽ ἐτι σαφέστερον.

ἀθ. . Δέγουσί ποὺ τινες ως πάντα ἐστὶ τὰ

πράγματα γεγυμένα καὶ γεγομένα καὶ γεγονό-

μενα τὰ μὲν φύσει, τὰ δὲ τύχη, τὰ δὲ διὰ

tέχνη.

κλ. Οὐκοῦν καλῶς;

ἀθ. Εἰκός γέ τοί που σοφοὺς ἄνδρας ὀρθῶς

λέγειν. ἐπόμενοι γε μὴν αὐτοῖς σκεψαμέθα τοὺς

889 ἐκεῖθεν, τὶ ποτε καὶ τυγχάνουσι διανοούμενοι.

κλ. Πάντως.

ἀθ. Ὑσοικε, φασί, τὰ μὲν μέγιστα αὐτῶν καὶ

κάλλιστα ἀπεργαζέσθαι φύσιν καὶ τύχην, τὰ δὲ

σμικρότερα τέχνην, ἡν δὴ παρὰ φύσεως λαμβά-

νουσαν τὴν τῶν μεγάλων καὶ πρῶτων γένεσιν

ἐργον πλάττειν καὶ τεκταίνεσθαι πάντα τὰ σμι-

κρότερα, ἃ δὴ τεχνικὰ πάντες προσαγορεύομεν.

310
LAWS, BOOK X

that is to prove the truest you can possibly form you will, if you take my advice, wait, considering the while whether the truth stands thus or otherwise, and making enquiries not only from all other men, but especially from the lawgiver; and in the meantime do not dare to be guilty of any impiety in respect of the gods. For it must be the endeavour of him who is legislating for you both now and hereafter to instruct you in the truth of these matters.

CLIN. Our statement thus far, Stranger, is most excellent.

ATH. Very true, O Megillus and Clinias; but we have plunged unawares into a wondrous argument.

CLIN. What is it you mean?

ATH. That which most people account to be the most scientific of all arguments.

CLIN. Explain more clearly.

ATH. It is stated by some that all things which are coming into existence, or have or will come into existence, do so partly by nature, partly by art, and partly owing to chance.

CLIN. Is it not a right statement?

ATH. It is likely, to be sure, that what men of science say is true. Anyhow, let us follow them up, and consider what it is that the people in their camp really intend.

CLIN. By all means let us do so.

ATH. It is evident, they assert, that the greatest and most beautiful things are the work of nature and of chance, and the lesser things that of art,—for art receives from nature the great and primary products as existing, and itself moulds and shapes all the smaller ones, which we commonly call "artificial."
κα. Πῶς λέγεις;

Β ἈΘ. "Ωδ' ἐτὶ σαφέστερον ἔρω. πῦρ καὶ ύδωρ καὶ γῆν καὶ ἄερα φύσει πάντα εἶναι καὶ τύχη φασί, τέχνη δὲ οὐδὲν τούτων καὶ τὰ μετὰ ταῦτα αὐ σῶματα, γῆς τε καὶ ἡλίου καὶ σέληνης ἁστρων τε πέρι, διὰ τούτων γεγονέναι παντελῶς οὕτων ἀνυχῶν· τύχη δὲ φερόμενα τῇ τῆς δυνάμεως ἑκαστα ἑκάστων, ἣ ξυμπέπτωκεν ἁρμόττουτα οἰκείως πως, θερμὰ ψυχροῖς ἢ ξηρὰ πρὸς ψυγρά

καὶ μαλακὰ πρὸς σκληρά, καὶ πάντα ὡπόσα τῇ τῶν ἑναντίων κράσει κατὰ τύχην εξ ἀνάγκης συνεκεράσθη, ταύτη καὶ κατὰ ταῦτα οὕτω γεγεννηκέναι τὸν τε οὗρανὸν ὦλον καὶ πάντα ὡπόσα κατ' ὦρανόν, καὶ ζῶα αὐ καὶ φυτὰ ξύμπαντα, ὁρῶν πασῶν ἐκ τούτων γενομένων, οὐ διὰ νοῦν, φασίν, υἱὸ διὰ τινὰ θεον οὐδὲ διὰ τέχνην, ἀλλὰ ὁ λέγομεν, φύσει καὶ τύχη. τέχνη δὲ ὦστερον ἐκ τούτων ὑστέραν γενομένην, αὐτὴν ἑκτικὴν ἐκ θυητῶν, ὦστερα γεγεννηκέναι παιδίας τινας ἀληθείας οὐ σφόδρα μετεχοῦσας, ἀλλὰ εἶδος ἄττα ἕννεπε ἑαυτῶν, οἴκ δὲ γραφικὴ γεννᾷ καὶ μουσικὴ καὶ ὡσαί ταύταις ἐστὶ συνέργθι τέχναι. αἰ δὲ τι καὶ σπουδαίων ἄρα γεννῶσι τῶν τεχνῶν, εἶναι ταύτας ὡπόσα τῇ φύσει ἐκοίνωσαν τὴν αὐτῶν δύναμιν, οἴκοι αὐ ἑιμική καὶ γεωργικὴ καὶ γυμναστικὴ, καὶ δὴ καὶ τὴν πολιτικὴν σμικρὸν τι μέρος εἶναι φασὶ κοινωνοῦσαι φύσει, τέχνη δὲ τὸ πολύ οὕτω δὲ καὶ τὴν νομοθεσίαν πᾶσαν ὑπὸ φύσει, τέχνη δὲ, ἓς οὐκ ἀληθεῖς εἶναι τὰς θέσεις.

1 κοινωνοῦσαν: κοινωνοῦν MSS. (τῆς πολιτικῆς H. Richards, England).

312
LAWS, BOOK X

CLIN. How do you mean?

ATH. I will explain it more clearly. Fire and water and earth and air, they say, all exist by nature and chance, and none of them by art; and by means of these, which are wholly inanimate, the bodies which come next—those, namely, of the earth, sun, moon and stars—have been brought into existence. It is by chance all these elements move, by the interplay of their respective forces, and according as they meet together and combine fittingly,—hot with cold, dry with moist, soft with hard, and all such necessary mixtures as result from the chance combination of these opposites,—in this way and by these means they have brought into being the whole Heaven and all that is in the Heaven, and all animals, too, and plants—after that all the seasons had arisen from these elements; and all this, as they assert, not owing to reason, nor to any god or art, but owing, as we have said, to nature and chance. As a later product of these, art comes later; and it, being mortal itself and of mortal birth, begets later playthings which share but little in truth, being images of a sort akin to the arts themselves—images such as painting begets, and music, and the arts which accompany these. Those arts which really produce something serious are such as share their effect with nature,—like medicine, agriculture, and gymnastic. Politics too, as they say, shares to a small extent in nature, but mostly in art; and in like manner all legislation which is based on untrue assumptions is due, not to nature, but to art.

1 This is a summary of the doctrines of the Atomists (Leucippus and Democritus) who denied the creative agency of Reason. Similar views were taught, later, by Epicurus and Lucretius.
κα. Πῶς λέγεις;

ἀ. Θεούς, ὃ μακάριε, εἰναι πρῶτον φασιν ὅτι τέχνη, οὐ φύει ἀλλὰ τίς νόμοις, καὶ τούτοις ἀλλος ἀλλη, ὅτι ἐκαστοι ἐαυτοῖς ¹ συν- ωμολογήσαν νομοθετοῦμενοι καὶ δὴ καὶ τὰ καλὰ φύσει μὲν ἄλλα εἰναι, νόμω δὲ ἑτερα. τα ὅτι δὴ δίκαια οὐδ' εἰναι τὸ παράπαν φύσει, ἀλλ' ἀμφισβητοῦντας διατελεῖν ἀλλήλοις καὶ μετα- τιθεμένους ἀεὶ ταῦτα. ἢ δ' ἂν μετάθωνται καὶ 890 ὅταν, τότε κύρια ἐκαστα εἰναι, γυνόμενα τέχνη καὶ τοῖς νόμοις, ἀλλ' οὐ δὴ τινι φύσει. ταὐτ' ἐστίν, ὃ φίλοι, ἀπαντά ἀνδρὸν σοφὼν παρὰ νέοις ἀνθρώποις, ἱδιωτῶν τε καὶ ποιητῶν, φασκόντων εἰναι τὸ δικαιότατον ο τί τις ἂν νικᾶ βειαζόμενος, οθὲν ἀσέβεια τε ἀνθρώποις ἐμπιπτοῦσι νέοις, ὥς οὐκ ὅντων θεῶν οἶους ο νόμος προστάτευε διανοεῖσθαι δείν, στάσεις τε διὰ ταῦτα, ἐλκόντων πρὸς τὸν κατὰ φύσιν ὀρθὸν βίον, ὅς ἐστι τῇ ἁληθεία κρατοῦντα ἕν τῶν ἄλλων καὶ μὴ δουλεύοντα ἐτέροισι κατὰ νόμον.

Β κα. Ὠσιον διεληλύθασι, ὃ ἕνε, λόγον καὶ ὁσιήν ἀνθρώπων νέων δημοσία πόλεσι τε καὶ ἴδιος οἰκος.

ἀ. 'Αληθῆ μέντοι λέγεις, ὃ Κλεινία. τί οὖν

¹ εαυτοῖς MSS.: ἐκάστοις Zur.
CLIN. What do you mean?

ATH. The first statement, my dear sir, which these people make about the gods is that they exist by art and not by nature,—by certain legal conventions¹ which differ from place to place, according as each tribe agreed when forming their laws. They assert, moreover, that there is one class of things beautiful by nature, and another class beautiful by convention²; while as to things just, they do not exist at all by nature, but men are constantly in dispute about them and continually altering them, and whatever alteration they make at any time is at that time authoritative, though it owes its existence to art and the laws, and not in any way to nature. All these, my friends, are views which young people imbibe from men of science, both prose-writers and poets, who maintain that the height of justice is to succeed by force; whence it comes that the young people are afflicted with a plague of impiety, as though the gods were not such as the law commands us to conceive them; and, because of this, factions also arise, when these teachers attract them towards the life that is right "according to nature," which consists in being master over the rest in reality, instead of being a slave to others according to legal convention.³

CLIN. What a horrible statement you have described, Stranger! And what widespread corruption of the young in private families as well as publicly in the States!

ATH. That is indeed true, Clinias. What, then,

by Hippius and Prodicus: that of "Convention," by Protagoras and Gorgias: Plato goes behind both to the higher principle of Reason (νοῦς), cp. Introd. p. xiv.
οἷς χρήματί δρὴν τὸν νομοθέτην οὕτω τούτων, 
πάλαι παρεσκευασμένων; ἡ μόνον ἀπειλεῖν 
στάντα ἐν τῇ πόλει ξύμπασι τοῖς ἀνθρώποις, 
ὡς εἰ μὴ φήσοντι εἶναι θεοὺς καὶ διανοηθῆσονται 
δοξάζοντες τοιούτους ὦν ποτὶ φησίν ὁ νόμος: καὶ 
περὶ καλῶν καὶ δικαίων καὶ περὶ ἀπάντων τῶν 
C μεγίστων ὁ αὐτὸς λόγος, ὅσα δὴ ἡ πρὸς ἄρετὴν 
τείνει καὶ κακίαν, ὡς δεὶ ταῦτα οὕτω πράττειν 
διανοουμένους ὁππερ ἀν ὁ νομοθέτης υφηγησθῇ 
γράφων· δέ δὲ ἂν μὴ παρέχηται ἑαυτὸν τοῖς 
νόμοις εὐπειθῆ, τὸν μὲν δεὶν τεθνάναι, τὸν 
δὲ τινα πληγαῖς καὶ δεσμοῖς, τὸν δὲ ἀτιμίαις, ἀλλοὺς 
δὲ πειναῖς κολάζεσθαι καὶ φυγαίς: πειθὼ δὲ τοῖς 
ἀνθρώποις, ἀμα τιθέντα αὐτοῖς τοὺς νόμους, 
μηδεμίαν ἐθέλειν ὑπὸ τοῖς λόγοις προσάπτοντα εἰς 
δύναμιν ἡμεροῦν;

D κλ. Μηδαμώς, ὡς ἔξεν, ἄλλ' εἴπερ τυγχάνει 
γε οὕσα καὶ σμικρὰ πειθὼ τις περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα, 
δεὶ μηδαμὴ κάμνειν τὸν γε αὖξιον καὶ σμικροῦ 
νομοθέτην, ἀλλὰ πᾶσαν, τὸ λεγόμενον, φωνὴν 
ἱέντα τῷ παλαιῷ [νόμῳ] ἐπίκουρον γίγνεσθαι 
λόγῳ, ὡς εἰσὶ θεοὶ καὶ ὅσα νῦν δὴ διήλθες σὺ, 
καὶ δὴ καὶ νόμων αὐτῷ βοηθῆσαι καὶ τέχνη, ὡς ἐστὸν φύσηι ἡ φύσεως οὐχ ἡττοι, εἰπέρ νῦ 
γέ ἐστι γεννήματα κατὰ λόγον ὅρθον, ὡς ὅ 
τε λέγειν μοι φαίνει καὶ ἰγὼ σοι πιστεύω τὰ νῦν.

α. "Ω προθυμώτατε Κλείνηα, τί δ'; σὺ χαλεπά

1 δῆ Απελτ: δὲ MSS.: τε Zur., vulg.
4 ἡττοι Hermann: ἡττον MSS.
5 ὡς Stallbaum: δν MSS.
do you think the lawgiver ought to do, seeing that these people have been armed in this way for a long time past? Should he merely stand up in the city and threaten all the people that unless they affirm that the gods exist and conceive them in their minds to be such as the law maintains;\(^1\) and so likewise with regard to the beautiful and the just and all the greatest things, as many as relate to virtue and vice, that they must regard and perform these in the way prescribed by the lawgiver in his writings; and that whosoever fails to show himself obedient to the laws must either be put to death or else be punished, in one case by stripes and imprisonment, in another by degradation, in others by poverty and exile? But as to persuasion, should the lawgiver, while enacting the people’s laws, refuse to blend any persuasion with his statements, and thus tame them so far as possible?

CLIN. Certainly not, Stranger; on the contrary, if persuasion can be applied in such matters in even the smallest degree, no lawgiver who is of the slightest account must ever grow weary, but must (as they say) “leave no stone unturned”\(^2\) to reinforce the ancient saying that gods exist, and all else that you recounted just now; and law itself he must also defend and art, as things which exist by nature or by a cause not inferior to nature, since according to right reason they are the offspring of mind, even as you are now, as I think, asserting; and I agree with you.

ATH. What now, my most ardent Clinias? Are

\(^1\) Cp. 634 D, E; 859 B, al.
\(^2\) Literally, “utter every voice” (leave nothing unsaid).
Ετέ έστι τιννακολουθείν λόγοις οὕτως εἰς πλήθη λεγόμενα, μήκη τε αὐτή κέκτηται διωλύμα; 
κλ. Τί δαί, ὦ ξένε; περὶ μέθης μὲν καὶ μουσικῆς οὕτω μακρὰ λέγοντας ἡμᾶς αὐτοῦς περιεμείναμεν, περὶ θεῶν δὲ καὶ τῶν τοιούτων οὗχ ὑπομενοῦμεν; καὶ μήν καὶ νομοθεσία γέ ἐστι ποιητῇ φρονήσεως μεγίστῃ βοήθεια, 
891 διότι τὰ περὶ νόμων προστάγματα ἐν γράμμασι τεθέντα, ὃς δώσοντα εἰς πάντα χρόνον ἔλεγχον, πάντως ἤρμενε, ὡστε οὕτ' εἰ χαλεπὰ κατ' ἀρχὰς ἀκούειν ἐστὶ φοβητέον, ἣ ἐσται καὶ τῷ δυσμαθεὶ πολλάκις ἐπανίστασιν σκοπεῖν, οὔτε εἰ μακρὰ, ὁφέλιμα δὲ; διὰ ταῦτα λόγον οὐδαμῇ ἔχει οὐδὲ ὁσιον ἔμοιγε εἶναι φαίνεται τὸ μὴ οὐ 
βοηθεῖν τούτοις τοῖς λόγοις πάντα ἀνδρα κατὰ δύναμιν.

ME. Ἅριστα, ὦ ξένε, δοκεῖ μοι λέγειν Κλεινίας.

Β α. Καὶ μᾶλα γε, ὦ Μεγίλλε; ποιητέον τε ὡς λέγει. καὶ γὰρ εἰ μή κατεσπαρμένοι ἦσαν οἱ 
tοιοῦτοι λόγοι ἐν τοῖς πάσιν ὡς ἔπος ἐπείν 
ἀνθρώποις, οὐδὲν ἄν ἔδει τῶν ἐπαμμυνομένων 
λόγων ὡς εἰς θεοῦ νῦν ἄν ἀνάγκη. νόμωσι οὐ 
ἀλλὰ διαφθειρομένοις τοῖς μεγίστοις ὑπὸ κακῶν ἀνθρώ 
pων τίνα καὶ μᾶλλον προσήκει βοηθεῖν ἢ νομο 
θέτην;

ME. Οὔκ ἔστιν.

Α. Αλλὰ δὴ λέγε μοι πάλιν, Κλεινία, καὶ 
ΩΤ Κοινώνον γὰρ δεὶ σε εἶναι τῶν λόγων;

---

1 In Books I and II.  
2 Cp. 811 D.
not statements thus made to the masses difficult for us to keep up with in argument, and do they not also involve us in arguments portentously long?

Clin. Well now, Stranger, if we had patience with ourselves when we discoursed at such length on the subjects of drinking and music, shall we not exercise patience in dealing with the gods and similar subjects? Moreover, such a discourse is of the greatest help for intelligent legislation, since legal ordinances when put in writing remain wholly unchanged, as though ready to submit to examination for all time, so that one need have no fear even if they are hard to listen to at first, seeing that even the veriest dullard can come back frequently to examine them, nor yet if they are lengthy, provided that they are beneficial. Consequently, in my opinion, it could not possibly be either reasonable or pious for any man to refrain from lending his aid to such arguments to the best of his power.

Meg. What Clinias says, Stranger, is, I think, most excellent.

Ath. Most certainly it is, Megillus; and we must do as he says. For if the assertions mentioned had not been sown broadcast well-nigh over the whole world of men, there would have been no need of counter-arguments to defend the existence of the gods; but as it is, they are necessary. For when the greatest laws are being destroyed by wicked men, who is more bound to come to their rescue than the lawgiver?

Meg. No one.

Ath. Come now, Clinias, do you also answer me again, for you too must take a hand in the argument: it appears that the person who makes
κινδυνεύει γὰρ ὁ λέγων ταῦτα πῦρ καὶ ὕδωρ καὶ γῆ καὶ ἀέρα πρῶτα ἤγείσθαι τῶν πάντων εἶναι, καὶ τὴν φύσιν ὁνομάζειν ταῦτα αὐτά, ψυχὴν δὲ ἐκ τούτων ὑπερεῖ. ἐοικε δὲ οὐ κινδυνεύειν, ἀλλὰ ὄντως σημαίνειν ταῦτα ἡμῖν τῷ λόγῳ.

κα. Πάνυ μὲν οὖν.

α. Ἀρ' οὖν πρὸς Δίὸς οἶον πηγὴν τινὰ ἀνοίητον δόξης ἀνευρήκαμεν ἀνθρώπων ὑπόσοι πώποτε τῶν περὶ φύσεως ἐφήσαντο ξητημάτων; σκόπει πάντα λόγον ἐξετάζων οὐ γὰρ δὴ Δ σμικρὸν γε τὸ διαφέρον, εἰ φανεῖν οἱ λόγοι ἀπτόμενοι ἀσεβῶν ἀλλοις τε ἐξάρχοντες μηδὲ εἰ τοῖς λόγοις ἀλλ' ἐξημαρτημένως χρώμενοι. δοκεῖ τοῖνυν μοι ταῦτα οὕτως ἔχειν.

κα. Ἐν λέγεις; ἀλλ' ὅπη, πειρῶ φράζειν.

α. Ἕοικε τοίνυν ἀθεστέρων ἀπτέων εἶναι λόγων.

κα. Οὐκ ὀκνητέον, ὦ ξένε. μανθάνω γὰρ ὡς νομοθεσίας ἐκτὸς οἴησε βαίνειν, ἐὰν τῶν τοιούτων ἀπτώμεθα λόγων. εἰ δὲ ἔστι μηδαμὴ ἐτέρως συμφωνήσαι τοῖς νῦν κατὰ νόμον λεγομένους Ε[θεοῖς] ὡς ὀρθῶς ἔχουσιν ἡ ταύτη, λεκτέον, ὁ θαυμασίας, καὶ ταύτῃ.

α. Λέγοιμ' ἂν, ὡς ἐοικεν, ἣδ' σχεδὸν οὐκ εἰσώθοτα λόγον τινὰ τόνδε. ὦ πρῶτον γενέσεως καὶ φθορᾶς αἰτίων ἀπάντων, τοῦτο οὐ πρῶτον ἀλλὰ ὑπερεῖν ἀπεφήναντο εἶναι γεγονὸς οἱ τὴν

these statements holds fire, water, earth and air to be the first of all things, and that it is precisely to these things that he gives the name of "nature," while soul he asserts to be a later product there-from. Probably, indeed, he does not merely "appear" to do this, but actually makes it clear to us in his account.

CLIN. Certainly.

ATH. Can it be then, in Heaven's name, that now we have discovered, as it were, a very fountain-head of irrational opinion in all the men who have ever yet handled physical investigations? Consider, and examine each statement. For it is a matter of no small importance if it can be shown that those who handle impious arguments, and lead others after them, employ their arguments not only ill, but erroneously. And this seems to me to be the state of affairs.

CLIN. Well said; but try to explain wherein the error lies.

ATH. We shall probably have to handle rather an unusual argument.

CLIN. We must not shrink, Stranger. You think, I perceive, that we shall be traversing alien ground, outside legislation, if we handle such arguments. But if there is no other way in which it is possible for us to speak in concert with the truth, as now legally declared, except this way, then in this way, my good sir, we must speak.

ATH. It appears, then, that I may at once proceed with an argument that is somewhat unusual; it is this. That which is the first cause of becoming and perishing in all things, this is declared by the arguments which have produced the soul of the impious
τῶν ἀσεβῶν ψυχῶν ἀπεργασάμενοι λόγοι, δὲ ὑστερον πρότερον, ὅθεν ἡμαρτήκασι περὶ θεῶν τῆς οὐντως οὐσίας.

892 κλ. Οὔτω μανθάνω.

α. Ψυχήν, ὁ ἐταῖρε, ἡγισθήκειν κινδυνεύονσι μὲν ὀλίγον ξύμπαντες οἶον τε ὅν τυχάνει καὶ δύναμιν ἦν ἔχει, τῶν τε ἄλλων αὐτῆς πέρι καὶ δὴ καὶ γενέσεως, ὡς ἐν πρῶτοις ἐστὶ σωμάτων ἐμπροσθεν πάντων γενομένη, καὶ μεταβολῆς τε αὐτῶν καὶ μετακοσμήσεως ἀπάσης ἁρχεί παντὸς μᾶλλον. εἰ δὲ ἐστὶ ταῦτα οὔτως, ἀρ' οὐκ ζε ἀνάγκης τὰ ψυχῆς συγγενῆ πρότερα ἂν εἰῇ γεγονότα τῶν σώματι προσηκόντων, οὔσης γ' Β αὐτῆς ἱ πρεσβυτέρας ἢ σώματος;

κλ. Ἀνάγκη.

α. Δόξα δὴ καὶ ἐπιμέλεια καὶ νοῦς καὶ τέχνη καὶ νόμος σκληρῶν καὶ μαλακῶν καὶ βαρέων καὶ κούφων πρότερα ἂν εἴῃ καὶ δὴ καὶ τὰ μεγάλα καὶ πρῶτα ἔργα καὶ πράξεις τέχνης ἂν γίγνοιτο, ὅτα ἐν πρῶτοις, τὰ δὲ φύσει καὶ φύσις, ἢν οὐκ οἴθως ἐποιομαζόσων αὐτῷ τοῦτο, ὑστερα καὶ ἀρχόμενα ἂν ἐκ τέχνης εἴῃ καὶ νοῦ.

C κλ. Πῶς οὐκ άρῆς;

α. Φύσιν βούλονται λέγειν γένεσιν τὴν περὶ τὰ πρῶτα. εἰ δὲ φανήσεται ψυχή πρῶτον, οὐ πῦρ οὐδὲ ἀήρ, ψυχὴ δ' ἐν πρῶτοις γεγενημένη, σχεδὸν όρθότατα λέγοτ' ἂν εἶναι διαφερόντως φύσει. ταῦτ' ἐσθ' οὔτως ἕχοντα, ἂν ψυχῆν τις ἐπιδείξῃ πρεσβυτέραν οὕσαν σώματος, ἄλλως δὲ οὐδαμῶς.

1 γ' αὐτῆς Burnet (after Euseb.): ταύτης MSS.
LAWS, BOOK X

to be not first, but generated later, and that which is the later to be the earlier; and because of this they have fallen into error regarding the real nature of divine existence.

CLIN. I do not yet understand.

ATH. As regards the soul, my comrade, nearly all men appear to be ignorant of its real nature and its potency, and ignorant not only of other facts about it, but of its origin especially,—how that it is one of the first existences, and prior to all bodies, and that it more than anything else is what governs all the changes and modifications of bodies. And if this is really the state of the case, must not things which are akin to soul be necessarily prior in origin to things which belong to body, seeing that soul is older than body? 1

CLIN. Necessarily.

ATH. Then opinion and reflection and thought and art and law will be prior to things hard and soft and heavy and light; and further, the works and actions that are great and primary will be those of art, while those that are natural, and nature itself,—which they wrongly call by this name—will be secondary, and will derive their origin from art and reason.

CLIN. How are they wrong?

ATH. By "nature" they intend to indicate production of things primary; but if soul shall be shown to have been produced first (not fire or air), but soul first and foremost,—it would most truly be described as a superlatively "natural" existence. Such is the state of the case, provided that one can prove that soul is older than body, but not otherwise.

1 Cp. Tim. 34 D.

323
PLATO

κλ. Ἀληθέστατα λέγεις.
ἀθ. Οὐκοῦν τὰ μετὰ ταύτα ἐπ’ αὐτὸ δὴ τοῦτο στελλόμεθα;
D κλ. Τί μὴν;
ἀθ. Φυλάττωμεν δὴ παντάπασιν ἀπατηλῶν λόγον, μὴ πη πρεσβύτας ἡμᾶς ὄντας νεοπρεπῆς ὃν παραπείησ καὶ διαφυγόν καταγελάστους ποιήσῃ, καὶ δοξώμεν μείζονα ἐπιβαλλόμενοι καὶ τῶν σμικρῶν ἀποτυχεῖν. σκοπεῖτε οὖν καὶ καθ’ ἄτερ ποταμῶν ἡμᾶς ἔδει τρεῖς ὄντας διαβαίνειν ἱεοντα σφόδρα, νεότατος δ’ ἔγω τυγχάνων ἡμῶν καὶ πολλῶν ἐμπειρος ῥευμάτων εἰπον ὅτι πρότον
Ε ἐμὲ χρῆναι πειραθῆναι κατ’ ἐμαυτόν, καταλη-πόντα ὑμᾶς ἐν ἀσφαλεί, σκέψασθαι εἰ διαβατὸς ἐστι πρεσβυτέροις οὐσί καὶ ὑμῖν, ἡ πῶς ἔχει, καὶ φανέντος μὲν ταύτῃ καλεῖν ὑμᾶς τότε καὶ συνδιαβιβάζειν ἐμπειρία, εἰ δὲ ἅβατος ἢν ὁ ὦς ὑμῖν, ἐν ἐμοὶ τὸν κίνδυνον γεγονέναι, μετρίως ἄν ἐδόκουν λέγειν. καὶ δὴ καὶ νῦν ὁ μέλλων ἐστὶ λόγος σφοδρότερος καὶ σχεδὸν ὑπερ ἅβατος ὃς τῇ σφῶν ρώμης μὴ δὴ σκοτοδινίαν ἕλυγγόν τε ὑμῖν ἐμποιήσῃ παραφερόμενος τε καὶ ἐρωτῶν
893 ἀῆθεις ὄντας ἀποκρίσεων, εἰτ ἀσχημοσύνην ἀπρέ-πειών τε ἐντεκῆ ἄηδη, δοκεῖ δὴ μοι χρῆναι ποιεῖν οὕτως τὰ νῦν ἐμὲ, ἀνερωτάν πρῶτον ἐμαυτόν ἀκουόντων ὑμῶν ἐν ἀσφαλεί, καὶ μετὰ ταύτα ἀποκρίνασθαι πάλιν ἐμὲ, καὶ τὸν λόγον ἀπαντά οὕτω διεξέλθειν, μέχριπερ ἄν ψυχῆς πέρι δια-περάνηται καὶ δείξῃ πρῶτον ὃν ψυχὴν σῶματος.

1 Cp. 886 B.
2 Cp. 896 B, C.
LAWS, BOOK X

CLIN. Most true.

ATH. Shall we then, in the next place, address ourselves to the task of proving this?

CLIN. Certainly.

ATH. Let us guard against a wholly deceitful argument, lest haply it seduce us who are old with its specious youthfulness, and then elude us and make us a laughing-stock, and so we get the reputation of missing even little things while aiming at big things. Consider then. Suppose that we three had to cross a river that was in violent flood, and that I, being the youngest of the party and having often had experience of currents, were to suggest that the proper course is for me to make an attempt first by myself—leaving you two in safety—to see whether it is possible for you older men also to cross, or how the matter stands, and then, if the river proved to be clearly fordable, I were to call you, and, by my experience, help you across, while if it proved impassable for such as you, in that case the risk should be wholly mine,—such a suggestion on my part would have sounded reasonable. So too in the present instance; the argument now in front of us is too violent, and probably impassable, for such strength as you possess; so, lest it make you faint and dizzy as it rushes past and poses you with questions you are unused to answering,¹ and thus causes an unpleasing lack of shapeliness and seemliness, I think that I ought now to act in the way described—question myself first, while you remain listening in safety, and then return answer to myself, and in this way proceed through the whole argument until it has discussed in full the subject of soul, and demonstrated that soul is prior to body.²
"Αριστ', ὦ ξένε, δοκεῖς ἡμῖν εἰρηκέναι, ποίει τε ὦς λέγεις.

Β Ἀο. "Αγε δή, θεὸν εἰπτε παρακλητέου ἡμῖν, νῦν ἔστω τοῦτο οὕτω γενόμενον· ἐπὶ γε ἄποδειξιν ὡς εἰσὶ τὴν αὐτῶν σπουδὴ πάση παρακεκλήσθων· ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὡς τινος ἀσφαλοὺς πείσματος ἐπεισδεινομένοι εἰς τὸν νῦν λόγον. καὶ μοι ἐλεγχομένῳ περὶ τὰ τοιαύτα ἐρωτήσει τοιαίσθε ἀσφαλέστατα ἀποκρίνεσθαι φαίνεται κατὰ τάδε. "Ω ξένε, ὁπόταν φη τις, ἀρα ἐστηκε μὲν πάντα, κινεῖται δὲ σοῦ δέν; ἢ τούτῳ πάν τοῦναντίον; ἢ τὰ μὲν Αὐτῶν κινεῖται, τὰ δὲ μένει; Τὰ μὲν κινεῖται που, φήσω, τὰ δὲ μένει. Μῶν οὖν οὐκ ἐν χώρα τινὶ τὰ τε ἐστωτα ἐστηκε καὶ τὰ κινοῦμενα κινεῖται; Πῶς γὰρ οὗ; Καὶ τὰ μὲν γε ἐν μιᾶ ἐδρα που τοῦτο ἀν δρα, τὰ δὲ ἐν πλείοσι. Τὰ τὴν τῶν ἐστώτων ἐν μέσῳ λαμβάνοντα δύναμιν λέγεις, φήσομεν, ἐν ἐνι κινεῖσθαι, καθάπερ ἡ τῶν ἐστάναι λειγομένων κύκλων στρέφεται περιφορά; Ναί. μανθάνομεν δέ γε ὡς ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ περιφορᾷ τὸν μέγιστον καὶ τὸν σμικρότατον κύκλον ἀμα περιάγουσα ἡ τοιαύτη κίνησις ἀνὰ λόγον ἐαυτήν

Δ διαιέμει σμικροῖς τε καὶ μείζονι, ἐλάττων τε οὐσα καὶ πλείων κατὰ λόγον. διὸ δὴ τῶν θαυμαστῶν ἀπάντων πηγὴ γέγονε, ἀμα μεγάλοις καὶ σμικροῖς κύκλοις ἄρσεν ἄρσεν τὰς καὶ τάχι ὀμολογούμενα πορεύουσα, ἀδύνατον ὡς ἐν τὶς ἐλπίσεις γίγνεσθαι πάθος. 'Αληθέστατα λέγεις. Τὰ δὲ γε κινούμενα ἐν πολλοῖς φαίνει μοι λέγειν ὅσα φορὰ κινεῖται μεταβαίνοντα εἰς ἄτερον ἄει

---

LAWS, BOOK X

CLIN. Your suggestion, Stranger, we think excellent; so do as you suggest.

ATH. Come then,—if ever we ought to invoke God's aid, now is the time it ought to be done. Let the gods be invoked with all zeal to aid in the demonstration of their own existence. And let us hold fast, so to speak, to a safe cable as we embark on the present discussion. And it is safest, as it seems to me, to adopt the following method of reply when questions such as this are put on these subjects; for instance, when a man asks me—"Do all things stand still, Stranger, and nothing move? Or is the exact opposite the truth? Or do some things move and some remain at rest?" My answer will be, "Some things move, others remain at rest."¹ "Then do not the standing things stand, and the moving things move, in a certain place?" "Of course." "And some will do this in one location, and others in several." "You mean," we will say, "that those which have the quality of being at rest at the centre move in one location, as when the circumference of circles that are said to stand still revolves?" "Yes. And we perceive that motion of this kind, which simultaneously turns in this revolution both the largest circle and the smallest, distributes itself to small and great proportionally, altering in proportion its own quantity; whereby it functions as the source of all such marvels as result from its supplying great and small circles simultaneously with harmonizing rates of slow and fast speeds—a condition of things that one might suppose to be impossible." "Quite true." "And by things moving in several places you seem to me to mean all things that move by locomotion, con-
tòπον, καὶ τοτὲ μὲν ἐστὶν ὅτε βάσιν ἐνὸς κεκτή.
Ε μένα τινὸς κέντρου, τοτὲ δὲ πλείονα τῷ περι-
κυλινδεῖσθαι. προστυγχάνοντα δ' ἐκάστοτε
ἐκάστους, τοῖς ἐστῶσι μὲν διασχίζεται, τοῖς δὲ
ἀλλοις ἐξ ἐναντίας ἀπαντῶσι καὶ φερομένους εἰς
ἐν γυνώμενα μέσα τε καὶ μεταξὺ τῶν τοιούτων
συγκρίνεται. Δένω γὰρ οὖν ταύτα οὕτως ἔχοντα
ὡς σὺ λέγεις. Καὶ μὴν καὶ συγκρινόμενα μὲν
αὐξάνεται, διακρινόμενα δὲ φθίνει τὸτε ὅταν ἡ
καθεστηκία ἐκάστων ἐξὶς διαμείνῃ; μὴ μενούσης
dὲ αὐτὴς δὲ ἀμφότερα ἀπὸλλυται. γίγνεται δὴ
894 πάντων γένεσις, ἡμίκ  ἄν τί πάθος ῏; δῆλον ὡς
ὀπόταν ἄρχῃ λαβοῦσα αὐξὴν εἰς τὴν δευτέραν
ἐλθὴ μεταβασιν καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης εἰς τὴν πλησίον,
cαὶ μέχρι τριῶν ἐλθοῦσα αἴσθησιν σχῆ τοῖς
αἴσθανομένοις. μεταβάλλον μὲν οὖν οὕτω καὶ
μετακινοῦμενον γίγνεται πᾶν· ἐστὶ δὲ ὅντως ὃν,
ὀπόταν μὲνη· μεταβαλὸν δὲ εἰς ἄλλην ἐξὶν
dιεφθαρται παντελῶς. ἃρ' οὖν κινήσεις πάσας
eἰρήκαμεν ὡς ἐν εἴδει παλαίην μετ' ἀριθμὸ, πλῆν
Β γε, ὁ φίλοι, δυσῶι;
κλ. Ποίαιν δή;
ἀθ. Σχεδόν, ὁ γαθέ, ἐκείναι, ὃν ἕνεκα πᾶσα
ήμιν ἐστὶν ἡ σκέψις τὰ νῦν.

---

¹ i.e. with a forward gliding motion, as opposed to rolling forward (like a car wheel).
² i.e. as solid, liquid, or gaseous substance.
³ This account of the derivation of the sense-world from the "starting-principle" (ἀρχή) is obscure. It is generally interpreted as a "geometrical allegory," the stages of development being from point to line, from line to surface, from surface to solid,—this last only being perceptible by the senses (cp. Ar. de An. 404 b 18 ff.).
⁴ The 8 kinds of motion here indicated are—(1) circular
continually passing from one spot to another, and sometimes resting on one axis and sometimes, by revolving, on several axes. And whenever one such object meets another, if the other is at rest, the moving object is split up; but if they collide with others moving to meet them from an opposite direction, they form a combination which is midway between the two.” “Yes, I affirm that these things are so, just as you describe.” “Further, things increase when combined and decrease when separated in all cases where the regular constitution of each persists; but if this does not remain, then both these conditions cause them to perish. And what is the condition which must occur in everything to bring about generation? Obviously whenever a starting-principle receiving increase comes to the second change, and from this to the next, and on coming to the third admits of perception by percipients. Everything comes into being by this process of change and alteration; and a thing is really existent whenever it remains fixed, but when it changes into another constitution it is utterly destroyed.” Have we now, my friends, mentioned all the forms of motion, capable of numerical classification, save only two?

**CLIN.** What two?

**ATH.** Those, my good sir, for the sake of which, one may say, the whole of our present enquiry was undertaken.

motion round a fixed centre; (2) locomotion (gliding or rolling); (3) combination; (4) separation; (5) increase; (6) decrease; (7) becoming; (8) perishing. The remaining two kinds (as described below) are—(9) other-affecting motion (or secondary causation); and (10) self-and-other-affecting motion (or primary causation).
κα. Δέγε σαφέστερον.
α. Ψυχής ἤν ἐνεκά ποῦ;
κα. Πάντα μὲν οὖν.
α. "Εστώ τῶν ἡ μὲν ἔτερα δυναμένη κινεῖν κίνησις, ἐαυτὴν δὲ ἄδυνατοῦσα, ἄει μία τις, ἢ δὲ ἐαυτὴν τ' ἄει καὶ ἔτερα δυναμένη κατὰ τε συγκρίσεις ἐν τε διακρίσεις αὐξάς τε καὶ τῷ ἐναυτῷ καὶ γενέσει καὶ φθοραῖς ἀλλη μία τις
C αὖ τῶν πασῶν κινήσεών.
κα. "Εστῶ γὰρ οὖν.
α. Οὐκοῦν τὴν μὲν ἔτερον ἄει κινοῦσαν καὶ μεταβαλλομένην υφ‘ ἐτέρου θήσομεν ἐνάτην αὖ, τὴν δὲ ἐαυτὴν κινοῦσαν καὶ ἐτέρα, ἐναρμόττουσαν πᾶσι μὲν ποιήσασι, πᾶσι δὲ παθήσασι, καλομένην τε ὁντως τῶν ὄντων πάντων μεταβολὴν καὶ κίνησιν, ταύτην δὲ 2 δεκάτην σχεδὸν ἔροιμεν.
D κα. Παντάπασι μὲν οὖν.
α. Τῶν δὴ δέκα μάλιστα ήμῖν κινήσεων τίν' ἀν προκρίναμεν ὀρθῶτατα πασών ἐρρωμενεστάτην τε εἶναι καὶ πρακτικὴν διαφερόντως;
κα. Μυρίῳ ἀνάγκῃ που φάναι διαφέρειν τὴν αὐτὴν αὐτὴν δυναμένην κινεῖν, τάς δὲ ἄλλας πάσας ύστέρας.
α. Εὖ λέγεις. ἄρ' οὖν ήμῖν τῶν νῦν οὐκ ὀρθῶς ῥηθέντων μεταθετέον ἐν ἡ καὶ δύο;
κα. Ποία φής;
α. Τὸ τῆς δεκάτης ῥηθὲν σχεδὸν οὐκ ὀρθῶς εἰρηται.
κα. Πῇ;
α. Πρῶτον γενέσει τ' ἐστὶ καὶ ρώμη κατὰ

¹ τε England; δὲ MSS.
² δὴ: δὲ MSS. (bracketed by England)
LAWS, BOOK X

CLIN. Explain more clearly.
ATH. It was undertaken, was it not, for the sake of soul?
CLIN. Certainly.
ATH. As one of the two let us count that motion which is always able to move other things, but unable to move itself; and that motion which always is able to move both itself and other things,—by way of combination and separation, of increase and decrease, of generation and corruption,—let us count as another separate unit in the total number of motions.
CLIN. Be it so.
ATH. Thus we shall reckon as ninth on the list that motion which always moves another object and is moved by another; while that motion which moves both itself and another, and which is harmoniously adapted to all forms of action and passion, and is termed the real change and motion of all that really exists,—it, I presume, we shall call the tenth.
CLIN. Most certainly.
ATH. Of our total of ten motions, which shall we most correctly adjudge to be the most powerful of all and excelling in effectiveness?
CLIN. We are bound to affirm that the motion which is able to move itself excels infinitely, and that all the rest come after it.
ATH. Well said. Must we, then, alter one or two of the wrong statements we have now made?
CLIN. Which do you mean?
ATH. Our statement about the tenth seems wrong.
CLIN. How?
ATH. Logically it is first in point of origin and
λόγον: τὸ δὲ μετὰ τούτο ἐξομεν τούτου δεύτερον,
Ε ἀρτὶ ῥηθεὶν ἄτοπως ἔνατον.

κα. Πώς λέγεις;

ἀ. Ὑδὲ. ὅταν ἔτερον ἄλλο ἡμῖν μεταβάλη
καὶ τούτο ἄλλο ἔτερον ἀεί, τῶν τοιούτων ἄρα
ἔσται ποτέ τι πρῶτον μεταβάλλων; καὶ πῶς, ὁ
γ' ἂν 1 ύπ' ἄλλου κινῆται, τούτ' ἔσται ποτὲ τῶν
ἀλλοιούντων πρῶτον; ἀδύνατον γάρ. ἀλλ' ὅταν
ἀρα αὐτὸ αὐτὸ κινήσαν ἔτερον ἀλλοϊώσῃ, τὸ δ'
ἔτερον ἄλλο, καὶ οὕτω δὴ χίλια ἐπὶ μυρίων γῆν-
895 νητα τὰ κινηθέντα, μῶν ἀρχῇ τις αὐτῶν ἔσται
tῆς κινήσεως ἀπάσης ἄλλη πλὴν ἢ τῆς αὐτῆς
αὐτῆς κινησάσης μεταβολῆ;

κα. Κάλλιστα εἴπες, συγχωρητέα τε τούτοις.

ἀ. Ἐτι δὴ καὶ τῆδε εἶπομεν, καὶ ἀποκρι-
νώμεθα πάλιν ἡμῖν αὐτοῦσιν. εἰ σταίη πως τὰ
πάντα ὀμοῦ γενόμενα, καθάπερ οἱ πλείστοι τῶν
tοιούτων τολμῶσι λέγειν, τίν' ἄρα ἐν αὐτοῖς
ἀνάγκη πρώτην κίνησιν γενέσθαι τῶν εἱρημένων;
tὴν 2 <αὐτῆν> 3 αὐτῆν δὴ που κινοῦσαν ύπ'
ἄλλου γὰρ οὐ μήποτε ἐμπροσθεν μεταπέσῃ,

Β μηδεμιᾶς γε ἐν αὐτοῖς οὐσῆς ἐμπροσθεν μετα-
πτώσεως. ἀρχήν ἄρα κινήσεων πασῶν καὶ
πρῶτην ἐν τε ἑστῶσι γενομένην καὶ ἐν κινομένοις
οὕσαν τὴν αὐτὴν κινοῦσαν φήσομεν ἀναγκαίως
εἶναι πρεσβυτάτην καὶ κρατίστην μεταβολὴν
πασῶν, τὴν δὲ ἀλλοιομένην ύφ' ἔτερον, κινοῦσαν
τε 4 ἔτερα δεύτεραν.

1 ὁ γ' ἂν Απέλτ, Ἐγκλαδ: δὴν MSS.
2 τὴν Μ. . . μεταπτώσεως is assigned to Clin. by Zur. and
most edd. I follow Hermann and Burnet.
3 <αὐτῆν> added by Euseb., Burnet.
4 τε Ast: δὲ MSS.

332
power; and the next one is second to it, although we absurdly called it ninth a moment ago.

CLIN. What do you mean?

ATH. This: when we find one thing changing another, and this in turn another, and so on,—of these things shall we ever find one that is the prime cause of change? How will a thing that is moved by another ever be itself the first of the things that cause change? It is impossible. But when a thing that has moved itself changes another thing, and that other a third, and the motion thus spreads progressively through thousands upon thousands of things, will the primary source of all their motions be anything else than the movement of that which has moved itself?

CLIN. Excellently put, and we must assent to your argument.

ATH. Further, let us question and answer ourselves thus:—Supposing that the Whole of things were to unite and stand still,—as most of these thinkers venturing to maintain,—which of the motions mentioned would necessarily arise in it first? That motion, of course, which is self-moving; for it will never be shifted beforehand by another thing, since no shifting force exists in things beforehand. Therefore we shall assert that inasmuch as the self-moving motion is the starting-point of all motions and the first to arise in things at rest and to exist in things in motion, it is of necessity the most ancient and potent change of all, while the motion which is altered by another thing and itself moves others comes second.

1 E.g. Anaxagoras, who taught, originally, "all things were together (δυνω);" and the Eleatic School (Parmenides, etc.) asserted that the Real World (τὸ δύναμις) is One and motionless; cp, Theaet. 180 E.
ΚΛ. Ἀληθεστατα λέγεις.
ΑΘ. Ὅποτε δὴ τοῖνυν ἐνταῦθα ἐσμεν τοῦ λόγου, 
C τὸδε ἀποκρινόμεθα.
ΚΛ. Τὸ ποίον;
ΑΘ. Ἐὰν ἰδωμέν ποι ταῦτην γενομένην ἐν τῷ ἡγίνον 
ἡ ἐνύδρῳ ἡ πυροειδεί, κεκωρισμένῳ ἢ καὶ 
ξυμμυγεί, τί ποτε φήσομεν ἐν τῷ τοιούτῳ πάθος 
eίναι;
ΚΛ. Μῶν ἄρα με έρωτᾶς εἰ ξῆν αὐτὸ προσ-
ερουμεν ὅταν αὐτὸ αὐτὸ κινή;
ΑΘ. Ναί.
ΚΛ. Ζῆν πῶς γὰρ οὐ;
ΑΘ. Τί δαί; ὅποταν ψυχὴν ἐν τισιν ὀρώμεν,
μῶν ἄλλο ἡ ταύτην τούτῳ; ξῆν ὀμολογητέον;
ΚΛ. Όυκ ἄλλα.

ΔΑΘ. Ἐχε δὴ πρὸς Διος: ἂρ' οὖκ ἀν ἐθέλοις 
περὶ ἐκαστον τρία νοεῖν;
ΚΛ. Πῶς λέγεις;
ΑΘ. Ἐν μὲν τὴν οὐσίαν, ἐν δὲ τῆς οὐσίας τοῦ 
λόγου, ἐν δὲ τὸ ὄνομα. καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐρωτήσεις εἰναι 
περὶ τὸ ὄν ἀπαν δύο.
ΚΛ. Πῶς δύο;
ΑΘ. Τοτὲ μὲν ἡμῶν ἐκαστὸν τούνομα προ-
τεινόμενον αὐτὸ τοῦ λόγου ἀπαίτειν, τοτὲ δὲ τῶν 
λόγου αὐτῶν προτεινόμενον ἑρωτᾶν αὐ τοῦνομα.
ΚΛ. 1 Αρά γε τὸ τοιόνδε αὐ βουλόμεθα νῦν 
λέγειν;
ΑΘ. Τὸ ποίον;

1 τῷ England: τῷ MSS.
2 I follow Schneider and England in the assignment of the 
next eight lines (Zur., al., give only Τὸ ποίον; and Nái to 
Clin.).
LAWS, BOOK X

clin. Most true.

ath. Now that we have come to this point in our discourse, here is a question we may answer.

clin. What is it?

ath. If we should see that this motion had arisen in a thing of earth or water or fire, whether separate or in combination, what condition should we say exists in such a thing?

clin. What you ask me is, whether we are to speak of a thing as "alive" when it moves itself?

ath. Yes.

clin. It is alive, to be sure.

ath. Well then, when we see soul in things, must we not equally agree that they are alive?

clin. We must.

ath. Now stop a moment, in Heaven's name! Would you not desire to observe three points about every object?

clin. What do you mean?

ath. One point is the substance, one the definition of the substance, and one the name;1 and, moreover, about everything that exists there are two questions to be asked.

clin. How two?

ath. At one time each of us, propounding the name by itself, demands the definition: at another, propounding the definition by itself, he demands the name.

clin. Is it something of this kind we mean now to convey?

ath. Of what kind?

1 Cp Epist. 7, 342 A, B.
καλ. "Εστι πον δίχα διαιρούμενον ἐν ἄλλοις τε καὶ ἐν ἀριθμοῖς. τούτῳ δὴ τῷ κατ' ἀριθμὸν ὄνομα μὲν ἄρτιον, λόγος δὲ ἀριθμὸς διαιρούμενος εἰς ἴσα δύο μέρη.

ἀθ. Νά. τὸ τοιοῦτον φράζω. μῶν οὖν οὐ ταῦταν ἑκατέρως προσαγορεύομεν, ἂν τε τὸν λόγον ἐρωτώμενοι τούνομα ἀποδιδόμεν, ἂν τε τούνομα τὸν λόγον, ἄρτιον ὄνοματι καὶ λόγῳ, δίχα διαιρούμενον ἀριθμὸν, προσαγορεύοντες ταῦταν ὄν;

καλ. Παντάπασι μὲν οὖν.

ἀθ. Ὡμι δὴ ψυχὴ τούνομα, τίς τοιοῦτον λόγος; 896 ἔχομεν ἄλλουν πλῆθος τὸν ὄν ὅδ' ῥηθέντα, τὴν δυναμένην αὐτὴν αὐτὴν κινεῖν κίνησιν;

καλ. Τό ἐαντὸ κινεῖν φίς λόγον ἔχειν τὴν αὐτὴν οὐσίαν ἤπερ τούνομα δὴ πάντες ψυχὴν προσαγορεύομεν;

ἀθ. Ψημί γε. εἰ δ' ἐστὶν τούτῳ οὕτως ἔχου, ἀρα ἐτι ποθοῦμεν μὴ ἰκανῶς δεδειχθαί ψυχὴν ταῦταν ὅν καὶ τὴν πρώτην γένεσιν καὶ κίνησιν τῶν τε ὄντων καὶ γεγονότων καὶ ἐσομένων καὶ πάντων αὕτων ἐναντίων τούτων, ἐπειδὴ γε ἀνεφάνη μεταβολῆς τε καὶ κινήσεως ἀπάσης αἰτία ἀπασίων;

καλ. Οὐκ, ἀλλὰ ἰκανότατα δέδεικται ψυχὴ τῶν πάντων πρεσβυτάτη, γενομένη γε ἀρχὴ κινήσεως.

ἀθ. Ἄρ' οὖν οὖν ἢ δ' ἔτερον ἐν ἄλλῳ γνωμομένη κίνησις, αὕτω δ' ἐν αὐτῷ μηδεποτε παρέχουσα κινεῖσθαι μηδέν, δευτέρα τε καὶ ὄπόσων ἀριθμῶν 336
LAWS, BOOK X

CLIN. We have instances of a thing divisible into two halves, both in arithmetic and elsewhere; in arithmetic the name of this is "the even," and the definition is "a number divisible into two equal parts."

ATH. Yes, that is what I mean. So in either case it is the same object, is it not, which we describe, whether, when asked for the definition, we reply by giving the name, or, when asked for the name, we give the definition,—describing one and the same object by the name "even," and by the definition "a number divisible into two halves"?

CLIN. Most certainly.

ATH. What is the definition of that object which has for its name "soul"? Can we give it any other definition than that stated just now—"the motion able to move itself"?

CLIN. Do you assert that "self-movement" is the definition of that very same substance which has "soul" as the name we universally apply to it?

ATH. That is what I assert. And if this be really so, do we still complain that it has not been sufficiently proved that soul is identical with the prime origin and motion of what is, has been, and shall be, and of all that is opposite to these, seeing that it has been plainly shown to be the cause of all change and motion in all things?

CLIN. We make no such complaint; on the contrary, it has been proved most sufficiently that soul is of all things the oldest, since it is the first principle of motion.

ATH. Then is not that motion which, when it arises in one object, is caused by another, and which never supplies self-motion to anything, second in
PLATO

βούλοιτο ἀν τις ἀριθμεῖν αὐτὴν πολλοστήν, τοσοῦτων, σώματος οὐσα δυτῶς ἀψύχου μεταβολή;

κλ. Ἀρθώς.

ἀθ. Ἀρθώς ἄρα καὶ κυρίως ἀληθεύσατα τε καὶ τελεότατα εἰρηκότες ἀν εἴμεν ψυχὴν μὲν προτέραν γεγονέναι σώματος ἡμῖν, σῶμα δὲ δεύτερον τε καὶ ύστερον ψυχῆς ἀρχούσης ἀρχόμενον κατὰ φύσιν.

κλ. Ἀληθεύσατα μὲν οὖν.

ἀθ. Μεμνήμεθά γε μὴν ὁμολογήσαντες ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν ὡς, εἰ ψυχῆς φανείη πρεσβυτέρα σώματος οὐσα, καὶ τὰ ψυχῆς τῶν τοῦ σώματος ἐσοιτο πρεσβύτερα.

κλ. Πάνι μὲν οὖν.

D ἀθ. Τρόποι δὲ καὶ ἡθὴ καὶ βουλήσεις καὶ λογισμοὶ καὶ δόξαι ἀληθεῖς ἐπιμέλειαί τε καὶ μνήμαι πρότερα μῆκους σωμάτων καὶ πλάτων καὶ βάθους καὶ ρόμης εἴη γεγονότα ἂν, εἴπερ καὶ ψυχῆς σώματος.

κλ. Ἀνάγκη.

ἀθ. Ἀρ’ οὖν τὸ μετὰ τούτῳ ὁμολογεῖν ἀναγκαῖον τῶν τε ἁγαθῶν αἰτίαν εἶναι ψυχὴν καὶ τῶν κακῶν καὶ καλῶν καὶ αἰσχρῶν δικαίων τε καὶ ἁδίκων καὶ πάντων τῶν ἐναντίων, εἴπερ τῶν πάντων γε αὐτὴν θήσομεν αἰτίαν;

κλ. Πῶς γὰρ οὖ;]

ἀθ. Ψυχὴν δὴ διοικοῦσαν καὶ ἐνοικοῦσαν ἐν ἅπασι τοῖς πάντῃ κινούμενοις μῶν οὐ καὶ τὸν οὐρανὸν ἀνάγκη διοικεῖν φάναι;

κλ. Τί μὴν;

ἀθ. Μίαν ἡ πλείους; Πλείους· ἐγὼ ὑπὲρ σφόν ἀποκρινοῦμαι. δυοῖν μὲν γε ποι ἐλαττον 338
LAWS, BOOK X

order—or indeed as far down the list as one cares to put it,—it being the change of a really soulless body?

 CLIN. True.

 ATH. Truly and finally, then, it would be a most veracious and complete statement to say that we find soul to be prior to body, and body secondary and posterior, soul governing and body being governed according to the ordinance of nature.

 CLIN. Yes, most veracious.

 ATH. We recollect, of course, that we previously agreed¹ that if soul could be shown to be older than body, then the things of soul also will be older than those of body.

 CLIN. Certainly we do.

 ATH. Moods and dispositions and wishes and calculations and true opinions and considerations and memories will be prior to bodily length, breadth, depth and strength, if soul is prior to body.

 CLIN. Necessarily.

 ATH. Must we then necessarily agree, in the next place, that soul is the cause of things good and bad, fair and foul, just and unjust, and all the opposites, if we are to assume it to be the cause of all things?

 CLIN. Of course we must.

 ATH. And as soul thus controls and indwells in all things everywhere that are moved, must we not necessarily affirm that it controls Heaven also?

 CLIN. Yes.

 ATH. One soul, is it, or several? I will answer for you—"several." Anyhow, let us assume not

¹ 892 A, B.
μηδὲν τιθῶμεν, τῆς τε εὐεργέτιδος καὶ τῆς τάναν-τία δυναμένης ἡξεργάζεσθαι.
κα. Σφόδρα ὥρθώς εἰρηκας.
α.Εἰεν. ἂνει μὲν δὴ ψυχῇ πάντα τὰ κατ' οὐρανὸν καὶ γῆν καὶ θάλατταν ταῖς αὐτῆς κινή-897 σειν, αἰς ὁνόματι ἐστὶ βούλεσθαι, σκοπεῖσθαι, ἐπιμελεῖσθαι, βουλεύεσθαι, δοξάζειν ὥρθως, ἐγευσ-μένως, χαίροντας, λυπουμένην, θαρροῦσαν, φο-βουμένην, μισοῦσαν, στέργοντας καὶ πάσας ὅσαι τοὺς ἔννοιαν ἡ πρωτοργοὶ κινήσεις τὰς δευ-τεροφοροὺς αὐ τοπολαμβάνουσι κινήσεις σωμά-των ἄγουσι πάντα εἰς αὐξῆσιν καὶ φθίσιν καὶ διάκρισιν καὶ σύγκρισιν καὶ τούτως ἐπομένας θερμότητας, ψυξίας, βαρύτητας, κουφότητας, Β σκληρὸν καὶ μαλακόν, λευκὸν καὶ μέλαν, αὐστηρὸν καὶ γλυκὸ καὶ πᾶσιν οἷς ψυχῇ χρωμένη, νοῦν μὲν προσλαβοῦσα ἀεὶ, οἶον ὥρθὼς θεός; ὅρθα καὶ εὐδαιμονα παιδαγωγεῖ πάντα, ἀνοίᾳ δὲ ἐγγενε-μένῃ πάντα αὐ τάναντία τούτως ἀπεργάζεται. τιθῶμεν ταῦτα οὕτως ἔχειν, ἢ ἐτι διστάζομεν εἰ ἐτέρως πως ἔχει;
κα. Οὐδαμῶς.
α. Πότερον οὖν δὴ ψυχῆς γένος ἐγκρατεῖς οὐρανοῦ καὶ γῆς καὶ πάσης τῆς περιόδου γεγο-νέαν φῶμεν; τὸ φρόνιμον καὶ ἀρετῆς πλῆρες, ἢ τὸ Σ μηδέτερα κεκτημένον; βούλεσθε οὖν πρὸς ταῦτα ὥθε ἀποκρινώμεθα;
κα. Πῶς;
α. Εἴ μὲν, ὦ θαυμάσιε, φῶμεν, ἡ ξύμπασα

1 οἰον ὥρθως θεός: θεόν (αὐ. θείον) ὥρθως θεός (marg. θεός οὖσα) MSS.: θεόν θεός οὖσα Ζυρ. (θείον ὥρθως θέουσα Winck., Herm. : θείον ὥρθως θεός ὃς Σταλλβ.).

340
LAWS, BOOK X

less than two—the beneficent soul and that which is capable of effecting results of the opposite kind.

CLIN. You are perfectly right.

ATH. Very well, then. Soul drives all things in Heaven and earth and sea by its own motions, of which the names are wish, reflection, forethought, counsel, opinion true and false, joy, grief, confidence, fear, hate, love, and all the motions that are akin to these or are prime-working motions; these, when they take over the secondary motions of bodies, drive them all to increase and decrease and separation and combination,¹ and, supervening on these, to heat and cold, heaviness and lightness, hardness and softness, whiteness and blackness, bitterness and sweetness, and all those qualities which soul employs, both when it governs all things rightly and happily as a true goddess, in conjunction with reason, and when, in converse with unreason, it produces results which are in all respects the opposite. Shall we postulate that this is so, or do we still suspect that it may possibly be otherwise?

CLIN. By no means.

ATH. Which kind of soul, then, shall we say is in control of Heaven and earth and the whole circle? That which is wise and full of goodness, or that which has neither quality? To this shall we make reply as follows?

CLIN. How?

ATH. If, my good sir, we are to assert that the

¹ Cp. 894 B, C.
ουρανοῦ ὁδὸς ἀμα καὶ φορὰ καὶ τῶν ἐν αὐτῷ ὄντων ἀπάντων νοῦ κινήσει καὶ περιφορὰ καὶ λογισμοῖς ὁμοίαις φύσιν ἔχει καὶ ἐνυγγενῶς ἐρχεται, δῆλον ὡς τὴν ἀρίστην ψυχήν φατέον ἐπιμελεῖσθαι τοῦ κόσμου παντὸς καὶ ἀγείν αὐτὸν τὴν τοιαύτην ὁδὸν ἐκείνην.

κλ. Ὄρθως.

D ἀ. Εἰ δὲ μανικῶς τε καὶ ἀτάκτως ἐρχεται, τὴν κακήν.

κλ. Καὶ ταῦτα ὀρθῶς.

ἀ. Ἡν οὖν δὴ νοῦ κινήσεις φύσιν ἔχει; τοῦτο ἣδι χαλεπῶν, ὥ φίλοι, ἐρώτημα ἀποκρινόμενον εἴπειν ἐμφρόνως. διὸ δὴ καὶ ἐμὲ τῆς ἀποκρίσεως ὑμῶν δίκαιον τὰ νῦν προσλαμβάνειν.

κλ. Εὕ λέγεις.

ἀ. Μη τοίνυν ἐξ ἑναντίας οἰον εἰς ἦλιον ἀποβλέποντες, νῦκτα ἐν μεσημβρία ἐπαγόμενοι, ποιησώμεθα τὴν ἀπόκρισιν, ὡς νοῦν ποτὲ θυντοῖς ὀμμασίων ὑφόμενοι τε καὶ γνωσόμενοι ἰκανῶς. Ε πρὸς δὲ εἰκόνα τοῦ ἐρωτωμένου βλέποντας ἀσφαλέστερον ὀρᾶν.

κλ. Πῶς λέγεις;

ἀ. Ἡν προσέοικε κινήσει νοῦς τῶν δέκα ἐκείνων κινήσεων τὴν εἰκόνα λάβομεν ἦν συναναμνησθεὶς ὑμῖν ἐγὼ κοινὴ τὴν ἀπόκρισιν ποιήσομαι.

κλ. Κάλλιστα ἂν λέγοις.

ἀ. Μεμνημεθα τοίνυν τὸ γε τοσοῦτον τῶν τῶν τότε ἐτί, ὅτι τῶν πάντων τὰ μὲν κινεῖσθαι, τὰ δὲ μένειν ἔθεμεν;

1 i.e. the uniform revolution of a sphere in the same spot and on its own axis: cp. 898 A; Tim. 34 A, B; 90 C, D.
whole course and motion of Heaven and of all it contains have a motion like to the motion and revolution and reckonings of reason, and proceed in a kindred manner, then clearly we must assert that the best soul regulates the whole cosmos and drives it on its course, which is of the kind described.

CLIN. You are right.

ATH. But the bad soul, if it proceeds in a mad and disorderly way.

CLIN. That also is right.

ATH. Then what is the nature of the motion of reason? Here, my friends, we come to a question that is difficult to answer wisely; consequently, it is fitting that you should now call me in to assist you with the answer.

CLIN. Very good.

ATH. In making our answer let us not bring on night, as it were, at midday, by looking right in the eye of the sun, as though with mortal eyes we could ever behold reason and know it fully; the safer way to behold the object with which our question is concerned is by looking at an image of it.

CLIN. How do you mean?

ATH. Let us take as an image that one of the ten motions which reason resembles; reminding ourselves of which I, along with you, will make answer.

CLIN. You will probably speak admirably.

ATH. Do we still recollect thus much about the things then described, that we assumed that, of the total, some were in motion, others at rest?


3 Cp. 893 B ff.; the motion to which reason is likened is the first of the ten.
PLATO

ΚΛ. Ναί.

ΑΘ. Τών δ’ αὖ κινουμένων τὰ μὲν ἐν ἐνὶ τόπῳ 898 κινεῖσθαι, τὰ δ’ ἐν πλείοσι φερομένα.

ΚΛ. Ἐστι ταῦτα.

ΑΘ. Τούτων δὴ τοῖν κινήσειν τὴν ἐν ἐνὶ φερομένην ἀεὶ περὶ γέ τι μέσον ἀνάγκην κινεῖσθαι τῶν ἐντόριων οὐσαν μὴμημα τι κύκλων, εἰναι τε αὐτὴν τῇ τοῦ νοῦ περιόδῳ πάντως ὡς δυνατόν οἰκειοτάτην τε καὶ ὁμοίαν.

ΚΛ. Πῶς λέγεις;

ΑΘ. Τὸ κατὰ ταῦτα δὴ ποι καὶ ωσαύτως καὶ ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ καὶ περὶ τὰ αὐτὰ καὶ πρὸς τὰ αὐτὰ καὶ <καθ> 2 ἐνα λόγον καὶ τάξιν μίαν ἀμφω κινεῖσθαι λέγοντες νοῦν τὴν τε ἐν ἐνὶ φερομένην Ἡ κίνησιν, σφαῖρας ἐντόριοι ἀπεικασμένα φοραῖς, οὐκ ἂν ποτε φανεῖμεν φαῦλοι δημιουργοί λόγῳ καλῶν εἰκόνων.

ΚΛ. Ὅρθοτατα λέγεις.

ΑΘ. Οὐκοῦν αὐτὴ ἡ γε μηδέποτε ωσαύτως μηδὲ κατὰ τὰ αὐτὰ μηδὲ ἐν ταῦτῳ μηδὲ περὶ ταῦτα μηδὲ πρὸς ταῦτα μηδὲ ἐν εἰς φερομένῃ μηδὲ ἐν Κόσμῳ μηδὲ ἐν ταξίν μηδὲ ἐν τοῖν λόγῳ κίνησις ἀνοίας ἄν ἀπάσης εἴη ἐνγεγενῆς;

ΚΛ. Εἰ ηγαρ ἄν ἀληθέστατα.

ΑΘ. Νῦν δὴ χαλεπῶν οὐδὲν ἐτί διαφρήδην εἰπεῖν ὡς, ἐπειδὴ ψυχὴ μὲν ἐστὶν ἡ περιάγωσα ἡμῖν πάντα, τῆρος 3 οὐρανοῦ περιφορὰν εὗ ἀνάγκης περιάγειν φατέον ἐπιμελουμένην καὶ κοσμοῦσαν ἦτοι τὴν ἀρίστην ψυχὴν ἡ τὴν ἐναντίαν.

1 ἀνάγκη : ἀνάγκη MSS., edd.
2 <καθ> added by Ast.
3 τῆρος Apelt : τὴν δὲ MSS., edd.
CLIN. Yes.
ATH. And further, that, of those in motion, some move in one place, others move in several places?
CLIN. That is so.
ATH. And that, of these two motions, the motion which moves in one place must necessarily move always round some centre, being a copy of the turned wheels; and that this has the nearest possible kinship and similarity to the revolution of reason? 1

CLIN. How do you mean?
ATH. If we described them both as moving regularly and uniformly in the same spot, round the same things and in relation to the same things, according to one rule and system—reason, namely, and the motion that spins in one place (likened to the spinning of a turned globe)—we should never be in danger of being deemed unskilful in the construction of fair images by speech.

CLIN. Most true.
ATH. On the other hand, will not the motion that is never uniform or regular or in the same place or around or in relation to the same things, not moving in one spot nor in any order or system or rule—will not this motion be akin to absolute unreason?

CLIN. It will, in very truth.
ATH. So now there is no longer any difficulty in stating expressly that, inasmuch as soul is what we find driving everything round, we must affirm that this circumference of Heaven is of necessity driven round under the care and ordering of either the best soul or its opposite.

PLATO

κλ. Ὡξένε, ἀλλὰ ἢ ἐκ τῶν νῦν εἰρημένων οὐδ’ ὁσίον ἀλλως λέγειν ἢ πᾶσαν ἁρετὴν ἐχοῦσαν ψυχήν μίαν ἢ πλείους περιάγειν αὐτά.

ἀθ. Κάλλιστα, ὡς Κλεωνία, ὑπήκουσας τοῖς Δ λόγοις. τόδε δὲ προσυπάκουσον ἐτι.

κλ. Τὸ ποιοῦν;

ἀθ. Ἡλιον καὶ σελήνην καὶ τὰ ἀλλὰ ἀστρα, εἴπερ ψυχὴ περιάγει πάντα, ἃρ’ οὐ καὶ ἐν ἑκαστον;

κλ. Τί μὴν;

ἀθ. Περὶ ἑνὸς δὴ ποιησώμεθα λόγους, οὗ καὶ ἐπὶ πάντα ἡμῖν ἀστρα ἀρμόττοντες φανοῦνται.

κλ. Τίνος;

ἀθ. Ἡλιον πᾶς ἀνθρωπὸς σῶμα μὲν ὀρᾶ, ψυχὴν δὲ οὐδείς: οὐδὲ γὰρ ἀλλοι σώματος οὖν δενὸς οὕτε ζώντος οὕτε ἀποθησκούσος τῶν ζώων, ἀλλὰ ἐλπὶς πολλῇ τὸ παράπαν τὸ γένος ἡμῖν Ε τοῦτο ἀναίσθητον πάσαις ταῖς τοῦ σώματος αἰσθήσει περιπεφυκέναι, νοητὸν δ’ εἶναι νῦ μόνω. ἓ <ὁ> 1 δὴ καὶ διανοήματι λάβωμεν αὐτοῦ πέρι τὸ τοιόνδε.

κλ. Ποιοῦν;

ἀθ. Ἡλιον εἰ περιάγει ψυχή, τριῶν αὐτὴν ἐν λέγοντες δρᾶν σχεδὸν οὐκ ἀποτευξόμεθα.

κλ. Τίνων;

ἀθ. Ὡς ἢ ἑνοῦσα ἐντὸς τῷ περιφερεῖ τούτῳ φαινομένῳ σώματι πάντη διακομίζει τὸ τοιοῦτον, καθάπερ ἡμᾶς ἢ παρ’ ἡμῖν ψυχὴ πάντη περιφέρει: ἡ ποθεν ἐξωθεν σῶμα αὐτῇ πορισμαίνῃ πυρὸς ἢ

1 ἵ. ἑ. envelopes the body and its sense-organs (like circum-ambient air).
LAWS, BOOK X

CLIN. But, Stranger, judging by what has now been said, it is actually impious to make any other assertion than that these things are driven round by one or more souls endowed with all goodness.

ATH. You have attended to our argument admirably, Clinias. Now attend to this further point.

CLIN. What is that?

ATH. If soul drives round the sum total of sun, moon and all other stars, does it not also drive each single one of them?

CLIN. Certainly.

ATH. Then let us construct an argument about one of these stars which will evidently apply equally to them all.

CLIN. About which one?

ATH. The sun's body is seen by everyone, its soul by no one. And the same is true of the soul of any other body, whether alive or dead, of living beings. There is, however, a strong suspicion that this class of object, which is wholly imperceptible to sense, has grown round all the senses of the body,¹ and is an object of reason alone. Therefore by reason and rational thought let us grasp this fact about it,—

CLIN. What fact?

ATH. If soul drives round the sun, we shall be tolerably sure to be right in saying that it does one of three things.

CLIN. What things?

ATH. That either it exists everywhere inside of this apparent globular body and directs it, such as it is, just as the soul in us moves us about in all ways; or, having procured itself a body of fire or
tivos áéros, ὃς λόγος ἐστὶ τινων, ὥθεὶ βία σῶματι
899 σώμα: ἡ τρίτον αὐτὴ ψυλή σώματος οὐσά, ἐχουσα
dε δυνάμεις ἄλλας τινὰς υπερβαλλοῦσας, θαύματι
ποδηγεῖ.

κλ.¹ Ναί: τούτο μὲν ἀνάγκη, τούτων εὖ γέ τι
δρόμον ψυχὴν πάντα διάγειν.

ἀθ. Αὐτοῦ δὴτα μείνον.² ταύτην τὴν ψυχήν,
eἰτὲ ἐν ἄρμασιν ἐνοῦσα ἡμῖν ἡλίου³ ἅγει φῶς τοῖς
ἀπασιν εἰτ' ἕξωθεν εἰθ' ὅπως εἰθ' ὅπη, θεὸν ἡγεῖ-
σθαι χρεών πάντα ἄνδρα. ἢ πῶς;

Β κλ. Ναί, τὸν γέ πον μὴ ἐπὶ τὸ ἐσχατὸν
ἀφιγμένον ἄνοιας.

ἀθ. Ἀστρων δὲ δὴ πέρι πάντων καὶ σελήνης
ἐνιαυτῶν τε καὶ μηνῶν καὶ πασῶν ὦρῶν πέρι
τίνα ἄλλον λόγον ἔροῦμεν ἢ τὸν αὐτὸν τούτον, ὡς
ἐπειδὴ ψυχὴ μὲν ἡ ψυχαὶ πάντων τούτων αἰτια
ἐφάνησαν, ἀγαθαὶ δὲ πᾶσαν ἄρετῆν, θεοὺς αὐτὰς
eἶναι φήσομεν, εἰτὲ ἐν σώμασιν ἐνοῦσαι, ξῶα ὄντα,
κοσμοῦσι πάντα οὐρανὸν εἰτε ὅπη τε καὶ ὅπως;
ἐσθ' ὅστις ταῦτα ὡμολογῶν ὑπομενεῖ μὴ θεῶν
eἶναι πλήρη πάντα;

C κλ. Οὐκ ἐστίν οὕτως, ὃ ξένε, παραφρονῶν
οὐδείς.

ἀθ. Τῷ μὲν τοίνυν μὴ νομίζωτι θεοὺς ἐν τῷ
πρόσθεν χρόνῳ, ὃ Μέγιλλὲ τε καὶ Κλεινία,
eἰπόντες ὀροὺς ἀπαλλαττώμεθα.

¹ After Ficinus and Hermann I give Ναί . . . διάγειν to
Clin.; Zur., al., give only Ναί.

² δὴ τα μείνον.: δὴ ἡμείνον MSS. (Apelt also ci. μείνον:
Schneider and England bracket αὐτοῦ δὴ ἡμείνον and add δὴ
after ταύτην).

³ ἐνοῦσα . . . ἡλίου: ἐχουσα . . . ἡλίου MSS., edd.

348
air (as some argue), it in the form of body pushes forcibly on the body from outside; or, thirdly, being itself void of body, but endowed with other surpassingly marvellous potencies, it conducts the body.

clin. Yes, it must necessarily be the case that soul acts in one of these ways when it propels all things.

ath. Here, I pray you, pause. This soul,—whether it is by riding in the car of the sun, or from outside, or otherwise, that it brings light to us all—every man is bound to regard as a god. Is not that so?

clin. Yes; everyone at least who has not reached the uttermost verge of folly.

ath. Concerning all the stars and the moon, and concerning the years and months and all seasons, what other account shall we give than this very same,—namely, that, inasmuch as it has been shown that they are all caused by one or more souls, which are good also with all goodness, we shall declare these souls to be gods, whether it be that they order the whole heaven by residing in bodies, as living creatures, or whatever the mode and method? Is there any man that agrees with this view who will stand hearing it denied that “all things are full of gods”? 2

clin. There is not a man, Stranger, so wrong-headed as that.

ath. Let us, then, lay down limiting conditions for the man who up till now disbelieves in gods, O Megillus and Clinias, and so be quit of him.

1 Cp. Tim. 41 D, E, where the Creator is said to apportion a soul to each star, in which it rides “as though in a chariot.”

2 A dictum of Thales: Ar. de An. 411a 7 ff.
κα. Τίνας;

α. "Η διδάσκειν ἡμᾶς ως οὐκ ὀρθῶς λέγομεν τιθέμενοι ψυχήν γένεσιν ἀπάντων εἶναι πρώτην καὶ τάλλα ὁπόσα τούτω ξυνεπόμενα εἴπομεν, ἢ μὴ δυνάμενον βέλτιον λέγειν ἡμῶν ἡμῖν πείθομεν καὶ ξύνθεον ἡγούμενον εἰς τὸν ἐπίλοιπον βίον. Δ ὁρώμεν οὖν εἰτε ἰκανῶς ἢ ὅτα ὁμ ἡγούμενοι θεούς εἰρήκαμεν ὡς εἰςί θεοί, εἰτε ἐπίδειδος.

κα. "Ηκιστά γε, ὦ ξένε, πάντων ἐπίδειδος.

α. Τούτοις μὲν τοιῶν ἡμῖν τὸ λόγων τέλος ἐχέτω· τὸν δὲ ἡγούμενον μὲν θεοὺς εἶναι, μὴ φροντίζειν δὲ αὐτοὺς τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων πραγμάτων, παραμυθητέον. ού ἀριστε δή, φῶμεν, ὅτι μὲν ἡγεῖ θεοὺς, συγγένειά τις ἴσως σε θεία πρὸς τὸ ξύμφυτον ἀγεί τιμᾶν καὶ νομίζειν εἶναι κακῶν δὲ ἀνθρώπων καὶ ἄδικων τύχαι ἱδία καὶ δημοσία, ἀληθεία μὲν οὐκ εὐδαιμονές, δόξαι δὲ εὐδαιμονιζόμεναι σφόδρα ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐμμελῶς, ἀγοιοί σε πρὸς ἀσέβειαν, ἐν τε Μουσαίοις οὐκ ὀρθῶς ὑμνοῦμεν αἵμα καὶ ἐν παντοτίοις λόγοις. ἥ καὶ πρὸς τέλος ἴσως [ἀνοσίους] ἀνθρώπους ὀρθῶς ἐλθόντας γῆρας, παιδᾶς παιδῶν καταληπτόντας ἐν τιμαῖς 900 ταῖς μεγίσταις, ταράττει <ὅταν> τὸν ἐν ἀπασί τούτοις [ἰδὼν] ἢ δι' ἀκοῆς αἰσθόμενος ἢ καὶ παντάπαινος αὐτός αὐτόπτης προστύχῃς πολλῶν ἀσεβημάτων καὶ δεινῶν γενομένων τισι δι' αὐτὰ τινὰ ἐκ σμικρῶν εἰς τυραννίδας τε καὶ τὰ μέγιστα ἀφικομένοις· τότε δὲ πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα δῆλος

1 [ἀνοσίους] omitted in best MSS.
2 γῆρας: γηραίοις MSS., edd.
3 <ὅταν> added by Euseb.
4 προστύχῃς: προστυχής MSS.: προστυχών Zur., vulg.
5 ἀφικομένοις Ritter: ἀφικομένους MSS., edd.
LAWS, BOOK X

CLIN. What conditions?

ATH. That either he must teach us that we are wrong in laying down that soul is of all things the first production, together with all the consequential statements we made,—or, if he is unable to improve on our account, he must believe us, and for the rest of his life live in veneration of the gods. Let us, then, consider whether our argument for the existence of the gods addressed to those who disbelieve in them has been stated adequately or defectively.

CLIN. Anything rather than defectively, Stranger.

ATH. Then let our argument have an end, in so far as it is addressed to these men. But the man who holds that gods exist, but pay no regard to human affairs,—him we must admonish. "My good sir," let us say, "the fact that you believe in gods is due probably to a divine kinship drawing you to what is of like nature, to honour it and recognise its existence; but the fortunes of evil and unjust men, both private and public,—which, though not really happy, are excessively and improperly lauded as happy by public opinion,—drive you to impiety by the wrong way in which they are celebrated, not only in poetry, but in tales of every kind. Or again, when you see men attaining the goal of old age, and leaving behind them children's children in the highest offices, very likely you are disturbed, when amongst the number of these you discover—whether from hearsay or from your own personal observation—some who have been guilty of many dreadful impieties, and who, just because of these, have risen from a small position to royalty and the highest rank; then the consequence of all this
PLATO

eὶ μείμφεσθαι μὲν θεοὺς ὡς αὐτίους ὄντας τῶν
tοιούτων διὰ ξυγγένειαν ὅυκ ἂν ἐθέλων· ἀγόμενος
dὲ ὑπὸ τινός ἀλογίας ἀμα καὶ οὐ δυνάμενος

Β δυσχεραῖνειν θεοὺς εἰς τούτο νῦν τὸ πάθος ἐλήλυ-
θας ὡστ' εἶναι μὲν δοκεῖν αὐτοὺς, τῶν δὲ ἀνθρω-

πίνων καταφρονεῖν καὶ ἀμέλειν πραγμάτων. ἢνα
οὖν μη ἐπὶ μειξόν ἐλθῃ σοι πάθος πρὸς ἀσέβειαν τὸ

νῦν παρὸν δόγμα, ἄλλ', εὰν πως <οἷόν τε>,¹ οἰον
ἀποδιοπομπήσασθαι λόγοις αὐτὸ προσίτῳ γενώ-

μεθα δυνατοί, πειρώμεθα, συνάψαντες τὸν ἐξ ἡς

λόγον δρὸς τὸν τὸ παρὰπαν ὁμ ήγούμενον θεοὺς

ἐξ ἀρχῆς διεπερανᾶμεθα, τούτῳ τὰ νῦν προσχρή-

C σασθαι. σὺ δ', ὦ Κλεινία τε καὶ Μέγιλλε, ὑπὲρ

τοῦ νέου καθάπερ ἐν τοῖς ἐμπροσθεν ἀποκρινόμενοι
diaδέχεσθε· ἂν δὲ τι δύσκολον ἐμπίπτῃ τοῖς

λόγοις, ἐγὼ σφο ὅσπερ νῦν δὴ δεξάμενος διαβιβῶ

τὸν ποταμόν.

κα. Ὁρθῶς λέγεις: καὶ σὺ τε οὕτω ταῦτα
drα ποιήσωμεν τε ἦμεις εἰς τὸ δυνατὸν ἂ

λέγεις.

ἀθ. Ὁλλ' οὖδὲν τάχ' ἂν ἰσως εἰν χαλεπῶν
ἐνδείξασθαι τούτως ² γε, ὡς ἐπιμελεῖς σμικρῶν εἰς

θεοὶ οὐχ ἴττον ἡ τῶν μεγέθει διαφέρουτων. ἦκουε

D γάρ που καὶ παρῆν τοῖς νῦν δὴ λεγομένοις, ὡς

ἀγαθοὶ γε ὅντες πᾶσαν ἄρετὴν τὴν τῶν πάντων

ἐπιμέλειαν οἰκειοτάτην αὐτῶν οὕσαν κέκτηται.

κα. Καὶ σφόδρα γε ἐπήκουεν.

ἀθ. Τὸ μετὰ τούτο τούτων κωνή συνεξεταζώντων,
tίνα λέγοντες ἄρετὴν αὐτῶν ὀμολογοῦμεν αὐτοὺς

1 <οἷόν τε> I add (ἐναντίον for ἕαν πως, Apelt).
2 τούτῳ England: τούτῳ MSS.

352
clearly is that, since on the one hand you are unwilling to hold the gods responsible for such things because of your kinship to them, and since on the other hand you are driven by lack of logic and inability to repudiate the gods, you have come to your present morbid state of mind, in which you opine that the gods exist, but scorn and neglect human affairs. In order, therefore, that your present opinion may not grow to a greater height of morbid impiety, but that we may succeed in repelling the onset of its pollution (if haply we are able) by argument, let us endeavour to attach our next argument to that which we set forth in full to him who utterly disbelieves in gods, and thereby to employ the latter as well.” And do you, Clinias and Megillus, take the part of the young man in answering, as you did before; and should anything untoward occur in the course of the argument, I will make answer for you, as I did just now, and convey you across the stream.¹

CLIN. A good suggestion! We will do our best to carry it out; and do you do likewise.

ATH. Well, there will probably be no difficulty in proving to this man that the gods care for small things no less than for things superlatively great. For, of course, he was present at our recent argument, and heard that the gods, being good with all goodness, possess such care of the whole as is most proper to themselves.

CLIN. Most certainly he heard that.

ATH. Let us join next in enquiring what is that goodness of theirs in respect of which we agree that

¹ Cp. 892 D, E.
ἀγαθοῦς εἶναι. φέρε, τὸ σωφρονεῖν νοῦν τε κεκτῆσθαί φαμεν ἀρετὴν, τὰ δ' ἐναντία κακίας;
κλ. Γαμέν.
α. Τί δαί; ἀρετὴν μὲν ἀνδρίαν εἶναι, δειλίαν δὲ κακίας;
κλ. Πάνω μὲν οὖν.
Ε α. Καὶ τὰ μὲν αἰσχρὰ τούτων, τὰ δὲ καλὰ φήσομεν;
κλ. 'Ανάγκη.
α. Καὶ τῶν μὲν προσήκειν ἡμῖν, εἴπερ, ὅπόσα φλαῦρα, θεοῖς δὲ οὕτε μέγα οὕτε σμικρὸν τῶν τοιούτων μετὸν ἐροῦμεν;
κλ. Καὶ ταῦθ' οὕτως ὀμολογοῖ πᾶσὶ ἄν.
α. Τί δαί; ἀμέλειαν τε καὶ ἀργίαν καὶ τρυφὴν εἰς ἀρετὴν ψυχῆς θήσομεν; ἢ πῶς λέγεις;
κλ. Καὶ πῶς;
α. 'Αλλ' εἰς τοῦναντίουν;
κλ. Ναι.

901 α. Τοῦναντία ἀρα τούτωι εἰς τοῦναντίον.
κλ. Τοῦναντίον.
α. Τί οὖν δή; τρυφῶν καὶ ἀμελῆς ἀργός τε, ὅν ὁ ποιητὴς κηφῆσι κοθούροις μάλιστα εἰκελον ἐφασκεν εἶναι, γῆγοντ' ἀν [ό] τοιοῦτος πᾶς ἡμῖν;
κλ. 'Ορθότατά γε εἰπών.
α. Οὐκοῦν τὸν γε θεοῦ οὐ ῥητέον ἐχειν ἡθος τοιοῦτον ὃ γέ τοι αὐτὸς μισεί· τῷ τε τι τοιοῦτον φθέγγεσθαι πειρωμένω οὐκ ἐπιτρεπτέον.
κλ. Οὐ μὲν δή' πῶς γάρ ἄν;
α. Ὠμι δή προσήκει μὲν πράττειν καὶ ἔπιμε-

1 [ό] bracketed by Burnet.
they are good. Come now, do we say that prudence and the possession of reason are parts of goodness, and the opposites of these of badness?

CLIN. We do say so.

ATH. And further, that courage is part of goodness, and cowardice of badness?

CLIN. Certainly.

ATH. And shall we say that some of these are foul, others fair?

CLIN. Necessarily.

ATH. And shall we say that all such as are mean belong to us, if to anyone, whereas the gods have no share in any such things, great or small?

CLIN. To this, too, everyone would assent.

ATH. Well then, shall we reckon neglect, idleness and indolence as goodness of soul? Or how say you?

CLIN. How could we?

ATH. As the opposite, then?

CLIN. Yes.

ATH. And the opposites of these as of the opposite quality of soul?

CLIN. Of the opposite quality.

ATH. What then? He who is indolent, careless and idle will be in our eyes what the poet described\(^1\) —"a man most like to sting-less drones"?

CLIN. A most true description.

ATH. That God has such a character we must certainly deny, seeing that he hates it; nor must we allow anyone to attempt to say so.

CLIN. We could not possibly allow that.

ATH. When a person whose duty it is especially

Βλείσθαι διαφερόντως τινός, ὁ δὲ τούτον γε νοῦς τῶν μὲν μεγάλων ἐπιμελεῖται, τῶν σμικρῶν δὲ ἀμελεῖ, κατὰ τίνα ἐπαινοῦντες τὸν τοιούτον λόγον οὐκ ἂν παντάπασι πλημμελοῦμεν; σκοπῶμεν δὲ ὁδε. ἀρ’ οὐ κατὰ δύο εἶδη τὸ τοιούτον πράττει ὁ πράττων, εἴτε θεὸς εἴτ’ ἄνθρωπος;

κλ. Πῶς δὴ λέγομεν;

α. Ἡ διαφέρον οὐδὲν οἴόμενος εἰναι τῷ ὅλῳ ἑ ἀμελεῖ, ἔστιν ἄλλως πως γυγομένῃ ἀμέλεια; οὐ γὰρ που ῞τον γε ἄδυνατον ἥ τῶν ἀπάντων ἐπιμελεῖσθαι, τότε ἀμέλεια ἔσται τῶν σμικρῶν ἡ μεγάλων μὴ ἐπιμελουμένως, ἂν ἂν δυνάμει θεὸς ἡ φαύλος τις ὑἱν ἐλλιπῆς καὶ μὴ δυνατὸς ἐπιμελεῖσθαι γόγγηται.

κλ. Πῶς γὰρ ἂν;

α. Νῦν δὴ δυ’ ὄντες τρισὶν ἡμῖν οὖσιν ἀποκρινώσθωσαν οἱ θεοὶ μὲν ἀμφότεροι ὀμολογοῦντες εἰναι, παραίτητοι δὲ ἄτερος, ὁ δὲ ἀμελεῖς τῶν σμικρῶν. πρῶτον μὲν θεοὺς ἀμφότεροι φατε γυγρόσκειν καὶ ὅραν καὶ ἀκούειν πάντα, λαθεῖν δὲ αὐτοὺς οὐδὲν δυνατὸν εἶναι τῶν ὀπόσων εἰσὶν [αὐ] ἀἰσθήσεις τε καὶ ἐπιστῆμαι. ταύτῃ λέγετε ἔχειν ταύτα, ἡ πῶς;

κλ. Οὔτως.

α. Τί δαί; δύνασθαι πάντα ὀπόσων αὖ δύναμις ἔστι θυντοῖς τε καὶ ἰδανάτοις;

κλ. Πῶς γὰρ οὐ συγχρησοῦνται καὶ ταύτα οὕτως ἔχειν;

1 διαφέρειν: διαφέρει MSS., edd.
to act and care for some object has a mind that cares for great things, but neglects small things, on what principle could we praise such a person without the utmost impropriety? Let us consider the matter in this way: the action of him who acts thus, be he god or man, takes one of two forms, does it not?

CLIN. What forms?

ATH. Either because he thinks that neglect of the small things makes no difference to the whole, or else, owing to laziness and indolence, he neglects them, though he thinks they do make a difference. Or is there any other way in which neglect occurs? For when it is impossible to care for all things, it will not in that case be neglect of great things or small when a person—be he god or common man—fails to care for things which he lacks the power and capacity to care for.

CLIN. Of course not.

ATH. Now to us three let these two men make answer, of whom both agree that gods exist, but the one asserts that they can be bribed, and the other that they neglect the small. First, you both assert that the gods know and hear and see all things,¹ and that nothing of all that is apprehended by senses or sciences can escape their notice; do you assert that this is so, or what?

CLIN. That is what we assert.²

ATH. And further, that they can do all that can be done by mortal or immortal?

CLIN. They will, of course, admit that this also is the case.

¹ Cp. 641 E.
² Here, and in what follows, Clinias is answering on behalf of the two misbelievers.
Ε ΑΘ. Καὶ μὴν ἁγαθοῦς γε καὶ ἀρίστους ὦμολογήκαμεν αὐτοὺς εἶναι πέντε ὄντες.

ΚΑ. Σφόδρα γε.

ΑΘ. Ἀρ' οὖν οὐ λαβυρία μὲν καὶ τρυφὴ ἀδύνατον αὐτοὺς ὦμολογεῖν πράττειν ὅτι οὐ τὸ παράπαν, ὄντας γε οἶνος λέγομεν; δειλίας γὰρ ἐκγονος ἐν γε ἡμῖν ἀργία, λαβυρία δὲ ἀργίας καὶ τρυφῆς.

ΚΑ. Ἀληθέστατα λέγεις.

ΑΘ. Ἀργία μὲν δὴ καὶ λαβυρία οὐδεὶς ἀμέλει θεῶν οὐ γὰρ μέτεστιν αὐτῷ ποιν δειλίας.

ΚΑ. Ὁρθότατα λέγεις.

902 ΑΘ. Ὅνικοῦν τὸ λοιπὸν, εἴπερ ἀμελοῦσι τῶν σμικρῶν καὶ ὀλίγων τῶν περὶ τὸ πᾶν, ἡ γιγνώσκοιτε ως τὸ παράπαν οὐδενὸς τῶν τουοτῶν ἐπιμελεῖσθαι δει, δρῆν ἄν τοῦτο, ήτι τὸ λοιπὸν πλὴρ τῷ γιγνώσκειν τοῦναντίον;

ΚΑ. Οὐδέν.

ΑΘ. Πότερον οὖν, ὃ ἀριστε καὶ βέλτιστε, θομέν σε λέγοντα, ὡς ἀγνοοῦντας τε καὶ δεόν ἐπιμελεῖσθαι δι' ἄγνοιαν ἀμελοῦντας, ἡ γιγνώσκοιτας ὅτι δει, καθάπερ οἱ φαντάζοντος τῶν ἀνθρώπων λέγονται ποιεῖν, εἰδότες ἄλλα εἶναι βελτίων πράττειν ὅτι δὴ πράττομεν διὰ τινάς ἦττας ἥδονῶν ἢ λυπῶν

Β οὐ ποιεῖν;

ΚΑ. Πῶς γὰρ ἄν;

ΑΘ. Ὅνικοῦν δὴ τά γε ἀνθρώπινα πράγματα τῆς τε ἐμψύχου μετέχει φύσεως ἀμα, καὶ θεοσεβέστατον αὐτό ἐστι πάντων ἕως ἀνθρωπος;

ΚΑ. Ἐοικε γοῦν.

358
ATH. And it is undeniable that all five of us agreed that the gods are good, yea, exceeding good.

CLIN. Most certainly.

ATH. Being, then, such as we agree, is it not impossible to allow that they do anything at all in a lazy and indolent way? For certainly amongst us mortals idleness is the child of cowardice, and laziness of idleness and indolence.

CLIN. Very true.

ATH. None, then, of the gods is neglectful owing to idleness and laziness, seeing that none has any part in cowardice.

CLIN. You are very right.

ATH. Further, if they do neglect the small and scant things of the All, they will do so either because they know that there is no need at all to care for any such things or—well, what other alternative is there except the opposite of knowing?

CLIN. There is none.

ATH. Shall we then assume, my worthy and excellent sir, that you assert that the gods are ignorant, and that it is through ignorance that they are neglectful when they ought to be showing care,—or that they know indeed what is needful, yet act as the worst of men are said to do, who, though they know that other things are better to do than what they are doing, yet do them not, owing to their being somehow defeated by pleasures or pains?

CLIN. Impossible.

ATH. Do not human affairs share in animate nature, and is not man himself, too, the most god-fearing of all living creatures?

CLIN. That is certainly probable.
ΑΘ. Θεῶν γε μὴν κτήματά φαμεν εἶναι πάντα ὀπόσα θυητὰ ξῶα, ὃνπερ καὶ τὸν οὐρανὸν ὅλον.
ΚΑ. Πῶς γὰρ οὐ;
ΑΘ. Ἡδή τούννυ σμικρὰ ἢ μεγάλα τις φάτω
Σταῦτα εἶναι τοῖς θεοῖς· οὐδετέρως γὰρ τοῖς κεκτημένοις ἡμᾶς ἀμελεῖν ἂν εἴη προσήκον, ἐπιμελεστάτοις γε οὕσι καὶ ἀρίστοις. σκοπῶμεν γὰρ δὴ καὶ τόδε ἐτι πρὸς τούτοις;
ΚΑ. Τὸ ποῖον;
ΑΘ. Τὸ περὶ τε αἰσθῆσεως καὶ δυνάμεως, ἄρ' οὐκ ἐναντίως ἀλλήλοις πρὸς ὀστώνην καὶ χαλεπότητα ἐστον πεφυκότε; 
ΚΑ. Πῶς λέγεις;
ΑΘ. 'Ορὰν μὲν που καὶ ἀκούειν τὰ σμικρὰ χαλεπώτερον ἢ τὰ μεγάλα, φέρειν δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ κρατεῖν καὶ ἐπιμελεῖσθαι τῶν σμικρῶν καὶ ὀλίγων παντὶ ῥάν η τῶν ἐναντίων.
ΚΑ. Καὶ πολὺ γε.
ΑΘ. Ιατρῷ δὲ προστεταγμένοι ὅλον τι θεραπεύειν βουλομένω καὶ δυναμένω, τῶν μὲν μεγάλων ἐπιμελομένῳ, τῶν μορῶν δὲ καὶ σμικρῶν ἠμελοῦντι, ἐξεὶ ποτὲ καλῶς αὐτῷ τὸ πᾶν;
ΚΑ. Οὐδαμῶς.
ΑΘ. Οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ κυβερνήταις οὐδὲ στρατηγοῖς οὐδ' οἰκονόμοις οὐδ' αὐτ' τις' πολιτικοῖς οὐδ' ἀλλ' τῶν τοιοῦτων οὐδεπο χωρίς τῶν ὀλίγων καὶ Ε' σμικρῶν πολλὰ ἢ μεγάλα: οὐδὲ γὰρ ἀνευ σμικρῶν τοὺς μεγάλους φασίν οἱ λαθολόγοι λίθους εὐ κείσθαι.
ΚΑ. Πῶς γὰρ ἂν;
ΑΘ. Μή τοίνυν τὸν γε θεὸν ἀξιώσωμεν ποτὲ θυητῶν δημιουργῶν φαυλότερον, οἱ τὰ προσ-360
ATH. We affirm that all mortal creatures are possessions of the gods, to whom belongs also the whole heaven.

CLIN. Of course.

ATH. That being so, it matters not whether a man says that these things are small or great in the eyes of the gods; for in neither case would it behove those who are our owners to be neglectful, seeing that they are most careful and most good. For let us notice this further fact——

CLIN. What is it?

ATH. In regard to perception and power,—are not these two naturally opposed in respect of ease and difficulty?

CLIN. How do you mean?

ATH. It is more difficult to see and hear small things than great; but everyone finds it more easy to move, control and care for things small and few than their opposites.

CLIN. Much more.

ATH. When a physician is charged with the curing of a whole body, if, while he is willing and able to care for the large parts, he neglects the small parts and members, will he ever find the whole in good condition?

CLIN. Certainly not.

ATH. No more will pilots or generals or house-managers, nor yet statesmen or any other such persons, find that the many and great thrive apart from the few and small; for even masons say that big stones are not well laid without little stones.

CLIN. They cannot be.

ATH. Let us never suppose that God is inferior to mortal craftsmen who, the better they are, the more
ήκοντα αὐτοῖς ἔργα, ὁσωπερ ἂν ἀμείνους ὤσι, τόσῳ ἀκριβέστερα καὶ τελεότερα μη τέχψη σμικρὰ καὶ μεγάλα ἄπεργαζονται· τὸν δὲ θεὸν, ὅντα τε σοφώτατον βουλόμενον τ' ἐπιμελείσθαι 903 καὶ δυνάμενον, ὃν μὲν ῥαὸν ἢν ἐπιμεληθήναι σμικρῶν ὄντων μηδαμὴ ἐπιμελεῖσθαι καθάπερ ἄργον ἢ δειλόν τινα διὰ πόνους ραθυμοῦντα, τὸν δὲ μεγάλων.

κα. Μηδαμῶς δόξαν τοιαύτῃν περὶ θεῶν, ὃ ξένε, ἀποδεχώμεθα· οὐδαμὴ γὰρ ὄσιον ὦτ' ἀληθὲς τὸ διανόημα διανοούμεθ' ἃν.

α. Δοκοῦμεν δὲ μοι νῦν ἡδὴ καὶ μάλα μετρίως διειλέχθαι τῷ φίλαςτῷ τῆς ἀμελείας περὶ θεῶν.

κα. Ναὶ.

α. Τῷ γε βιάζεσθαι τοῖς λόγοις ὀμολογεῖν

Β αὐτὸν μὴ λέγειν ὀρθῶς. ἐποδὸν γε μὴν προσ- δείσθαι μοι δοκεῖ μῦθων ἕτη τινῶν.

κα. Ποίων, ὃ γαθέ; 

α. Πείθωμεν τὸν νεανίαν τοῖς λόγοις ὡς τῷ τοῦ παντὸς ἐπιμελουμένῳ πρὸς τὴν σωτηρίαν καὶ ἄρετὴν τοῦ ὅλου πάντ', ἐστὶ συντεταγμένα, ὅν καὶ τὸ μέρος εἰς δύναμιν ἐκαστὸν τὸ προσήκον πάσχει καὶ ποιεῖ. τούτως δ' εἰσίν ἄρχοντες προστεταγμένοι ἐκάστοις ἔπτ' τὸ σμικρότατον ἀεὶ πάθης καὶ πράξεως, εἰς μερισμὸν τὸν έσχα-

C τον <τὸ>1 τέλος ἀπειργασμένου ἃν ἐν καὶ τὸ σὸν, ὃ σχέτλει, μόριον εἰς τὸ πᾶν ἡννεῖνε βλέπων ἀεί, καὶπερ πάνσμικρον ὅν. σὲ δὲ λέληθε περὶ τούτῳ αὐτὸ ὥς γένεσις ἕνεκα ἐκείνου γίγνεται πᾶσα, ὅπως ἢ ἢ τῷ τοῦ παντὸς βίῳ ὑπάρχουσα εὐδαίμονον οὐσία, ὅχε ἔνεκα σοῦ

362
accurately and perfectly do they execute their proper tasks, small and great, by one single art,—or that God, who is most wise, and both willing and able to care, cares not at all for the small things which are the easier to care for—like one who shirks the labour because he is idle and cowardly,—but only for the great.

CLIN. By no means let us accept such an opinion of the gods, Stranger: that would be to adopt a view that is neither pious nor true at all.

ATH. And now, as I think, we have argued quite sufficiently with him who loves to censure the gods for neglect.

CLIN. Yes.

ATH. And it was by forcing him by our arguments to acknowledge that what he says is wrong. But still he needs also, as it seems to me, some words of counsel to act as a charm upon him.

CLIN. What kind of words, my good sir?

ATH. Let us persuade the young man by our discourse that all things are ordered systematically by Him who cares for the World—all with a view to the preservation and excellence of the Whole, whereof also each part, so far as it can, does and suffers what is proper to it. To each of these parts, down to the smallest fraction, rulers of their action and passion are appointed to bring about fulfilment even to the utmost fraction; whereof thy portion also, O perverse man, is one, and tends therefore always in its striving towards the All, tiny though it be. But thou failest to perceive that all partial generation is for the sake of the Whole, in order that for the life of the World—all blissful existence may be secured.

1 <τὸ> added by Stephens.
γιγνομένη, σὺ δὲ ἑνεκα ἐκεῖνοι. πᾶς γὰρ ἰατρὸς καὶ πᾶς έντεχνος δημουργὸς παντὸς μὲν ἑνεκα πάντα ἐργάζεται, πρὸς τὸ κοινὴ ξυπτείνων βέλτιστον, μέρος μὴν ἑνεκα ὅλον καὶ οὖν ὅλον μέρος
D ἑνεκα ἀπεργάζεται. σὺ δὲ ἀγανακτεῖς ἀγνοῶν ὅτι τὸ περὶ σὲ ἀριστον τῷ παντὶ ξυμβαίνει καὶ σοὶ κατὰ δύναμιν τὴν τὴς κοινῆς γενέσεως. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἰατρὸς συντεταγμένη σώματι τοτε μὲν ἀλλω, τοτε δὲ ἀλλω, μεταβάλλει παντοίας μεταβολὰς δι’ ἐαυτὴν ἢ δι’ ἐτέραν ψυχήν, οὐδὲν ἀλλο ἐργον τῷ πεπτευτῇ λείπεται πλὴν μετατιθέναι τὸ μὲν ἀμείων γιγνόμενον ἥθος εἰς βελτίων τόπον, χείρον δὲ εἰς τὸν χείρονα, κατὰ τὸ πρέπον αὐτῶν ἕκαστον, ῥνα τῆς προσηκούσης μοίρας λαγχάνῃ.

Ε ᾗς λέγεις;
ἀ. Ἡπερ ἂν ἔχοι λόγον ὑποτήνυ ἐπιμελείας θεοῦς τῶν πάντων, ταύτη μοι δοκῶ φράζειν εἰ μὴ γὰρ πρὸς τὸ ὅλον ἰατρὸς πλάττοι τις μετασχηματιζων τὰ πάντα, ὅλον ἐκ πυρὸς ὕδωρ ἐμψυχον, καὶ μὴ ξύμπολλα εἰς ἐνὸς ἐκ 904 πολλῶν ἐν, πρῶτης ἢ δεύτερας ἢ καὶ τρίτης γενέσεως μετειληφότα πληθείσιν ἀπειρ’ ἂν εἰς [τὰ] τῆς μετατιθέμενης κοσμήσεως· νῦν δ’ ἐστὶ θαυμαστή ράστων τῷ τοῦ παντὸς ἐπιμελουμένῳ.

κλ. Πῶς αὖ λέγεις;
Ἀ. ὡδε. ἐπειδὴ κατείδη ἡμῶν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐμψυχοὺς οὕσας τὰς πράξεις ἀπάσας καὶ πολλῆν

1 μὴ Apelt: μὲν MSS.
2 [ἐμψυχον] I bracket (ἐμψυχον Stallb.).

364
it not being generated for thy sake, but thou for its sake. For every physician and every trained craftsman works always for the sake of a Whole, and strives after what is best in general, and he produces a part for the sake of a whole, and not a whole for the sake of a part; but thou art vexed, because thou knowest not how what is best in thy case for the All turns out best for thyself also, in accordance with the power of your common origin. And inasmuch as soul, being conjoined now with one body, now with another, is always undergoing all kinds of changes either of itself or owing to another soul, there is left for the draughts-player no further task,—save only to shift the character that grows better to a superior place, and the worse to a worse, according to what best suits each of them, so that to each may be allotted its appropriate destiny.

CLIN. In what way do you mean?

ATH. The way I am describing is, I believe, that in which supervision of all things is most easy for the gods. For if one were to shape all things, without a constant view to the Whole, by transforming them (as, for instance, fire into water), instead of merely converting one into many or many into one, then when things had shared in a first, or second, or even third generation,\(^1\) they would be countless in number in such a system of transformations; but as things are, the task before the Supervisor of the All is wondrous easy.

CLIN. How do you mean?

ATH. Thus:—Since our King saw that all actions involve soul, and contain much good and much evil,

\(^1\) This seems to refer to three stages of the soul's incarnation; see p. 367, n. 2.
μὲν ἀρετὴν ἐν αὐταῖς οὖσαν, πολλὴν δὲ κακίαν, ἀνώλεθρον δὲ ὃν γενόμενον, ἀλλὰ οὐκ αἰώνιον, ψυχὴν καὶ σῶμα, καθάπερ οἱ κατὰ νόμον ὄντες θεοὶ—γένεσις γὰρ οὐκ ἂν ποτὲ ἦν ζώων ἀπολο-Β μένον τούτων θατέρου—καὶ τὸ μὲν ὁφελεῖν ἢ ἐπεφυκός, ὃς ὁγαθὸν ψυχής, διενοθῆ, τὸ δὲ κακὸν βλάπτειν· ταῦτα πάντα ξυνιδών ἐμηχανή-

σατο ποὺ κείμενον ἐκαστον τῶν μερῶν νικῶσαν ἀρετὴν, ἠπτωμένην δὲ κακίαν, ἐν τῷ παντὶ παρέχοι μάλιστ' ἂν καὶ ῥάστα καὶ ἁριστα. μεμηχάνηται δὴ πρὸς πάν τοῦτο τὸ ποίον τι γεγονόμενον ἢ ὅποιον ἐδραν δεὶ μεταλάμβανον οἰκίζεσθαι καὶ τύνας ποτὲ τόπους. τῆς δὲ γενε-

σεως τοῦ ποίου τινὸς ἄφικε ταῖς βουλήσεσιν C ἐκάστων ἧμῶν τὰς αἰτίας. ὅπῃ γὰρ ἂν ἐπιθυμή καὶ ὅποιός τις ὁν τῆν ψυχήν, ταῦτῃ σχεδοῦ ἐκάστοτε καὶ τοιοῦτος γίνεται ἀπας ἧμῶν ὡς το πολὺ.

ΚΑ. Τὸ γοῦν εἰκώς.

ΑΘ. Μεταβάλλει μὲν τοῖνυν πάνθ' ὁσα μέτοχα ἐστι ψυχής, ἐν ἐαυτοῖς κεκτημένα την τῆς μετα-

βολῆς αἰτίαν· μεταβάλλοντα δὲ φέρεται κατὰ τὴν τῆς εἰμαρμένης τάξιν καὶ νόμον. σμικρότερα μὲν τῶν ἥθων μεταβάλλοντα ἐκάτω κατὰ τὸ τῆς χώρας ἐπίπεδου μεταπορεύεται, πλεῖός δὲ καὶ D ἀδικώτερα μεταπεσόντα εἰς βάθος τὰ τῇ κάτω λεγόμενα τῶν τόπων, ὁσα ᾧ Ἀιδην τε καὶ τὰ τούτων ἐχόμενα τῶν ὑνωμάτων ἐπονομάζοντες σφόδρα φοβοῦσαν καὶ ὀνειροπολοῦσι χώντες δια-

λυθέντες τε τῶν σωμάτων. μείζω δὲ δὴ ψυχή

1 Cp. Tim. 37 C ff.
and that body and soul are, when generated, indestructible but not eternal, as are the gods ordained by law (for if either soul or body had been destroyed, there would never have been generation of living creatures), and since He perceived that all soul that is good naturally tends always to benefit, but the bad to injure,—observing all this, He designed a location for each of the parts, wherein it might secure the victory of goodness in the Whole and the defeat of evil most completely, easily, and well. For this purpose He has designed the rule which prescribes what kind of character should be set to dwell in what kind of position and in what regions; but the causes of the generation of any special kind he left to the wills of each one of us men. For according to the trend of our desires and the nature of our souls, each one of us generally becomes of a corresponding character.

CLIN. That is certainly probable.

ATH. All things that share in soul change, since they possess within themselves the cause of change, and in changing they move according to the law and order of destiny; the smaller the change of character, the less is the movement over surface in space, but when the change is great and towards great iniquity, then they move towards the deep and the so-called lower regions, regarding which—under the names of Hades and the like—men are haunted by most fearful imaginings, both when alive and when disparted from their bodies. And whenever the soul gets a

---

1 Cp. Tim. 42 B ff. where it is said that the soul of the good man returns at death to its native star, while that of the bad takes the form of a woman in its second, and that of a beast in its third incarnation.

3 Cp. Rep. 617 E.
κακίας ἢ ἀρετῆς ὁπόταν μεταλάβῃ διὰ τὴν αὐτῆς 
βούλησιν τε καὶ ὀμιλίαν γενομένην ἵσχυράν, 
ὅπόταν μὲν ἀρετῆ θεία προσμίξασα γίγνηται 
διαφερόντως τοιαύτη, διαφέροντα καὶ μετέβαλε 
τόπον, ἀγίαν ὅδὸν 1 μετακομισθείσα εἰς ἀμείων
Ε τινὰ τόπον ἐτερον· ὅταν δὲ τὰναντία, ἐπὶ τὰναντία 
μεθιδρύσασα τὸν αὐτῆς βίον.

αὕτη τοι δίκη ἐστὶ θεῶν οἳ 'Ολυμπον ἔχουσιν,
ὁ παῖ καὶ νεανίσκε ἀμελείσθαι δοκῶν ὑπὸ θεῶν· 
κακίω μὲν γνυρόμενον πρὸς τὰς κακίους ψυχὰς, 
ἀμείων δὲ πρὸς τὰς ἀμείων, πορευόμενον ἐν τε 
Ξώῃ καὶ ἐν πάσι θανάτοις πάσχειν τε ἀ προσήκον 
δρᾶν ἐστὶ τοῖς προσφερέσι τοὺς προσφερεῖς καὶ
905 ποιεῖν. 2 ταύτης τῆς δίκης οὕτε σὺ μὴ ποτὲ οὕτε 
eἰ ἄλλος ἄτυχης γενόμενος ἐπεύξηται περιγεν-
έσθαι θεῶν· ἢν πασῶν δικῶν διαφερόντως 
ἐταχάν τε οἶ τάξαντες χρεῶν τε ἐξευλαβεῖσθαι 
τὸ παράπαν. οὐ γὰρ ἀμεληθήσει ποτὲ ὑπ’ αὐτῆς· 
οὐχ οὕτω σμικρὸς ὥν δύσει κατὰ τὸ τῆς γῆς 
βάθος, οὐδ’ ὑψηλὸς γενόμενος εἰς τὸν οὐρανὸν 
ἀναπτύσσει, τίσεις δὲ αὐτῶν τὴν προσήκουσαν 
τιμωρίαν εἰτ’ ἐνθάδε μένων εἰτε καὶ ἐν ᾿Αἴδου 
Β διαπορευθεὶς εἴτε καὶ τοῦτων εἰς ἀγριωτερὸν ἔτι 
dιακομισθεὶς τόπον. ὁ αὐτὸς δὲ λόγος σοι καὶ 
περὶ ἑκεῖνων ἀν εἰ, τῶν οὐς σὺ κατιδὼν ἐκ 
σμικρῶν μεγάλους γεγονότας ἀνοσιογρήγασαν 
ἡ τι τοιοῦτον πράξαντας ὄνθησι εἰς ἀθλίων εἰν-

1 ἀγίαν ὅδὸν Badham: ἁγιον ὅλον MSS., edd. (ἄλλον Winck.).
2 καὶ ποιεῖν placed by Zur., vulg., after πάσχειν τε, but by 
MSS. after προσφερεῖς (so Hermann).

1 Odyss. XIX. 43.
specially large share of either virtue or vice, owing to the force of its own will and the influence of its intercourse growing strong, then, if it is in union with divine virtue, it becomes thereby eminently virtuous, and moves to an eminent region, being transported by a holy road to another and a better region; whereas, if the opposite is the case, it changes to the opposite the location of its life's abode. "This is the just decree of the gods who inhabit Olympus," O thou child and stripling who thinkest thou art neglected by the gods,—the decree that as thou becomest worse, thou goest to the company of the worse souls, and as thou becomest better, to the better souls; and that, alike in life and in every shape of death, thou both doest and sufferest what it is besetting that like should do towards like. From this decree of Heaven neither wilt thou nor any other luckless wight ever boast that he has escaped; for this decree is one which the gods who have enjoined it have enjoined above all others, and meet it is that it should be most strictly observed. For by it thou wilt not ever be neglected, neither if thou shouldest dive, in thy very littleness, into the depths of the earth below, nor if thou shouldest soar up to the height of Heaven above; but thou shalt pay to the gods thy due penalty, whether thou remainest here on earth, or hast passed away to Hades, or art transported to a region yet more fearsome. And the same rule, let me tell thee, will apply also to those whom thou sawest growing to great estate from small after doing acts of impiety or other such evil,—concerning whom thou didst deem that they had risen from misery to happiness, and

2 Cp. 728 B f., 837 A.
δαίμονας γεγονέναι, κατά ως ἐν κατόπτροις αὐτῶν ταῖς πράξεσιν ἡγησώ καθεωρακέναι τὴν πάντων ἀμέλειαν θεῶν, οὐκ εἴδως αὐτῶν τὴν συντέλειαν,

C ὁπτῇ ποτὲ τῷ παντὶ ξυμβάλλεται. γιγνώσκεις δὲ αὐτὴν, ὁ πάντων ἀνδρείτατε, πῶς οὐ δεῖν δοκεῖς; ἢν τις μὴ γιγνώσκων οὐδ’ ἂν τύπον ἰδοι ποτὲ, οὐδὲ λόγον ξυμβάλλεσθαι περὶ βίου δυνατὸς ἂν γένοιτο εἰς εὐδαιμονίαν τε καὶ δυσδαίμονα τύχην. ταῦτα εἰ μὲν σε πείθει Κλεινίας ὅδε καὶ ξύμπασα ἡμῶν ἦδε ἡ γερονσία, περὶ θεῶν ὡς οὐκ οἶσθα ὅ τι λέγεις, καλῶς ἂν σοι ὁ θεὸς αὐτὸς ξυλλαμβάνως εἰ δ’ ἐπιδεῖς ἔτι λόγου τινὸς ἂν εἶδος, λεγόντων ἡμῶν πρὸς τὸν τρίτον ἑπάκουε,

D εἰ νοῦν καὶ ὀπωσοῦν ἔχεις. ὅτι μὲν γὰρ θεοὶ τ’ εἰσὶ καὶ ἄνθρωποι ἐπιμελοῦνται, ἐγώγε νὸ παντάπασι φαύλως ἂν φαἴνη ἡμῶν ἀποδειχθαί τό δὲ παραιτητοὺς ἃν θεοὺς εἶναι τούσιν ἀδικοῦσι, δεχομένους δῶρα, οὔτε τινὶ συγχωρητέον παντὶ τ’ ἃ κατὰ δύναμιν τρόπῳ ἐλεγκτέον.

κλ. Κάλλιστ’ εἴπες, ποιῶμεν τέ ὡς λέγεις.

ἀρ. Φέρε δ’ ἂν πρὸς θεῶν αὐτῶν, τίμα τρόπον παραιτητοί γίγνοιτ’ ἂν ἡμῶν, εἰ γίγνοιτο αὐ; Ἐ καὶ τίνες ἡ ποιοὶ τίνες ὄντες; ἄρχοντας μὲν ἄναγκαίοι πον γίγνεσθαί τούς γε διοικήσουσας τὸν ἀπαντά ἑνδελεχῶς οὐρανόν.

κλ. Οὔτως.

ἀρ. Ἀλλ’ ἀρα τίσι προσφερεῖς τῶν ἄρχοντων; ἡ τίνες τούτοις, διὰ δυνατὸν ἡμῶν ἀπεικάζουσιν ἑνδοξάνειν μεῖζον ἑλάττωνας; πότερον ἡμίοχοι

1 οὐδὲ λόγον MSS.: οὐδ’ ἂν λόγους al. MSS., Zur.
2 αἳθεοὺς MSS.: αὐτοὺς Stobaeus, Zur.

370
LAWS, BOOK X

didst imagine, therefore, that in their actions, as in mirrors, thou didst behold the entire neglect of the gods, not knowing of their joint contribution and how it contributes to the All. And surely, O most courageous of men, thou canst not but suppose that this is a thing thou must needs learn. For if a man learns not this, he can never see even an outline of the truth, nor will he be able to contribute an account of life as regards its happiness or its unhappy fortune. If Clinias here and all our gathering of elders succeed in convincing thee of this fact, that thou knowest not what thou sayest about the gods, then God Himself of His grace will aid thee; but shouldest thou still be in need of further argument, give ear to us while we argue with the third unbeliever, if thou hast sense at all. For we have proved, as I would maintain, by fairly sufficient argument that the gods exist and care for men; the next contention, that the gods can be won over by wrongdoers,\(^1\) on the receipt of bribes, is one that no one should admit, and we must try to refute it by every means in our power.

CLIN. Admirably spoken: let us do as you say.

ATH. Come now, in the name of these gods themselves I ask—in what way would they come to be seduced by us, if seduced they were? Being what in their essence and character? Necessarily they must be rulers, if they are to be in continual control of the whole heaven.

CLIN. True.

ATH. But to which kind of rulers are they like? Or which are like to them, of those rulers whom we can fairly compare with them, as small with great?

\(^1\) Cp. Hom. II. IX. 497 ff., τοὺς (θεοὺς) . . . λοιπὴ τε κυῖῃ τε παρατραπῶσι ἀνθρώποι κτλ.
τινες ἂν εἶνε τοιοῦτοι ζευγῶν ἀμιλλωμένων ἢ πλοίων κυβερνήται; τάχα δε καν ἀπεικα-
σθείεν στρατοπέδων ἀρχουσί τισιν. εἰ δ' ἂν καὶ
νόσων πόλεμον εὐλαβομένους ἵατροις ἐοικένι
906 περὶ σώματα, ἡ γεωργοῖς περὶ φυτῶν γένεσιν
eἰσθίασι όρας χαλεπᾶς διὰ φόβων προσδεχο-
μένοις, ἢ καὶ ποιμνίων ἐπιστάταις. ἐπειδῆ γὰρ
συγκεχωρήκαμεν ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς εἶναι μὲν τὸν οὐρα-
νόν πολλῶν μεστῶν ἀγαθῶν, εἶναι δε καὶ τῶν
ἐναυτῶν, πλειόνων δὲ τῶν μῆ, μάχη δη, φαμέν,
ἄθανατός ἐστιν ἡ τοιαύτη καὶ φυλακής θαυ-
μαστῆς δεομένη, ξύμμαχοι δὲ ἡμῖν θεοὶ τε ἅμα
καὶ δαίμονες, ἡμεῖς δ' αὐ κτίματα θεῶν καὶ
dαιμόνων φθείρει δὲ ἡμᾶς ἄδικια καὶ ὑβρις μετὰ

Β ὡφροσύνης, σώζει δὲ δικαιοσύνη καὶ σωφροσύνη
μετα φρονήσεως, εν ταῖς τῶν θεῶν ἐμψύχοις
οἰκοῦσαι δυνάμει, βραχὺ δ' τι καὶ τήδε ἂν τις
tῶν τοιοῦτων ἐνοικοῦν ἡμῖν σαφὲς ὕδοι. ψυχαὶ
dή τινες ἐπὶ γῆς οἰκούσαι καὶ ἁδικον λήμμα
κεκτημέναι, δῆλον ὅτι θηριώδεις πρὸς τὰς τῶν
φυλάκων ψυχὰς ἀρα κυνῶν ἢ τὰς τῶν νομέων
ἡ πρὸς τὰς τῶν παντάπασιν ἀκροτάτων δεσπο-
tῶν προσπιττοῦσαι πείθουσι θωπείαις λόγων,
C καὶ ἐν εὐκταίαις τισιν ἐπώδαις, ὡς αἱ φῆμαὶ φασιν
αἱ τῶν κακῶν, ἐξεῖναι πλεονεκτοῦσι σφίσιν ἐν
ἀνθρώποις πάσχειν μηδὲν χαλέπτων. φαμέν δ' ἂ
ἐναὶ ποὺ τὸ νῦν ὑνομαζόμενον ἀμάρτημα τὴν
πλεονεξίαν ἐν μὲν σαρκίνοις σώμασι νόσημα

1 Cp. 904 A ff., 896 C ff., Rep. 379 C.
2 Cp. Phaedo 62 B.
LAWS, BOOK X

Would drivers of rival teams resemble them, or pilots of ships? Or perhaps they might be likened to rulers of armies; or possibly they might be compared to physicians watching over a war against bodily disease, or to farmers fearfully awaiting seasons of wonted difficulty for the generation of plants, or else to masters of flocks. For seeing that we have agreed among ourselves that the heaven is full of many things that are good, and of the opposite kind also, and that those not good are the more numerous, such a battle, we affirm, is undying, and needs a wondrous watchfulness,—the gods and daemons being our allies, and we the possession of the gods and daemons; and what destroys us is iniquity and insolence combined with folly, what saves us, justice and temperance combined with wisdom, which dwell in the animate powers of the gods, and of which some small trace may be clearly seen here also residing in us. But there are certain souls that dwell on earth and have acquired unjust gain which, being plainly bestial, beseech the souls of the guardians—whether they be watch-dogs or herdsman or the most exalted of masters—trying to convince them by fawning words and prayerful incantations that (as the tales of evil men relate) they can profiteer among men on earth without any severe penalty: but we assert that the sin now mentioned, of profiteering or "over-gaining," is what is called in the case of fleshly bodies "disease," 3 in

3 Cp. Rep. 609, Symp. 188 A ff., where the theory is stated that health depends upon the "harmony," or equal balance, of the constituent elements of the body ("heat" and "cold," "moisture" and "dryness,"); when any of these (opposite) elements is in excess (πλεονεκτεῖ), disease sets in. So, too, in the "body politic," the excess of due measure by any element, or member, is injustice.
καλούμενον, ἐν δὲ ὠραῖς ἑτῶν καὶ ἐνιαυτοῖς λοιμῶν, ἐν δὲ πόλεσι καὶ πολιτείαις τούτῳ αὐτῷ, ῥήματι ¹ μετασχηματισμένον, ἀδικίαν.

κλ. Παντάπασι μὲν ὄνοι.

α. Θ. Τούτων δὴ τῶν λόγων ἀναγκαίον λέγειν τὸν λέγοντα ὡς εἰσὶ συγγυμνοὶς ἀκεῖ θεοὶ τοῖς τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἀδίκοις καὶ ἄδικοσιν, ἀν αὐτοῖς τῶν ἀδικημάτων τις ἀπονέμη, καθάπερ <ei> ² κυσὶ λύκοι τῶν ἀρπασμάτων σμερὰ ἀπονέμοιεν, οἱ δὲ ἡμερούμενοι τοῖς δώροις συγχωροῖεν τὰ ποίμνια διαρπάζειν. ἄρ' οὖχ οὕτωσιν ὁ λόγος οἱ τῶν φασκόντων παραμιθητοὺς εἶναι θεοὺς;

κλ. Οὕτωσι μὲν ὄνοι.

α. Θ. Τίσιν ὄνοι δὴ τῶν προφηθέντων ἀπει-καίζων ὁμοίους φύλακας εἶναι θεοὺς οὐκ ἂν κατα-γέλαστος γήγοιτο ἀνθρώπων ὁστισοῦν; πότερον ἐκβεβρήταις, λοιβὴ τε οἴνου κυίσῃ τε παρατρεπο-μένοις αὐτοῖς, ἀνατρέπουσι δὲ ναῦς τε καὶ ναύτας;

κλ. Μηδαμῶς.

α. Θ. Ἀλλ' οὐ τι μὴν ἡνίοχοις γε ἐν ἀμῖλῃ συντεταγμένοις, πεισθεῖσιν ὑπὸ δωρεὰς ἐτέροις τὴν νίκην ζεύγησε προδοῦναι.

κλ. Δεινὴν γὰρ εἰκόνα λέγοις ἂν λέγων τῶν λόγων τούτων.

α. Θ. Οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ στρατηγοῖς γε οὔδ' ἱατροῖς οὐδὲ γεωργοῖς οὐδὲ νομεύσιν, οὐ μὴν οὐδὲ τισι κυσὶ κεκηλημένοις ὑπὸ λύκων.

κλ. Εὐφήμειτ' πῶς γὰρ ἂν;

α. Θ. Ἀλλ' οὐ πάντων φυλάκων εἰσὶ μέγιστοι καὶ περὶ τὰ μέγιστα ἡμῖν οἱ πάντες θεοὶ; ³

¹ αὐτό, ῥήματι MSS., Burnet: ἂδ τὸ ῥῆμα MSS. marg., Zur.
² <ei> added by Hermann.
that of seasons and years "pestilence," and in that of States and polities, by a verbal change, this same sin is called "injustice."

CLIN. Certainly.

ATH. Such must necessarily be the account of the matter given by the man who says that the gods are always merciful to unjust men and those who act unjustly, provided that one gives them a share of one's unjust gains; it is just as if wolves were to give small bits of their prey to watch-dogs, and they being mollified by the gifts were to allow them to go ravening among the flocks. Is not this the account given by the man who asserts that the gods are open to bribes?

CLIN. It is.

ATH. To which of the guardians aforementioned might a man liken the gods without incurring ridicule? Is it to pilots, who, when warped themselves by wine's "flow and flavour," 1 overturn both ships and sailors?

CLIN. By no means.

ATH. And surely not to drivers ranged up for a race and seduced by a gift to lose it in favour of other teams?

CLIN. If that was the account you gave of them, it would indeed be a horrible comparison.

ATH. Nor, surely, to generals or physicians or farmers or herdsmen; nor yet to dogs charmed by wolves?

CLIN. Hush! That is quite impossible.

ATH. Are not all gods the greatest of all guardians, and over the greatest things?

1 II. IX. 500 (quoted above, p. 371, n. 1).
ΠΛΑΤΟ

κα. Πολύ γε.

αθ. Τούς δὴ κάλλιστα τε πράγματα φυλάττοντας διαφέροντας τε αὐτοὺς φυλακῆς ἃ πρὸς ἀρετὴν κυνῶν χείρους καὶ ἀνθρώπων μέσων εἶναι φήσομεν, οἳ τὸ δίκαιον οὐκ ἂν ποτε προδοθὲν ἕνεκα δῶρων παρὰ ἄδικων ἀνδρῶν ἀνοσίως διδομένων;

β κα. Οὐδαμῶς οὔτε ἀνεκτὸς ὁ λόγος, τῶν τε περὶ πάσαν ἀσέβειαν ὑποτηνοῦει πάς ὁ ταύτης τῆς δόξης ἀντεχόμενος πάντων ἂν τῶν ἀσεβῶν κεκρίσθαι δικαιότατα κάκιστός τε εἶναι καὶ ἀσεβέστατος.

αθ. Τὰ μὲν δὴ προτεθέντα τρία, θεοὶ τε ὡς εἰσὶ καὶ ὡς ἐπιμελεῖς καὶ παρὰ τὸ δίκαιον ὡς παντάπασιν ἀπαραίτητοι, φῶμεν ἰκανῶς ἀποδεδείχθαί ποι;

κα. Πῶς γὰρ οὖ; καὶ σύμψηφοι γε τούτοις τοῖς λόγοις ἐσμέν.

αθ. Καὶ μὴν εἰρηνταὶ γε πῶς σφοδρότερον διὰ φιλονικίαν τῶν κακῶν ἀνθρώπων. τούτον γε μὴν ἑνεκα, ὅ φίλε Κλεινία, πεφιλονικήσαται, μὴ ποτε λόγοις ἡγῶνται κρατοῦντες ἐξουσίαν εἶναι σφίσιν ἢ βούλονται πράττειν οἱ κακοί, ἢ δὴ καὶ ὅσα καὶ οἶα περὶ θεοὺς διανοοῦνται. προθυμία μὲν δὴ διὰ ταύτα νεωτέρως εἰπεῖν ἡμῖν γέγονεν· εἰ δὲ τι καὶ βραχὺ προῦργον πεποιηκαμεν εἰς τὸ πείθειν πη τοὺς ἄνδρας ἐαυτοὺς μὲν μισῆσαι, τὰ δὲ ἐναντία πως ἦθη στέρξαι, καλῶς ἡμῖν D εἰρημένον ἂν εἰη τὸ προοίμιον ἀσεβείας πέρι νόμων.

κα. Ἀλλὰ ἐλπίς· εἰ δὲ μὴ, τὸ γε τοῦ λόγου γένος οὐκ αἰτιάσονται 2 τὸν νομοθέτην.

1 φυλακῆς: φυλακῇ MSS., edd.
2 αἰτιάσονται; αἰτιάσεται MSS., edd.
LAWS, BOOK X

CLIN. Yes, by far.

ATH. Shall we say that those who watch over the fairest things, and who are themselves eminently good at keeping watch, are inferior to dogs and ordinary men, who would never betray justice for the sake of gifts impiously offered by unjust men?

CLIN. By no means; it is an intolerable thing to say, and whoever embraces such an opinion would most justly be adjudged the worst and most impious of all the impious men who practise impiety in all its forms.

ATH. May we now say that we have fully proved our three propositions,—namely, that the gods exist, and that they are careful, and that they are wholly incapable of being seduced to transgress justice?

CLIN. Certainly we may; and in these statements you have our support.

ATH. And truly they have been made in somewhat vehement terms, in our desire for victory over those wicked men; and our desire for victory was due to our fear lest haply, if they gained the mastery in argument, they should suppose they had gained the right to act as they chose—those men who wickedly hold all those false notions about the gods. On this account we have been zealous to speak with special vigour; and if we have produced any good effect, however small, in the way of persuading the men to hate themselves and to feel some love for an opposite kind of character, then our prelude to the laws respecting impiety will not have been spoken amiss.

CLIN. Well, there is hope; and if not, at any rate no fault will be found with the lawgiver in respect of the nature of the argument.
ΑΘ. Μετά το προοίμιον τουύν λόγος ὁλος ἀν τῶν νόμων ἐρμηνεύσ ὅρθως γίγνοιτο ἥμων, προ-
ἀγορεύων ἐξιστασθαι πᾶσι τοις ἀσεβέσι τρόπων
tῶν αὐτῶν εἰς τοὺς εὐσεβείς. τοῖς δὲ μὴ πει-
θρομένοις ἀσεβείας ὁδὲ ἐστώ πέρι νόμος: 'Εάν τις
ἀσεβῆ λόγοις εἰτ' ἔργοις, ο παρατυχχανον
Ε ἀμυνέτω σημαίνων πρὸς ἀρχοντας, τῶν δὲ ἄρχον-
tῶν οἱ πρῶτοι πυθόμενοι πρὸς τὸ περὶ τοὺς ἁν
ἀποδεδειγμένων κρίνειν δικαστήριον ἐισαγαγόντων
κατὰ τοὺς νόμους· εάν δὲ τις ἀκούσασα ἀρχὴ μὴ
ὁρᾶ ταῦτα, αὐτὴ ἀσεβείας ὑπόδικος γιγνέσθω τὸ
ἐθέλουτι τιμωρεῖν υπὲρ τῶν νόμων. εάν δὲ τις
ὀφλη, τιμᾶτω τὸ δικαστήριον ἐν1 ἐκάστῳ τῶν
908 καθ' ἐν ἀσεβοῦντοι τίμημα. δεσμός μὲν συν ὑπ-
ἀρχέτω πάσιν· δεσμωτηρίων δὲ ὅντων ἐν τῇ πόλει
τριῶν, ἐνὸς μὲν κοινοῦ τοῖς πλείστοις περὶ ἀγοράν,
σωτηρίας ἑνεκα τοῖς πολλοῖς τῶν σωμάτων, ἐνὸς
δὲ περὶ τὸν τῶν νῦκτωρ συλλεγομένων ξύλλογον,
σωφρονιστήριον ἑπονομαζόμενον, ἐνὸς δὲ αὖ κατὰ
μέσην τὴν χώραν, ὁππερ ἂν ἔρημος τε καὶ ὡς
ὁτι μάλιστα ἀγρίωτατος ἢ τόπος, τιμωρίαν ἑχων
ἐπονυμίαν φήμην τινά. περὶ ἀσεβειαν δὲ ὅντων
Β αἰτίαις μὲν τρισὶν, αἴστηρ καὶ δυปรับปรλομέν, δύο δὲ
ἐξ ἐκάστης τῆς τοι αὐτῆς αἰτίαις γενομένων, ἐξ ἂν
γίγνοιτο, ἢ καὶ διακρίσεως ἀξία γένη τῶν περὶ τὰ
θεία ἐξαμαρτανόντων, οὐκ ἴσης οὐδ' ἡμιας δίκης
δεόμενα. ὃ γὰρ ἂν μὴ νομίζομεν θεοὺς εἶναι τὸ
παράπαν ἢθος φύσει προσγένηται δίκαιον, μι-
σοῦντες τε γίγνονται τοὺς κακούς, καὶ τῷ δυσχε-

1 ἐν Schneider, Hermann: ἐν MSS.

1 Cp. 767 C, D, 855 C.

378
ATH. After the prelude it will be proper for us to have a statement of a kind suitable to serve as the laws' interpreter, forewarning all the impious to quit their ways for those of piety. For those who disobey, this shall be the law concerning impiety:—If anyone commits impiety either by word or deed, he that meets with him shall defend the law by informing the magistrates, and the first magistrates who hear of it shall bring the man up before the court appointed to decide such cases as the laws direct; and if any magistrate on hearing of the matter fail to do this, he himself shall be liable to a charge of impiety at the hands of him who wishes to punish him on behalf of the laws. And if a man be convicted, the court shall assess one penalty for each separate act of impiety. Imprisonment shall be imposed in every case; and since there are three prisons in the State (namely, one public prison near the market for most cases, to secure the persons of the average criminals; a second, situated near the assembly-room of the officials who hold nightly assemblies, and named the "reformatory"; and a third, situated in the middle of the country, in the wildest and loneliest spot possible, and named after "retribution"), and since men are involved in impiety from the three causes which we have described, and from each such cause two forms of impiety result—consequently those who sin in respect of religion fall into six classes which require to be distinguished, as needing penalties that are neither equal nor similar. For while those who, though they utterly disbelieve in the existence of the gods, possess by nature a just character, both hate the evil and, because of their

2 Cp. 909 A, 961 A ff.  
3 Cp. 704 B.
PLATO

ραίνειν τὴν ἀδικίαν οὕτε τὰς τοιαύτας πράξεις προσένεται πράττειν τοὺς τε μὴ δικαίους τῶν
C ἀνθρώπων φεύγουσι καὶ τοὺς δικαίους στέργουσιν.
οίς δ' ἂν πρὸς τῇ δόξῃ τῇ θεών ἔρημα εἶναι
πάντα ἀκράτεια τε ἱδονῶν καὶ λυπῶν προσ-
πέσωσι, μνῆμα τε ἱσχυραὶ καὶ μαθήσεις ὃξειαν
παρὼν, τὸ μὲν μὴ νομίζειν θεοὺς ἀμφοῖν ἁν
ἐνυπάρχοι κοινὸν πάθος, τῇ δὲ τῶν ἄλλων ἀν-
θρώπων λάβῃ τὸ μὲν ἔλαττο, τὸ δὲ πλεῖον κακὰ
ἐργάζοντ’ ἄν. ὁ μὲν γὰρ λόγῳ τε ἂν περὶ θεοὺς
παρῆσιας εἶχ μεστὸς καὶ περὶ θυσίας τε καὶ
D ὅρκους, καὶ ὣς τῶν ἄλλων καταγελῶν τάχ’ ἂν
ἐτέρους τοιούτους ἀπεργάζοιτο, δίκης μὴ τυγ-
χινών: ο’ δὲ ὅπε ἄφξεσι μὲν καθάπερ ἄτερος,
εὐφυὴς δὲ ἐπικαλούμενος, δόλου δὴ καὶ ἐνέδρας
πλήρης; εξ ὡς μάντεισι τε κατασκευάζονται πολλοὶ
kαὶ περὶ πάσαν τὴν μαγγανείαν γεγενημένοι,1
γίγνονται δὲ ἐξ αὐτῶν ἐστὶν ὅτε καὶ τύραννοι καὶ
δημιουργοὶ καὶ στρατηγοὶ, καὶ τελεταῖς δὲ ὑδαίν
ἐπιβεβουλευκότες, σοφιστῶν τε ἐπικαλούμενων
μηχανάι. τούτων δὴ πολλὰ μὲν εἶδη γένοιτ’ ἄν.
Ε τὰ δὲ νόμων ἅξια θέσεως δύο, ὅτι τὸ μὲν εἰρωνικὸν
οὐχ ἐνὸς οὐδὲ δυοῦν ἅξια θανάτου ἀμάρτανον, τὸ δὲ
νουθετήσεως ἁμα καὶ δεσμῶν δέομενον. ὡσαύτως
dὲ καὶ τὸ θεοὺς νόμιζον ἀμελεῖν δ' ἐτερα γεννᾶ
καὶ τὸ παραιτητοὺς ἄλλα δύο. τούτων δὴ ταύτη
dιεστηκότων τοὺς μὲν ὑπ’ ἄνοιας ἀνευ κάκης ὀργῆς
tε καὶ ἥθους γεγενημένους εἰς τὸ σωφρονιστήριον
1 γεγενημένοι: κεκινημένοι MSS.

1 i.e. “hypocritical,” hiding impiety under a cloak of religion.
380
dislike of injustice, are incapable of being induced to commit unjust actions, and flee from unjust men and love the just, on the other hand, those who, besides holding that the world is empty of gods, are afflicted by incontinence in respect of pleasures and pains, and possess also powerful memories and sharp wits—though both these classes share alike in the disease of atheism, yet in respect of the amount of ruin they bring on other people, the latter class would work more and the former less of evil. For whereas the one class will be quite frank in its language about the gods and about sacrifices and oaths, and by ridiculing other people will probably convert others to its views, unless it meets with punishment, the other class, while holding the same opinions as the former, yet being specially "gifted by nature" and being full of craft and guile, is the class out of which are manufactured many diviners and experts in all manner of jugglery; and from it, too, there spring sometimes tyrants and demagogues and generals, and those who plot by means of peculiar mystic rites of their own, and the devices of those who are called "sophists." Of these there may be many kinds; but those which call for legislation are two, of which the "ironic" kind commits sins that deserve not one death only or two, while the other kind requires both admonition and imprisonment. Likewise also the belief that the gods are neglectful breeds two other kinds of impiety; and the belief in their being open to bribes, other two. These kinds being thus distinguished, those criminals who suffer from folly,² being devoid of evil disposition and character, shall be placed by the judge according to

² Cp. 863 B, C.
ὁ δικαστὴς τιθέμενος νόμων τιθέσθω μηδὲν ἐλαττον ἐτῶν πέντε. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ χρόνῳ μηδείς τῶν 909 πολιτῶν αὐτοῖς ἀλλος συγγνώθω πλὴν οἱ τοῦ νυκτερινοῦ ἕξυλλόγου κοινωνoύντες, ἐπὶ νουθετήσαι τε καὶ τῇ τῆς ψυχῆς σωτηρίας ὀμιλοῦντες: ὅταν δ' ὁ χρόνος αὐτοῖς ἐξέλθῃ τῶν δεσμῶν, εάν μὲν δοκῇ τις σωφρονεῖν αὐτῶν, οἰκεῖτω μετὰ τῶν σωφρόνων, εάν δὲ μὴ, όφείλῃ δ' αὕθις τὴν τοι- αύτην δίκην, θανάτῳ ξημιοῦσθω. ὅσοι δ' ἂν θηριώδεις γένωνται πρὸς τῷ θεοὺς [μὴ]¹ νομίζειν
Β ἡ ἀμέλεις ἡ παραιτητοὺς εἶναι, καταφρονοῦντες δὲ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ψυχαγωγώσι μὲν πολλοὺς τῶν ξώντων, τοὺς δὲ τεθνεῶτας φάσκοντες ψυχαγωγεῖν καὶ θεοὺς ὑπισχυόμενοι πείθειν, ὡς θυσίαις τε καὶ εὐχαῖς καὶ ἐπώδαις γοητεύοντες, ἱδίωτας τε καὶ ἱλαράς οἰκίας καὶ πόλεις χρημάτων χάριν ἐπιχειρώσι κατ' ἄκρας ἐξαιρεῖν, τούτων δὲ ὅσ ἂν ὀφλῶν εἶναι δόξη, τιμάτω τὸ δικαστήριον αὐτῷ κατὰ νόμον δεδέσθαι μὲν ἐν τῷ τῶν μεσο-
C γείων δεσμωτηρίῳ, προσιέναι δὲ αὐτῷ μηδένα ἔλευθερον μηδέποτε, τακτὴν δὲ ὑπὸ τῶν νομο-
φυλάκων αὐτοὺς τροφὴν παρὰ τῶν οἰκετῶν λαμβανέων. ἀποθανόντα δὲ ἔξω τῶν ὀρίων ἐκ-
βάλλειν ἀταφον ἐὰν δὲ τῖς ἐλεύθερος συνθάτη, δίκας ἀσεβείας τῶ ἐθέλοντι λαγχάνειν ὑπεχέτω.
παίδας δὲ ἂν μὲν καταλίπῃ τῇ πόλει ἰκανοὺς, οἱ τῶν ὀρφανῶν ἐπιμελούμενοι καὶ τούτων, ὃς
D ὀντων ὀρφανῶν, ἐπιμελείσθων μηδὲν χείρον τῶν ἀλλῶν ἀπὸ τῆς ἡμέρας ἦς ἂν ὁ πατήρ αὐτῶν ὀφλή τὴν δίκην.

1 [μὴ] bracketed by Stallb., Hermann.
law in the reformatory for a period of not less than five years, during which time no other of the citizens shall hold intercourse with them, save only those who take part in the nocturnal assembly, and they shall company with them to minister to their souls' salvation by admonition; and when the period of their incarceration has expired, if any of them seems to be reformed, he shall dwell with those who are reformed, but if not, and if he be convicted again on a like charge, he shall be punished by death. But as to all those who have become like ravening beasts, and who, besides holding that the gods are negligent or open to bribes, despise men, charming the souls of many of the living, and claiming that they charm the souls of the dead, and promising to persuade the gods by bewitching them, as it were, with sacrifices, prayers and incantations, and who try thus to wreak utterly not only individuals, but whole families and States for the sake of money,—if any of these men be pronounced guilty, the court shall order him to be imprisoned according to law in the mid-country gaol, and shall order that no free man shall approach such criminals at any time, and that they shall receive from the servants a ration of food as fixed by the Law-wardens. And he that dies shall be cast outside the borders without burial; and if any free man assist in burying him, he shall be liable to a charge of impiety at the hands of anyone who chooses to prosecute. And if the dead man leaves children fit for citizenship, the guardians of orphans shall take them also under their charge from the day of their father's conviction, just as much as any other orphans.

1 Cp. 908 A.  
Κοινών δ’ ἐπὶ τούτοις πᾶσι νόμον κεῖσθαι χρεών, ὡς ἐλάττω τε εἰς θεοὺς αὐτῶν τοὺς πολλοὺς ἐργα καὶ λόγῳ πλημμελεῖν ἂν ποιοῖ, καὶ ἂν καὶ ἀνοίγειν ἢττον γίγνεσθαι, διὰ τὸ μὴ ἐξείναι θεοπολεῖν παρὰ νόμον. ἔστω γὰρ νόμος ὦδε τοῖς ξύμπασι κείμενος ἀπλῶς: 'Ιερὰ μηδὲ εἰς ἐν ἰδίαις οἰκίαις ἐκτήσθω. θύειν δ’ ὅταν ἐπιλύνῃ ἦν Ετινί, πρὸς τὰ δημόσια ἐτωθοῦσα μετὰ θύσιν, καὶ τοῖς ιερεύσα τε καὶ ιερείαις ἐγχειριζέτω τὰ θύματα, ὥσ ἄγνεια τούτων ἐπιμελής· συνευξύσθω δὲ αὐτός τε καὶ ὃν ἄν ἐθέλῃ μετ’ αὐτοῦ ἐξυγχεσθαι. ταύτα δὲ γιγνόμενα τῶν τοιῶν χάριν ἔστω ιερὰ καὶ θεοῦν ὦ διάδον ἱδρύεσθαι, μεγάλης δὲ διανοίας τινὸς ὅρθως δρᾶν τὸ τοιοῦτον, ἔθος τε γυναῖξι τε ὃντι διαφερόντως πάσαις καὶ τοῖς ἁσθενοῦσι πάντη καὶ κυνδυνεύονσι καὶ ἀποροῦσιν, ὅπῃ τις ἄν ἀπορῇ, καὶ τούναντιον ὅταν εὐπορίας τινὸς λάβωνται, καθερεύν ὑπὸ τὸ παρὸν ἀεὶ καὶ θυσίας εὐχεσθαι καὶ ἱδρύεσθαι ὑπισχυεσθαι θεοῖς καὶ δαίμοσι καὶ παισὶ θεῶν, ἐν τε φάσμασιν ἐγρηγορότας διὰ φόβους καὶ ἐν ὁνείροις, ὡς δ’ αὐτῶς ὄψεις πολλὰς ἀπομνημονεύοντας, ἐκάσταισι τε αὐτῶν ἁκὴ ποιομένους, βωμοὺς καὶ ιερὰ πάσας μὲν οἰκίας, πάσας δὲ κόμας ἐν τε καθαροῖς ἱδρυμένους ἐμπιπλάναι καὶ ὅπῃ τις ἐν χεὶς τῶν τοιοῦτων. ὃν ἑνεκά χρῆ πάντων ποιεῖν κατὰ τῶν νῦν λεγόμενον νόμον πρὸς τούτοις δὲ ἑνεκά τῶν ἱσεβουότων, Β ἴνα μὴ καὶ ταύτα κλέπτοντες ταῖς πράξεσιν, ιερὰ 384
For all these offenders one general law must be laid down, such as will cause the majority of them not only to offend less against the gods by word and deed, but also to become less foolish, through being forbidden to trade in religion illegally. To deal comprehensively with all such cases the following law shall be enacted:—No one shall possess a shrine in his own house: when anyone is moved in spirit to do sacrifice, he shall go to the public places to sacrifice, and he shall hand over his oblations to the priests and priestesses to whom belongs the consecration thereof; and he himself, together with any associates he may choose, shall join in the prayers. This procedure shall be observed for the following reasons:—It is no easy task to found temples and gods, and to do this rightly needs much deliberation; yet it is customary for all women especially, and for sick folk everywhere, and those in peril or in distress (whatever the nature of the distress), and conversely for those who have had a slice of good fortune, to dedicate whatever happens to be at hand at the moment, and to vow sacrifices and promise the founding of shrines to gods and demi-gods and children of gods; and through terrors caused by waking visions or by dreams, and in like manner as they recall many visions and try to provide remedies for each of them, they are wont to found altars and shrines, and to fill with them every house and every village, and open places too, and every spot which was the scene of such experiences. For all these reasons their action should be governed by the law now stated; and a further reason is this—to prevent impious men from acting fraudulently in regard to these matters also, by setting up shrines and
τε καὶ βωμοὺς ἐν ἰδίαις οἰκίαις ἱδρυόμενοι, λάθρα τοὺς θεοὺς ἱλεως οἰόμενοι ποιεῖν θυσίαις τε καὶ εὐχαῖς, εἰς ἀπειρον τὴν ἀδικίαν αὑξάνοντες αὐτοῖς τε ἐγκλήματα πρὸς θεῶν ποιῶνται καὶ τοῖς ἐπιτρέπουσιν, οὐσιν αὐτῶν βελτίσσαι, καὶ πᾶσα οὕτως ἡ πόλις ἀπολαύη τῶν ἁσεβῶν τρόπον τινὰ δικαῖως. τὸν μὲν δὴ νομοθέτην ὁ θεὸς οὐ μέμψεται· κείσθω γὰρ νόμος οὕτως: Μὴ κεκτήσθαι θεῶν ἐν οἰκίαις οἰκίαις ἱερὰ· τὸν δὲ φανέρα κεκτημένου ἔτερα καὶ ὁργιάζοντα πλῆν τὰ δημόσια, ἐὰν μὲν ἀδίκον μηδὲν τῶν μεγάλων καὶ ἀνοσίων εἰργασμένος ἄνηρ ἡ καὶ γυνὴ κεκτήται τις, ὁ μὲν αἰσθανόμενος εἰσαγγελλέτω τοῖς νομοφύλαξιν, οἱ δὲ προστατότων εἰς τὰ δημόσια ἀποφέρειν ἱερὰ τὰ ἱδία, μὴ πείθοντες δὲ ξημιοῦντων, ἐὼς ἄν D ἀπενεχθῇ· ἐὰν δὲ τις ἁσεβήςας μὴ παϊδίων ἀλλ’ ἀνδρῶν ἁσεβήμα άνοσίων γένηται φανερός εἴτε ἐν ἱδίοις ἱδρυσάμενος εἴτ’ ἐν δημοσίοις θύσαις ἱερὰ θεοῖς οἰστισινούν, ὥς οὐ καθαρὸς ἄν θύων, θανάτῳ ξημιούσθω. τὸ δὲ παίδειον ἢ μὴ κρίναντες οἱ νομοφύλακες, εἰς τὸ δικαστήριον οὕτως εἰσαγαγόντες τὴν τῆς ἁσεβείας δίκην τούτοις ἐπιτελοῦντων.
altars in private houses, thinking to propitiate the gods privily by sacrifices and vows, and thus increasing infinitely their own iniquity, whereby they make both themselves and those better men who allow them guilty in the eyes of the gods, so that the whole State reaps the consequences of their impiety in some degree—and deserves to reap them. The lawgiver himself, however, will not be blamed by the god; for this shall be the law laid down:—Shrines of the gods no one must possess in a private house; and if anyone is proved to possess and worship at any shrine other than the public shrines—be the possessor man or woman,—and if he is guilty of no serious act of impiety, he that notices the fact shall inform the Law-wardens, and they shall give orders for the private shrines to be removed to the public temples, and if the owner disobey the order, they shall punish him until he removes them. And if anyone be proved to have committed an impious act, such as is not the venial offence of children, but the serious irreligion of grown men, whether by setting up a shrine on private ground, or on public ground, by doing sacrifice to any gods whatsoever, for sacrificing in a state of impurity he shall be punished with death. And the Law-wardens shall judge what is a childish or venial offence and what not, and then shall bring the offenders before the court, and shall impose upon them the due penalty for their impiety.
913 α. Τὸ δὲ μετὰ ταῦτ' εἶνεξιμβολαία ἀν πρὸς ἀλλήλους ἥμῖν δεόμενα προσηκούσης τάξεως. ἀπλοῦν δὲ γ' ἐστὶ που τὸ γε τοιούτον. Μήτε οὖν τις τῶν ἐμὸν χρημάτων ἀποτιτώ εἰς δύναμιν, μηδ' αὐτ κινήσει μηδ' ἐπὶ βραχύτατον ἐμὲ μηδαμῇ μηδαμώς πείθων· κατὰ ταῦτα δὲ ταῦτα καὶ περὶ τὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐγὼ δρόμην, νοῦν ἔχων ἔμφρονα. θησαυρὸν δὴ λέγωμεν πρῶτον τῶν τοιούτων· ἀν τις αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς αὐτοῦ κειμήλιον ἔθετο, μὴ τῶν ἐμῶν ἄν πατέρων, μὴθ' εὐρείν ποτὲ θεοῖς εὐξαίμην Β μηθ' εὐρών κινήσαμι, μηθ' αὐτοῖς λεγομένωις μάντεσιν ἀνακοινώσαμι τοῖς ἀμῶς ὑπὸ πῶς μοι ξυμβουλεύσουσιν ἀνελεῖν τὴν γῆν παρακαταθήκην. οὐ γὰρ ποτὲ τοσοῦτον εἰς χρημάτων ὀφεληθείν ἂν κτήσιν ἀνελῶν, ὅσον εἰς ὅγκον πρὸς ἄρετὴν ψυχής καὶ τὸ δίκαιον ἐπιδιδοθην ἂν μὴ ἀνελόμενος, κτήμα ἄντι κτήματος ἀμεών ἐν ἀμεῖνοι κτησάμενοι, δίκην ἐν τῇ ψυχῇ πλοῦτον προτιμήσας ἐν οὐσίᾳ κεκτήσατα πρότερον· ἐπὶ πολλοῖς γὰρ δὴ λεγόμενον εὗ τὸ μὴ κινεῖν τὰ ἀκίνητα καὶ περὶ τούτου λέγοιτ' ἄν ὁς ἐνὸς C ἐκείνων ὄντως. πείθεσθαι δὲ χρῆ καὶ τοῖς περὶ ταῦτα λεγομένοις μῦθοις, ὡς εἰς παίδων γενεὰν οὐ ἐξύμφορα τὰ τοιοῦτα. ὅς δ' ἄν παίδων τε ἀκηδής γεννήται καὶ τοῦ θέντος τὸν νόμον ἀμελής·

1 ξυμβουλεύσουσιν Stephens: ξυμβουλεύσουσιν MSS.
BOOK XI

ATH. In the next place our business transactions one with another will require proper regulation. The following will serve for a comprehensive rule:—

So far as possible, no one shall touch my goods nor move them in the slightest degree, if he has in no wise at all got my consent; and I must act in like manner regarding the goods of all other men, keeping a prudent mind. As the first of such things let us mention treasure: that which a man has laid by in store for himself and his family (he not being one of my parents), I must never pray to the gods to find, nor, if I do find it, may I move it, nor may I ever tell of it to the soothsayers (so-called), who are certain to counsel me to take up what is laid down in the ground. For never should I gain so much pecuniary profit by its removal, as I should win increase in virtue of soul and in justice by not removing it; and by preferring to gain justice in my soul rather than money in my purse, I should be winning a greater in place of a lesser gain, and that too in a better part of me. The rule,\(^1\) "Thou shalt not move the immovable," is rightly applicable to many cases; and the case before us is one of them. And men ought also to believe the stories told about these matters,—how that such conduct is injurious to the getting of children. But if any man proves to be both regardless of children and neglectful of

\(^1\) Cp. 684 E, 843 A.
σας, ἃ μὴτε αὐτὸς κατέθετο μὴτε αὐτ πατέρων
tις πατήρ, μὴ πείσας τὸν θέμενον ἀνέληται,
cάλλιστον νόμων διαφθείρων καὶ ἀπλοῦστατον,
cαὶ οὐδαμὴ ἀγεννοῦσι ἀνδρὸς νομοθέτημα, ὅσ
D εἶπεν, ἃ μὴ κατέθου, μὴ ἀνέλη,-τούτων τοῖν
dυοῖν νομοθέταιν καταφρονήσατα καὶ ἀνελόμενον
οῦ τι σμικρῶν, ὃ μὴ κατέθετο αὐτὸς, πλήθος ὁ
ἔστιν ὦτε θησαυροῖ παμμέγεθες, τί χρὴ πάσχειν;
ὑπὸ μὲν δὴ θεῶν, ὁ θεὸς οἶδεν· ὁ δὲ κατιδῶν
πρῶτος ἀγγελλέτω, ἐὰν μὲν ἐν ἀστεὶ γίγνηται τὸ
τοιοῦτον, τοῖς ἀστυνόμοις, ἐὰν δὲ τίς πόλεως ἐν
914 ἀγορὰ ἑν, τοῖσιν ἀγορανόμοις, ἐὰν δὲ τίς ἄλλης
χώρας, ἀγορανόμοις τε καὶ τοῖς τούτοις ἀρχουσί
dηλωθέντων δὲ ἡ πόλις εἰς Δελφοὺς
πεμπέτω· ὃ τι δ' ἂν ὁ θεὸς ἀναίρῃ περὶ τε τῶν
χρημάτων καὶ τοῦ κινήσατος, τούτῳ ἡ πόλις
ὑπηρετοῦσα ταῖς μαντείαις δράτω τοῦ θεοῦ.
καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἐλεύθερος ὁ μηνύσας ἥ, δόξαν ἠρετῆς
κεκτήσθω, μὴ μηνύσας δὲ, κακίας· δούλος δ' ἐὰν
ὕ, μηνύσας μὲν ἐλεύθερος ὑπὸ τῆς πόλεως ὀρθῶς
γίγνοιτ' ἀν ἀποδιδοὺς τῷ δεσπότῃ τῆς τιμῆν,
μὴ μηνύων δὲ θανάτως ξημοῦσθω.

B Ἐπομενον δ' ἐπομενον ἐξῆς ἂν γίγνοιτο τὸ περὶ
σμικρὰ καὶ μεγάλα ταῦτον τοῦτο νόμουν ἐκνακολοθεῖν.
ἀν τις τῶν αὐτοῦ τι καταλήπῃ ποὺ ἐκὼν
εἰτ' ἄκων, ὁ προστυχάνων εἰτω κείσθαι νομίζων
φυλάττειν ἐνοδίαν δαίμων τὰ τοιαῦτα ὑπὸ τοῦ
νόμου τῇ θεῷ καθιερωμένα. ἂν δὲ παρὰ ταῦτά

1 Solon. 2 Cp. 759 Cff., 772 D.
3 Hecate (= Artemis).
the legislator, and, without the consent of the depositor, takes up a treasure which neither he himself nor any of his forefathers has deposited, and thus breaks a law most fair, and that most comprehensive ordinance of the noble man who said, "Take not up what you laid not down,"—the man who despises these two lawgivers and takes up what he has not laid down himself, it being no small thing but sometimes a vast quantity of treasure,—what penalty should such a man suffer? God knows what, at the hands of gods; but the man that first notices an act of this kind shall report it, if it occur in the city, to the city-stewards, or if in a public market, to the market-stewards; and if it occur in the country outside, he shall declare it to the rural stewards and their officers. And when such declarations are made, the State shall send to Delphi; and whatever the god pronounces concerning the goods and him that moved them, that the State shall execute, acting as agent on behalf of the oracles of the god. And if the informer be a free man, he shall win a reputation for virtue, but for vice if he fail to inform; and if he be a slave, as a reward for informing it will be right that he should be set free, by the State offering his price to his master, whereas he shall be punished by death if he fail to give information.

Following on this there should come next a similar rule about matters great and small, to reinforce it. If a man, whether willingly or unwillingly, leaves any of his goods behind, he that happens on them shall let them lie, believing that the Goddess of the Wayside guards them, as things dedicated to her divinity by the law. Should
τις ἀπειθῶν ἀναιρούμενος οἴκαδε φέρη, ἂν μὲν σμικρὰς τιμῆς ἄξιοι ὁν δοῦλος, ὑπὸ τοῦ προστυχο-χάνοντος μὴ ἔλαττον τριακοντάτους πολλὰς πληγὰς μαστυγούσθω· εὰν δὲ τις ἐλεύθερος, πρὸς τὸ ἀνελεύθερος εἶναι δοκεῖν καὶ ἄκοινώντος νόμων δεκαπλάσιον τῆς τιμῆς τοῦ κινηθέντος ἀποτινέτῳ τῷ καταλιπόντι. εὰν δὲ τις ἐπαιτιά-ται τῶν αὐτοῦ χρημάτων ἔχειν τινὰ πλέον ἢ καὶ σμικρότερον, ὁ δὲ ὀμολογῇ μὲν ἔχειν, μὴ τὸ ἐκείνου δὲ, ἂν μὲν ἀπογεγραμμένον ἦ παρὰ τοῖς ἠρχοσι τῷ κτήμα κατὰ νόμουν, τὸν ἔχοντα καλείσθω πρὸς τὴν ἀρχήν, ὁ δὲ καθιστάτω. γενο-μένου δὲ ἐμφανοῦς, εὰν ἐν τοῖς γράμμασιν ἀπογεγραμμένον φαίνηται ποτέρου τῶν ἁμφισ- βητούντων, ἔχων οὕτως ἀπίτω· εὰν δὲ τινὸς ἄλλου τῶν μὴ παρόντων, ὁπότερος ἄν παράσχῃ τὸν ἐγγυηθήν ἄξιόχρεων, ὑπὲρ τοῦ ἀπόντος, ὡς παραδώσων ἐκείνῳ, κατὰ τὴν ἐκείνου ἀφαιρέσιν ἀφαιρεῖσθω. εὰν δὲ παρὰ τοὺς ἠρχοσι τῷ ἁμφισ- βητούμενον μὴ ἀπογεγραμμένον ἦ, κείσθω μὲν μέχρι δίκης παρὰ τρισὶ τῶν ἠρχοντῶν τοῖς πρεσβυτάτοις· εὰν δὲ τὸ μεσεγγυωθὲν θρέμμα ἦ, τὸν νικηθέντα περὶ αὐτοῦ δίκη τῆς τροφῆς ἐκτίνευν τοῖς ἠρχοσι· τὴν δὲ κρίσιν διαδικάζειν ἐντὸς τριῶν ἠμερῶν τοὺς ἠρχοντας.

Ἐ 'Αγέτῳ τῶν ἐαυτοῦ δοῦλον ὁ Βουλόμενος, εὰν ἐμ-φρων ἦ, χρησόμενος ʼο τι ἄν ἐθέλη τῶν ὁπόσα ὅσια.

1 Cr. 745 A, B.
anyone transgress this rule and disobediently take up such things and carry them home, he being a slave and the article of small value, then the man who meets with him, being over thirty years old, shall scourge him with many stripes; but if he be a free man, he shall not only be accounted illiberal and a rebel against the laws, but he shall in addition pay back ten times the value of the article moved to the man who left it behind. And if one man charges another with possessing any of his goods, be it great or small, and the man so charged allows that he has the article, but denies that it is the other man's,—then, if the article in question has been registered with the magistrates according to law, the plaintiff shall summon the man who possesses it before the magistrate, and he shall produce it in court. And the article being thus exhibited, if it be clearly recorded in the records to which of the disputants it belongs, he shall take it and depart; but should it belong to another third party, not then present, whichever of the two claimants produces a sufficient guarantor shall take it away on behalf of the absent party, in pursuance of his right of removal, to hand it over to him. But if the article in dispute be not registered with the magistrates, it shall be kept in charge of the three senior magistrates up to the time of the trial; and if the article in pledge be a beast, the man that loses the case concerning it shall pay the magistrates for its keep; and the magistrates shall decide the case within three days.

Any person—provided that he be in his senses—may lay hands, if he wishes, on his own slave, to employ him for any lawful purpose; and on be-
ČLETO δὲ καὶ ύπὲρ ἄλλου τῶν οίκείων ἡ φίλων τὸν ἀφεστῶτα ἐπὶ σωτηρία. ἔαν δὲ τις ἀφαιρηταὶ τινα εἰς ἐλευθερίαν ὡς δούλου ἀγόμενον, μεθίετω μὲν ὁ ἄγων, ὁ δὲ ἀφαιρούμενος ἐγγυητὰς τρεῖς ἀξίωρεος καταστήσας οὕτως ἀφαιρείσθω κατὰ ταύτα, ἄλλος δὲ μη. ἐὰν δὲ παρὰ ταῦτά τις 915 ἀφαιρηται, τῶν βιαίων ἐνοχὸς ἐστὼ καὶ ἄλοις τὴν διπλασίαν τοῦ ἐπιγραφέντος βλάβους τῷ ἀφαιρεθέντι τινέτω. ἄγέτω δὲ καὶ τῶν ἀπελευθερον, ἐὰν τις μηθ' ὑπετεύη τους ἀπελευθερώσαντας ἢ μηθ' ἰκανώς. θεραπεία δὲ φοιτῶν τρίς τῶν μηνῶς τῶν ἀπελευθερωθέντα προς τὴν τοῦ ἀπελευθέρωσαντος ἐστίαν, ἐπαγγελλόμενον ὃ τι χρῆ δρᾶν τῶν δικαιῶν καὶ ἄμα δυνατῶν, καὶ περὶ γάμου ποιεῖν ὃ τί πέρ ἀν ἕνιδοκῇ τῷ γενομένῳ δεσπότῃ πλούτειν δὲ τοῦ ἀπελευθερώσαντος μη ἐξεῖναι.

Β μᾶλλον τὸ δὲ πλέον γιγνέσθω τοῦ δεσπότου. μηθ' πλείω δὲ εἰκοσίν ἐτῶν μένειν τὸν ἀφεθέντα, ἀλλὰ καθάπερ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ξένους ἀπιέναι λαβόντα τὴν αὐτῶν πᾶσαν οὐσίαν, ἕαν μηθ' πείσῃ τοὺς τε ἄρχοντας καὶ τὸν ἀπελευθερώσαντα. ἔαν δὲ τῷ ἀπελευθερωθέντι ἢ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τῶν ξένων οὐσία πλείων γίγνηται τοῦ τρίτου μεγέθει τιμήματος, ἢ ἂν τοῦτο ἡμέρα γένηται, τριάκοντα ἡμερῶν ἀπὸ ταύτης τῆς ἡμέρας λαβῶν ἀπίτω τὰ

C ἐαυτοῦ, καὶ μηδεμία τῆς μονῆς παραίτησις ἐτὶ τούτω παρ' ἄρχοντον γιγνέσθω. ἐὰν δὲ τις ἀπείθων τούτως εἰσαχθείς εἰς δικαστήριον ὁφλη, θανάτῳ τε ξημιούσθω καὶ τὰ χρῆματα αὐτοῦ

1 Cp. 850 B.
2 Cp. 744 C, E, 756 D.
half of another man (one of his relatives or friends) he may lay hands on the runaway slave, to secure his safe keeping. And if a man tries to remove to freedom anyone who is being carried off as a slave, the man who is carrying him off shall let him go, and he that is removing him shall do so on the production of three substantial sureties, but not otherwise; and if anyone removes a slave contrary to these conditions, he shall be liable for assault, and if convicted he shall pay double his registered value to the man deprived. And a man may arrest also a freedman, if in any case he fails to attend, or to attend sufficiently, on those who have freed him; and such tendance shall consist in the coming of the freedman three times a month to the home of the man that freed him, and there undertaking to do those duties which are both just and feasible, and in regard to marriage also to act as may seem good also to his former master. The freedman shall not be permitted to be more wealthy than the man who freed him; and, if he is, the excess shall be made over to his master. He that is let go free shall not remain in the country more than twenty years, but shall depart, like all other foreigners, taking with him all the property he owns,—unless he gains the consent of the magistrates and also of the man who freed him. And if a freedman, or any other foreigner, acquire property exceeding in amount the third valuation, within thirty days from the day on which he acquires this excess he shall take his own property and depart, and he shall have no further right to request from the magistrates permission to remain; and if he disobeys these rules and is summoned before the court and convicted, he shall be punished
γιγνέσθω δημόσια. δίκαι δ' ἐστωσαιν τούτων ἐν ταῖς φυλετικαῖς δίκαι, ἐάν μὴ πρότερον ἐν γείτοσιν ἢ ἐν αἱρετοῖς δικασταῖς ἀπαλλάττων τοὺς ἐγκλημάτων.

Ἐὰν δὲ ὅς αὐτοῦ ἐφάπτηται ξώου καὶ ὅτου οὖν ἢ

D τινος ἔτερον τῶν αὐτοῦ χρημάτων, ἀναγέτω μὲν ὁ ἔχων εἰς πρατήρα ἢ τὸν δόντα ἄξιόχρεων τε καὶ ἐνδικοῦ ἢ των τρόπῳ παραδόντα ἄλλω κυρίως, εἰς μὲν πολίτην ἢ καὶ μετοικῶν τῶν ἐν τῇ πόλει ἣμερῶν τριάκοντα, εἰς δὲ ἐκείνην παράδοσιν πέντε μηνῶν, ἢς μέσος ὁ μὴν ἐν ὧ τρέπεται θερινὸς ἥλιος εἰς τὰ χειμερινά. ὅσα δὲ διὰ τίνος ὤνης ἢ καὶ πράσεως ἀλλάττεται τις ἔτερος ἄλλῳ, διδόντα ἐν χώρα τῇ τεταγμενῇ ἐκάστοις κατ' ἁγορᾶν καὶ δεχόμενον ἐν τῷ παραχρῆμα τιμήν, οὔτως ἀλλάττεσθαι, ἄλλοθι δὲ μηδαμοῦ, μηδ' ἐπὶ ἀναβολή πρᾶσιν

Ε μηδὲ ὤνην ποιεῖσθαι μηδενός. ἐὰν δὲ ἄλλῳς ἡ ἐν ἄλλοις τόποις ὁτιοῦ ἢνθ' ὅτου οὖν διαμεῖβηται ἔτερος ἄλλῳ, πιστεύων πρὸς ὄν ἄν ἀλλάττηται, ποιεῖτω ταῦτα ὡς οὐκ οὐσῶν δικῶν κατὰ νόμον περὶ τῶν μὴ πραθέντων κατὰ τὰ νῦν λεγόμενα. ἔρινων δὲ πέρι, τῶν βουλόμενον ἐρανίζειν φίλοι παρὰ φίλοις· ἐὰν δὲ τις διαφορὰ γίγνεται περὶ τῆς ἐρανίσεως, οὗτο πράττειν ὡς δικῶν μηδενὶ περὶ τούτων μηδαμῶς ἐσομένων. ὃς δ' ἂν ἀποδόμην τιμῆν τοῦ λάβῃ μὴ ἐλάττω δραχμῶν πεντήκοντα, παραμενέτω κατὰ πόλιν ἔξ ἀνάγκης

by death, and his goods shall be confiscated. Such cases shall be tried before the tribal courts, unless the parties first get a settlement of their charges against one another before neighbours or chosen jurors.

If anyone claims as his own the beast of any other man, or any other of his chattels, the man who holds it shall refer the matter to the person who, as being its substantial and lawful owner, sold it or gave it, or made it over to him in some other valid way; and this he shall do within thirty days, if the reference be made to a citizen or metic in the city, or, in the case of a foreign delivery, within five months, of which the middle month shall be that which includes the summer solstice.\textsuperscript{1} And when one man makes an exchange with another by an act of buying or selling, the exchange shall be made by a transfer of the article in the place appointed therefor in the market, and nowhere else, and by payment of the price on the spot, and no purchase or sale shall be made on credit;\textsuperscript{2} and if anyone makes an exchange with another otherwise or in other places, trusting the man with whom he is dealing, he shall do so on the understanding that there are no suits by law touching things not sold according to the rules now prescribed.\textsuperscript{3} As regards club-collections,\textsuperscript{4} whoso wishes may collect as a friend among friends; but if any dispute arises concerning the collection, they must act on the understanding that in regard to these matters no legal actions are possible. If any man receives for the sale of any article a price of not less than fifty drachmae, he shall be com-

\textsuperscript{4} \textit{i.e.} of subscriptions due from members of a (dining) club, or of money raised as a loan to a member in time of need.
δέκα ἡμέρας, ὁ δὲ πριάμενος ἵστω τὴν οἰκίαν τὴν τοῦ ἀποδομένου, τῶν περὶ τὰ τοιαύτα ἐγκλημάτων εἰωθότων γίγνεσθαι χάριν καὶ τῶν ἀναγωγῶν τῶν κατὰ νόμους εἰνέκα. ἦ δὲ κατὰ νόμους ἀναγωγὴ καὶ μὴ τῇ δε ἐστὶν εἰς τέσσαρα ἐνδράποδον ἀποδόται κάμνον φθόνη ἡ λιθῶν ἡ στραγγουρίων ἡ τῇ καλουμένῃ ιερᾶ νόσῳ ἢ καὶ ἐτέρῳ τινὶ ἀδήλῳ τοῖς πολλοῖς νοσήματι μακρῷ καὶ δυσιάτῳ κατὰ τὸ σῶμα ἢ κατὰ τὴν διάνοιαν, ἐὰν μὲν ἰατρῷ τεῖς ἡ γυμναστή, μὴ ἀναγωγῆς ἐστὶν τούτῳ πρὸς τὸν τοιούτων τυγχάνειν, μηδ᾽ ἐὰν τάληθές τις προει-

B πῶς ἀποδόται τῷ ἐὰν δὲ τὶς ἰδιώτη τὶ τῶν τοιούτων ἀποδόται δημιουργός, ὁ πριάμενος ἐντὸς ἐκμήνου ἀναγέτω, πλὴν τῆς ιερᾶς ταύτης δ᾽ ἐντὸς ἐνιαυτοῦ τὴν ἀναγωγὴν ἐξέστω ποιεῖσθαι τῆς νόσου. διαδικαζόμεθα δὲ ἐν τις τῶν ἰατρῶν, οὐς ἄν κοινῇ προβαλόμενοι ἐλωνται τὸν δὲ ὀφλόντα τὴν δίκην διπλάσιον ἀποτίνειν τῆς τιμῆς ἢ ἄν

C ἀποδόται. ἐὰν δὲ ἰδιώτη τὶς ἰδιώτης, ἀναγωγὴν μὲν εἶναι, καθάπερ καὶ τοῖς πρόσθεν ἐρρῆθη, καὶ τῆς διαδικασίαν, ὁ δὲ ὀφλῶν τῆς τιμῆς ἀπλήν ἀποτινεῖτο. ἐὰν δὲ ἀνδροφόνῳ ἀποδόται τίς τινι εἰδότι μὲν εἰδῶς, μὴ τυγχάνετο ἀναγωγῆς τοῦ τοιούτου τῆς πράσεως, μὴ δὲ εἰδότι τήν μὲν ἀναγωγὴν εἶναι τότε ὅταν τὴς αἰσθηται τῶν πριάμενων, ἐν πέντε δὲ τῶν νομοφυλάκων τοῖς νεωτάτοις εἶναι τὴν κρίσιν, εἰδῶς δὲ ἄν κρίθη, τάς τε οἰκίας τοῦ πριάμενον καθηράτῳ κατὰ τὸν πῶς

1 i.e. epilepsy.
pelled to remain in the city for ten days, and the seller’s residence shall be made known to the buyer, because of the charges which are commonly brought in connexion with such transactions, and because of the acts of restitution permitted by law. Such legal restitution, or non-restitution, shall be on this wise:—If a man sell a slave who is suffering from phthisis or stone or strangury or the “sacred disease”\(^1\) (as it is called), or from any other complaint, mental or physical, which most men would fail to notice, although it be prolonged and hard to cure,—in case the purchaser be a doctor or a trainer, it shall not be possible for him to gain restitution for such a case, nor yet if the seller warned the purchaser of the facts. But if any professional person sell any such slave to a lay person, the buyer shall claim restitution within six months, saving only in the case of epilepsy, for which disease he shall be permitted to claim within twelve months. The action shall be tried before a bench of doctors nominated and chosen by both the parties; and the party that loses his case shall pay double the selling price of the slave. If a lay person sells to a lay person, there shall be the same right of restitution and trial as in the cases just mentioned; but the losing party shall pay the selling price only. If a man wittingly sells a murderer\(^1\), if the buyer is aware of the fact, he shall have no claim to restitution for the purchase of such an one; but if the buyer be ignorant, he shall have right of restitution as soon as the fact is perceived, and the trial shall take place before a court of the five youngest Law-wardens, and if it be decided that the seller acted wittingly, he shall purify the houses of the buyer as ordained by the
εξηγησεν νόμου, τής τιμῆς τε ἀποδότω τῷ πριν-μένῳ τριπλάσιον.

D Ὅ δὲ ἀλλαττόμενος ἡ νόμισμα ἀντὶ νομίσματος ἡ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ζῴων ὄτιον ἡ καὶ μὴ ζώων ἀκίβδηλον πᾶν διδότω καὶ δεχέσθω τῷ νόμῳ ξυνεπόμενος· προσέμενον δὲ, καθάπερ ἄλλων νόμων, δεξώμεθα καὶ περὶ ὅλης ταύτης τῆς κάκης. κιβδηλεῖαν δὲ χρῆ πάντα ἄνδρα διανοηθῆναι καὶ ψεύδος καὶ ἀπάτην ὡς ἐν τι γένος ὃν, τοῦτο ὁ τὴν φήμην ἐπιφέρει εἰώθασιν οἱ πολ-λοί, κακῶς λέγοντες, ὡς ἐν καιρῷ γυνόμενον ἐκάστοτε τὸ τοιοῦτον πολλάκις ἄν ὀρθῶς ἔχου·

Ε τὸν καιρὸν δὲ καὶ ὅπου καὶ ὅπτε ἄτάκτως καὶ ἄοριστως ἔωντες τῇ λέξει ταύτη πολλὰ ξημιοῦνται τε καὶ ξημιοῦσιν ἑτέρους. νομοθέτη
dὲ οὐκ ἐγχωρεῖ τοῦτο ἄοριστον ἑάν, ἀλλ' ἡ μείζονς ἡ ἐλάττους ῥούς ἅπει· δεῖ διασαφεῖν, καὶ δὴ καὶ νῦν ὀρίσθων. Ψεύδος μηδεῖς μηδέν μηδ' ἀπάτην μηδὲ τι κίβδηλον, γένος ἐπικαλούμενος θεῶν, μήτε λόγῳ μήτε ἐργῷ πράξεις, ὁ μὴ θεομισέστατος

917 ἔσεσθαι μέλλων. οὗτος δ' ἐστιν ὃς ἄν ὀρκοὺς ὁμοὺς ψευδεῖς μηδὲν φροντίζῃ θεῶν, δεύτερος δὲ ὃς ἄν ἐναντίον τῶν κρείττων αὐτοῦ ψεύδηται. κρείττους δὲ οἱ ἀμείνους τῶν χειρόνων πρεσβύτατοι τε ὃς ἐπὶ τὸ πᾶν εἰπεῖν τῶν νέων, διὸ καὶ γονεῖς κρείττους ἐγκόνων καὶ ἄνδρες δὴ γυναικῶν καὶ παιδῶν ἀρχοντές τε ἀρχομένων. οὓς αἰδεῖσθαι πᾶσι πάντας πρέπον ἃν εἰη ἐν ἀλλή τε ἀρχῇ πάσῃ καὶ ἐν ταῖς πολιτικαῖς δὴ μάλιστα ἀρχαῖς·

400
interpreters,¹ and he shall pay three times the selling price to the buyer.

He that exchanges for money either money or anything else, living or not living, shall give and receive every such article unadulterated, conforming to the law; and touching all knavery of this sort, as in the case of other laws, let us hearken to a prelude. Adulteration should be regarded by every man as coming under the same head as falsehood and fraud—a class of actions concerning which the mob are wont to say, wrongly, that any such action will generally be right if it be done opportune: but the proper "opportunity," the when and the where, they leave unprescribed and undefined, so that by this saying they often bring loss both to themselves and to others. But it is not fitting for the lawgiver to leave this matter undefined; he must always declare clearly the limitations, great or small, and this shall now be done:—No man, calling the gods to witness, shall commit, either by word or deed, any falsehood, fraud or adulteration, if he does not mean to be most hateful to the gods; and such an one is he who without regard of the gods swears oaths falsely, and he also who lies in the presence of his superiors. Now the better are the superiors of the worse, and the older in general of the younger; wherefore also parents are superior to their offspring, men to women and children, rulers to ruled.² And it will be proper for all to revere all these classes of superiors, whether they be in other positions of authority or in offices of State above all; and to enforce this is just the

¹ The officials in charge of (Delphic) religious rites; cp. 759 C, 828 B.
² Cp. 690 A ff.
οθεν [οὖν] ὁ νῦν παρὼν ἡμῶν λόγος ἐλήλυθε. πάς
Β γὰρ τῶν κατ' ἁγοράν ὁ κιβδηλευόν τι ψεύδεται
καὶ ἀπατᾶ καὶ τοὺς θεοὺς παρακαλῶν ἐπόμνυσιν
ἐν τοῖς τῶν ἁγορανόμων νόμοισι τε καὶ φυλακτη-
ρίοις, οὔτε ἀνθρώπους αἰδοῦμενος οὔτε θεοὺς
σεβόμενος. πάντως μὲν δὴ καλὸν ἐπιτήδευμα
θεῶν ὑνόματα μὴ χραίνειν ραδίως, ἔχοντα ὡς
ἔχουσιν ἡμῶν ἐκάστοτε τὰ πολλὰ οἱ πλείστοι
καθαρότητος τε καὶ ἁγνείας τὰ περὶ τοὺς θεοὺς.
eἰ δ' οὖν μὴ πείθοιτο, οὔδε νόμος. Ὁ πωλῶν ὁτιοῦν
ἐν ἁγορᾷ μηδέποτε δύο εἴπῃ τιμᾶς ὑν ἂν πωλή,
С ἀπλῆν δὲ εἰπόν, ἂν μὴ τυχχάνῃ ταύτης, ἀποφέρων
ὁρθῶς ἂν ἀποφέροι πάλιν, καὶ ταύτης τής ἡμέρας
μὴ τιμήσῃ πλέονος μηδὲ ἐλάττουν· ἐπαίνοις δὲ
ὁρκὸς τε περὶ παντὸς τοῦ πωλουμένου ἀπέστω.
ἐὰν δὲ τις ἀπειθῇ τούτοις, ὁ παρατυχχάνων τῶν
ἀστῶν μὴ ἐλάττων ἢ τριάκοντα γεγουσὶ ἐτη
κολάξων μὲν τὸν ὀμνύντα ἀνατι τυπτέτω, ἀφρον-
τιστῶν δὲ καὶ ἀπειθῶν ἔνοχος ἐστω ψόγῳ προδο-
σίας τῶν νόμων. τὸν δὲ δὴ κιβδηλῶν τι πωλοῦντα
D καὶ μὴ δυνάμενον τοῖς νῦν πείθεσθαι λόγοις ὁ
προστυχχάνων τῶν γιγνωσκόντων, δυνατὸς ὄν
ἐξελέγχειν, ἐναντίον ἐλέγξας τῶν ἀρχῶντων, ὁ μὲν
δοῦλος φερέσθω τὸ κιβδηλευθὲν καὶ ὁ μέτοικος, ὁ
dὲ πολίτης μὴ ἐλέγχων μὲν ὡς ἀποστερῶν τοὺς
θεοὺς κακὸς ἁγορευέσθω, ἐλέγξας δὲ ἀναθέτω τοῖς
τὴν ἁγορὰν ἔχουσι θεοῖς. ὃ δὲ δὴ φανερὸς γενόμενος
ti πωλῶν τοιοῦτον πρὸς τῶν στερηθῆναι τοῦ
κιβδηλευθέντοις, ὄπόσης ἂν τιμῆς ἐξιώσῃ τὸ πωλοῦ-
402
purpose of our present discourse. For everyone who adulterates any market commodity, lies and deceives and, calling Heaven to witness, takes an oath in front of the laws and cautions of the market-stewards, neither regarding men nor revering gods. Certainly it is a good practice to refrain from sullying lightly divine names, and to behave with such purity and holiness as most of us generally exhibit in matters of religion; if however this rule is disobeyed, the law runs thus:—He that sells any article in the market shall never name two prices for what he is selling; he shall name one price only, and if he fails to get this, he will be entitled to take the article away; but he shall not put any other price, greater or less, upon it on that day; and there shall be no puffing or taking of oaths about anything put up for sale. If any man disobeys these rules, any townsman who is present, not being under thirty years of age, shall punish with a beating the seller who swears, and he shall do so with impunity; but if he is disobedient and neglects to do so, he shall be liable to reprobation for betraying the laws. And if a man is selling an adulterated article, and is incapable of obeying our present rules, any person who is present and aware of the fact and able to expose him shall take for himself the adulterated article, if he expose him before a magistrate, he being himself a slave or a metic,—but if he be a citizen, he shall be declared to be wicked, as a robber of the gods, if he fail to expose the guilty man; while if he does expose him, he shall offer the article to the gods who preside over the market. He that is found out in selling any such article, in addition to being deprived of the adulterated article, shall be beaten in the market-
μενον, κατὰ δραχμὴν ἑκάστην τῇ μᾶστιγὶ τυπτέ-
Ε σθω πληγὰς ὑπὸ κήρυκος ἐν τῇ ἁγορᾷ κηρύξαντος
ἂν ἐνεκα μέλλει τύπτεσθαι. τὰ δὲ κιβδηλεύματα
tε καὶ κακουργίας τῶν πωλοῦντων οἱ τὸ ἁγορανό-
μοι καὶ οἱ νομοφύλακες πυθόμενοι τῶν ἐμπείρων
περὶ ἕκαστα, ἀναγραφάντων ἀ τὶς ἁρη ὁ ποιεὶν τῶν
πωλοῦντα καὶ ἀ μῆ, καὶ πρόσθε τοῦ ἁγορανομίον
θέντων ἐν στήλῃ γράφαντες νόμους εἶναι τοῖς
918 περὶ τὴν τῆς ἁγορᾶς χρείαν ημιντᾶς σαφεῖς. τὰ
dὲ περὶ τῶν ἀστυνόμων ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν ἰκανῶς
εὑρεῖ. έαν δὲ τὶ προσδείν δοκῆ, νομοφύλαξιν
ἐπανακοινώσαντες καὶ γράφαντες τὸ δοκοῦν
ἐλληπεῖν τις ἀστυνόμων θέντων ἐν στήλῃ τά τε
πρώτα καὶ τὰ δεύτερα τεθέντα αὐτοῦσι τῆς ἀρχῆς
νόμιμα.

Κιβδήλους δ' ἐπιτηδεύμασιν ἔπεται κατὰ
πόδα καπηλείας ἐπιτηδεύματα. ταύτης δὲ περὶ
ξυμπάσης συμβουλῆς πρῶτον δόντες καὶ λόγου
Β ἐπ' αὐτῆς νόμον ὑστερον ἐπιθώμεθα. καπηλεία
γάρ κατὰ πόλιν πᾶσα γέγονεν οὐ βλάβης ἐνεκα
τὸ γε κατὰ φύσιν, πῶς δὲ τούναντιν πῶς γάρ
οὐκ ἐνεργήτης πᾶς δὲ ἄν οὐσιὰν χρημάτων
ἀντινωνοῦν ἀσύμμετρον οὐσαν καὶ ἀνώμαλον
ὁμαλήν τε καὶ σύμμετρον ἀπεργάζεσθαι; τούτῳ
ἡμῖν χρῆ φαναι καὶ τῆς τοῦ νομίσματος ἀπεργά-
ζεσθαι δύναμιν, καὶ τῶν ἐμπορον ἐπὶ τούτῳ
tετάχθαι δεὶ λέγειν. καὶ μισθωτὸς καὶ παι-
δοκεὺς καὶ ἄλλα, τὰ μὲν εὔσχημονέστερα, τὰ δὲ
C ἁσχημονέστερα γεγονόμενα, τούτῳ γε πάντα δύ-
ναται, πᾶσιν ἑπικουρίαν ταῖς χρείαις ἔξευπτορεῖν

1 ἐλληπεὶν Hermann: ἐκληπεὶν MSS.
place with stripes—one stripe for every drachma in the price he asks for the article—after that the herald has first proclaimed the crimes for which the seller is to be beaten. Touching acts of fraud and wrongful acts done by sellers, the market-stewards and the Law-wardens, after making enquiry from experts in each trade, shall write out rules as to what the seller ought to do or avoid doing, and shall post them up on a pillar in front of the stewards' office, to serve as written laws and clear instructors for those engaged in business in the market. The duties of the city-stewards have been fully stated already;¹ in case any addition seems to be required, they shall inform the Law-wardens, and write out what seems to be wanting; and they shall post up on the pillar at the city-stewards' office both the primary and the secondary regulations pertaining to their office.

Following close upon practices of adulteration follow practices of retail trading; concerning which, as a whole, we shall first offer counsel and argument, and then impose on it a law. The natural purpose for which all retail trading comes into existence in a State is not loss, but precisely the opposite; for how can any man be anything but a benefactor if he renders even and symmetrical the distribution of any kind of goods which before was unsymmetrical and uneven? And this is, we must say, the effect produced by the power of money, and we must declare that the merchant is ordained for this purpose. And the hireling and the innkeeper and the rest—some more and some less respectable trades,—all have this function, namely, to provide all men with full satisfaction of their needs and with even-

¹ Cp. 759 ff., 849 Ef., 881 C.
καὶ ὡμαλότητα ταῖς οὐσίαις. τί ποτε δὴ τὸ μὴ καλὸν αὐτὸ μηδ' εὕσχημον δοκεῖν εἶναι, καὶ τί τὸ διαβεβληκὸς τυγχάνει, ἵδωμεν, ὥς εἰ μὴ καὶ τὸ ὄλον, ἀλλ' οὖν μέρη γε ἐξισασώμεθα νόμω. πράγμ' ἐσθ', ως ἔοικεν, οὐ φαύλον, οὐδὲ σμικρᾶς δεόμενον ἀρετῆς.

καὶ Πῶς λέγεις; 

ἀ. Ὡ φίλε Κλεινία, σμικρὸν γένος ἀνθρώπων καὶ φύσει ὁλίγον καὶ ἀκρὰ τροφῆς τεθραμμένον, ὅταν εἰς χρείας τε καὶ ἐπιθυμίας τινῶν ἐμπίπτη, καρτερεῖν πρὸς τὸ μέτριον δυνατὸν ἐστι, καὶ ὅταν ἐξῆς χρήματα λαβεῖν πολλά, νήφει καὶ πρότερον αἱρεῖται τοῦ πολλοῦ τὸ τοῦ μέτρου ἐχόμενον· τὰ δὲ τῶν ἀνθρώπων πλῆθη πάν τούναντίον ἔχει τούτοις, δεόμενα τε ἀμέτρωσ δεῖται καὶ ἐξὸν κερδαίνειν τὰ μέτρια ἀπλήστως αἱρεῖται κερδαίνειν· διὸ πάντα τὰ περὶ τὴν κατηλείαν καὶ ἐμπορίαν καὶ πανδοκείαν γένη διαβεβληταί τε καὶ ἐν αἰσχροῖς γέγονεν ὑνείδεσιν. ἐπεὶ εἰ τις, ὁ μὴ ποτε γένοιτο οὐδ' ἐσται, προσαναγκάσειε—γελοιοῦν μὲν εἴπειν, ὡμοὶς δὲ εἰρήσεται—πανδοκεύσαι τοὺς πανταχῇ ἀρίστους ἀνδρας ἐπὶ τινα χρόνον ἢ κατηλεύειν ἢ τὶ τῶν τοιοῦτων πράττειν, ἢ καὶ γυναίκας ἐκ τινος ἀνάγκης εἰμαρμένης τοῦ τοιοῦτου μετασχεῖν τρόπου, γυνόμεν ἄν ὡς φίλον καὶ ἀγαπητοῦ ἐστίν ἐκαστον τούτων καὶ, εἰ κατὰ λόγον ἀδιάφθορον γέγονοι, ἐν μητρὸς ἄν καὶ τροφοῦ σχῆματι τιμῶτο τὰ τοιαῦτα πάντα. νῦν δὲ ὁπόταν εἰς ἐρήμους τις κατηλείας ἐνέκα τόπους

1 i.e. by equalizing the distribution of goods throughout the community. Cp. Ar. Pol. 1257a 14 ff.

406
ness in their properties. Let us see then wherein trade is reputed to be a thing not noble nor even respectable, and what has caused it to be disparaged, in order that we may remedy by law parts of it at least, if not the whole. This is an undertaking, it would seem, of no slight importance, and one that calls for no little virtue.

Clin. How do you mean?

Ath. My dear Clinias, small is the class of men—rare by nature and trained, too, with a superlative training—who, when they fall into divers needs and lusts, are able to stand out firmly for moderation, and who, when they have the power of taking much wealth, are sober, and choose what is of due measure rather than what is large. The disposition of the mass of mankind is exactly the opposite of this; when they desire, they desire without limit, and when they can make moderate gains, they prefer to gain insatiably; and it is because of this that all the classes concerned with retail trade, commerce, and inn-keeping are disparaged and subjected to violent abuse. Now if anyone were to do what never will be done (Heaven forbid!)—but I shall make the supposition, ridiculous though it is—namely, compel the best men everywhere for a certain period to keep inns or to peddle or to carry on any such trade,—or even to compel women by some necessity of fate to take part in such a mode of life,—then we should learn how that each of these callings is friendly and desirable; and if all these callings were carried on according to a rule free from corruption, they would be honoured with the honour which one pays to a mother or a nurse. But as things are now, whenever a man has planted his house, with a view to
καὶ πανταχῶς μῆκη ἔχοντας ὠδῶν ἱδρυσάμενος οἰκήσεις, ἐν ἀπορίᾳ γιγνομένους καταλύσεων ἀγαπηταῖς δεχόμενος, ἡ ὑπὸ χειμώνων ἀγρίων βία ἐλαυνομένοις 1 εὐδιεινὴν γαλήνην παρασχὼν ἡ πνίγεσιν ἀναψυχήν, τὰ μετὰ ταῦτα οὖν ὡς ἐταῖροις δεξιόμενος φιλικὰ παράσχῃ ξένων ἐπόμενα ταῖς ὑποδοχαῖς, ὡς δὲ ἐχθροῦς αἰχμαλώτους κεχειρωμένους ἀπολυτρώσῃ τῶν μακροτάτων καὶ ἀδίκων

Β καὶ ἀκαθάρτων ὑπάρτων, ταῦτα ἐστὶ καὶ τὰ τοιαύτα ἐν ξύμπασι τοῖς τοιοῦτοις [ὁρθῶς] 2 ἀμαρτανόμενα τὰς διαβολὰς τῇ τῆς ἀπορίας ἐπικουρήσει παρεσκευακότα. τούτων οὐν χρή φάρμακον ἀεὶ τέμνειν τὸν νομοθέτην. ὁρθῶς μὲν δὴ πάλαι τε εἰρημένον ὡς πρὸς δύο μάχεσθαι καὶ ἐναντία χαλεπὸν, καθάπερ ἐν ταῖς νόσοις πολλοῖς τε ἄλλοισι καὶ δὴ καὶ νῦν ἡ τούτων καὶ περὶ ταῦτα ἐστὶ πρὸς δύο μάχη, πεινῶν καὶ πλούτων, τὸν μὲν ψυχὴν διεθθαρκότα τρυφῆ τῶν ἀν-

C θρώπων, τὴν δὲ λύπαις προτετραμμένην εἰς ἀναισχυντίαν αὐτὴν. τίς οὖν δὴ τῆς νόσου ταύτης ἀρωγή γέγονεν ἂν ἐν νοῦν ἔχοσθεν πόλει; πρῶτον μὲν ὁ τι συμκροτάτω χρῆσθαι κατὰ δύσωμι τῶν καπήλων γένει, ἐπείτα τούτοις τῶν ἀνθρώπων προστάτευεν ὄν διαφθειρομένων οὐκ ἄν γίγνοντο μεγάλη λύμη τῇ πόλει, τρίτον δὲ αὐτοῖς τοῖς μετασχοῦσι τούτων τῶν ἐπιτη
dευμάτων εὑρεῖν μηχανὴν ὁπως ἦθη μὴ ἀνέδην

D ἀναισχυντίας τε καὶ ἀνελευθέρου ψυχῆς μέτοχα συμβῆσεται γίγνεσθαι ῥαδίως. μετὰ δὴ τὰ νῦν εἰρημένα περὶ ταῦτα νόμος ἀγαθὴ τύχῃ τοιόσοδε

1 ἐλαυνομένοις Stephens, Ast: ἐλαυνομένου MSS.
LAWS, BOOK XI

retail trade, in a desert place and with all the roads
from it lengthy, if in this welcome lodging he
receives travellers in distress, providing tranquillity
and calm to those buffeted by fierce storms or restful
coolness after torrid heat,—the next thing is that,
instead of treating them as comrades and providing
friendly gifts as well as entertainment, he holds them
to ransom, as if they were captive foemen in his hands,
demanding very high sums of unjust and unclean
ransom-money; it is criminal practices such as this,
in the case of all these trades, that afford grounds of
complaint against this way of succouring distress.
For these evils, then, the lawgiver must in each case
provide a medicine. It is an old and true saying that
it is hard to fight against the attack of two foes 1
from opposite quarters, as in the case of diseases and
many other things; and indeed our present fight in
this matter is against two foes, poverty and plenty, 2
of which the one corrupts the soul of men with
luxury, while the other by means of pain plunges
it into shamelessness. What remedy, then, is to be
found for this disease in a State gifted with under-
standing? The first is to employ the trading class
as little as possible; the second, to assign to that
class those men whose corruption would prove no
great loss to the State; the third, to find a means
whereby the dispositions of those engaged in these
callings may not quite so easily become infected by
shamelessness and meanness of soul. After the
declarations now made, let our law on these matters

1 Cp. Phaedo 89 C: πρὸς δύο λέγεται οὐδ' ὁ Ἡρακλῆς οἷς τε
ἐλναι.


409
ήμων γυνέσθων. Μαγνήτων, οὐς ὁ θεὸς ἀνορθῶν πάλιν κατοικίζει, γεωμόροι οσοὶ τῶν τετταρά-
κοντα καὶ πεντακισχιλίων ἐστιῶν εἰσί, μήτε κάπηλος ἐκὼν μηδ' ἀκὸν μηδεῖς γυγνέσθω μήτ' ἐμπορος μήτε διακονίαν μηδ' ἦντινα κεκτημένος ἰδιώταις τοῖς μὴ ἐξ ἵσον ἕαυτῷ, πλὴν πατρί καὶ
Εο παί τοῖς ἐτε τοῦτων εἰς τὸ ἄνω γένεσι καὶ πᾶσι τοῖς αὐτοῦ πρεσβυτέροις ὁσοὶ ἐλευ-
θεροὶ ἐλευθέρως. τὸ δ' ἐλευθερικὸν καὶ ἀνελευ-
θερον ἀκριβῶς μὲν οὐ ράδιον νομοθετεῖν, κρινέ-
σθω γε μὴν ὑπὸ τῶν τὰ ἀριστεία εἰληφότων τῷ ἐκείνων μέσει τε καὶ ἀσπασμῷ. ὦ δ' ἂν καπηλείας τῆς ἀνελευθέρου τέχνη τινὶ μετάσχη, γραφέσθω μὲν αὐτοῦ γένους αἰσχύνης ὁ βουλό-
μενος πρὸς τοὺς ἄρετῆ πρῶτους κεκριμένους, ἕαν
δὲ δοξὴ ἀναξίω ἐπιτηδεύματι καταρρύπανειν τὴν
αὐτοῦ πατρών ἔστιαν, δεθεὶς ἐνιαυτὸν ἀπο-
920 σχέσθω τοῦ τοιούτου, καὶ ἐὰν αὕθις, ἐτῆ δύο, καὶ ἐφ' ἐκάστης ἀλώσεως τοὺς δεσμοὺς μὴ παυέσθω διπλασιάζων τοῦ ἐμπροσθεν χρόνου.1 δεύτερος
μὴν νόμος. Μέτοικον εἶναι χρεών ἢ ξένων ὃς ἂν ἰ
μέλλῃ καπηλεύσειν. τὸ δὲ τρίτον καὶ τρίτος:
"Ὅπως ὅς ἀριστος ἢ κακὸς ὃς ἠκιστα ὁ τοιοῦτος
ήμων ἢ ἐξυνικὸς ἐν τῇ πόλει, τοὺς νομοθετά
χρῆ νοῆσαι φυλακας εἶναι μὴ μόνον ἐκείνων οὐς
φυλάττειν ράδιων μὴ παρανόμους καὶ κακοὺς
γίγνεσθαι, ὃσοι γενέσει καὶ τροφαῖς εὖ πεπαί-
1 τοῦ . . . χρόνου Ast : τὸν . . . χρόνον MSS. (bracketed
by England)

1 Cp. 702 B ff., 848 C ff.
2 Literally "free men," — the Greek word connoting
generosity, culture and dignity, like our "gentle."
LAWS, BOOK XI

(Heaven prosper it!) run in this wise:—Amongst the Magnesians,\(^1\) whom the god is restoring and founding afresh, none of all the landholders who belong to the 5040 houses shall, either willingly or unwillingly, become a retail trader or a merchant, or engage in any menial service for private persons who do not make an equal return to himself, save only for his father and mother and those of a still earlier generation, and all that are elder than himself, they being gentlemen\(^2\) and his a gentleman's service. What is becoming, what unbecoming a gentleman it is not easy to fix by law; it shall, however, be decided by those persons who have achieved public distinction\(^3\) for their aversion to the one and their devotion to the other. If any citizen in any craft engages in ungentlemanly peddling, whoso will shall indict him for shaming his family before a bench of those adjudged to be the first in virtue, and if it be held that he is sullying his paternal hearth by an unworthy calling, he shall be imprisoned for a year and so restrained therefrom; if he repeats the offence, he shall get two years' imprisonment, and for each subsequent conviction the period of imprisonment shall go on being doubled. Now comes a second law:—Whosoever intends to engage in retail trade must be a resident alien or a foreigner. And thirdly, this third law:—In order that such an one may be as good as possible, or as little as possible bad, he being a resident in our State, the Law-wardens must bear in mind that they are guardians not only of those who, being well-trained both by birth and nurture, are easy to guard from lawless and evil ways, but also of those who are

\(^3\) Cp. 914 A, 922 A ff.
PLATO

Β δευτηται, τοὺς δὲ μὴ τοιούτους ἐπιτηθεύματα τε ἐπιτιθείνοντας ἀ ῥοπὴν ἔχει τινὰ ἱσχυρὰν πρὸς τὸ προτρέπειν κακοὺς γιγνεσθαι, φυλακτέον μᾶλλον ταύτῃ δὴ τὰ περὶ τὴν καπηλείαν πολλὴν οὖσαν καὶ πολλὰ ἐπιτιθεύματα τοιαύτα κεκτημένην, ὅσαπερ ἄν αὐτῶν λειφθη δόξαντα ἐκ πολλῆς ἁνάγκης ἐν τῇ πόλει δεῖν εἶναι, συνελθεῖν αὐχρεών περὶ ταύτα τοὺς νομοφύλακας μετὰ τῶν ἐμπειρῶν ἐκάστης καπηλείας, καθάπερ ἐμπροσθεν επετάξαμεν τῆς κιβδηλείας πέρι, ἐννυγενοῦς τούτω προϊματος, συνελθόντας δὲ ἱδεῖν λήμμα τε καὶ ἀνάλωμα τί ποτε τῷ καπηλῇ κέρδος ποιεῖ τὸ μέτριον, γράψαντας δὲ θείαν τὸ γιγνόμενον ἀνάλωμα καὶ λήμμα καὶ φυλάττειν, τὰ μὲν ἀγορανόμους, τὰ δὲ ἀστυνόμους, τὰ δὲ ἁγρονόμους. καὶ σχεδὸν οὖτως ἄν καπηλεία τὰ μὲν ὀφελοῦ ἐκάστους, σμικρότατα δὲ ἄν βλάπτοι τοὺς ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι χρωμένους.

D "Ὅσα τὶς ἄν ὀμολογῶν ξυνθέσθαι μή ποιή κατὰ τὰς ὀμολογίας, πλὴν ὄν ἄν νόμοι ἀπείρησωσιν ἡ ψήφισμα, ἡ τινος ὑπὸ ἄδικον βιασθεὶς ἁνάγκης ὀμολογησθῇ, καὶ εὰν ὑπὸ τύχης ἀπροσδοκητὸν τις ἄκων κωλυθῇ, δίκας εἶναι τῶν ἄλλων ἀτελοὺς ὀμολογίας ἐν ταῖς φυλετικαίσι δίκαις, εὰν ἐν διαιτητής ἡ γείτοναν ἐμπροσθεν ἡ δύνανται διαλάττεσθαι. Ἡ φαίστου καὶ Ἀθηνᾶς ἵερον τὸ τῶν δημουργῶν γένος, οἴ τῶν βίων ἡμῶν ἐννυκατε-Ε σκευάκασι τέχναις, Ἀρεος δ' αὖ καὶ Ἀθηνᾶς οἱ


1 Cp. 917 E.

12
otherwise, and who follow pursuits which greatly tend to urge them on the road to vice; and these they must guard the more. Accordingly, with respect to retail trading, which is a multifarious occupation, embracing many callings of a similar nature,—with respect (I mean) to so many branches of it as are allowed to exist, as being deemed absolutely necessary to the State,—concerning these the procedure shall be the same as that previously prescribed in the case of the kindred matter of adulteration: the Law-wardens must meet in consultation with experts in every branch of retail trade, and at their meetings they must consider what standard of profits and expenses produces a moderate gain for the trader, and the standard of profits and expenses thus arrived at they must prescribe in writing; and this they must insist on—the market-stewards, the city-stewards, and the rural stewards, each in their own sphere. So possibly, by this means, retail trade would be of benefit to all classes, and would do but little damage to those in the States who practise it.

Touching agreements, whenever a man undertakes and fails to fulfil his agreement—unless it be such as is forbidden by the laws or by a decree, or one made under forcible and unjust compulsion, or when the man is involuntarily prevented from fulfilling it owing to some unforeseen accident,—in all other cases of unfulfilled agreements, actions may be brought before the tribal courts, if the parties are unable to come to a previous settlement before arbitrators or neighbours. Sacred to Hephaestus and Athena is the class of craftsmen who have furnished our life with the arts, and to Ares and
τὰ τῶν δημιουργῶν σώζοντες τέχναισιν ἔτέραις ἀμυντηρίοις ἔργα: δικαίως δὲ καὶ τὸ τούτων γένος ἵερόν ἐστὶ τούτων τῶν θεῶν. οὕτω δὴ πάντες χώραν καὶ δῆμον θεραπεύοντες διατελοῦσιν, οἱ μὲν ἄρχοντες τῶν κατὰ πόλεμον ἁγώνων, οἱ δὲ ὅργανον τε καὶ ἔργων ἀποτελοῦντες γένεσιν ἐμμισθὸν. οὐς δὴ περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα οὐ πρέπον ἄν εἰη ψεύδεσθαι, θεοὺς προγόνους αὐτῶν οἰδομένους. ἂν δὴ τις δημιουργῶν εἰς χρόνον εἰρημένον ἔργον μὴ ἀποτελέσῃ διὰ κάκην, μηδὲν τοῦ βιοδότην θεόν ἐπαιδεσθείς, ἤγοιμενος ὡς οἰκεῖον συγγένωμα εἶναι θεῶν, οὔδὲν τῷ νῷ βλέπον, πρῶτον μὲν δίκην τῷ θεῷ ύφέξει, δεύτερον δὲ ἐπόμενος αὐτῶ νόμος κείσθω. Τὴν τιμὴν τῶν ἔργων οφειλέτω ὁν ᾧ ὁ τὸν ἐκδόντα ψεύσηται καὶ πάλιν ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἐν τῷ ἰδιεύκολο τῷ θεῷ τῷ πρῶτῳ ἐξεργαζόμενῳ. καὶ ἀναιρουμένῳ δὲ ἔργον ἐμμυβαυ. 

Β λευτὴς νόμος ἀπερ τῷ πωλοῦντι ἐξυπερβούλευε μὴ πλέονος τιμῶν διαπειρόμενον ἀλλ’ ὡς ἀπλούστατα τῆς ἀξίας, ταυτῶν δὴ προστάττει καὶ τῷ ἀναίρουμενῷ γεγονόςκει γὰρ ὅ γε δημιουργὸς τὴν ἀξίαν. ἐν ἑλενθέρων δὴν πόλεσιν οὐ δή ποτε χρὴ τέχνη, σαφεὶ τε καὶ ἄψευδει φύσει πράγματι, διαπειράσθαι τῶν ἰδιωτῶν ἐχθράοντα αὐτῶν τὸν δημιουργὸν δίκας δὲ εἶναι τούτων τῷ ἀδικούμενῳ πρὸς τὸν ἀδικοῦντα. εὰν δὲ τὶς ἐκδοὺς αὐ ν ἀρχαίοις ημενους ἁμομοντος τοις μισθοὺς ὀρθῶς κατα τὴν ἐννομον ὑμολογησαν γεγονειν, Δία δὲ πολιοῦχον καὶ Αθηναν κοινωνοὺς πολιτείας ἀτιμάζων, βραχυ

414
Athena belong those who safeguard the products of these craftsmen by other defensive arts; rightly is this class also sacred to these deities. These all continually serve both the country and the people: the one class are leaders in the contests of war, the others produce for pay instruments and works; and it would be unseemly for these men to lie concerning their crafts, because of their reverence for their divine ancestors. If any craftsman fail to execute his work within the time named, owing to baseness—he not revering the god who gives him his livelihood, but deeming him (in his blindness of mind) to be merciful because of his kinship,—he shall, in the first place, pay a penalty to the god, and, secondly, there shall be a law enacted to suit his case:—He shall owe the price of the works regarding which he has lied to the person who gave him the order, and within the stated time he shall execute them all over again gratis. And as it counselled the seller, so the law counsels the contractor who undertakes a work not to give in too high an estimate for it, but to estimate it simply at its real worth; this same charge the law gives, I say, to the contractor, for he as a craftsman certainly knows what its worth is. In States composed of gentlemen it is wrong for a craftsman to try by his art (which is essentially truthful and sincere) to impose artfully upon lay persons; and in such cases the wronged shall be entitled to prosecute the wrong-doer. If, on the other hand, a man who has given an order to a craftsman fails to pay him his wage duly according to the legal agreement, and sets at naught Zeus, the Patron of the State, and Athena, who are partners in the constitution,—thereby dis-
κέρδος ἀγαπῶν, λῦη μεγάλας κοινωνίας, νόμος ὁ 
βοηθῶν ἔστω τῷ τῆς πόλεως ξυνδέσμῳ μετὰ 
θεῶν. Ὅσο γὰρ ἂν προαμειψάμενος ἔργον μισθοὺς 
μὴ ἀποδίδῃ ἐν χρόνοις τοῖς ὁμολογηθεὶσι, διπλοῦν 
πραττέσθω· εὰν δὲ ἐνιαυτὸς ἐξέλθῃ, τῶν ἄλλων 
Δ ἀτόκων οὕτων χρημάτων, ὁπόσα δανεισμῷ ξυμ-
βάλλει τις, οὕτος τῇ δραχμῇ ἐκάστου μηνὸς 
ἐπωβελίαιν κατατιθέτω· δίκαι δὲ εἶναι τούτων 
ἐν τοῖς κατὰ φυλὰς δικαστηρίοις.

'Ως δὲ ἐν παρέργῳ περὶ τῶν κατὰ πόλεμον 
δημιουργῶν οὕτων σωτηρίας, στρατηγῶν τε καὶ 
όσοι περὶ ταῦτα τεχνικοὶ, δίκαιον εἶπεῖν, ὅτι τὸ 
παράπαν ἐμφάνισθημεν δημιουργῶν· ὃς τούτοις ἄθυθο 
καθάπερ ἐκείνοις, οἷον ἐτέροις οὕτοι δημιουργοίς, εάν 
tis ἁρα καὶ τούτων ἀνελόμενος δημόσιον ἔργον εἰπ' 
Ε ἐκὼν εἶτε προσταχθὲν καλῶς ἐξεργάσηται, τὰς 
timάς, οἱ δὴ μισθοὶ πολεμικοὶς ἀνδράσιν εἶσιν, 
ἀποδίδῳ δικαίως, ὁ νόμος αὐτῶν ἐπαινῶν οὕτω 
καμεῖται· εὰν δὲ προαμειψάμενος ἔργον τι τῶν 
kata πόλεμον καλῶν ἔργων μὴ ἀποδίδω, μέμ-
ψεται. νόμος οὖν οὕτος ἐπαίνῳ περὶ τούτων ἡμῶν 
μεμηγμένος κέισθω, ξυμβουλευτικὸς, οὐ βιαστικὸς, 
922 τῷ πλήθει τῶν πολιτῶν; τιμῶν τοὺς ἀγαθῶν 
ἀνδρας, ὁσοὶ σωτήρες τῆς πόλεως εἰσὶ ξυμπάσης 
eίτε ἀνδρείαις εἰτε πολεμικαῖς μηχαναῖς, δευτέ-
ρους· πρώτοις γὰρ τὸ μέγιστον γέρας δεδόσθω

1 ὡς Schneider: ὡς MSS.

1 i.e. bear no interest. Cp. 742 C; Rep. 556 A; Ar. Pol. 1258b 5 ff.
416
solving great partnerships through love of a little gain,—then, with the help of the gods, this law shall lend aid to the bonds that unite the State:—Whosoever has previously received the work ordered and fails to pay the price within the period agreed shall be bound to pay double the price; and if a year have elapsed, although all other monies on loan are barren,¹ this man shall pay as interest one obol on each drachma for every month² of arrears; and actions for these cases shall take place before the tribal courts.

And now that we have made mention of craftsmen in general, it is right to allude in passing to those whose craft is military security,—that is to say, military commanders and all experts in such matters. As to the former craftsmen, so to these men, as craftsmen of another sort,—whenever any of them, either voluntarily or under orders, undertakes any public work and executes it well,—whosoever shall duly pay to these men those honours which are the soldier’s wages, him the law will never weary of lauding; but if he has previously received some noble work of a military kind and fails to pay for it, the law will blame him. So, touching this matter, let there be laid down this law, coupled with laudation,—a law which counsels rather than compels the mass of citizens to honour as second in merit those brave men who, either by bold deeds or by military devices, are protectors of the State; for first in merit come those on whom the greatest reward must be bestowed,—namely, those who have proved themselves able pre-

¹ As a drachma = 6 obols, the interest would amount to 200 p.c. per annum.
τοῖς τὰ τῶν ἀγαθῶν νομοθετῶν γράμματα τιμῶν διαφερόντως δυνηθείσιν.

Τὰ μὲν δὴ μέγιστα τῶν ξυμβολαίων, ὅσα πρὸς ἀλλήλους ἀνθρωποὶ ξυμβάλλοντες, πλὴν γε ὀρφανικῶν καὶ τῆς τῶν ἐπιτρόπων ἐπιμελείας τῶν ὀρφανῶν, σχεδὸν ἦμιν διατέτακται. ταῦτα δὲ δὴ μετὰ τὰ νῦν εἰρημένα ἄναγκαιον ἁμῶς γέ πως ὑπάρχον, τούτων δὲ ἀρχαὶ πάντων αἱ τε τῶν τελευτῶν μελλόντων ἐπιθυμία τῆς διαθέσεως αἱ τε τῶν μηδὲν τὸ παράπαν διαθεμένων τύχαι. ἄναγκαιον δὲ εἰπον, ὡς Κλεινία, βλέψαι αὐτῶν πέρι πρὸς το τὸ δύσκολον καὶ χαλεπῶν οὐδὲ γὰρ ἀτακτον δυνατῶν ἐστ' αὐτὸ ἐὰν πολλὰ γὰρ ἔκαστο καὶ διάφορα ἀλλήλων καὶ ἐναντία τιθεῖν' ἀν τοῖς τε νόμοις καὶ τοῖς τῶν ξώτων ἥθεσι καὶ τοῖς αὐτῶν τοῖς ἐμπροσθεν, πρὶν διατίθεσθαι μέλλειν, Καὶ τις ἐξουσιαν δῶσει ἅπειρος οὕτως κυρίαν εἶναι διαθήκην ἣν ἀν τις διαθήσῃ ὑπωσοῦν ἐχον πρὸς τὸ τοῦ βίου τέλει. ἀνοίτως γὰρ δὴ καὶ διατεθρυμ-μένως τινὰ τρόπον ἔχομεν οἱ πλεῖστοι, ὅταν ἡδη μέλλειν ἡγομένη τελευτάν.

κά. Πῶς τούτο, ὡ ξένε, λέγεις ὁ αὖθις Χαλεπόν ἐστ', ὡς Κλεινία, μέλλων ἀνθρω-πος τελευτήσειν, καὶ μεστὸν λόγον τοῖς νομοθεταῖς εὐ μᾶλα φοβερῶν καὶ δυσχερῶς.

κά. Πή; αὖθις ἤτω ἐνιαύτος ἀπάντων εἰσθανε καὶ τὸ ὀργῆς λέγειν.

κά. Ποία δή; αὖθις Δεινῶν γε, ὡς θειό, φησίν, εἰ τὰ ἐμὰ ἐμοὶ

1 Κρ. 919 D, E.
eminently to honour the written code of the good lawgivers. 1

We have now made regulations for most of the more important business dealings between man and man, excepting those regarding orphans and the care of orphans by their guardians; so, after those now dealt with, these matters must necessarily receive some kind of regulation. All these have their starting-points either in the desire of those at the point of death to devise their property, or in the accidental cases of those who die without making a testament; and it was in view of the complex and difficult nature of these cases, Clinias, that I made use of the word "necessarily." And it is, indeed, impossible to leave them without regulation; for individuals might set down many wishes both at variance with one another and contrary to the laws as well as to the dispositions of the living, and also to their own former dispositions in the days before they proposed making a will, if any will that a man makes were to be granted absolute and unconditional validity, no matter what his state of mind at the end of his life. For most of us are more or less in a dull and enfeebled state of mind, when we imagine that we are nearly at the point of death.

CLIN. What do you mean by this, Stranger?

ATH. A man at the point of death, Clinias, is a difficult subject, and overflowing with speech that is most alarming and vexatious to a lawgiver.

CLIN. How so?

ATH. Since he claims to be lord of all he has, he is wont to speak angrily.

CLIN. What will he say?

ATH. "Good heavens!" he cries, "what a mon-

419
μηδαμῶς ἐξεσταὶ διοῦναί τε ὅτῳ ἀν ἔθελω καὶ μή, καὶ τῷ μὲν πλείω, τῷ δ’ ἐλάττωνα τῶν ὁπόσοι περὶ ἐμὲ φαίλοι καὶ ὅσοι ἁγαθοὶ γεγόνασι φανερῶς, βασανισθέντες ἵκανῶς ἐν νόσοις, οἱ δ’ ἐν γῆρᾳ καὶ ἄλλαις παντοῖασι τύχαις.

κ. Ὀυκοῦν, ὦ ξένε, καλῶς δοκοῦσί σοι λέγειν;

Ε Ἀ. Μαλθακοὶ ἔμοιγ’, ὦ Κλεινία, δοκοῦσιν οἱ πάλαι νομοθετούντες γεγονέναι καὶ ἐπὶ σμικρὸν τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων πραγμάτων βλέποντές τε καὶ διανοοῦμενοι νομοθετεῖν.

κ. Πῶς λέγεις;

Ἀ. Τὸν λόγον τούτον, ὦ γαθεί, φοβούμενοι, τὸν νόμον ἐπίθεσαν τόνδε, ἐξείναι τὰ ἑαυτοῦ διατίθεσθαι ἀπλῶς ὅπως ἤν τις ἐθέλῃ τὸ παράπαν, ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ σὺ τοῖς ἐν ἡ σῇ πόλει μέλλουσι τελευτῶν ἀποκρινούμεθα ἐμμελέστερον.

κ. Πῶς;

Ἀ. Ὡς φίλοι, φήσομεν, καὶ ἀτεχνῶς ἐφημεροί, χαλεπῶν ὑμῶν ἐστὶ γιγνόσκειν τὰ ύμέτερ’ αὐτῶν χρήματα καὶ πρὸς γε ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς, ὡσπερ καὶ τὸ τῆς Πυθίας γράμμα φράξει, τὰ νῦν. ἔγωγ’ οὖν νομοθέτης ὅν σὺ οὖθ’ ὑμᾶς ὑμῶν αὐτῶν εἶναι τίθημι οὔτε τὴν οὐσίαν ταύτην, ξύμπαντος δὲ τού γένους ὑμῶν τοῦ τε ἐμπροσθεν καὶ τοῦ ἐπειτα ἐσομένου, καὶ ἐτι μάλλον τῆς πόλεως εἶναι τὸ τε γένος τῶν Β καὶ τῆς οὐσίας. καὶ οὕτω τούτων ἐχόντων οὐκ, εάν τις ὑμᾶς θωσπείας ύποδραμῶν ἐν νόσοις ἢ γῆρα σαλεύοντας παρὰ τὸ βέλτιστον διατίθεσθαι.
strous shame it is, if I am not to be allowed at all to
give, or not to give, my own things to whomsoever I
will—and more to one, less to another, according as
they have proved themselves good to me or bad,
when fully tested in times of sickness, or else in old
age and in other happenings of every kind.”

clin. And do you not think, Stranger, that what
they say is right?

ath. What I think, Clinias, is this—that the old
lawgivers were cowardly, and gave laws with a short
view and a slight consideration of human affairs.

clin. How do you mean?

ath. It was through fear, my dear sir, of that
angry speech that they made the law allowing a
man unconditionally to dispose by will of his goods
exactly how he pleases. But you and I will make a
more suitable answer to those in your State who are
at the point of death.

clin. In what way?

ath. O friends, we will say, for you, who are
literally but creatures of a day, it is hard at
present to know your own possessions and, as the
Pythian oracle declares, your own selves, to boot.
So I, as lawgiver, make this ruling—that both
you yourself and this your property are not your
own, but belong to the whole of your race, both
past and future, and that still more truly does all
your race and its property belong to the State: and
this being so, I will not willingly consent if anyone
persuades you to make a will contrary to what is
best, by fawning on you and helping you when
afflicted by disease or age; rather will I legislate

1 Alluding to the dictum, “Know thyself”; cp. Protag.
343 B.

421
πείθη, ξυγχωρήσομαι έκών, ο τι δε τη πόλει τε ἀριστον πάση και γένει, πρὸς πάν τοῦτο βλέπων νομοθετήσω, το ἕνος ἐκάστου κατατιθέεις ἐν μοίραις ἐλάττοσι δικαιώσ. ύμεῖς δὲ ἦμιν ἵλεω τε καὶ εὔμενεῖς οὔντες πορεύοισθε ἕπερ κατὰ φύσιν νῦν πορεύεσθε τὴν ἀνθρωπίνην. ἦμιν δὲ περὶ τῶν C ἄλλων τῶν ύμετέρων μελήσει, κηδομένοις ὅτι μάλιστα εἰς δύναμιν οὐ τῶν μέν, τῶν δὲ οὐ. ταῦτα μὲν οὖν παραμύθια τε καὶ προσόμια τῶν τε ξώντων, ὡ Kleinvía, καὶ τῶν τελευτῶν έστω, νόμος δὲ ὄδε:

"Οσ ἂν διαθήκην γράφῃ τὰ αὐτοῦ διατιθέμενος, παίδων δὲν πατὴρ, πρότων μὲν τῶν νεῶν κληρονόμον ὅν ἄν ἄξιωση γίγνεσθαι γραφέω, τῶν δὲ ἄλλων παιδῶν ὅν ἄν μὲν ἔτερον ποιείσθαι διδῷ δεχομένω, γραφέοσθω τοῦτο αὐτῷ. έὰν δὲ περιγίγνηται τῶν τῶν νεῶν αὐτῷ μὴ ἐπὶ D τῶν κλήρων πεποιημένος, ὃν κατὰ νόμον ἐλπίς εἰς ἀποκιάν ἐκπεμφθήσεσθαι, τούτῳ τῶν ἄλλων χρημάτων έξέστω τῷ πατρὶ διδόναι ὧσα ἂν ἐθέλη, πλὴν τοῦ πατρώου κλήρου καὶ τῆς περὶ τῶν κληρον κατασκευής πάσης. καὶ ἐὰν πλείους ὤσι, πρὸς μέρος ὁ πατὴρ ὅπη ἂν ἐθέλη νεμέτω τὰ περιόντα τοῦ κλήρου. ὅτι δ' ἂν τῶν νεῶν ὑπάρχων οἶκος ἂ, μὴ νέειν τούτῳ τῶν χρημάτων, θυγατρὶ τε ὡς αὐτῶς ἂ μὲν ἂν ἐγγεγυμενέος ὡς E ἄνὴρ έσόμενος ἂ, μὴ νέειν. ἂ δ' ἂν μὴ, νέειν. ἐὰν δὲ τῷ τῶν νεῶν ἂ καὶ τῶν θυγατέρων φανῇ κλήρος ἐπιχώριος τῆς διαθήκης γενόμενος ὡστερον, τῷ κληρονόμῳ τοῦ τῆς διαθήκης διαθεμένου κατα-

1 i.e. one of the 5040 allotments, cp. 737 C ff.
with a general view to what is best for your whole race and State, justly accounting of minor importance the interest of the individual. May it be that you will feel kindly disposed and at peace with us as you journey towards that bourne whither, by the natural law of our human life, you now are traveling: the rest of your affairs shall be our care, and we will watch over them all, without exception, to the best of our power. This shall serve, Clinias, alike for consolation and for prelude for both the living and the dying, and the law shall run as follows:—

Whosoever writes a will disposing of his property, if he be the father of children, he shall first write down the name of whichever of his sons he deems worthy to be his heir, and if he offers any one of his other children to another man to be adopted by him, this also he shall write down; and if he has any son besides that is not adopted for any lot,¹ of whom he has hopes that he will be sent out by law to a colony, to him the father shall be allowed to give so much of his other property as he wishes, saving only the ancestral lot and all the equipment of that lot; and if there be several more sons, the father shall divide among them the surplus, over and above the lot, in whatever way he chooses. And if a son already possesses a house, he shall not assign him goods, and so likewise in the case of a daughter, if she is betrothed to a husband, he shall not assign goods, but if not so betrothed, he shall assign. And if, after the will is made, it is discovered that one of the sons or daughters owns a lot in the district, then that person shall resign his legacy in favour of the heir of him that made the
λειπέτω. έαν δὲ ἀρρένας μὲν μὴ λείπῃ, θηλείας δὲ ὁ διατιθέμενος, ἀνδρά μὲν τῶν θυγατέρων ἦτιν ἀν ἔθελη, νῦν δὲ αὐτῷ καταλειπέτω, γράφας κληρονόμον. έαν δὲ νῦς τῷ τελευτήσῃ παῖς ὦν, πρὶν εἰς ἄνδρας δυνατός εἶναι τελεῖν, εἴτε γεννητός ὦν εἶτε ποιητός, γραφέτω καὶ περὶ τῆς τοιαύτης
924 τύχης ὁ τὴν διαθήκην γράφων τίνα χρῆ παίδα αὐτῷ δεύτερον ἐπὶ τύχαις ἀμείνοσι γίγνεσθαι. έαν δὲ τὰς ἄπαις ὦν τὸ παράπαν διαθήκην γράφην, τὸ τῆς ἐπικτήσου δεκατημόριον ἔξελόμενος, εάν ἔθελη τῷ δωρείσθαι, δωρείσθω. τὰ δὲ ἄλλα παραδίδουσ πάντα τῷ ποιηθέντι ἀμεμπτος ἑλευν νῦν αὐτὸν ποιείσθω ἐξ ὑμῶν.

Ως δ' ἂν ἐπιτρόπων οἱ παῖδες δέωνται, ἐὰν μὲν διαθέμενος τελευτᾷ καὶ γράφας ἐπιτρόπους τοῖς παισίν ἐκόντας τε καὶ ὁμολογοῦντας

Β ἐπιτροπεύσειν οὐστινασοῦν καὶ ὀπόσους ἄν ἔθελη, κατὰ ταύτα τὰ γραφέντα ἢ τῶν ἐπιτρόπων αἴρεσις γιγνέσθω κυρία· εάν δὲ ἢ τὸ παράπαν μὴ διαθέμενος τελευτήσῃ τις ἢ τῆς τῶν ἐπιτρόπων αἴρεσεws ἐλλιπῆς, ἐπιτρόπους εἶναι τοὺς ἐγγύτατα γένει πρὸς πατρός καὶ μητρός κυρίους, δύο μὲν πρὸς πατρός, δύο δὲ πρὸς μητρός, ἔνα δὲ ἐκ τῶν τοῦ τελευτήσαντος φίλων τούτων δ' οἱ νομοφύλακες καθιστάντων τῷ δεομένῳ τῶν

C ὀρφανῶν. καὶ πάσης τῆς ἐπιτροπῆς καὶ τῶν ὀρφανῶν πευτεκαίδεκα τῶν νομοφύλάκων οἱ πρεσβύτατοι πάντων ἐπιμελείσθων ἀεὶ κατὰ πρέσβειν καὶ κατὰ τρέις διελόμενοι σφᾶς αὐτοῦς, κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν τρέις καὶ κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν ἄλλον ἑτεροί
LAWS, BOOK XI

will. If the testator leave no male children, but females, he shall bequeath to whichever daughter he chooses a husband, and to himself a son, and write him down as his heir; and if a man has a son, whether his own or adopted, who dies in childhood before reaching man's estate, in this case also, when making his will, he shall state in writing who is to be his son's successor, and with happier luck. If any testator be wholly childless, he shall take out a tenth part of his surplus property and shall give it to any person, if he so chooses; but all the rest he shall hand over to his adopted heir, and him he shall make his son with mutual good-will and the blessing of the law.

When a man's children need guardians, if he die after making a will and naming what persons and how many he desires to act as guardians to his children, and if they are willing and consent to act, then the choice of guardians in this document shall be final; but if a man dies either wholly intestate or having omitted from his will the choice of guardians, then the nearest of kin on both the father's and the mother's side, two from each side, together with one of the friends of the deceased, shall act as official guardians, and these the Law-wardens shall appoint in the case of each orphan that requires them. All that appertains to guardianship and the orphans shall be supervised by fifteen of the Law-wardens, who shall be the eldest of the whole body, and shall divide themselves into threes according to seniority, three acting one year and another three a second year, until five yearly periods

1 _i.e._ he shall select a citizen to become his heir by marrying one of his daughters.
πρείς, ἐως ἄν αἱ πέντε περίοδοι γύρωνται κύκλῳ· καὶ τούτο ἐκλιπέτω μηδέποτε κατὰ δύναμιν.

"Ὅσ δὲ ἄν μηδεν τὸ παράσπαν διαθέμενος ἀποθάνη, παίδας μὲν καταλιπὼν δεομένους ἐπιτροπῆς, τῶν αὐτῶν νόμων τούτων ἢ χρεία τῶν παιδών αὐτοῦ

D μετεχέτων θηλείας δὲ ἂν καταλίπῃ τις ἀπροσδοκήτως τύχῃ χρησάμενος, συγγνώμην τῷ τιθέντι τῶν νόμων ἐχέτω, ἐὰν τῶν τριῶν αὐτοῦ πρὸς τὰ δύο ἐπισκοπῶν τὴν ἐκδοσία τῶν θυγατέρων ποιήται, πρὸς τε τὴν τοῦ γένους ἀγχιστέιαι καὶ τὴν τοῦ κλῆρου σωτηρίαν, τὸ δὲ τρῖτον, ὅπερ ἄν πατὴρ διασκέψῃ, ἐξ ἀπάντων τῶν πολιτῶν βλέπων εἰς ἡθη τε καὶ τρόπους τῶν ἐπιτήδειον αὐτῷ μὲν νιόν, νυμφίον δὲ εἶναι τῇ θυγατρί, τούτῳ δὲ παρα-

E λείτη διὰ τὴν ἀδύνατον σκέψιν. νόμος τοῖςν εἰς δύναμιν ὅδε περὶ τῶν τουτοῦτων κείσθω. Ἡσαν δὲ μὴ διαθέμενος θυγατέρας λίπη, τοῦ ἀποθανόντος ἁδελφός ὁμοπάτωρ ἢ ἀκληρος ὁμομήτριος ἐχέτω τὴν θυγατέρα καὶ τὸν κλῆρον τοῦ τελευτήσαντος. εἀν δὲ μή ἢ ἁδελφός, ἁδελφοῦ δὲ παῖς, ὡσάντως, εἀν ἐν ἥλικίᾳ πρὸς ἀλλήλους ὁσίν· εἀν δὲ μηδὲ εἰς τούτων, ἁδελφῆς δὲ παῖς ἡ, κατὰ ταύτα· τέταρτος δὲ πατρός ἁδελφὸς, πέμπτος δὲ τούτου παῖς, ἐκτος δὲ ἁδελφῆς πατρὸς ἐκγόνος. ὡσάντως δὲ τὸ γένος ἀεὶ πορευέσθω κατ’ ἀγχιστέιαι, εἀν τὶς

925 παίδας θηλείας καταλίπῃ, δι’ ἁδελφῶν τε καὶ ἁδελφιδῶν ἐπανό, ἐμπροσθὲ μὲν τῶν ἀρρένων, ὑστερον δὲ θηλείων ἐνι γένει.

Τῇ δὲ τοῦ τῶν γάμων χρόνου συμμετρίαν τε καὶ

---

1 i.e. in marriage: the “lot” is to pass on always to the next of kin, cf. 925 D, E.

426
have passed in rotation; and this process shall go on, so far as possible, without a break.

And if any man die wholly intestate, leaving children that require guardianship, his unfriended children shall share in these same laws. And if a man meets with some unforeseen mischance and leaves daughters, he shall pardon the lawgiver if he regulates the betrothal of the daughters with an eye to two points out of three—namely, nearness of kinship and the security of the lot—and omits the third point, which a father would take into consideration,—namely, the selecting out of all the citizens of a person suited by character and conduct to be a son to himself and a spouse for his daughter,—if, I say, the lawgiver passes this over owing to the impossibility of taking it into consideration. Accordingly, the law that we shall enact, as the best in our power touching such matters, will be this:—If a man dies intestate and leaves daughters, that brother who is born of the same father or of the same mother and who is without a lot shall take the daughter and the lot of the deceased; failing a brother, if there be a brother's son, the procedure shall be the same, provided that the parties be of an age suited the one to the other; failing one of these, the same rule shall hold for a sister's son; then, fourthly, for a father's brother; and, fifthly, for his son; and, sixthly, for the son of a father's sister. In like manner, if a man leaves female children, the right of kinship shall proceed always by degrees of consanguinity, going up through brothers and brother's children, first the males, and secondly the females in one line.

The suitability or otherwise of the time of
άμετρίαν ὁ δικαστής σκοπῶν κρινέτω, γυμνοὺς μὲν τοὺς ἄρρενας, γυμνὰς δὲ ὀμφαλοῦ μέχρι θεώμενος 
τὰς θηλείας· εὰν δὲ τοῖς οἰκείοις ἀπορία ξυγγενῶν 
ἡ, μέχρι μὲν ἄδελφοι νύιδῶν, μέχρι δὲ πάππου 
παῖδων ὁφαύτως, τῶν ἀλλων ὅτιν' ἂν ἡ παῖς 
μετ' ἐπιτρόπων αἵρηται τὸν πολιτῶν ἐκούσιον.

Β ἐκουσία, κληρονόμος γιγνέσθω τοῦ τελευτήσαντος 
καὶ τῆς θυγατρὸς νυμφίος. ἔστιι 1 δὲ πολλὰ πολ- 
λῶν <ἐμποδῶν> 2 καὶ πλείων ἀπορία τῶν τοιούτων 
γίγνοιτ' ἂν ἐστιν ὅτε ἐν αὐτῇ τῇ πόλει. ἂν οὖν δὴ 
τις ἀπορομένη τῶν αὐτόθεν ὅρα τὶνα εἰς ἀποκιάν 
ἀπεσταλμένον, ἦ δὲ κατὰ νοῦν αὐτῇ κληρονόμον 
ἐκεῖνον γιγνεσθαι τῶν τοῦ πατρός, εὰν μὲν ξυγ- 
γενῆς ἦ, κατὰ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ νόμου ἐπὶ τὸν κλήρον 
πορεύεσθω, ἦδὲ ἐκτὸς γένους, τῶν ἐν τῇ πόλει 
C ὅπων ἐξώ τῆς συγγενείας, κύριος ἔστω κατὰ τὴν 
τῶν ἐπιτρόπων καὶ τῆς παιδὸς τοῦ τελευτήσαντος 
αἱρέσιν γῆμαί καὶ τὸν κλήρον ἐπανελθῶν οἰκαί 
λαβεῖν τοῦ μὴ διαθεμένου.

'Απαῖς δὲ ἄρρενων τε καὶ θηλείων τὸ παρά- 
pαν ὅς ἂν μὴ διαθέμενος τελευτά, τὰ μὲν 
ἄλλα περὶ τοῦ τοιούτου κατὰ τὸν ἐμπροσθεν 
ἐχέτω νόμον, θῆλεια δὲ καὶ ἄρρην, οἴον ξύν- 
νομοι, ἰτωσαί ἐκ τοῦ γένους εἰς τὸν ἐξηρμο- 
μένον ἑκάστοτε οἶκον, ὅπ' ὁ κλήρος γιγνέσθω 
D κυρίως, ἄδελφη μὲν πρῶτον, ἄδελφοι δὲ θυγάτηρ 
δευτέρα, τρίτη δὲ ἐκγονὸς ἄδελφης, τετάρτη δὲ 
πατρός ἄδελφη, καὶ πέμπτῃ πατρός ἄδελφοι παις, 
ἐκτῇ δὲ ἄδελφης πατρός ἂν εἰη παῖς· συνοικίζειν 
δὲ ταύτας ἐκεῖνος κατ' ἀγχιστείαν καὶ θέμιν, ὡς

1 ἔστιν Apelt : eti MSS., edd.
2 <ἐμποδῶν> I add (πολλὴ for πολλὰ Ast).
marriage the judge shall decide by inspection, viewing the males naked and the females naked down to the navel. And if there be in the family a lack of kinsmen as far as brother's grandchildren, and likewise as far as grandfather's children, whomsoever of the other citizens the girl, aided by her guardians, shall choose, that man (if both he and the girl are willing) shall become the heir of the deceased and the spouse of his daughter. But obstacles often occur, and there might be times when there was an unusual dearth of such men in the city itself: so if any girl, being at a loss to find a spouse on the spot, sees one that has emigrated to a colony and desires that he should become heir to her father's property, if so be that he is related, he shall proceed to the lot, according to the ordinance of the law; but if he be outside the kin, and there be no one of near kin in the State, then by the choice of the guardians and of the daughter of the deceased he shall be entitled to marry and to take the lot of the intestate man on his return home.

Whosoever dies intestate, being without any issue, male or female, in his case all other matters shall be governed by the previous law; and a man and woman from the family shall in each such instance go into the deserted house as joint assignees, and their claim to the lot shall be made valid; and the female claims to inheritance shall come in this order —first, a sister; second, a brother's daughter; third, a sister's daughter; fourth, a father's sister; fifth, a father's brother's daughter; sixth, a father's sister's daughter; and these shall share the home with the male kinsmen according to the degree of relationship
εμπροσθεν ενομοθετήσαμεν. μὴ δὴ λανθανέτω τὸ τῶν τοιούτων νόμων ἡμᾶς βάρος, ὡς χαλεπῶς ἔστιν ὅτε προστάττει τῷ τοῦ τελευτήσαντος κατὰ γένος οἰκείω γαμεῖν τὴν ξυγγενή, μὴ δοκεῖ δὲ σκοπεῖν ἂ μυρία ἐν ἄνθρωποις ἐμπόδια γίγνεται. Εἰ τοῖς τοιούτοις ἐπιτάγμασι τοῦ μήτινα ἐθέλειν πείθεσθαι, πρότερον δὲ οὐστίνας ὅτιοι ἂν βουλήθηναι παθεῖν, ὅποταν ἢ σωμάτων νοσήματα καὶ πηρώσεις ἢ διανοίας ἢ τις τῶν ἐπιταττομένων γαμεῖν ἡ γαμεῖσθαι γίγνεται. τούτων δὴ μηδὲν φροντίζειν τάχι ἂν ὁ νομοθέτης δοξείε τισιν, οὐκ ὁρθῶς δοκοῦν. ἔστω τοῖς εἰρημένοις ὑπέρ τε νομοθέτου καὶ ὑπὲρ νομοθετομένου· συγγνώμην μὲν τῷ νομοθέτῃ τούς ἐπιταττομένους δεόμενον ἔχειν, ὅτι τῶν κοινῶν ἐπιμελεύμενος οὐκ ἂν ποτε δύναιτο διοικεῖν ἂμα καὶ τὰς ἱδίας ἐκάστως γιγνομένας ξυμφοράς, 926 ξυγγνώμην δ' ἂν καὶ τοῖς νομοθετομένοις, ὡς τὰ τοῦ νομοθετοῦντος εἰκότως εἴνοτε οὐ δύναται προστάγματα τελείων, ἃ μὴ γιγνώσκων προστάττει.

κλ. Τὰ δὴ τις οὖν, ὥς ξένε, δρῶν πρὸς τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐμμετρότατος ἂν εἴη;

α. δ. Διαμυρίς, ᾧ Κλεινία, τοῖς τοιούτοις νόμοις καὶ νομοθετομένοις ἀναγκαίον αἱρεῖσθαι.

κλ. Πῶς λέγεισιν;

α. "Εστιν ὅτε πλουσίους πατρὸς ἀδελφίδοις τὴν τοῦ θεὸν θυγατέρα ἐκῶν οὐκ ἂν ἐθέλοι λαμβάνειν, τρυφῶν καὶ ἐπὶ μείζονι γάμμοις τὴν διάνοιαν ἔπεχων ἔστι δ' ὅτε καὶ ξυμφορᾶν τὴν μεγίστην

430
and right, as we previously enacted. Now we must not fail to notice how burdensome such a law may prove, in that sometimes it harshly orders the next of kin to the deceased to marry his kinswoman, and that it appears to overlook the thousands of impediments which in human life prevent men from being willing to obey such orders and cause them to prefer any other alternative, however painful, in cases where either of the parties ordered to marry is suffering from diseases or defects of mind or body. Some might suppose that the lawgiver is paying no heed to these considerations, but they would be wrong. On behalf, therefore, of the lawgiver as well as of him to whom the law applies let a kind of general prelude be uttered, requesting those to whom the order is given to pardon the lawgiver because it is impossible for him, in his care for the public interests, to control also the private misfortunes which befall individuals, and requesting pardon also for the subjects of the law, inasmuch as they are naturally unable at times to carry out ordinances of the lawgiver laid down by him in ignorance.

CLIN. As regards this, Stranger, what would be the most rational course of action to adopt?

ATH. It is necessary, Clinias, that for laws of this kind, and those whom they affect, arbitrators should be chosen.

CLIN. How do you mean?

ATH. It might happen that a nephew, who has a rich father, would be loth to take to wife his uncle’s daughter, giving himself airs and being minded to make a grander match. Or again, when what the lawgiver enjoins would be a fearful calamity, a man
τοῦ νομοθέτου προστάττοντος ὑπειθείν ἀναγκάζοντ' ἂν τῷ νόμῳ, μανινόμενα κηδεύματα ἀναγκαζοῦντος λαμβάνειν ἢ δεινὰς ἄλλας σωμάτων ἢ ψυχῶν εὐμφοράς, ἂς ἀβιωτον ζην κεκτημένῳ. ο ὅ ὑν ὁνόμος ἡμῖν περὶ τούτων ὅδε νόμος κείσθω. 'Εάν τινες ἀρα περὶ διαθέσις ἐγκαλώσι τοῖς κειμένοις νόμοις, περὶ τε ἄλλων ὀντινοψοὺν καὶ δὴ

C καὶ περὶ γάμων, ἡ μὴν παρόντα καὶ ξῶντα αὐτῶν τοῦ νομοθέτην μήποτ' ἂν ἀναγκάσαι πράττειν οὕτω, μηδὲ γῆμαι μηδὲ γήμασθαι, τοὺς ὑν ἀναγκαζομένους ἐκάπτερα δράν, ὅ δὲ τής τῶν οἰκείων ἢ τις ἐπίτροπος φη, διαίσθητας φάναι καὶ πατέρας τοὺς πεντεκάideke τῶν νομοφυλάκων καταλιπεῖν τοῖς ὀρφανοῖς καὶ ὀρφαναῖς τῶν νομοθέτων πρὸς

D οὖς ἐπανώντες διαδικαζόσθων οἱ περὶ τινος τῶν τοιούτων ἀμφιβητούντες, κύρια τελούντες τὰ τοιούτων δόγματα. ἄν δὲ τῷ μείζων δύναμις ἐπανατίθεσθαι δοκὴ τοῖς νομοφύλαξιν, εἰς τὸ τῶν ἐκκρίτων δικαστῶν δικαστήριον εἰσάγων αὐτῶν διαδικαζόσθω περὶ τῶν ἀμφιβητοομένων τῷ δὲ ἠττηθέντι παρὰ τοῦ νομοθέτου ψόγος καὶ ὀνείδος κείσθω, πολλῶν χρημάτων νοῦν κεκτημένῳ ζημίᾳ μὲ

βαρυτέρα.

Νῦν δὴ τοῖς ὀρφανοῖς παισὶ γένεσις οἶον δεντέρα τις γέγονει ἂν. μετὰ μὲν ὅν τὴν πρώτην Ἐ ἐκάστοις εἰρημέναι τροφαὶ καὶ παιδεύσεις· μετὰ δὲ τὴν δευτέραν, ἔρημον πατέρων γενομένην,

1 Cp. 775 D ff., 855 C.
2 i.e. be "born again" as children of the State, with the Law-wardens as their new official parents, as explained below.
might be compelled to disobey the law—for instance, when the law would force him to enter into an alliance with madness or some other dire affliction of body or soul, such as makes life intolerable for the person so allied. This statement of ours shall now be laid down as a law in the following terms:—If any man have a complaint against the ordained laws concerning testaments in respect of any detail, and especially of those relating to marriage; and if he affirms on oath that of a truth the lawgiver himself, were he alive and present, would never have compelled the parties to act as they are now being compelled to act in respect of marrying and giving in marriage; and if, on the other hand, some relative or guardian supports the compulsion of the law; what we declare is that the lawgiver has left us the fifteen Law-wardens to act for the orphans, male and female, as both arbitrators and parents, and to these all who dispute about any such matters shall go for judgment, and their verdict shall be carried out as final. If, however, anyone maintains that this is to confer too much power on the Law-wardens, he shall summon his opponents before the court of select judges and secure a decision regarding the points in dispute. On him that is defeated there shall be imposed by the lawgiver censure and disgrace,—a penalty heavier than a large fine in the eyes of a man of right mind.

Accordingly, orphan children will undergo a kind of second birth. How in each case they should be reared and trained after their first birth we have already described; and now we must contrive some means whereby, after their

1 In Books II. and VII.

VOL. II.
μηχανάσθαι δεὶ τινα τρόπον ἣ τῆς ὀρφανίας τύχη
tοῖς γενομένοις ὀρφανοῖς ὡς ἦκιστα ἔλεον ἔξει τῆς
συμφορᾶς. πρῶτον μὲν δεὶ 1 νομοθετεῖν αὐτοῖς
τοῖς νομοφύλακας ἀντὶ γεννητόρων πατέρας οὐ
χείρος, καὶ δὴ καὶ <τρεῖς> 2 καθ' ἐκαστὸν ἔνιαυ-
tόν ὡς οἰκείων ἐπιμελεῖσθαι προστάτωμεν, ἐμμελὴ
tοῦτοι τε αὐτοῖς περὶ τροφῆς ὀρφανῶν προοι-
μασάμενοι καὶ τοῖς ἐπιτρόποις, εἴς τινα γὰρ οὖν
μοὶ καὶρὸν φαίνομεθα τοὺς ἐμπροσθεν λόγους
927 διεξελθεῖν, ὡς ἀρα αἱ τῶν τελευτησάντων ψυχαῖ
δύναμιν ἔχουσί τινα τελευτήσασαι, ἢ τῶν κατ'
ἀνθρώπους πραγμάτων ἐπιμελοῦνται. ταύτα δὲ ἀληθεῖς 
μὲν, μακρὸν δ' εἰσὶ περιέχοντες λόγου.
pιστεύειν δὲ ταῖς ἄλλαις φήμαις χρεῶν περὶ τὰ
τοιαῦτα, οὔτω πολλάσι καὶ σφόδρα παλαιὰς
οὐσαίς: πιστεύειν δ' αὖ καὶ τοῖς νομοθετοῦσι ταῦθ'
οὔτως ἔχειν, ἀνπερ μὴ παντάπασιν ἄφρονες
φαίνονται, ταύτη δὲ εἰ ταῦτ' ἐστὶ κατὰ φύσιν,
pρῶτον μὲν τοὺς ἄνω θεοὺς φοβεῖσθων, οἱ 
tῶν 
Β ὀρφανῶν τῆς ἔρημίας αἰσθήσεις ἔχουσιν, εἰτὰ 
tὰς 
tῶν κεκημὸτον ψυχὰς, αἰς ἐστὶν ἐν τῇ 
φύσει 
tῶν αὐτῶν ἐκχώνων κῆδεσθαι διαφερόντως καὶ 
tιμῶσί τε αὐτοὺς εὐμενεῖς εἶναι καὶ ἀτιμάζουσι 
δυσμενεῖς, ἔτι δὲ τὰς τῶν ζωντῶν μὲν, ἐν γῆρα 
δὲ 
οὗτων καὶ ἐν μεγίσταις τιμαῖς, ὅτι οὔπερ 3 πόλις 
eυνομοῦσα εὐδαιμονεῖ, τοῦτοι οἱ παῖδες παίδων 
φιλοστοργοῦντες ᾤσι μεθ' ἡδονῆς: καὶ τὰ περὶ 
C ταύτα ὧν μὲν ἀκούουσι, βλέποντι τε ὧν, τοῖς 
tε περὶ αὐτὰ δικαίως εὐμενεῖς εἰσὶ, νεμεσῶσι

2 <τρεῖς> added by Susemihl, Ritter.
3 οὔτε οὔπερ : οὔπου σερ MSS. (ὀποὺ γὰρ Hermann).
second birth in which they are destitute of parents, their orphan condition may be as free as possible from piteous misery for those who have become orphans. In the first place, to act in the room of their begetters, as parents of no inferior kind, we must legally appoint the Law-wardens; and we charge three of these, year by year,¹ to care for the orphans as their own, having already given both to these men and to the guardians a suitable prelude of directions concerning the nurture of orphans. Opportune, indeed, as I think, was the account we previously gave ² of how the souls of the dead have a certain power of caring for human affairs after death. The tales which contain this doctrine are true, though long; and while it is right to believe the other traditions about such matters, which are so numerous and exceeding old, we must also believe those who lay it down by law that these are facts, unless it is plain that they are utter fools. So if this is really the state of the case, the guardians shall fear, first, the gods above who pay regard to the solitude of orphans; and, secondly, the souls of the dead, whose natural instinct it is to care especially for their own offspring, and to be kindly disposed to those who respect them and hostile to those who disrespect them; and, thirdly, they shall fear the souls of the living who are old and who are held in most high esteem; since where the State flourishes under good laws, their children's children revere the aged with affection and live in happiness. These old people are keen of eye and keen of ear to mark such matters, and while they are gracious towards those who deal justly therein, they are very wroth

¹ Cp. 924 C. ² 865 E ff.
ΠΛΑΤΟ

te μάλιστα αὐτοῖς εἰς ὀρφανὰ καὶ ἔρημα ὑβρίζουσι, παρακαταθήκην εἶναι μεγίστην ἤγοιμενοι καὶ ἱερωτάτην. οἷς ἐπιτροποῦν καὶ ἄρχοντα πᾶσι δεῖ τῶν νόμων, ὡς καὶ βραχὺς ἑνεὶ, προσέχοντα, καὶ εὐλαβοῦμενον περὶ τροφῆν τε καὶ παιδείαν ὀρφανῶν, ὡς ἔρανον εἰσφέροντα ἐαυτῷ τε καὶ τοῖς αὐτοῦ, κατὰ δύναμιν πάντως πᾶσαν ἑνεργετεῖν. ὁ μὲν δὴ πεισθεὶς τῷ πρὸ τοῦ νόμου μύθῳ καὶ Δ μηδὲν εἰς ὀρφανῶν ὑβρίσας οὐκ εἰσεται ἐναργῶς τὴν περὶ τὰ τοιαύτα ὀργὴν νομοθέτου, ὁ δὲ ἀπειθής καὶ τινα πατρὸς ἢ μητρὸς ἔρημον ἀδικῶν διπλῆν τινῆς πᾶσαν τὴν βλάβην ἢ περὶ τὸν ἀμφιθαλῆ γενόμενος κακὸς.

Τὴν δὲ ἄλλην νομοθεσίαν ἐπιτρόποισι τε περὶ ὀρφανῶν ἄρχοντι τε περὶ τὴν ἐπιμέλειαν τῶν ἐπιτρόπων, εἰ μὲν μὴ 1 παράδειγμα 2 τε τροφῆς παίδων ἑλευθέρων ἐκέκτηστο αὐτοῖ τρέφοντες τοὺς αὐτῶν καὶ τῶν οἰκείων χρημάτων Ε ἐπιμελοῦμενοι, ἔτι δὲ νόμους περὶ αὐτῶν τούτων μετρῶς διειρήμενοι εἰχον, εἰχὲ τινα λόγον ἂν ἐπιτροπικοὺς τινας νόμους, ὡς ὄντας ἰδία διαφέροντας πολὺ, τιθέναι, ποικίλλοντας ἐπιτη- 

1 μη Baiter : δη MSS.
2 παράδειγμα MSS. : παραδείγματα Zür.
with those who despitefully entreat orphans and waifs, regarding these as a trust most solemn and sacred. To all these authorities the guardian and official—if he has a spark of sense—must pay attention; he must show as much care regarding the nurture and training of the orphans as if he were contributing to his own support and that of his own children, and he must do them good in every way to the utmost of his power. He, then, that obeys the tale prefixed to the law and in no wise misuses the orphan will have no direct experience of the anger of the lawgiver against such offences; but the disobedient and he that wrongs any who has lost father or mother shall in every case pay a penalty double of that due from the man who offends against a child with both parents living.

As regards further legal directions either to guardians concerning orphans or to magistrates concerning the supervision of the guardians,—if they did not already possess a pattern of the way to nurture free children in the way they themselves nurture their own children and supervise their household goods, and if they did not also possess laws regulating these same affairs in detail, then it would have been reasonable enough to lay down laws concerning guardianship, as a peculiar and distinct branch of law, marking out with special regulations of its own the life of the orphan as contrasted with the non-orphan; but, as the matter stands, the condition of orphanhood in all these respects does not differ greatly with us from the condition of parental control, although as a rule in respect of public estimation and of the care bestowed on the children they are on quite a different level. Consequently,
928 διὸ δὴ περὶ τοῦτο αὐτὸ τὴν ὁρφανῶν πέρι νομοθεσίαν παραμυθούμενός τε καὶ ἀπειλῶν ὁ νόμος ἐσπούδακεν. ἔτι δ᾽ ἀπειλή τίς ἂν τοιάδε εἰη μάλα ἕγκαιρος. "Ὡς ἂν θῆλυν εἴτε ἄρρενα ἐπιτροπεύῃ, καὶ ὦς ἂν ἐπιτρόπου φύλαξ τῶν νομοφυλάκων καταστὰς ἐπιμελήται, μὴ χεῖρον ἀγαπάτω τῶν αὐτοῦ τέκνων τὸν τῆς ὁρφανικῆς μετειληφότα τύχης, μηδὲ τῶν οἰκείων τῶν τὸν τρεφομένου χείρον χρημάτων ἐπιμελεῖσθω, βέλτιον δὲ ἢ τῶν αὐτοῦ κατὰ προβιμαίναι.

Β Ἔνα δὲ τούτων νόμου ἑχων ὁρφανῶν πέρι πᾶς ἐπιτροπευέτων ἐὰν δὲ ἄλλως τίς περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα πράττῃ παρὰ τὸν νόμον τόνδε, ὁ μὲν ἀρχων ἥμισυτω τὸν ἐπιτρόπον, ὁ δὲ ἐπιτρόπος τὸν ἀρχοντα εἰς τὸ τῶν ἐκκρίτων δικαστήριων εἰσάγων ἥμισυτω τῷ δόξαντι τιμῆματι τῷ δικαστήριω διπλῇ. ἐὰν δὲ ἐπιτρόπος ἀμελεῖν ἢ κακουργεῖν δοκῇ τοῖς οἰκείοις ἢ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τινὶ πολιτών, εἰς ταύτων ἀγέτῳ δικαστήριον ἦν κατήρυγχεῖν δοκῇ τοῖς οἰκείοις ἢ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τινὶ πολιτῶν, εἰς ταύτων ἀγέτῳ δικαστήριον. ὁ τι δὲ ἂν ὀφλη, τετραπλασίαν μὲν τούτων τίνειν, γιγνέσθω δὲ τὸ μὲν ἡμισὺ τοῦ παιδός, τὸ δ᾽ ἡμισὺ τοῦ καταδικασμένου τὴν δίκην. ἀμα δ᾽ ἂν ἡβήσῃ τις τῶν ὁρφανῶν, ἐὰν ἡγηται κακῶς ἐπιτροπευθῆναι, μέχρι πεντε ἐτῶν ἐξηκούσεις τῆς ἐπιτροπῆς ἔστω δίκην λαχεῖν ἐπιτροπίας: ἐὰν δὲ τὶς ὀφήλη τῶν ἐπιτρόπων, τιμᾶν τὸ δικαστήριον ὁ τι χρη παθεῖν ἢ ἀποτίνειν, εὰν δὲ δὴ τῶν ἀρχὸντων, ἀμελεῖα μὲν δόξας κακώσαι τῶν ὁρφανῶν, ὁ τι χρῆ τίνειν αὐτὸν τῷ

D παιδί, τιμᾶτω τὸ δικαστήριον, ἐὰν δὲ ἀδίκις, πρὸς
in its regulations concerning orphans the law has emphasized this very point both by admonition and by threat. A threat, moreover, of the following kind will be extremely opportune:—Whosoever is guardian of a male or female child, and whosoever of the Law-wardens is appointed supervisor of a guardian, shall show as much affection for the child whom Fate has made an orphan as for his own children, and he shall zealously care for the goods of his nursling as much as for his own goods—or rather, more.

Every guardian shall observe this one law in the discharge of his office; and if any act in such matters contrary to this law, the magistrate shall punish him if he be a guardian, and, if he be a magistrate, the guardian shall summon him before the court of the select judges, and fine him double the penalty adjudged by the court. And if a guardian be held by the child's relatives, or by any other citizen, to be guilty of neglecting or maltreating his ward, they shall bring him before the same court, and he shall pay four times the damages assessed, and of this amount one half shall go to the child, the other half to the successful prosecutor. When an orphan has reached full age, if he thinks that he has been badly cared for, he shall be allowed to bring an action concerning the guardianship within a period of five years after the date of its expiration; and if the guardian lose his case, the court shall assess the amount of his penalty or fine; and if it be a magistrate that is held to have injured the orphan by neglect, the court shall assess what sum he shall pay to the child, but if the injury be due to unjust dealing, in addition to the fine he shall
τῷ τιμήματι τῆς ἀρχῆς τῶν νομοφυλάκων ἀφιστάσθω, τὸ δὲ κοινὸν τῆς πόλεως ἔτερον νομοφύλακα ἀντὶ τούτον καθιστάτω τῇ χώρᾳ καὶ τῇ πόλει.

Διαφοραί πατέρων τε πρὸς αὐτῶν παῖδας γίγνονται καὶ παίδων πρὸς γεννητὰς μείζους ἢ χρεών, ἐν αἷς οἳ τε πατέρες ἡγοῦντ' ἂν δεῖν τὸν νομοθέτην νομοθετεῖν ἤξειναὶ σφίσιν ἡν ὑπὸ βοῦλωνται τὸν νῦν ὑπὸ κήρυκος ἐναντίον ἀπάντων ἀπειπεῖν ψεῦν

Ε κατὰ νόμου μηκέτ' εἶναι, νιεῖς τ' αὖ σφίσι πατέρας ὑπὸ νόσων ἡ γῆρως διαπερεμένους αἰσχρῶς ἤξειναι παρανοίας γράφεσαι. ταῦτα δὲ οὖν ἐν παγκάκων ἡθεσιν ἀνθρώπων γῆγεσθαι φιλεῖ, ἐπεὶ ἡμίσεων γε ὁντων τῶν κακῶν, οἴνον μὴ κακοῦ μὲν πατρός, νίεός δὲ, ἢ τούναντίον, οὐ γίγνονται ξυμφοραὶ τηλικαύτης ἔχθρας ἐγγυοί. ἐν μὲν οὖν ἀλλὴ πολιτείᾳ παῖς ἀποκεκηρυγμένος οὐκ ἂν ἐξ ἀνάγκης ἀπόλις εἰη, ταύτης δὲ, ἢς οἴδε οἱ νόμοι ἐσονται, ἀναγκαῖως ἄχει εἰς ἀλλὴν χώραν ἐξοικίζει

929 σθαί τὸν ἀπάτορα· πρὸς γὰρ τοῖς τεταράκοντα καὶ πεντακισχιλίοις οἴκοις οὐκ ἐστὶν ἐνα προσγενέσθαι. διὸ δὴ δεῖ τὸν ταῦτα πεισόμενον ἐν δίκῃ μὴ ὑπὸ ἐνὸς πατρός, ὑπὸ δὲ τὸν γένους ἀπορρήθηκην παντὸς. ποιεῖν δὲ χρή τῶν τοιούτων πέρι κατὰ νόμουν τοιόνδε τινά. Ὡν ἄν θυμός ἐπίη μηδαμῶς εὕτυχῆς, εἰτ' οὖν ἐν δίκῃ εἰτε καὶ μὴ, ὅν ἐτεκῇ τε καὶ ἤξειθρήσατο, τούτων ἐπιθυμεῖν ἀπαλλάξαι τῆς αὐτοῦ ἕνγενειάς, μὴ φαύλως

Β οὐτώς ἤξεστο μὴν εὕθυς τούτῳ δράη, πρώτων δὲ συλλεξάτω τοὺς αὐτοῦ ἕνγενειν μέχρι ἀνεψίων
be removed from his office of Law-warden, and the public authority of the State shall appoint another in his place to act as Law-warden for the country and the State.

Between fathers and their children, and children and their fathers, there arise differences greater than is right, in the course of which fathers, on the one hand, are liable to suppose that the law-giver should give them legal permission to proclaim publicly by herald, if they so wish, that their sons have legally ceased to be their sons; while the sons, on the other hand, claim permission to indict their fathers for insanity when they are in a shameful condition owing to illness or old age. These results are wont to occur among men who are wholly evil of character, since where only half of them are evil—the son being evil and the father not, or *vice versa*—such enmity does not issue in calamitous consequences. Now, whereas under another polity a son when disinherited would not necessarily cease to be a citizen, it is necessary in our State (of which these are to be the laws) that the fatherless man should emigrate to another State, since it is impossible that a single household should be added to our 5040; consequently it is necessary that the person upon whom this punishment is to be inflicted legally should be disinherited, not by his father only, but by the whole family. Such cases should be dealt with according to a law such as this:—If any man is urged by a most unhappy impulse of anger to desire, rightly or wrongly, to expel from his own kindred one whom he has begotten and reared, he shall not be permitted to do this informally and immediately, but he shall, first of all, assemble his own kinsfolk.
PLATO

καὶ τοὺς τοῦ νιέως ὑσπαύτως τοὺς πρὸς μητρός, κατηγορεῖτω δὲ ἐν τούτοις, διδάσκων ὡς ἄξιος ἀπασίν ἐκ τοῦ γένους ἐκκεκηρύχθαι, δότω δὲ καὶ τῷ νιέὶ λόγους τοὺς ἵσους, ὡς οὐκ ἄξιος ἐστι τούτων οὐδὲν πάσχειν· καὶ ἐὰν μὲν πείθῃ ὁ πατὴρ καὶ συμψήφους λάβῃ πάντων τῶν ξυγγενῶν ὑπὲρ ἡμισὺ, πλὴν πατρὸς διαψηφιζομένων χαὶ μητρὸς καὶ τοῦ φεύγοντος, τῶν γε ἄλλων

C ὅπως οὕτως ἄν ὦσι γυναικῶν εἴτε ἀνδρῶν τέλειοι, ταύτῃ μὲν καὶ κατὰ ταύτα ἡξέστω τῷ πατρὶ τῶν νιῶν ἀποκηρύσσεν, ἄλλως δὲ μηδαμῶς. τὸν δ’ ἀποκηρυχθέντα ἐάν τις τῶν πολιτῶν νιῶν βούληται θέσθαι, μηδεὶς νόμος ἀπειργήτω ποιεῖσθαι· τὰ γὰρ τῶν νέων ἡ θὴ πολλὰς μεταβολὰς ἐν τῷ βίῳ μεταβάλλειν ἐκάστοτε πέφυκε· ἀποκηρυχθέντα δὲ ἄν τις δέκα ἐτῶν μὴ ἐπιθυμήσῃ θετὸν νιῶν

D ποιῆσαι, τοὺς τῶν ἐπιγόνων ἐπιμελητὰς τῶν εἰς τὴν ἀποκίκαν ἐπιμελεῖσθαι καὶ τούτων, ὅπως ἄν μετάσχωσι τῆς αὐτῆς ἀποκίκας ἐμμελῶς. ἐὰν δὲ τίς τινα νόσος ἡ γῆρας ἢ καὶ τρόπων χαλεπότης ἢ καὶ ἄφιππαντα ταῦτα ἐκφρονά ἀπεργαζέται διαφερόντως τῶν πολλῶν, καὶ λανθάνῃ τοὺς ἄλλους πλὴν τῶν συνδιαιτωμένων, ὀἰκοφθορὴ δὲ ὡς ὄν τῶν αὐτῶν κύριος, ὁ δὲ νιῶς ἀπορῶ καὶ ὅκυ τὴν τῆς παρανοίας γράφεσθαι δίκην, νόμος

Ε αὐτῷ κείσθω πρὸ τοῦ μὲν πρὸς τοὺς πρεσβυτάτους τῶν νομοφυλάκων ἐλθόντα διηγῆσαι τῇ τοῦ πατρὸς ξυμφοράν, οἱ δὲ κατιδόντες ἰκανῶς ξυμβουλεύοντος ἐὰν τε δέῃ γράφεσθαι καὶ ἐὰν μὴ

1 διαψηφιζομένων Baiter: διαψηφιζομένου MSS.
2 γε Hermann: τε MSS.; δὲ Ast, Zur.
as far as cousins and likewise his son's kinsfolk on the mother's side, and in the presence of these he shall accuse his son, showing how he deserves at the hands of all to be expelled from the family, and he shall grant to the son an equal length of time for arguing that he does not deserve to suffer any such treatment; and if the father convinces them and gains the votes of more than half the family (votes being given by all the other adults of both sexes, save only the father, the mother, and the son who is defendant), in this way and on these conditions, but not otherwise, the father shall be permitted to disinherit his son. And as regards the man disinherited, if any citizen desires to adopt him as his son, no law shall prevent him from doing so, (for the characters of the young naturally undergo many changes during their life); but if within ten years no one offers to adopt the disinherited man, then the controllers of the surplus children designed for emigration shall take control of these persons also, in order that they may be duly included in the same scheme of emigration. And if a man becomes unusually demented owing to illness or old age or crabbedness, or a combination of these complaints, but his condition remains unnoticed by all except those who are living with him, and if he regards himself as master of his own property and wastes his goods, while his son feels at a loss and scruples to indict him for insanity,—in such a case a law shall be enacted on behalf of the son whereby he shall, in the first instance, go to the eldest of the Lawwardens and report to them his father's condition, and they, after full enquiry, shall advise whether or not he ought to bring an indictment; and if they
τὴν γραφὴν, ἡνὶ δὲ ξυμβουλεύσωσι, γιγνέσθωσαν τῷ γραφομένῳ μάρτυρες ἀμα καὶ ξύνδικοι. ὁ δὲ ὀφλών τοῦ λοιποῦ χρόνου ἀκυρος ἐστὶ τῶν αὐτῶν καὶ τὸ σμικρότατον διατίθεσθαι, καθάπερ παῖς δὲ οὐκείτω τῶν ἐπίλοιπον βιών.

Εὰν δὲ ἀνήρ καὶ γυνὴ μηδαμῆ ξυμφέρωνται τρόπων δυστυχία χρώμενοι, δέκα μὲν ἄνδρας τῶν νομοβουλάκων ἐπιμελεῖσθαι τῶν τοιούτων ἀεὶ χρεόν 930 τοὺς μέσους, δέκα δὲ τῶν περὶ γάμους γυναικῶν ὀπαύτως· καὶ ἐὰν μὲν δὴ ξυναλλάττειν δύνωνται, ταῦτ' ἐστὶν κύρια, ἐὰν δ' αἱ ψυχαὶ κυμαίνοσι μει-ζόνως αὐτῶν, ζητεῖν κατὰ δύναμιν οἴτινες ἐκατέρω ξυνοικήσουσιν. εἰκὸς δὲ εἶναι τοὺς τοιούτους μὴ πραέσιν ἥθεσι κεχρημένους· βαθύτερα δὴ τούτους καὶ πραότερα τρόπων ἥθη ξύννομα πειρᾶσθαι προσαρμόττειν. καὶ ὁσοὶ μὲν ἀν ἀπαίδες αὐτῶν ἢ ὄλγοπαιδεῖς οἴτες διαφέρονται, καὶ παίδων

B ἑνεκα τὴν συνοικήσιν ποιεῖσθαι τόσοι δ' ἂν ἰκανῶν ὄντων παίδων, τῆς συγκαταγηγράσεως ἑνεκα καὶ ἐπιμελείας ἀλλήλων τὴν διάζευξιν τε καὶ σύζευξιν ποιεῖσθαι χρεών. ἐὰν δὲ τελευτᾷ γυνὴ καταλείπονσα παίδας θηλείας τε καὶ ἄρρενας, συμβουλευτικὸς ἂν εἴῃ νόμος τὸ τιθέμενος, οὐκ ἀναγκαστικός, τρέφειν τοὺς οὐν ταῖς παίδας μὴ μητρικῶς ἐπαγόμενον· μὴ δὲ οὖν ἐξ ἀνάγκης γαμεῖν, μέχριτερ ἂν ἰκανοὺς γεννησθῇ παίδας τῷ C τε σίκω καὶ τῇ πόλει. ἢν δὲ ὁ ἀνήρ ἀποθάνῃ παίδας ἰκανοὺς λιπῶν, ἢ μήτηρ τῶν παίδων

1 κεχρημένουs MSS. : κεκραμένουs MSS. marg., Zur.

1 Cp. 784 A ff., 794 B.
advise him to bring an indictment, they shall act for him, when he brings it, both as witnesses and advocates; and the father that is convicted shall thenceforward have no power to administer even the smallest tittle of his property, and shall be counted as a child in the house for the rest of his life.

If a man and his wife, being of unhappy dispositions, in no wise agree together, it is right that they should be under the constant control of ten members of the Board of Law-wardens, of middle age, together with ten of the women in charge of marriage. 1 If these officials are able to bring about a reconciliation, this arrangement shall hold good; but if their passions rage too high for harmony, the officials shall, so far as possible, seek out other suitable unions for each of them. And since it is probable that such persons are not of a gentle disposition, they must endeavour to yoke with them dispositions that are more gentle and sedate. 2 If those who quarrel are childless, or have but few children, they must form unions with a view to children; but if they have children enough, then the object both of the separation and of the new union should be to obtain companionship and mutual assistance in old age. If a man's wife dies, leaving both male and female children, there shall be a law, advisory rather than compulsory, directing the husband to rear the children without introducing a step-mother; but if there be no children, the widower must of necessity marry, until he has begotten children sufficient alike for his household and the State. And if the husband dies, leaving sufficient children, the mother of the children shall

2 Cp. 773 C.
The object of this rule dealing with irregular connexions between free citizens and slaves is to prevent any of slave descent acquiring rights of property in the State.
remain there and rear them; but if it be deemed that she is unduly young to be able to live healthfully without a husband, the relatives shall report the case to the women in charge of marriage, and shall take such action as may seem good to them and to themselves; and if there be a lack of children, they shall also act with a view to the supply of children; and the number which constitutes a bare sufficiency of children shall be fixed by the law at one of each sex. Whenever, in spite of agreement as to who a child's parents are, a decision is required as to which parent the child should follow, the rule is this: in all cases where a slave-woman has been mated with a slave or with a free man or a freedman, the child shall belong to the slave-woman's master; but if a free woman mates with a slave, the issue shall belong to the slave's master; and if the child be a master's by his own slave-woman, or a mistress's by her own slave, and the facts of the case are quite clear, then the women officials shall send away the woman's child, together with its father, to another country, and the Law-wardens shall send away the man's child, together with its mother.

Neglect of parents is a thing that no god nor any right-minded man would ever recommend to anyone; and one ought to recognize how fitly a prelude of the following kind, dealing with worship paid to the gods, would apply to the honours and dishonours paid to parents:—The ancient laws of all men concerning the gods are two-fold: some of the gods whom we honour we see clearly, but of others we set up statues as images, and we believe that when we worship these, lifeless

2 *i.e.* stars; cp. 821 B.
τοὺς ἐμψύχους θεοὺς πολλὴν διὰ ταῦτ᾽ εὔνοιαν καὶ χάριν ἔχειν. πατὴρ οὖν οὗν καὶ μήτηρ ἢ τούτων πατέρες ἢ μητέρες ἐν οἰκία κεῖνται κειμύλιοι ἀπειρηκότες γῆρα, μηδεὶς διανοηθέτω ποτὲ ἀγαλμα αὐτῶν, τοιοῦτον ἐφέστιον ἱδρυμα [ἐν οἰκία] ἔχων, μᾶλλον κύριον ἔσεσθαι, εὰν δὴ κατὰ τρόπον γε ὁρθῶς αὐτὸ θεραπεύῃ ὁ κεκτημένος.

Β κλ. Τίνα δὴ τὴν ὀρθότητα εἶναι φρύζεις;
αθ. Ἐγὼ ἔρως καὶ γὰρ οὖν ἄξιον, ὦ φίλοι, ἀκούειν τὰ γε δὴ τοιαῦτα.
κλ. Λέγε μοῦνον.
αθ. Οἰδίπους, φαμέν, ἀτιμασθεὶς ἐπεύξατο τοῖς αὐτοῦ τέκνοις ὑ ὀ γὰρ καὶ πᾶς ὑμεῖ τέλεα καὶ ἐπήκοα γενέσθαι παρὰ θεῶν, Ἀμύντορά τε Φοῖνικι τῷ ἐαυτοῦ ἐπαράσασθαι παιδὶ θυμωθέντα καὶ Ἰππολύτῳ Θησέα καὶ ἑτέρους ἄλλους μυρίους μυρίοις, ὃν γέγονε σαφές ἐπηκόοις εἶναι γονεῦσιν

C πρὸς τέκνα θεοὺς· ἀραιός γὰρ γονεὺς ἐκγόνοις ὡς οὐδεὶς ἐτερος ἄλλοις, δικαίωτα. μὴ δὴ τις ἀτιμαζομένως μὲν διαφερόντως πατρὶ πρὸς παῖδων καὶ μητρὶ θεων ἐπήκοον εὐχαίς ἤγείσθω γίγνεσθαι κατὰ φύσιν τιμωμένω δὲ ἄρα καὶ περιχαρεῖ σφόδρα γενομένω, καὶ διὰ τὰ τοιαῦτα εὐχαίς λυπαρῶς εἰς ἁγαθὰ τοῖς παιδὶ παρακαλοῦντος θεούς, οὐκ ἄρα τὰ τοιαῦτα ἀκούειν ἐξ ἑσοῦ καὶ νέμειν ἡμῖν αὐτοὺς ἡγησόμεθα; ἀλλ' οὐκ ἂν ποτὲ δίκαιοι νομεῖς εἰεν ἁγαθῶν, ὦ δὴ φαμέν ἥκιστα

D θεοὶς εἰναι πρέπον.


2 Cp. Hom. II. IX. 446 ff.; Phoenix, to avenge his neglected mother, seduced his father’s mistress.

448
though they be, the living gods beyond feel great good-will towards us and gratitude. So if any man has a father or a mother, or one of their fathers or mothers, in his house laid up bed-ridden with age, let him never suppose that, while he has such a figure as this upon his hearth, any statue could be more potent, if so be that its owner tends it duly and rightly.

**CLIN.** And what do you say is the right way?

**ATH.** I will tell you: for in truth, my friends, matters of this sort deserve a hearing.

**CLIN.** Say on.

**ATH.** Oedipus, when he was dishonoured (so our story runs), invoked upon his children curses which, as all men allege, were granted by Heaven and fulfilled; and we tell how Amyntor in his wrath cursed his son Phoenix, and Theseus cursed Hippolytus, and countless other parents cursed countless other sons, which curses of parents upon sons it is clearly proved that the gods grant; for a parent's curse laid upon his children is more potent than any other man's curse against any other, and most justly so. Let no man suppose, then, that when a father or a mother is dishonoured by the children, in that case it is natural for God to hearken especially to their prayers, whereas when the parent is honoured and is highly pleased and earnestly prays the gods, in consequence, to bless his children—are we not to suppose that they hearken equally to prayers of this kind, and grant them to us? For if not, they could never be just dispensers of blessings; and that, as we assert, would be most unbecoming in gods.

3 Cp. 687 E, Eur. Hipp. 884 ff.: Hippolytus was falsely charged with dishonouring his step-mother, Phaedra.

449
κα. Πολύ γε.

α. Οὐκοῦν διανοηθῶμεν ὁ σμικρὸν πρῶτερον εἴπομεν, ὡς οὖν ἐν πρὸς θεῶν τιμιῶτερον ἀγαλματικῷ καὶ κτησίμεθα πατρός, καὶ προπάτορος παρεῖμένων γῆρας καὶ μητέρων τὴν αὐτὴν δύναμιν ἐχοὺσον, οὐς ὅταν ἀγάλλη τις τιμαῖς, γέγηθεν ὁ θεός· οὐ γὰρ ἂν ἐπήκοος ἦν αὐτῶν. θαυμαστὸν γὰρ δὴ ποι ὁ προγόνων ἵδρυμα ἁμῖν ἐστὶν, τὰ διαφέροντος τῶν ἄρχουσιν· τὰ μὲν γὰρ θεραπευόμενα ὑφ’ ἡμῶν, ὡσα εἴμυχα, ἐξυπέκειται ἐκάστοτε, καὶ ἀτιμαζόμενα τάναντια, τὰ δὲ οὕδετερα, ὡστε ἂν ὀρθῶς τις χρήται πατρί καὶ προπάτορι καὶ πᾶσι τοῖς τοιοῦτοις, πάντων πρὸς θεοφιλὴν μοιράν κυριώτατα ἀγαλμάτων ἄν κεκτῆτο.

κα. Κάλλιστ’ εἴπεις.

α. Πάς δὴ νοῦν ἐχὼν φοβεῖται καὶ τιμᾶ γονέων εὐχάς, εἰδὼς πολλοῖς καὶ πολλάκις ἐπιτελεῖς γενομένας. τούτων οὖν οὔτω φύσει διατεταγμένων τοῖς μὲν ἄγαθοίς ἐρμαίοι πρόγονοι γηραῖοι, ζῶντες μέχρι τῶν ἐγχάτων τοῦ βίου, καὶ ἀπίόντες [νέοι] οἱ φόβοι ποθεινοὶ, τοῖς δὲ κακοῖς εὐ μάλα φοβεροί. πάς δὴ τιμᾶτω πᾶσαις τιμαῖς ταῖς ἐννομοῖς τοὺς αὐτοῦ γεννυτοράς τοῖς νῦν πειθεὶς λόγοις· εἰ δ’ οὖν τινὰ κατέχοι φήμη κωφὸν τῶν τοιούτων προοιμίων, νόμος ὤδε ἐπὶ τούτοις ὀρθῶς κείμενος ἂν εἴη· Ἐάν τις ἐν τῇ τῇ πόλει γονέων ἀμελέστερον ἔχῃ τοῦ δεόντος,

1 [νέοι] bracketed by W.-Mollendorff: ἀπόντες νέοι
2 κωφὸν England: κωφή MSS.

1 Cp. 931 A.
LAWS, BOOK XI

CLIN. Most, indeed.

ATH. Let us maintain, then,—as we said a moment ago—that in the eyes of the gods we can possess no image more worthy of honour than a father or forefather laid up with old age, or a mother in the same condition; whom when a man worships with gifts of honour, God is well pleased, for otherwise He would not grant their prayers. For the shrine which is an ancestor is marvellous in our eyes, far beyond that which is a lifeless thing; for while those which are alive pray for us when tended by us and pray against us when dishonoured, the lifeless images do neither; so that if a man rightly treats his father and forefather and all such ancestors, he will possess images potent above all others to win for him a heaven-blest lot.¹

CLIN. Most excellent!

ATH. Every right-minded man fears and respects the prayers of parents, knowing that many times and in many cases they have proved effective. And since this is the ordinance of nature, to good men aged forefathers are a heavenly treasure while they live, up to the very last hours of life, and when they depart they are sorely regretted; but to the bad they are truly fearsome. Therefore let every man, in obedience to these counsels, honour his own parents with all the due legal honours. If, however, "report convicts"² any of deafness to such preludes, the following law will be enacted rightly to deal with them:—If any person in this State be unduly neglectful of his parents,³ and fail to consider them

³ Cp. 717 D, 881 D.
Β καὶ μὴ τῶν νόεων καὶ πάντων τῶν ἐκγόνων αὐτοῦ καὶ ἑαυτοῦ ἰμείζονος εἰς ἀπαντα· ἐπιτρέπων καὶ ἀποτλημάτων ἢ τὰς βουλήσεις, ἐξαγγελλέτω μὲν ὁ πάσχων τι τοιούτων, εἰτε αὐτοὺς εἰτε τινὰ πέμπων, πρὸς τρεῖς μὲν τῶν νομοφυλάκων τοὺς πρεσβυτάτους, τρεῖς δὲ αὖ τῶν περὶ γάμους γυναικῶν ἐπιμέλουσιν· οἳ δ’ ἐπιμελείσθωσαν, κολάζοντες τοὺς ἁδικοῦντας νέους μὲν ὄντας ἐτὶ πληγαῖς καὶ δεσμοῖς, μέχριτε ἂν ἐτῶν ἄνδρες.

C μὲν τυγχάνωσιν ὄντες τριάκουτα, γυναίκες δὲ δέκα πλείστην ἔτεσιν κολαξέσθωσαν ταῖς αὐταῖς κολάσεσιν. ἦν δὲ πορρωτέρω τούτων τῶν ἐτῶν ὄντες τῶν αὐτῶν ἀμελείων περὶ γονέας μὴ ἀφιστῶνται, κακῶσι δὲ τινάς τινες, εἰς δικαστήριου εἰσαγόντων αὐτοὺς εἰς ἑνα καὶ ἑκατὸν ¹ τῶν πολιτῶν, οἴτινες ἂν ὅσι πρεσβύτατοι ἀπάντων· ἢν δὲ τις ὀφλη, τιμᾶτο τὸ δικαστήριον ὅ τι χρὴ τίνειν ἢ πάσχειν, ἀπόρρητον μηδὲν ποιούμενοι ὅσων δυνατός ἄνθρωπος πάσχειν ἢ τίνειν.

D ἦν δὲ τις ἀδυνατὴ κακούμενος φράζειν, ὁ πυθομένος τῶν ἐλευθέρων ἐξαγγελλέτω τοῖς ἀρχούσιν ἢ κακὸς ἔστω καὶ ὑπόδικος τῶ ἐθέλουτι Βλάβης. ἦν δὲ δοῦλος μηνύσῃ, ἐλεύθερος ἔστω, καὶ ἦν μὲν τῶν κακούντων ἢ κακομένων δοῦλος, ὑπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἀφείσθω, ἔαν δὲ τινὸς ἄλλου τῶν πολιτῶν, τὸ δημόσιον ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τιμὴν τῷ κεκτημένῳ καταβαλλέτω· τοῖς ἀρχοῦσι δὲ ἐπιμελέσ ἔστω μή τις ἀδική τὸν τοιούτων τιμωροῦμενος τῆς μηνύσεως ἐνεκά.

Ε Ἡ Ὀσα τις ἄλλος ἄλλον πημαίνει φαρμάκοις, τὰ μὲν θανάσιμα αὐτῶν διείρηται, τῶν δ’ ἄλλων

¹ ἑκατὸν Bekker, most edd.: ἑκαστὸν MSS., Zur.
in all things more than his sons or any of his offspring, or even himself, and to fulfil their wishes, let the parent who suffers any such neglect report it, either in person or by a messenger, to the three eldest Law-wardens, and to three of the women in charge of marriage; and these shall take the matter in hand, and shall punish the wrongdoers with stripes and imprisonment if they are still young—up to the age of thirty if they are men, while if they are women they shall suffer similar punishment up to the age of forty. And if, when they have passed these limits of age, they do not desist from the same acts of neglect towards their parents, but in some cases maltreat them, they shall be summoned before a court of 101 citizens, who shall be the oldest citizens of all; and if a man be convicted, the court shall assess what his fine or punishment must be, regarding no penalty as excluded which man can suffer or pay. If any parent when maltreated is unable to report the fact, that free man who hears of it shall inform the magistrate, failing which he shall be esteemed base, and shall be liable to an action for damage at the hands of anyone who chooses. If a slave gives information he shall be set free: he shall be set free by the Board of Magistrates if he be a slave of either the injured party or the injurers; but if he belong to any other citizen, the State Treasury shall pay his owner a price for him; and the magistrates shall take care that no one does injury to such a man in revenge for his giving information.

We have already\(^1\) dealt fully with cases where one man injures another by poisons so that death is the

\(^1\) 869 Eff.
περὶ βλάψεων, εἰτε τις ἄρα πώμαιν ἡ καὶ βρώμασιν ἢ ἀλείμμασιν ἐκών ἐκ προνοιας πημαίνει, τούτων οὐδὲν πω διερρήθη, διτατι γὰρ δὴ φαρμακεῖαι κατὰ τὸ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ωθοῖ γένος ἐπισκοποῦ τὴν διάρρήσιν. ἦν μὲν
933 γὰρ τὰ νῦν διαρρήσιν εἰπομεν, σώμασι σώματα κακουργούσα ἐστὶ κατὰ φύσιν ἀλλὰ δὲ ἡ μαγγανείας τέ τις καὶ ἐπωδαῖς καὶ καταδέσει λεγομένας πείθει τοὺς μὲν τολμῶντας βλάπτειν αὐτούς, ώς ὅντως δύνανται τὸ τοιοῦτον, τοὺς δὲ ως παντὸς μᾶλλον ύπὸ τούτων δυναμένων γοητεϊνβλάπτονται. ταύτ᾽ οὖν καὶ περὶ τὰ τοιαύτα ξύμπαντα οὔτε ράδιον ὅπως ποτὲ πέφυκε γιγνώσκειν, οὔτ᾽ εἰ τις γνωκή, πείθειν εὔπετές ἐτέρους. ταῖς δὲ ψυχαῖς τῶν ἀνθρώπων δυσω-

B πομεναῖς πρὸς ἀλλήλους περὶ τὰ τοιαύτα οὐκ ἄξιον ἐπιχειρεῖν [πείθειν] 2, ἀν ποτε ἄρα ᾐδωσί ποιν ἑρίνα μυμέματα πεπλασμένα, εἰτ᾽ ἐπὶ θύραις εἰτ᾽ ἐπὶ τριώδοις εἰτ᾽ ἐπὶ μνήμασι γονέων αὐτῶν τεινέ, ὀλυγρεῖν πάντων τῶν τοιούτων διακελεύσθαι μὴ σαφῆς ἔχουσι δόγμα περὶ αὐτῶν. διαλαβόντας δὲ διήκὴ τὸς φαρμακείας περὶ νόμων, ὁποτέρως ἀν τις ἐπιχειρή φαρμάτειν, πρῶτον μὲν δεῖσθαι καὶ παραϊνεῖν καὶ συμβουλεύειν μὴ

C δεῖν ἐπιχειρεῖν τοιοῦτο δρᾶν μηδὲ καθάπερ παῖδας τοὺς πολλοὺς τῶν ἀνθρώπων δειματοῦντας 3 φοβεῖν, μηδὲ αὐ τὸν νομοθέτην τε καὶ τὸν δι-

καστήν ἅναγκάζειν εξιάσθαι τῶν ἀνθρώπων τοὺς τοιούτους φόβους, ός πρῶτον μὲν τὸν ἐπιχει-

1 ὅντως I add.
2 [πείθειν] I bracket (καν for ᾐν Schramm).
3 δειματοῦντας England: δειμαίοντας MSS.
result; but we have not as yet dealt fully with any of the minor cases in which wilful and deliberate injury is caused by means of potions, foods, and unguents. A division in our treatment of poisoning cases is required by the fact that, following the nature of mankind, they are of two distinct types. The type that we have now expressly mentioned is that in which injury is done to bodies by bodies according to nature's laws. Distinct from this is the type which, by means of sorceries and incantations and spells (as they are called), not only convinces those who attempt to cause injury that they really can do so, but convinces also their victims that they certainly are being injured by those who possess the power of bewitchment. In respect of all such matters it is neither easy to perceive what is the real truth, nor, if one does perceive it, is it easy to convince others. And it is futile to approach the souls of men who view one another with dark suspicion if they happen to see images of moulded wax at doorways, or at points where three ways meet, or it may be at the tomb of some ancestor, to bid them make light of all such portents, when we ourselves hold no clear opinion concerning them. Consequently, we shall divide the law about poisoning under two heads, according to the modes in which the attempt is made; and, as a preliminary, we shall entreat, exhort, and advise that no one must attempt to commit such an act, or to frighten the mass of men, like children, with bogeys, and so compel the legislator and the judge to cure men of such fears, inasmuch as, first, the man who attempts

1 *i.e.* attacking body or mind.
ὁδὲ νόμος περὶ φαρμακείας. Ὅσα ἂν φαρμακεύῃ τυλὰ ἐπὶ βλάβη μὴ θανασίμω μήτε αὐτοῦ μήτε ἄνθρωπων τῶν ἐκείνου, βοσκημάτων δὲ ἡ σμηνὼν, εἰτ' <ἐπ>' ἅλλη βλάβη εἰτ' οὖν θανασίμω, ἔαν μὲν ἰατρὸς ὁν τυγχάνῃ καὶ ὁφλη δίκην φαρμάκων, βανάτω ξημιούσθω, ἕαν δὲ ἱδιώτης, ὁ τι χρῆ παθεῖν ἢ ἀποτίνειν, τιμάτω περὶ αὐτοῦ τὸ δικαστήριον. ἕαν δὲ καταδέσσειν ἡ ἐπαγωγαῖς ἡ τισιν ἐπωδαῖς ἡ τῶν τοιούτων [φαρμακειῶν] φ—

Ετυμοὶν 2 δόξη ὅμοιος εἶναι βλάπτοντι, ἕαν μὲν μάντις ὁν ἢ τερατοσκόπος, τεθνάτω, ἕαν δὲ ἀνει μαντικῆς, ὁ ἂν τις 3 φαρμακείας ὁφλῆ, ταυτὸν καὶ τούτῳ γιγνέσθω· περὶ γὰρ αὐτὸ ταὐτόν τιμάτω τὸ δικαστήριον ὃ τι ἂν αὐτοῦ δεῖν αὐτοῦ δόξη πάσχειν ἢ ἀποτίνειν.

"Ὅσα τις ἂν ἔτερος ἄλλου πημήνη κλέπτων ἢ βιαζόμενος, ἂν μὲν μείζω, μείζονα τὴν ἐκτισιν τῶν πημαθείντω τινέτω, ἐλάττω δὲ ξημιώσας σμικρότεραν, παρὰ πάντα δὲ τοσαύτην ἥλικα ἃν ἐκάστοτε ξημιώσῃ τὰς τις, μέχριπερ ἃν ἱάσηται τὸ βλαβέν. δίκην δὲ ἐκαστος [πρὸς] 4 ἐκάστῳ τῶν κακοργήματι σώφρονιστὸς ἕνεκα 934 ἐξυπερομένην τὴν προσεκτισάτω, ὁ μὲν ἄνοια κακοργήσας ἄλλοτρία, πειθοὶ διὰ νεότητα ἢ τὶ τοιούτον χρησάμενος, ἐλαφροτέραν, ὃ δὲ διὰ ὀικεῖαν

1 <ἐπ'> I add.
2 [φαρμακείων] φτινιοῦ Hermann: φαρμακείων ἀντινωνοὶν MSS.
456
poisoning knows not what he is doing either in regard to bodies (unless he be a medical expert) or in respect of sorceries (unless he be a prophet or diviner). So this statement shall stand as the law about poisoning:—Whosoever shall poison any person so as to cause an injury not fatal either to the person himself or to his employes, or so as to cause an injury fatal or not fatal to his flocks or to his hives,—if the agent be a doctor, and if he be convicted of poisoning, he shall be punished by death; but if he be a lay person, the court shall assess in his case what he shall suffer or pay. And if it be held that a man is acting like an injurer by the use of spells, incantations, or any such mode of poisoning, if he be a prophet or diviner, he shall be put to death; but if he be ignorant of the prophetic art, he shall be dealt with in the same way as a layman convicted of poisoning,—that is to say, the court shall assess in his case also what shall seem to them right for him to suffer or pay.

In all cases where one man causes damage to another by acts of robbery or violence, if the damage be great, he shall pay a large sum as compensation to the damaged party, and a small sum if the damage be small; and as a general rule, every man shall in every case pay a sum equal to the damage done, until the loss is made good; and, in addition to this, every man shall pay the penalty which is attached to his crime by way of corrective. The penalty shall be lighter in the case of one who

1 Cp. 857 A ff.
άνοιαν ἢ δ' ἀκράτειαν ἢδονῶν ἢ λυπῶν, ἐν φόβοις δειλοῖς ἢ τιαν ἐπιθυμίαις ἢ φθόνοις ἢ θυμοῖς δυσιάτοις γιγνόμενοι, βαρυτέραν, οὐχ ἕνεκα τοῦ κακουργῆσαι διδοῦς τὴν δίκην, οὔ γὰρ τὸ γεγονός ἀγένητον ἐσται ποτὲ, τοῦ δ' εἰς τὸν αὐθις ἕνεκα χρόνου ἢ τὸ παράπαν μισήσαι τὴν ἀδικίαν αὐτῶν τε καὶ τοὺς ἱδόντας αὐτὸν δικαίωμενον, ἢ λωφῆσαι μέρη πολλὰ τῆς τοιαύτης ξυμφοράς. ὡν δὴ πάντων ἕνεκα χρῆ καὶ πρὸς πάντα τὰ τοιαύτα βλέποντας τοὺς νόμους τοξότου μὴ κακοῦ στοχάζοντας δίκην τοῦ τε μεγέθους τῆς κολάσεως ἐκάστων ἕνεκα καὶ παντελῶς τῆς ἄξιας. ταύτων δ' ἔργον δρόντα ξυνυπηρτείνει δεῖ τῷ νομοθέτῃ τὸν δικαστήν, όταν αὐτῷ τὸς νόμος ἐπιτρέπῃ τιμᾶν ὧ τι χρῆ πῦρχειν τὸν κρινόμενον Σ ἢ ἀποτίνειν τὸν δὲ, καθάπερ ζωγράφον, ὑπογράφειν ἔργα ἐπόμενα τῇ γράφῃ. ὃ δὴ καὶ νῦν, ὅ Μέγιλλε καὶ Κλεινία, ποιητῶν ἡμῖν ὅτι κάλλιστα καὶ ἀριστά τῶν κλοπαίων τε καὶ βιαίων πάντων τὰς ζημίας λεγομένας οἰας δὲι γίγνεσθαι, λεκτέουν, ὅπως ἂν ἡμῖν παρείκουσι θεοὶ καὶ θεῶν παίδες νομοθετεῖν.

Μαινόμενος δὲ ἂν τις ἢ, μὴ φανερὸς ἐστὼ κατὰ πόλιν· οἱ προσῃκουσὶς ὑπ' ἐκάστων κατὰ τὰς οἰκίας φυλαττοῦντων αὐτοὺς, ὅτῳ ἂν ἐπιστῶνται

D τρόπῳ, ἢ ζημίαι ἐκτινώντων, ὁ μὲν τοῦ μεγίστου τιμήματος ἐκατόν δραχμάς, ἐὰν τ' οὖν δοῦλον ἐάν τ' οὖν καὶ ἐλεύθερον περιορᾶ, δευτέρου δὲ τιμήματος

1 δειλοῖς Winckelmann: δειλίας (al. δεινός) MSS.

1 Cp. 862 D ff.
has done wrong owing to another's folly—the wrong-doer being over-persuaded because of his youth or for some such reason; and it shall be heavier when the man has done wrong owing to his own folly, because of his incontinence in respect of pleasures and pains and the overpowering influence of craven fears or of incurable desires, envies and rages. And he shall pay the penalty, not because of the wrong-doing,—for what is done can never be undone,—but in order that for the future both he himself and those who behold his punishment may either utterly loathe his sin or at least renounce to a great extent such lamentable conduct. For all these reasons and with a view to all these objects, the law, like a good archer, must aim in each case at the amount of the punishment, and above all at its fitting amount; and the judge must assist the lawgiver in carrying out this same task, whenever the law entrusts to him the assessment of what the defendant is to suffer or pay, while the lawgiver, like a draughtsman, must give a sketch in outline of cases which illustrate the rules of the written code. And that, O Megillus and Clinias, is the task which we must now execute as fairly and well as we can: we must state what penalties should be ordained for all cases of robbery and violence, in so far as the gods and sons of gods may suffer us to ordain them by law.

If any be a madman, he shall not appear openly in the city; the relatives of such persons shall keep them indoors, employing whatever means they know of, or else they shall pay a penalty; a person belonging to the highest property-class shall pay a hundred drachmae, whether the man he is neglecting be a free man or a slave,—one belonging to the second
πέντε, τρία ο' τρίτος, καὶ δύο τὸ τέταρτος. μαίνονται μὲν οὖν πολλοὶ πολλοὺς τρόπους, οὐς μὲν οὐν εἴπομεν, ὑπὸ νόσων, εἰσὶ δὲ οἳ διὰ θυμοῦ κακὴν φύσιν ἁμα καὶ τροφὴν γενομένην. οἳ δὲ σμικρὰς ἔχθρας γενομένης πολλὴν φωνήν ἴέντες κακῶς ἀλλήλους

Ε βλασφημοῦντες λέγουσιν, οὖ πρέπον ἐν εὐνόμῳ πόλει γίγνεσθαι τοιοῦτον οὐδὲν οὐδαμὴ οὐδαμῶς, εἰς δὴ περὶ κακηγορίας ἐστώ νόμος περὶ πάντας ὁδὲ. Μηδένα κακηγορεῖτω μηδεὶς. οὗ δὲ ἀμφισβητῶν ἐν τισι λόγοις ἄλλοις ἄλλω διδασκέτω καὶ μανθανέτω τὸν τε ἀμφισβητοῦντα καὶ τοὺς παρόντας ἀπεχόμενοι πάντως τοῦ κακηγορείν. ἐκ γὰρ τοῦ κατεύχεσθαι τε ἀλλήλοις ἐπαρωμένους καὶ δι' αἰσχρῶν ὁνομάτων ἐπιφέρειν γνωικαίοις

935 ἐαυτοῖς φήμας, πρῶτον μὲν ἐκ λόγων, κούφου πράγματος, ἔργῳ μίσῃ τε καὶ ἔχθραι βαρύταται γίγνονται. πράγματι γὰρ ἁχαρίστῳ, θυμῷ, χαριζόμενος ὁ λέγων, ἐμπιπλάς ὀργὴν κακῶν ἐστίαιμάτων, ὅσον ὑπὸ παιδείας ἡμερώθη ποτε, πάλιν ἐξαγριῶν τῆς ψυχῆς τὸ τοιοῦτον, θηριούμενος ἐν δυσκολία ξών γίγνεται, πικρᾶν τοῦ θυμοῦ χάριν ἀποδεχόμενος. μετεκβαίνειν δὲ αὐτὸς εἰώθασι πάντες θαμα ἐν τοῖς τοιοῦτοις εἰς τὸ τε γελοῖον

Β περὶ τοῦ ἑαυτίου φθέγγεσθαι. ο' τις ἔθιζόμενος οὐδεὶς πώποτε ὃς οὗ τοῦ σπουδαίου τρόπου ἤτοι τὸ παράπαν διήμαρτεν ἡ μεγαλονοία ἀπώλεσε μέρη πολλά. ὁν δὴ χάριν ἐν μὲν ἱερῷ τὸ παράπαν μηδείς τοιοῦτον φθέγγεται μηδεποτε μηδεν μηδ' ἐν τισι δημοτελείσι θυσίας, μηδ' αὐτ' ἐν ἀθλοὶς μηδ' ἐν ἄγορα μηδ' ἐν δικαστηρίῳ μηδ' ἐν

460
class shall pay four-fifths of a mina—one of the third class, three-fifths,—and one of the fourth class, two-fifths. There are many and various forms of madness: in the cases now mentioned it is caused by disease, but cases also occur where it is due to the natural growth and fostering of an evil temper, by which men in the course of a trifling quarrel abuse one another slanderously with loud cries—a thing which is unseemly and totally out of place in a well-regulated State. Concerning abuse there shall be this one law to cover all cases:—No one shall abuse anyone. If one is disputing with another in argument, he shall either speak or listen, and he shall wholly refrain from abusing either the disputant or the bystanders. For from those light things, words, there spring in deed things most heavy to bear, even hatreds and feuds, when men begin by cursing one another and foully abusing one another in the manner of fish-wives; and the man who utters such words is gratifying a thing most ungracious and sating his passion with foul foods, and by thus brutalizing afresh that part of his soul which once was humanized by education, he makes a wild beast of himself through his rancorous life, and wins only gall for gratitude from his passion. In such disputes all men are commonly wont to proceed to indulge in ridicule of their opponent; but everyone who has ever yet indulged in this practice has either failed to achieve a virtuous disposition, or else has lost in great measure his former high-mindedness. No man, therefore, shall ever in any wise utter such words in any holy place or at any public sacrifice or public games, or in the market or the court or any public assembly; in every such
ευλλογώ κοινώ μηδενι. κολαξέτω δε ο τούτων ἄρχων ἐκαστός [ἀνατί], μηδέποτ' ἀριστείων επερ φιλονεικήση, νόμων ως ου κηδόμενος ούδε ποιῶν τα προσταχθέντα υπὸ το νομοθέτου. ἐὰν δε τις ἐν ἄλλοις τόποις λοιδορίας ἄρχων ἡ ἀμυνόμενος ὁστισοῦν μη ἀπέχηται τῶν τοιούτων λόγων, ὁ προστυχαίων πρεσβύτερος δι' τὸ νόμω ἀμυνέτω, πληγαὶς ἐξείργων τοὺς θυμὸ ἐταίρῳ κακῶ φιλοφρονουμένου, ἠ ἐνεχέσθω τῇ τεταγμένη ἔμνιᾳ.

Λέγομεν δὴ τὰ νῦν ὡς ὁ λοιδορίας συμπλεκόμενοι ἀνευ τοῦ γελοία ζητεῖν λέγειν οὐ δυνατός ἐστι χρῆσθαι, καὶ τοῦτο λοιδοροῦμεν, ὅποταν θυμὸ γεγυμένου ὥ. τι δὲ δὴ; τινὶ τῶν κωμῳδοῦν προθυμίαν τοῦ γελοία εἰς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους λέγειν ἡ παραδεχόμεθα, ἐὰν ἀνευ θυμοῦ τὸ τοιοῦτον ἡμῖν τοὺς πολίτας ἐπιχειρῶσι κωμῳδούντες λέγειν, ἡ διαλάβωμεν δίχα τῷ παίζειν καὶ μή, καὶ παίζοντι μὲν ἐξέστω των περὶ τοῦ λέγειν γελοίον ἀνευ θυμοῦ,

Ε συντεταμένω δε καὶ μετὰ θυμοῦ, καθάπερ εἴπομεν, μὴ ἐξέστω μηδενι; τούτο μὲν οὖν οὐδαμῶς ἀναθετέον, ὃ δ' ἐξέστω καὶ μή, τοῦτο νομοθετησόμεθα. ποιητὴ δὴ κωμῳδίας ἡ τινίς ἱμαβῶν ἡ Μουσῶν μελῳδίας μὴ ἐξέστω μήτε λόγῳ μήτε εἰκόνι μήτε θυμῷ μήτε ἀνευ θυμοῦ μηδαμῶς μηδένα τῶν πολιτῶν κωμῳδεῖν εὰν δὲ τις ἀπειθή, τοὺς ἀθλοθέτας ἐξείργειν ἐκ τῆς χώρας τὸ παράπαν αὐθημερον, ἢ

1 ἐκαστὸς MSS.: ἐκαστὸν Zur., vulg.
3 ἐταίρῳ England: ἐτέρφ MSS.

case the magistrate concerned shall punish the offender; or, if he fail to do so, he shall be dis-qualified for any public distinction because of his neglect of the laws and his failure to execute the injunctions of the lawgiver. And if in other places a man abstains not from such language—whether he be the aggressor or acting in self-defence—whoso-ever meets with him, if he be an older man, shall vindicate the law by driving off with stripes the men who pamper passion, that evil comrade; or, if he fail to do so, he shall be liable to the appointed penalty.

We are now asserting that a man who is gripped by the habit of abuse cannot avoid trying to indulge in ridicule; and this is a thing we abuse when it is uttered in passion. What then? Are we to countenance the readiness to ridicule people which is shown by comic writers,¹ provided that in their comedies they employ this sort of language about the citizens without any show of passion? Or shall we divide ridicule under the two heads of jest and earnest, and allow anyone to ridicule any other in jest and without passion,² but forbid anyone (as we have already said) to do so in real earnest and with passion? We must by no means go back on what we said; but we must determine by law who is to be granted this permission, and who refused. A composer of a comedy or of any iambic or lyric song shall be strictly forbidden to ridicule any of the citizens either by word or by mimicry,³ whether with or without passion; and if anyone disobeys, the Presidents of the Games shall on the same day banish him wholly from the country, failing which

ζημιοῦσθαι μναίς τρισὶν ἱεραίς τοῦ θεοῦ οὐ ἂν ὁ ἄγων ἦ. οἰς δὲ εἴρηται πρότερον ἐξουσίαν εἶναι [περὶ τοῦ] 1 ποιεῖν εἰς ἀλλήλους, τούτοις ἀνευ θυμοῦ μὲν μετὰ παιδιάς ἐξέστο, σπουδὴ δὲ ἀμα καὶ θυμουμένουι μὴ ἐξέστω. τούτῳ δὴ διάγνωσις ἐπιτετράφθω τῷ τῆς παιδεύσεως ὀλῆς ἐπιμελητῆ τῶν νέων, καὶ ὁ μὲν ἂν οὗτος ἐγκρίνη, προφέρειν εἰς τὸ μέσον ἐξέστω τῷ ποιήσαντι, ὁ δὲ ἂν ἀποκρίνη, μήτε αὐτὸς ἐπιδεικνύσθω μηδενί μήτε ἄλλον δοῦλον μηδὲ 2 ἐλεύθερον ποτε φανῇ Β διδάξας, ἢ κακὸς εἶναι δοξαζέσθω καὶ ἀπειθής τοῖς νόμοις.

Οἰκτρός δ' οὖν ὁ πεινῶν ἢ τι τοιοῦτο πάσχων, ἀλλ' ὁ σωφρονῶν ἢ τινα ἄρετὴν ἢ μέρος ἔχων ταύτης, ἂν τινα ξυμφορὰν πρὸς τούτοις κεκτήται. διὸ θαυμαστὸν ἂν γένοιτο εἰ τις ἂν τοιοῦτος ἀμεληθεῖν τὸ παράπαν, ὡστ' εἰς πτωχεῖαν τὴν ἐσχάτην ἠλθεῖν, δοῦλος ἢ καὶ ἐλεύθερος, ἐν οἰκουμένῃ καὶ μετρίως πολιτεία τε καὶ πόλει. διὸ τῷ νομοθέτῃ θείναι νόμον ἀσφαλὲς τοιοῦτοι

C τοιοῦντε τινά· Πτωχὸς μηδεὶς ἢμῶν ἐν τῇ πόλει γυνέσθω· τοιοῦτον δ' ἂν τις ἐπιχειρῇ δράν, εὐχαίρῃ βίον ἀνυπότοις ἐξυπλεγόμενος, ἐκ μὲν ἄγορας ἄγορανομοι ἐξεργόντων αὐτῶν, ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἀστεος ἢ τῶν ἀστυνόμον ἄρχη, ἄγρονομοι δὲ ἐκ τῆς ἀλλής χώρας εἰς τὴν ὑπεροριαν ἐκπεμπόντων, ὅπως ἢ χώρα τοῦ τοιοῦτου ξώου καθαρὰ γίγνηται τὸ παράπαν.

1 [περὶ τοῦ] bracketed by Ast (περὶ τοῦ Burnet).
2 μηδὲ Bekker: μήτε MSS.

1 Cp. 816 E, 829 C, D.
464
they shall be fined three minas, dedicated to the god whose festival is being held. Those to whom permission has been given, as we previously said, to write songs about one another shall be allowed to ridicule others in jest and without passion; but they shall not be allowed to do so with passion and in earnest. The task of making this distinction shall be entrusted to the minister in charge of the general education of the young: whatever he shall approve, the composer shall be allowed to produce in public, but whatever he shall disapprove, the composer shall be forbidden either personally to exhibit to anyone or to be found teaching to any other person, free man or slave; and if he does so, he shall be held to be a base man and disobedient to the laws.

The man who suffers from hunger or the like is not the man who deserves pity, but he who, while possessing temperance or virtue of some sort, or a share thereof, gains in addition evil fortune; wherefore it would be a strange thing indeed if, in a polity and State that is even moderately well organised, a man of this kind (be he slave or free man) should be so entirely neglected as to come to utter beggary. Wherefore the lawgiver will be safe in enacting for such cases some such law as this:—There shall be no beggar in our State; and if anyone attempts to beg, and to collect a livelihood by ceaseless prayers, the market-stewards shall expel him from the market, and the Board of city-stewards from the city, and from any other district he shall be driven across the border by the country-stewards, to the end that the land may be wholly purged of such a creature.
Δούλος δ' ἂν ἢ δούλη βλάψῃ τῶν ἀλλοτρίων

D καὶ ὀτιοῦν μὴ ἐξουσιώσῃ τοῦ βλαβείτος αὐτοῦ ἐνομένου κατ' ἀπειρίαν ἢ τιν' ἐτέραν χρείαν μὴ σώφρωνα, ὁ τοῦ βλάψαντος δεσπότης ἢ τὴν βλάβην ἐξιάσθω μὴ ἐνδεῶς ἢ τὸν βλάψαντ' αὐτοῦ παραδότων ἢ ἐπ' ἀποστερῆσαι φή τοῦ δούλου γεγονέναι τὴν αἰτίαν, 

διαδικαζόμεθα μὲν κακοτεχνῶν τῷ φάσκοντι βλαβῆναι, καὶ ἐὰν ἔλη, διπλασίαν τής ἀξίας τοῦ δούλου κομψότωθος ἢ ἂν τιμήσῃ τὸ δικαστήριον,

Ε ἐὰν δὲ ἤττηθη, τὴν τε βλάβην ἐξιάσθω καὶ τὸν δούλου παραδότω. καὶ ἐὰν ὑποζύγων ἢ ἱππος ἢ κύων ἢ τι τῶν ἄλλων θρεμμάτων σύνηται τι τῶν πέλας, κατὰ ταύτα ἐκτίνευν τὴν βλάβην.

Ἐὰν τις ἐκῶν μη ἑλθῇ μαρτυρεῖν, προκαλεῖσθαι τὸν δεόμενον, ὁ δὲ προκληθεὶς ἀπαντᾷ πρὸς τὴν δίκην, καὶ ἐὰν μὲν εἰδῆ καὶ ἑθῆλη μαρτυρεῖν, μαρτυρεῖτω, ἐὰν δὲ εἰδέναι μὴ φῆ, τοὺς τρεῖς θεοὺς Δία καὶ Ἀπόλλωνα καὶ Θέμων ἀπομόσοις ἢ 937 μὴν μὴ εἰδέναι ἀπαλλαττέσθω τῆς δίκης. ὁ δ' εἰς μαρτυρίαν κληθείς, μὴ ἀπαντῶν δὲ τῷ καλεσάμενῳ, τῆς βλάβης ὑπόδικον ἐστώ κατὰ νόμον, ἐὰν δὲ τίς τινα δικάζωντα ἀναστήσηται μάρτυρα, μαρτυρήσας μὴ διαψηφίζονται περὶ ταύτης τῆς δίκης. γνωαίκ' δ' ἐξέστω ἐλευθέρα μαρτυρεῖν καὶ συνηγορεῖν, ἐὰν ὑπὲρ τετταράκοντα ἔτη ἢ γεγονικά,

1 προκαλεῖσθαι Cobet: προσκαλεῖσθαι MSS.
If a slave, male or female, do any injury to another man's goods, when the injured man himself has had no share in causing the injury through his own clumsy or careless handling, then the master of him that has done the injury shall fully make good the damage, or else shall hand over the person of the injurer: but if the master brings a charge affirming that the claim is made in order to rob him of his slave by a privy agreement between the injurer and the injured party, then he shall prosecute the man who claims that he has been injured on the charge of conspiracy; and if he wins his case, he shall receive double the price at which the court shall assess the slave, but if he loses he shall not only make good the damage, but he shall also hand over the slave. And if it be a mule or horse or dog or any other animal that causes damage to any property belonging to a neighbour, its master shall in like manner pay compensation.

If anyone is unwilling to act as witness, the man who requires his evidence shall summon him, and the man so summoned shall attend the trial, and if he knows the facts and is willing to give evidence, he shall give it; but in case he denies knowledge, he shall take an oath by the three gods, Zeus, Apollo, and Themis, that of a truth he has no knowledge, and this done, he shall be dismissed from the suit. And if a man summoned as witness does not attend with his summoner, he shall be legally liable to be sued for damages. And if one of the judges be summoned as a witness, he shall not vote at the trial after giving evidence. A free woman, if she be over forty years old, shall be allowed to give evidence and to support a plea, and if she have no husband,
καὶ δίκην λαγχάνειν, εὰν ἀνανδρὸς ἦς ζώντος δὲ
Β ἄνδρος ἔξεστω μαρτυρῆσαι μόνον. δούλη δὲ καὶ
dούλω καὶ παιδὶ φόνου μόνον ἔξεστω μαρτυρεῖν
cαὶ συνηγορεῖν, εὰν ἐγγυητὴν ἀξίοχρεων ἤ μὴν
μενεῖν καταστήσῃ μέχρι δίκης, εὰν ἐπισκηφθῇ τὰ
ψευδῆ μαρτυρῆσαι. ἐπισκηφτέσσαι δὲ τῶν ἀντι-
δίκων ἑκάτερον ὀλη τῇ μαρτυρίᾳ καὶ μέρει, εὰν τὰ
ψευδῆ φῇ τινὰ μεμαρτυρηκέναι, πρὶν τὴν δίκην
dιακεκρίσθαι· τὰς δ’ ἐπισκήψεις τὰς ἀρχὰς
φυλάττειν κατασεσμασμένας ὑπ’ ἄμφοῖν, καὶ
παρέχειν εἰς τὴν τῶν ψευδομαρτυρῶν διάκρισιν.
C εὰν δὲ τις ἄλω δίς ψευδομαρτυρῶν, τούτων μηκέτι
νόμος ἀναγκαζέως μηδεὶς μαρτυρεῖν, εὰν δὲ τρίς,
mηκέτ’ ἔξεστω τούτῳ μαρτυρεῖν· εὰν δὲ τολμήσῃ
μαρτυρῆσαι τρὶς ἕαλωκός, ἐνδεικνύτω μὲν πρὸς τὴν
ἀρχὴν ὁ βουλόμενος αὐτὸν, ἢ δ’ ἀρχὴ δικαστηρίῳ
παραδότω, εὰν δὲ ὁφλῆ, θανάτῳ ζημιούσθω. ὀπό-
σων δ’ ἂν μαρτυρία ἄλωσι δίκη ψευδῆ δοξάντων
μαρτυρεῖν καὶ τὴν νίκην τῷ ἐλόντι πεποιηκέναι,
εὰν τῶν τοιούτων ὑπὲρ ἢμισὺ μαρτυριῶν καταδι-
D κασθῶσι τινες, τὴν κατὰ ταύτας ἀλούσαν δίκην
ἀνάδικον γίγνεσθαι, ἀμφισβήτησιν δ’ εἶναι καὶ
diadikasiaῖν εἴτε κατὰ ταύτας εἴτε μὴ ἡ δίκη ἐκρίθη,
ὄποτέρως δ’ ἂν κριθῇ, ταύτη γιγνέσθω τὸ τέλος
tῶν ἐμπροσθεν δικῶν.

Πολλῶν δὲ ὄντων καὶ καλῶν ἐν τῷ τῶν ἀνθρώπων
βίῳ τοῖς πλείστοις αὐτῶν οἴον κῆρες ἐπιπεφύκασιν,
468
she shall be allowed to bring an action; but if she have a husband alive, she shall only be allowed to give evidence. A male or female slave and a child shall be allowed to give evidence and support a plea in murder cases only, provided that they furnish a substantial security that, if their evidence be denounced as false, they will remain until the trial. Either of the opposing parties in a suit may denounce all or part of the evidence, provided that he claims that false witness has been given before the action is finally decided; and the magistrates shall keep the denunciations, when they have been sealed by both parties, and shall produce them at the trial for false witness. If any person be twice convicted of false witness, no law shall compel him any longer to bear witness, and if thrice, he shall not be allowed to bear witness any longer; and if, after three convictions, a man dare to bear witness, whoso wishes shall report him to the magistrates, and they shall hand him over to the court, and if he be found guilty, he shall be punished with death. In the case of all those whose evidence is condemned at the trial,—they being adjudged to have given false witness and thus to have caused the victory of the winner,—if more than the half of their evidence be condemned, the action that was lost because of them shall be annulled, and there shall be a disputation and a trial as to whether the action was or was not decided on the evidence in question; and by the verdict then given, whichever way it goes, the result of the previous actions shall be finally determined.

Although there are many fair things in human life, yet to most of them there clings a kind of
αἰ καταμαίνονσι τε καὶ καταρρυπαίνονσιν αὐτὰ. Ἐ καὶ δὴ καὶ δίκη ἐν ἀνθρώποις πῶς οὐ καλὸν, ὁ πάντα ἡμέρωκε τὰ ἀνθρώπινα; καλοῦ δὲ ὄντος τοῦτο πῶς οὐ καὶ τὸ ξυνδικεῖν ἡμῖν γίγνοιτ' ἄν καλὸν; ταῦτα οὖν τοιαῦτα ὅντα διαβάλλει τις κακὴ καλὸν ὄνομα προστησαμένη τέχνη, ἡ πρῶτον μὲν δὴ φησιν εἰναί τινα δικῶν μηχανήν, εἶναι δ' αὖ τὴν τῷ 2 τε δικάσασθαι καὶ ξυνδικεῖν ἀλλὰ νικῶν δυναμένην, ἀν τ' οὖν δίκαια ἂν τε μὴ 938 τὰ περὶ τὴν δίκην ἐκάστην ἢ πεπραγμένα, δωρεάν δ' αὐτὴς εἶναι τῆς τέχνης καὶ τῶν λόγων τῶν ἐκ τῆς τέχνης, ἂν ἀντιδορήται τις χρήματα, ταῦτην οὖν ἐν τῇ παρ' ἡμῖν πόλει, εἰτ' οὖν τέχνη εἴτε ἀτεχνὸς ἐστὶ τις ἐμπείρια καὶ τριβή, μάλιστα μὲν δὴ χρεών ἐστὶ μὴ φύναι: δειομένου δὲ τοῦ νομοθέτου πείθεσθαι καὶ μὴ ἐναντία δίκη φθέγγεσθαι, πρὸς ἀλλην δὲ ἀπαλλάττεσθαι χώραν, πειθομένοις μὲν σιγή, ἀπειθοῦσι δὲ φωνὴ νόμου ἢδ' "Αν τις Β δοκῇ πειράσθαι τὴν τῶν δικαίων δύναμιν ἐν ταῖς τῶν δικαστῶν ψυχαῖς ἐπὶ τάναντία τρέπειν καὶ παρὰ καὶρον πολυδικεῖν [τῶν τοιούτων] 3 ἢ καὶ ξυνδικεῖν, γραφέσθω μὲν ὁ Βουλόμενος αὐτῶν κακοδικίας ἢ καὶ ξυνδικεῖς κακῆς, κρινέσθω δὲ ἐν τῷ τῶν ἐκλεκτῶν δικαστηρίων, ὁφλόντος δὲ τιμᾶτω τὸ δικαστήριον εἰτε φιλοχρηματία δοκεῖ δρᾶν τὸ τοιοῦτον εἰτε φιλονεικία, καὶ ἐὰν μὲν φιλονεικία, τιμᾶν αὐτῷ τὸ δικαστήριον ὅσον χρὴ χρόνου τῶν τοιοῦτον μηδεὶ λαχεῖν δίκην μηδὲ ξυνδικῆσαι, ἐὰν δὲ φιλοχρηματία, τὸν μὲν ξένον ἀπιόντα ἐκ

1 τέχνη Hermann: τέχνη MSS.
2 αὖ τὴν τῷ Cornarius, Zür.: αὖ τῷ MSS.
3 [τῶν τοιούτων] bracketed by Stephens, Stallbaum.
canker which poisons and corrupts them. None would deny that justice between men is a fair thing, and that it has civilized all human affairs. And if justice be fair, how can we deny that pleading is also a fair thing? But these fair things are in disrepute owing to a kind of foul art, which, cloaking itself under a fair name,\(^1\) claims, first, that there exists a device for dealing with lawsuits, and further, that it is the one which is able, by pleading and helping another to plead, to win the victory, whether the pleas concerned be just or unjust; and it also asserts that both this art itself and the arguments which proceed from it are a gift offered to any man who gives money in exchange. This art—whether it be really an art or merely an artless trick got by habit and practice\(^2\)—must never, if possible, arise in our State; and when the lawgiver demands compliance and no contradiction of justice, or the removal of such artists to another country,—if they comply, the law for its part shall keep silence, but if they fail to comply, its pronouncement shall be this:—If anyone be held to be trying to reverse the force of just pleas in the minds of the judges, or to be multiplying suits unduly or aiding others to do so, whoso wishes shall indict him for perverse procedure or aiding in perverse procedure, and he shall be tried before the court of select judges; and if he be convicted, the court shall determine whether he seems to be acting from avarice or from ambition; and if from the latter, the court shall determine for how long a period such an one shall be precluded from bringing an action against anyone, or aiding anyone to do so; while if avarice be his motive, if he be an alien he

\(^1\) _Rhetoric._  
\(^2\) Cp. _Gorg._ 463 B.
C τῆς χώρας μήποτε πάλιν ἔλθεῖν, ἡ θανάτῳ ξημιοῦσθαι, τὸν ἀστὸν δὲ τεθνάναι φιλοχρημο-
σύνης ἔνεκα τῆς ἔκ παντὸς τρόπου παρ’ αὐτῷ τιμωμένης· καὶ εἰς τις φιλονεικία κριθῇ διὸ τὸ
tοιοῦτον δρᾶν, τεθνάτω.
shall be sent out of the country and forbidden to return on pain of death, but if he be a citizen he shall be put to death because of his unscrupulous devotion to the pursuit of gain. And anyone who has twice been pronounced guilty of committing such an act from ambition shall be put to death.
'Εαν ώς πρεσβευτής τις ἡ κηρυξ καταψευ-δόμενος τῆς πόλεως παραπρεσβεύεται πρὸς τινα πόλιν, ἢ πεμπόμενος μὴ τὰς οὕσας πρεσβείας ἐφ' αἷς πέμπτεται ἀπαγγέλλῃ, ἢ πάλιν αὐ παρὰ τῶν πολεμίων ἢ καὶ φίλων μὴ τὰ παρ' ἐκείνων ὀρθῶς ἀποπρεσβεύσας γένεται φανερὸς ἢ κηρυκεύσας, γραφαί κατὰ τούτων ἐστὼν ὡς Ἐρμοῦ καὶ Δίως ἀγγελίας καὶ ἐπιτάξεις παρὰ νόμον ἀσεβησάντων, τίμημα δὲ ὃ τι χρῆ πάσχειν ἢ B ἀποτίνειν, εὰν ὀφλη.

Κλοπὴ μὲν χρημάτων ἀνελευθεροῦν, ἀρταγή δὲ ἀναίσχυντον· τῶν Διὸς δὲ νόεων οὐδεὶς οὔτε δόλοις οὔτε βία χαίρων ἐπιτετήδευνε τούτων οὐδέτερον. μηδὲις οὖν ὑπὸ ποιητῶν μηδ' ἄλλως ὑπὸ τινῶν μυθολόγων πλημμελῶν περὶ τὰ τοιαύτα ἐξαιτοτόμενος ἀναπειθότωθα, καὶ κλέπτων ἢ βιαζόμενος οἰέσθω μηδὲν αἰσχρῶν ποιεῖν ἀλλ' ἀπερ αὐτοὶ θεοὶ δρῶσιν· οὔτε γάρ ἀληθές οὔτε εἰκός, ἀλλ' ὅστις δρὰ τοιοῦτον παρανόμως, οὔτε θεος οὔτε C παῖς ἐστὶ ποτε θεῶν· ταῦτα δὲ νομοθέτῃ μᾶλλον προσήκει γιγνώσκειν ἢ ποιηταῖς ἐξύππασιν. ὁ μὲν οὖν πεισθὲς ἦμῶν τῷ λόγῳ εὐτυχεῖ τε καὶ εἰς χρόνον ἀπαντα εὐτυχοῖ, ὁ δ' ἀπιστὴσας τὸ μετὰ ταῦτα τοιῷδε τινὶ ἐνεχέσθων 1 νόμῳ. 'Εαν

1 ἐνεχέσθω Ast: μαχέσθω MSS.

1 Son, and herald, of Zeus, and a master of speech (and of lies).
BOOK XII

ATH. If anyone, while acting as ambassador or herald, conveys false messages from his State to another State, or fails to deliver the actual message he was sent to deliver, or is proved to have brought back, as ambassador or herald, either from a friendly or hostile nation, their reply in a false form,—against all such there shall be laid an indictment for breaking the law by sinning against the sacred messages and injunctions of Hermes and Zeus, and an assessment shall be made of the penalty they shall suffer or pay, if convicted.

Theft of property is uncivilized, open robbery is shameless: neither of these has any of the sons of Zeus practised, through delight in fraud or force. Let no man, therefore, be deluded concerning this or persuaded either by poets or by any perverse myth-mongers into the belief that, when he thieves or forcibly robs, he is doing nothing shameful, but just what the gods themselves do. That is both unlikely and untrue; and whoever acts thus unlawfully is neither a god at all nor a child of gods; and this the lawgiver, as it behoves him, knows better than the whole tribe of poets. He, therefore, that hearkens to our speech is blessed, and deserves blessing for all time; but he that hearkens not shall, in the next place, be holden by this law:—If anyone

2 Cp. Rep. 378 ff., 388 ff. Hermes is specially in mind, as notorious for his thefts and frauds; cp. Hom. Il. 5. 390; 24. 395, etc.
τὸς τι κλέπτη δημόσιον μέγα ἦ καὶ σμικρόν, τῆς ἀυτῆς δίκης δεῖ. σμικρὸν τε γὰρ ὁ κλέπτων ἔρωτι μὲν ταυτῷ, δυνάμει δὲ ἐλάττων κέκλοφεν' ὁ τε τὸ μεῖζον κινῶν οὐ καταθέμενος ὅλον ἄδικεῖ·

D δίκης οὖν οὐδετέρων οὐδετέρου ἐλάττων ένεκα μεγέθους τοῦ κλέμματος ὁ νόμος ἄξιοι ξημιόν, ἀλλὰ τῷ τῶν μὲν ἴσως ἢν ἰασίμον ἐτ' εἶναι, τὸν δ' ἀνίατον. ξένου μὲν δὴ τῶν δημοσίων ἢ δούλων ἀν τὸς τι κλέπτοντα εὖ δικαστηρίῳ ἔλεη, ὡς ἰασίμω ἐκ τῶν εἰκότων ὄντι, τί χρὴ παθεῖν ἡ τίνα ξημίαν

942 ἀποτίνεως αὐτοῦ, ἡ κρίσις γυνεσθὼ· τῶν δὲ ἀτότων καὶ τεθραμμένων ὡς ἄσται τεθραμμένοι, ἀν πατρίδα συλῶν ἡ βιαζόμενος ἀλίσκηται, εάν τ' ἐπ' αὐτο-φώρῳ εάν τε μή, σχεδὸν ὡς ἀνίατον ὄντα θανάτῳ ξημιόν.

Στρατειῶν δὲ ἐνεκα πολλὴ μὲν ξυμβουλή, πολλοὶ δὲ νόμου γύγνονται κατὰ τρόπον, μέγιστον δὲ τὸ μηδέποτε ἀναρχον μηδένα εἶναι, μήτ' ἄρρενα μῆτε θήλειαν, μηδὲ τινὸς έθει ψυχήν εἰθίσθαι μήτε σπουδάζοντος μῆτ' ἐν παιδίας αὐτόν ἐφ' ἑαυτῷ τι κατὰ μόνας δρᾶν, ἀλλ' ἐν τε πολέμῳ

Β παντὶ καὶ ἐν εἰρήνῃ πάσῃ πρὸς τὸν ἄρχοντα ἄρα βλέποντα καὶ ξυνεπόμενον ζήν, καὶ τα βραχύταβ' ὑπ' ἐκείνον κυβερνώμενον, οἷον ἐστάναι θ' ὅταν ἐπιτάττη τίς καὶ πορεύεσθαι καὶ γυμνάζεσθαι καὶ λούσθαι καὶ στείρεσθαι καὶ ἐγείρεσθαι νύκτωρ εἰς τε φυλακᾶς καὶ παραγγέλσεις, καὶ ἐν αὐτοῖς τοῖς κινδύνοις μήτε τινὰ διώκειν μὴθ' ὑποχωρεῖν ἄλλω ἂνευ τῆς τῶν ἄρχοντων δηλώσεως, ἐνὶ τε

1 But cp. 857 A, B.
steals any piece of public property, he shall receive the same punishment, be it great or small. For he that steals a small thing steals with equal greed, though with less power, while he that takes a large thing which he has not deposited does wrong to the full; wherefore the law deems it right not to inflict a less penalty on the one offender than on the other on the ground that his theft is smaller, but rather because the one is possibly still curable, the other incurable. So if anyone convict in a court of law either a resident alien or a slave of stealing any piece of public property, in his case, since he is probably curable, the court shall decide what punishment he shall suffer or what fine he shall pay. But in the case of a citizen, who has been reared in the way he is to be reared,—if he be convicted of plundering or doing violence to his fatherland, whether he has been caught in the act or not, he shall be punished by death,¹ as being practically incurable.

Military organization is the subject of much consultation and of many appropriate laws. The main principle is this—that nobody, male or female, should ever be left without control, nor should anyone, whether at work or in play, grow habituated in mind to acting alone and on his own initiative, but he should live always, both in war and peace, with his eyes fixed constantly on his commander and following his lead; and he should be guided by him even in the smallest detail of his actions—for example, to stand at the word of command, and to march, and to exercise, to wash and eat, to wake up at night for sentry-duty and despatch-carrying, and in moments of danger to wait for the commander's
C λόγω τὸ χωρίς τι τῶν ἄλλων πράττειν διδάξαι τὴν ψυχὴν ἔδεσθ' μήτε γιγνωσκεῖν μήτ' ἐπίστασθαι τὸ παράπαν, ἀλλ' ἀθρόον ἄει καὶ ἁμα καὶ κοινὸν τῶν βίων ὅτι μάλιστα πᾶσι πάντων γίγνεσθαι τούτου γὰρ οὐτ' ἐστίν οὔτε ποτὲ μὴ γένηται κρείττον οὔτε ἀμείνον οὔτε τεχνικότερον εἰς σωτηρίαν τὴν κατὰ πόλεμον καὶ νίκην. τούτο καὶ ἐν εἰρήνῃ μελετητέον εὐθὺς ἐκ τῶν παίδων, ἀρχεῖν τε ἄλλων ἀρχεσθαί θ' υφ' ἐτέρων τήν

D δ' ἀναρχίαν ἐξαιρετέον ἐκ παντὸς τοῦ βίου ἀπάντων τῶν ἀνθρώπων τε καὶ τῶν ὑπ' ἀνθρώπωις θηρίων καὶ δὴ καὶ χορείας πᾶσας εἰς τὰς ἀριστείας τὰς κατὰ πόλεμον βλέποντας1 χορεύειν, καὶ ὀλην εὐκολίαν τε καὶ εὐχέρειαν ἐπιτηδεύειν τῶν αὐτῶν εἶνεκα, καρτερῆσεις τε αὐθίνητων τε καὶ ποτῶν καὶ χειμώνων καὶ τῶν ἐναντίων καὶ κοίτης σκιληρᾶς, καὶ τὸ γε μέγιστον, τὴν ἔπει κεφαλῆς καὶ ποδῶν δύναμιν μὴ διαφθείρειν τῇ τῶν ἄλλοτρίων σκεπασμάτων περικαλυφῆ, τὴν τῶν οἰκείων

Ε ἀπολλύντας πίλων τε καὶ ὑποδημάτων γένεσιν καὶ φύσιν ταῦτα γὰρ ἀκρωτήρια ὅντα σωζόμενά τε ἔχει μεγίστην <τὴν>2 δύναμιν παντὸς τοῦ σώματος καὶ τούναντίον ἐναντίως, καὶ τὸ μὲν ὑπηρετικώτατον ἅπαντι τῷ σώματι, τὸ δὲ ἀρχικώτατον, ἔχουν τὰς κυρίας ἀπάσας αἰσθήσεις αὐτοῦ φύσει.

943 Ἐπαίνων μὲν δὴ τούτον ἀκοὐειν τῶν νέων χρήναι δοκεῖ3 πολεμικοῦ περὶ βίου, νόμους δ' αὐ τούσδε· Στρατεύεσθαι τὸν καταλεγέντα

1 βλέποντας W. R. Paton: βλεπούσας MSS., edd.
2 <τήν> added by England.
3 χρήναι δοκεῖ: χρήν δοκείν MSS., edd.
signal before either pursuing or retreating before an enemy; and, in a word, he must instruct his soul by habituation to avoid all thought or idea of doing anything at all apart from the rest of his company, so that the life of all shall be lived en masse and in common; for there is not, nor ever will be, any rule superior to this or better and more effective in ensuring safety and victory in war. This task of ruling, and being ruled by, others must be practised in peace from earliest childhood; but anarchy must be utterly removed from the lives of all mankind, and of the beasts also that are subject to man. Moreover, with a view to excellence in war, they shall dance all kinds of dances, and with the same object they shall cultivate in general suppleness and dexterity, and endurance also in the matter of foods and drinks and cold and heat and hard beds; and, what is most important, they shall accustom themselves not to spoil the natural powers of head and feet by wrapping them in coverings of alien material, and thereby ruining the production and growth of their own natural hair and soles. For when these extremities are conserved, they keep at its highest the power of the whole body, but they effect the opposite when spoiled; and of these two extremities, the one is the chief minister of the whole body, and the other the chief master, inasmuch as, by the ordinance of nature, it contains all the leading senses of the body.

Such is the laudation of the military life to which, as we hold, the youth ought to hearken, and its laws are these:—He that is enrolled or put on some rota

1 Cp. 803 C, D; Soph. Antig. 668 ff.
2 Cp. 795 ff., 829 B, C.
ἡ τὸν ἐν μέρει τινὶ τεταγμένου. ἐὰν δὲ τις ἐκλείπῃ τινὶ κάρῃ μὴ στρατηγῶν ἀφέντων, γραφᾶς ἀστρατείας εἶναι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμικοὺς ἀρχοντας, ὅταν ἐλθὼσιν ἀπὸ στρατοπέδου, δικαίως δὲ τοὺς στρατεύσαντας ἑκάστους χωρὶς ὀπλίτας τε καὶ ἵππεας καὶ τάλλα ἐμπολέμια
Β ἐκάστα ὁπλίτως, καὶ εἰσάγειν ὀπλίτας μὲν εἰς τοὺς ὀπλίτας, ἵππεας δὲ εἰς τοὺς ἵππεας καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους δὲ κατὰ ταύτα εἰς τοὺς αὐτῶν ἔμμονοις· ἐὰν δὲ τις ὄφλη, ὑπάρχειν μὲν αὐτῷ μὴ ποτε τῆς ὅλης ἀριστείας ἁγιωτᾶτη γενέσθαι μηδὲ ἀστρατείας ἄλλου γράψασθαι ποτε μηδὲ κατηγόρω τούτων πέρι γενέσθαι, πρὸς τούτοις δὲ ἐτὶ προστιμῶν αὐτῷ τὸ δικαστήριον ὅ τι χρὴ παθεῖν ἢ ἀποτύνειν. μετὰ δὲ ταύτα ἐκδικασθείσων τῶν τῆς ἀστρατείας δικῶν πάλιν ἑκάστων τούτων ἀρχοντας ποιῆσαι ξύλλογον, ἀριστείων δὲ πέρι κρίνεσθαι τὸν βουλόμενον ἐν τοῖς αὐτῶν ἔθνεσιν,
C μὴ περὶ προτέρου πολέμου μηδὲν παρέχόμενον μὴ τεκμήριον μὴτε μαρτύρων πιστώσεις λόγων, αὕτης δὲ περὶ τῆς στρατείας τῆς τότε γενομένης αὐτοῖς. στέφανον δὲ τὸ νικητήριον ἑκάστοις εἶναι θαλλοῦ τούτων δὲ εἰς τὰ τῶν πολεμικῶν θεῶν ἱερά, ὅν ἂν τις βουλήτης, γράψαντα ἀναθεῖναι μαρτύριον εἰς τὴν τῶν ἀριστείων κρίσιν παντὸς
D τοῦ βιόν καὶ τὴν τῶν δευτέρων καὶ τρίτων. ἐὰν δὲ στρατεύσηται μὲν τις, μὴ ἄπαγαγόντων δὲ τῶν ἀρχόντων οὐκαίθεν προσπέλθη τοῦ χρόνου, λειποταξίου τούτων εἶναι γραφᾶς ἐν τοῖς αὐτοῖς οἷσπερ τῆς ἀστρατείας, οὕλουσί τε τιμωρίαι

480
must perform military service. If anyone, through cowardice, fail to present himself without leave from the commanders, he shall be indicted for desertion before the military officers when they return from camp, and each class of those who have served shall sit by themselves as judges—that is, hoplites, cavalry, and each of the other branches,—and they shall summon hoplites before the hoplites, cavalrymen before the cavalry, and all others in like manner before soldiers of their own class; and any man that is convicted shall be debarred from ever competing for any distinction and from ever prosecuting another for shirking service, or acting as accuser in connection with such charges; and, in addition to this, what he ought to suffer or pay shall be determined by the court. Next, when the suits for shirking service have been fully decided, the officers shall again hold a review of each class of soldiers, and he who wishes shall be tried before a court of his own colleagues on his claim for an award of merit; but any proof or verbal testimony which the claimant produces must have reference, not to any previous war, but solely to that campaign in which they have just been engaged. The prize for each class shall be a wreath of olive leaves; and this the recipient shall hang up, along with an inscription, in whatever temple of the war-gods he chooses, to serve throughout his life as a proof that he has won the first, second or third prize, as the case may be. If a man goes on military service, but returns home without leave from the officers, he shall be liable to be indicted for desertion before the same court which deals with cases of shirking service, and the same penalties which have been already prescribed shall
επέστωσαν αύτερ καὶ πρόσθεν ἐπέθησαν. χρη
μὲν δὴ πάσαν ἐπιφέροντα δίκην ἀνδρὶ παντ'
ἀνδρὰ φοβεὶσθαι το μῆτη ἐπενεγκεῖν ψευδὴ τιμω-
ρίαν, μὴ' οὖν ἐκόντα μῆτ' ἀκοντα κατὰ δύναμιν.
Εἰ παρθένος γὰρ Αἰδοὺς
Δίκη λέγεται τε καὶ οὐτως
eἰρηται, ψεῦδος δὲ αἰδοὶ καὶ δίκη νεμεσθὸν κατὰ
φύσιν. τῶν τε οὖν ἄλλων εὐλαβεῖσθαι δεῖ πέρι
πλημμελεῖν εἰς δίκην, διαφεροῦντως δὲ καὶ τῆς τῶν
κατὰ πόλεμον ὀπλῶν ἀποβολῆς, μὴ διαμαρτῶν
τις ἄρα τῶν ἀναγκαίων ὀποβολῶν, ὡς αἰσχρὰς
αὐτὰς εἰς οὖνειδος τιβεῖς, ἀναξίως ἀναξίας ἐπάγη
dικας. ράδιον μὲν οὖν οὐδαμὸς διορίσαι τούτων
944 θάτερον, ὅμως δὲ χρη τὸν νόμον ἀμῶς γε πως
ὀρίζειν πειράσθαι κατὰ μέρη. μύθῳ δὴ προσχρῶ-
μενοι ἀμ' εἰπομεν, εἰ κομισθεῖς ἐπὶ σκηνῆν ἀνευ
τῶν ὀπλῶν Πάτροκλος ἐμπνους εγένεθ' οἶον δὴ
μυρίοις συνεπεσε, τὰ δὲ πρότερα ἐκείνα ὀπλα, ἄ
Πηλεῖ φησιν ο̣ ποιητής παρὰ θεῶν προίκα ἐν τοῖς
γάμοις ἐπιδοθῆναι Θέτιδι, ταῦτα δὲ ἂ Ἐκτωρ εἰχεν,
ἐξῆν ἃν τῶν τότε ὅσοι κακοὶ οὖνεῖδειν ὀπλῶν
ἀποβολὴν τῷ τοῦ Μενοιτίου. ἔτι δὲ ὀπόσοι κατὰ
Β' κρημνῶν ριφέντες ἄπωλεσαν ὀπλα, ᾧ κατὰ θάλατ-
tαν, ᾧ χειμάρρῳς ἐν τοῖς ὑποδεξαμένης αὐτοὺς
ἐξαίφνης πολλῆς μῦσεως ύδατος, ἢ μυρὶ ἃν ἐχοὶ
tis τοιάντα παραμυθούμενος ἐπάδειν, εὐδιάβολον
κακὸν καλλύνων. τεμεῖν δὴ χρῆν κατὰ δύναμιν

1 aídoûs MSS. : aídôln Steph., Zur.
3 χειμάρρων Madvig, Apelt : χειμάρρων MSS., edd. (κάποιος
for τόποις Stallb., al.)

Δίκη . . . κυδρή τ' αἰδοὴν τε θεοῖς κτλ.

482
be imposed upon him, if he is convicted. Every man, when bringing an action against another, ought rightly to dread bringing upon him, whether intentionally or unintentionally, a wrongful punishment (for Justice is, and has been truly named, the daughter of Reverence, and falsehood and wrong are naturally detested by Reverence and Justice); and he should beware also of trespassing against Justice in any matter, and especially in respect of loss of arms in battle, lest by mistakenly abusing such losses as shameful, when they are really unavoidable, he may bring undeserved charges against an undeserving man. It is by no means easy to draw distinctions between such cases; but none the less the law ought to try by some means to distinguish case from case. In illustration we may cite the story of Patroclus: suppose that he had been brought to his tent without his arms and had recovered—as has happened in the case of thousands,—while the arms he had had (which, as the poet relates, had been given to Peleus by the gods, as a dowry with Thetis) were in the hands of Hector,—then all the base men of those days would have been free to abuse Menoetios' son for loss of arms. Moreover, there are instances of men losing their arms through being flung down from cliffs, or on the sea, or in ravines, when overwhelmed by a sudden great rush of water, or from other mishaps, countless in number, which one could mention by way of consolation, and thereby justify an evil which lends itself to calumny. It is right, therefore, to separate, as best one can,

2 Cp. Hom. II. xvi., xvii. 125 ff., xviii. 84 ff. Patroclus (son of Menoetios) was wearing the arms of Achilles (son of Peleus) when slain by Hector.
PLATO

τὸ μεῖζον καὶ τὸ δυσχερέστερον κακὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐναντίου. σχεδὸν οὖν ἐν τοῖς οὐνείδεσιν ἔχει τινὰ τομὴν ἢ τοῦτον τῶν ὀνομάτων ἐπιφορά. ρίψαστι μὲν γὰρ οὖκ ἐν πᾶσιν ὀνομάξοιτ' ἀν δικαίως, ἀπο-βολέως δὲ ὅπλων. οὐχ ὀμοίως γὰρ ὃ τε ἀφαιρεθεῖς μετ’ εἰκονίας βίας ἥγηνοτ’ ἀν ρίψαστι ὃ τε ἀφεῖς ἐκῶν, διαφέρει δὲ ὅλον που καὶ τὸ πᾶν. δο’ οὖν δὴ λεγέσθω νῦμοι. Ἐὰν καταλαμβανόμενος τις ὑπὸ πολεμίων καὶ ἔχων ὅπλα μὴ ἀναστρέφῃ καὶ ἀμύνηται, ἀφ’ ὃ ἐκῶν ἡ ρίψη, ζωὴν αἰσχρὰν ἀρνύμενος μετὰ τάχους μᾶλλον ἡ μετ’ ἀνδρίας καλὸν καὶ εὐδαιμόνα θάνατον, τοιαύτης μὲν ὅπλων ἀποβολῆς ἐστὶν ἰδικὴ ριφθέντων, τῆς δὲ εἰρημένης ἐμπροσθεν ὃ δικαίως [µη] ἀμελείτω σκοτειν. D τῶν γὰρ κακῶν ἄδει δεῖ κολάζειν, ἢν ἀμείνων ἡ, οὐ τὸν δυστυχῆς οὐδὲν γὰρ πλέον. ζημία δὴ τῷ τὴν τοιαύτην ἀμυντηρίῳ ὅπλῳ εἰς τοῦναντίον ἀφέντι δύναμιν τις ἀρα ἡγηνοτ' ἀν πρόσφορος; οὐ γὰρ δυνατῶν ἀνθρώπω ἥραν τοῦναντίον <ἡ> ὡς ποτε θεόν φασί δράσαι, Καίνεα τὸν Θετταλὸν ἐκ γυναίκος μεταβαλόντα εἰς ἀνδρὸς φύσιν ἢν γὰρ ἄν ἀνδρὶ ρίψασπιδι τρόπον τινα πρέπουσα πασῶν Ἐ μάλιστα ἡ 'κείνη τῇ γενέσει ἐναντία γένεσις, εἰς γυναίκα ἐξ μεταβαλοῦσα, τιμωρίᾳ τούτῳ γενομένη. νῦν δ’ ὃ τι τοῦτων ἐγγύτατα φιλοψυχίας ἔνεκα, ἵνα τὸν ἐπίλοιπον βίον μὴ κινδυνεύῃ, ἵπ δὲ ὡς πλείστων χρόνον [ὡν] κακῷ ὁνείδει εὐνεχό-

1 [µη] bracketed by Herm.: om. by Zur., vulg.
3 [ważnie] kacā Hermann: ὡς kakós (or kakās) MSS

1 Cp. Ovid, Met. 8. 305 ff., 12. 189 ff. Tim. 90 E.
484
the greater and more serious evil from its opposite. As a rule, indeed, the employment of the names in question by way of abuse admits of a distinction; for the term “shield-flinger” would not properly be applied in all cases, but rather the term “arms-dropper.” For the man who by a fair amount of violence is stripped of his arms will not be as much of a “shield-flinger” as the man who has voluntarily thrown them away—rather there is a vast difference between the two cases. So let the pronouncement of the law be this:—If a man is overtaken by his enemies and, having arms, instead of turning and defending himself, voluntarily drops his arms or flings them away, thereby gaining for himself a life that is shameful by speed of foot, rather than by bravery a noble and blessed death,—concerning the arms flung away in a loss of this sort a trial shall be held, but the judge shall pass over in his enquiry a case of the kind previously described. For the bad man one must always punish, in order to better him, but not the luckless man; for that profits not. What, then, would be a proper penalty for the man who has thrown away for naught such powerful weapons of defence? A god, it is said, once changed Kaineus the Thessalian\(^1\) from woman’s shape to man’s; but it is beyond human power to do the opposite of this; otherwise, the converse transformation—changing him from a man into a woman—would be, perhaps, the most appropriate of all penalties for a “shield-flinger.” As it is, to get the nearest possible approach to this, because of the man’s love of life at any price, and to secure that for the rest of his life he may run no risk, but may live saddled with this disgrace as long as possible,—the law dealing

---

\(^1\) The Thessalian is likely a reference to Kaineus, a character from ancient Greek mythology.
menos, ἕστω νόμος ὅδε ἐπὶ τούτοις. Ἀνὴρ ὃς ἄν ὀφλὴ δίκην ὡς αἰσχρῶς ἀποβαλὼν ὁπλα πολε-μικά, τούτῳ μή τ` οὗν τις στρατηγὸς μήτ` ἄλλους ποτὲ τῶν κατὰ πόλεμον ἄρχοντων ὡς ἄνδρι
945 στρατιώτη κρήσηται μὴ δ` εἰς τάξιν κατατάξῃ μηδ` ἤντινοιν: εἰ δ` μῆ, κατευθύνει αὐτοῦ τὸν εὐθυνον, ἄν μὲν ἣ τοῦ μεγίστου τιμῆματος ὁ τάξις τῶν κακῶν, χιλίαι, ἂν δ` τοῦ δευτέρου, πέντε μιᾶς, ἄν δ` τοῦ τρίτου, τρεῖς μιᾶς, ἄν δ` τοῦ τετάρτου, μνᾶν. ὁ δ` ὀφλὼν τὴν δίκην πρὸς τῷ ἀφεῖσθαι τῶν ἀνδρείων κυνδύνων κατ` φύσιν τὴν αὐτοῦ προσαποστισάτω μισθὸν, χιλίαι μὲν, ἄν τοῦ μεγίστου τιμῆματος ἢ, πέντε δ`, τοῦ δευτέ-
Bρου, τρεῖς δ`, ἄν τοῦ τρίτου, μνᾶν δ` ὦσαύτως καθάπερ οἱ πρόσθεν, τοῦ τετάρτου μέρους.

Εὐθύνων δὴ πέρι τις ἡμῶν λόγος ἄν εἰδ` πρέπων ἄρχοντων γενομένων τῶν μὲν κατ` τῦχην κλήρου καὶ ἐπ` ἐνιαυτὸν, τῶν δ` εἰς πλείονα ἐτη καὶ ἐκ προκρίτων; τῶν δ` τοιούτων εὐθυντῆς τίς ἰκανός, ἄν τις τῇ σκολίῳ αὐτῶν καμφθείς ὑπὸ βάρους μὲν πράξῃ, τῆς δ` αὐτοῦ δυνάμεως εἰδεία πρὸς

Cτὴν τῆς ἄρχης ἄξιαν; ράδιον μὲν οὐδαμῶς εὐρεῖν τῶν ἄρχοντων ἄρχοντα ὑπερβάλλοντα πρὸς ἄρτην, ὁμοὶ δ` πειρατέον εὐθυντῆς τινας ἀνευ-

ρίσκειν θείους. ἔχει γὰρ οὖν οὕτω. πολλοί καιροὶ πολιτείας λύσεως εἰσὶ, καθάπερ νεῶς [ἡ ζωῆ] ¹ τινῶς, οὕς ἐντόνους τε καὶ ὑποζῶματα καὶ νεύρων ἑπιτόνους, μίαν οὕσαν φύσιν διεσπαρ-

¹ [ἡ ζωῆς] I bracket (ἡ πλοίου ci. Stallb.).

¹ i.e. persons appointed to audit the accounts and scrutinize the conduct of public officials at the expiry of 486
with such cases shall be this:—If any man be convicted on a charge of shamefully throwing away his military weapons, no general or other military officer shall ever employ him as a soldier or post him to any rank; otherwise, the examiner shall fine the officer who posts the coward 1000 drachmae, if he be of the highest property-class,—if of the second class, five minas,—if of the third, three minas,—if of the fourth, one mina. And the soldier who is convicted of the charge, in addition to being debarred, as his own nature requires, from manly risks, shall also pay back his wage—1000 drachmae, if he be of the highest class,—if of the second, five minas,—if of the third, three,—and if of the fourth, one mina, just as in the previous cases.

Respecting examiners,1 what would be a proper statement for us to make, seeing that some of the magistrates are appointed by the hazard of the lot and for a year, while others are appointed for several years and chosen out of a number of selected persons? Of such, who will be a competent examiner, in the event of any one of them acting at all crookedly through being burdened by the weight of his office and his own inability to support it worthily? It is by no means easy to find an officer of officers, who surpasses them in excellence, but still one must try to find some examiners of a divine quality. In fact, the case stands thus:—The dissolution of a polity, like that of a ship's frame, depends upon many critical factors: these (in the case of a ship) though one in nature are separated into many parts, and we

their term of office. Note the play on the literal sense of εὐθυτής, "straightener" (of "crooked" actions).
μένην πολλαχοῦ πολλοῖς ὄνομασι προσαγορεύο-μεν εἰς δὲ ὅτους οὐ σμικρότατος καιρὸς τοῦ σῶζεσθαι τε καὶ διαλυθεῖσαν οἴχεσθαι πολιτείαν.

D ἀν μὲν γὰρ οἱ τοὺς ἀρχοντας ἐξευθύνοντες βελτίους ὧσιν ἐκεῖνους, καὶ τοῦτ ἐν δίκῃ ἀμέμπτω τε καὶ ἀμέμπτως [ὑ], 1 ἡ πᾶσα οὕτω θάλλει τε καὶ εὐδαιμονεῖ χώρα καὶ πόλις, ἐὰν δ' ἄλλως τὰ περὶ τὰς εὐθύνας τῶν ἀρχοντῶν γίγνηται, τότε λυθείσης τῆς τὰ πάντα πολιτεύ-ματα εὐνεχοῦσης εἰς ἐν δίκῃ ταύτῃ πᾶσα ἁρχὴ διεστάσθη χωρίς ἐτέρα ἀπ' ἄλλης, καὶ οὐκ εἰς ταύτον ἔτι νεόουσαι, πολλὰς ἐκ μιᾶς τὴν πόλιν ποιοῦσαι, στάσεων ἐμπλήσασαι ταχῦ διώλεσαν.

Ε διὸ δὴ δεὶ πάντως τοὺς εὐθύνους θαυμαστοὺς πᾶσαν ἁρετὴν εἶναι.

Τεκταίνωμεθα δὴ τινα τρόπον αὐτῶν τοιάνδε γένεσιν. κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν ἐκαστὸν μετὰ τροπᾶς ἡλίου τὰς ἐκ θέρους εἰς χειμῶνα εξυνέαν χρεῶν πᾶσαν τὴν πόλιν εἰς Ἡλίου κοινὸν καὶ Ἀπόλλωνος τέμενος, τῷ θεῷ ἀποφανουμένους ἄνδρας αὐτῶν 946 τρεῖς, ὃν ἂν ἐκαστὸς αὐτῶν ἡγήται πάντῃ ἁριστου εἶναι πλὴν αὐτοῦ, μὴ ἐλαττῶν πεντήκοντα χειρονότα ἐτῶν. τῶν δὲ προκριθέντων οὐδὲν πλείστοι ἐνέγκωσι, τούτους ἐκλέξαι μέχρι τῶν ἡμίσεων, εάν ἀρτιοὶ γίγνονται περίττοι δὲ ἐὰν ὄσιν, ἔνα ἄφελεῖν, ὡς ἂν ἐλάχισται γένονται, καταλυτέοι δὲ τοὺς ἡμίσεις αὐτῶν πλήθει τῶν ψήφων ἀποκρί- ναντας· εάν δὲ τισιν ὦσιν γίγνωνται καὶ τὸν ἡμι-


1 Cp. Rep. 422 E.
2 Cp. 767 C, D.
call them by many names—such as stays, under-girders, bracing-ropes. For the preservation, or dissolution and disappearance, of a polity the office of examiner is such a critical factor, and that of the gravest kind. For if those who act as examiners of the magistrates are better men than they, and if they act blamelessly with blameless justice, then the whole of the State and country flourishes and is happy; but if the examination of the magistrates is carried out otherwise, then the bond of justice which binds all political elements into one is dissolved, and in consequence every office is torn apart from every other, and they no longer tend all to the same end; and thus out of one State they make many,¹ and by filling it with civil strife they speedily bring it to ruin. Wherefore it is most necessary that the examiners should be men of admirably complete virtue.

Let us contrive to bring them into being in some such way as this:—Every year, after the summer solstice,² the whole State must assemble at the common precincts of Helios and Apollo, there to present before the god the names of three out of their own number,—each citizen proposing that man, not less than fifty years old, whom (with the exception of himself) he regards as in all respects the best. Of those so nominated they shall choose out those who have gained most votes—half of the total number nominated, if that number be even, but if it be an odd number, they shall reject the one who has least votes and retain the even half, marking them off according to the number of the votes received; and if several have an equal number of votes, thus causing the upper half-section to be too large, they shall
σὺν ἀριθμόν πλείω ποιῶσιν, ἀφελεῖν τὸ πλέον
Β ἀποκρίναντας νεότητι, τοὺς δ' ἄλλους ἐγκρίναντας
φέρειν αὐθίς, μέχριπερ ἂν τρεῖς λειφθῶσιν ἀνίσοις,
εὰν ἰὴ πᾶσιν ἢ τοῖν δυοῖν ὑσαι γίγνωσται, τῇ
ἀγαθῇ μοῖρᾳ καὶ τύχῃ ἐπιτρέψαντας, κλήρῳ
dιελόντας τὸν νικῶντα καὶ δεύτερον καὶ τρίτον
στεφανώσαι βαλλό, καὶ τὰ ἄριστεια ἀποδόντας
πᾶσιν ἀνειπεῖν ὅτι Μαγνήτων ἡ κατὰ θεοῦ πάλιν
tυχοῦσα σωτηρίας πόλις, ἀποφήμασα αὐτῆς
Ἡλίῳ ἄνδρας τοὺς ἄριστους τρεῖς, ἀκροθινίον
C' Ἀπόλλωνι κατὰ τὸν παλαιὸν νόμον ἀνατίθησι
κοινὸν καὶ Ἁλίῳ, ὅσονπερ ἂν ἐπωνται χρόνον
τῇ κρίσει. τοιούτους ἕπερ πρώτῳ μὲν ἐνιαυτῷ
δώδεκα εὐθύνους ἀποδείξαι, μέχριπερ ἂν ἐκάστῳ
πέντε καὶ ἐβδομῆκοντα ἐτή ξυμβῇ γενόμενα· τὸ
λοιπὸν ἂν τρεῖς ἀεὶ προσγινεσθῶν κατ' ἐνιαυτόν.
οὕτω δέ τὰς ἄρχας πάσας [κατὰ] 2 δώδεκα μέρη
dιελόμενοι πάσαις βασάνοις χρώμενοι ἐλευθέραις
ἐλεγχόντων· οἰκοῦντων δέ, ὅσον ἂν εὐθύνωσι
χρόνον, ἐν τῷ τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνός τε καὶ Ἁλίῳ
D τεμένει, ἐν ὅπερ ἐκρίθησαν καὶ τὰ μὲν ἴδιὰ
ἐκάστως, τὰ δὲ καὶ κοινὴ μετ' ἄλληλων κρίναντες
τοὺς ἄρξαντας τῇ πόλει, ἀποφημάντων εἰς τὴν
ἀγορὰν γράμματα καταθέντες περὶ ἐκάστης
ἀρχῆς ὧ τὶ χρὴ παθεῖν ἢ ἀποτίνειν κατὰ τὴν
τῶν εὐθύνων γράμμην. ἦτες δ' ἂν τῶν ἄρχων μὴ
ὁμολογῇ κεκρίσθαι δικαίως, εἰς τοὺς ἐκλεκτοὺς
dικαστὰς εἰσαγέτω τοὺς εὐθύνους, καὶ εὰν μὲν

1 τοιούτους England: τούτους MSS.

1 Cp. 855 C, 926 D.
remove the excess by rejecting those that are youngest; the rest being retained on the list, they shall vote again on these, and they shall continue the same process until three be left with an unequal number of votes. If, however, all of these, or two of them, have equal votes, they shall commit the matter to good luck and chance, and distinguish by lot between the first, the second, and the third, and crown them with olive-wreaths; and when they have thus awarded the distinctions, they shall make this public proclamation:—The State of the Magnetes,—which, by God's grace, has again won salvation,—has presented to Helios the three best of its own men, and now it dedicates them, according to the ancient law, as a joint offering to Apollo and Helios of its choicest first fruits, for so long a time as they pursue their judicial task. Twelve such examiners shall be appointed in the first year, until each of them has come to the age of seventy-five; and thereafter three shall be added annually. And they, after dividing all the public offices into twelve sections, shall employ all tests, of a gentlemanly kind, in investigating them. So long as they are serving as examiners, they shall reside within the precincts of Apollo and Helios, where they were chosen. When they have judged—either each one singly or in consultation with one another—the State officials, they shall publish, by means of records placed in the market, a statement concerning what each official should suffer or pay according to the decision of the examiners. If any official claims that he has not been judged justly, he shall summon the examiners before the select judges; and if he be acquitted in respect of the examiners' charges,
ἀποφύγη τις τὰς εὐθύνας, αὐτῶν τῶν εὐθύνων
Ε κατηγορείτω, ἐὰν ἐθέλη; ἐὰν δὲ ἀλῷ, ἐὰν μὲν ᾗ
τῷ θανάτῳ τετιμημένῳ ὑπὸ τῶν εὐθύνων, ὡσπερ ἀνάγκη, ἀπλῶς θυρσικέτω, τῶν δ' ἄλλων τιμημά-
tων ὅν ἄν δυνατὸν ἦ διπλῆς τίςαι, διπλασίαν
tινέτω.
Τὰς δ' εὐθύνας αὐτῶν τούτων ἀκούεις χρή
τίνες ἔσονται καὶ τίνα τρόπον. ξώσι μὲν οὖν
τούτοις τοῖς παρὰ πάσης τῆς πόλεως ἀριστείων
947 ἥξιωμένους προεδρίας τ' ἐν ταῖς πανηγύρεσι
πάσαις ἔστωσαν, ἔτι δὲ τῶν εἰς τοὺς "Ἐλλήνας
κοινῆ θυσιῶν καὶ θεωρίων καὶ ὁσῶν ἂν ἐτέρων
κοινωνώσιν ἱερῶν, ἐκ τούτων τοὺς ἀρχοντας τῆς
θεωρίας ἐκάστης ἐκτέμπειν, καὶ τούτους μόνους
dάφνης στεφάνῳ τῶν ἐν τῇ πόλει κεκοσμημένους
eῖναι, 1 καὶ ἱερέας μὲν πάντας τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνός
τε καὶ Ἑλίου, ἀρχιέρεων δὲ ἔνα κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν
τὸν πρώτον κριθέντα τῶν γενομένων ἐκείνῳ τῷ
ἐνιαυτῷ ἱερέων, καὶ τούνομα ἀναγράφειν τοῦ-
Βτοῦ κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν, ὅπως ἄν γίγνηται μέτρου
ἀριθμοῦ τοῦ χρόνου, ἔως ἂν ἡ πόλις οἰκῆται.
tελευτήσασι δὲ προθέσεις τε καὶ ἐκφορὰς καὶ
θήκας διαφόρους εἶναι τῶν ἄλλων πολιτῶν,
λευκὴν μὲν τὴν στολὴν ἔχειν πᾶσαν, θρήνον δὲ
καὶ ὀδυρμῶν χωρίς γίγνεσθαι, κορῶν δὲ χορῶν
πεντεκαίδεκα καὶ ἀρρένων ἐτερον περισταμένους
τῇ κλίνῃ ἐκατέρους οἷον ὑμοὶ πεποιημένους
ἐπαινοῦν εἰς τοὺς ἱερέας ἐν μέρει ἐκατέρους ἄδειν,
eὐδαιμονίζοντας ὅδη διὰ πάσης τῆς ἡμέρας
C ἐσθεν δ' εἰς τὴν θήκην φέρειν αὐτὴν μὲν τὴν
κλίνην ἐκατὸν τῶν νεῶν τῶν ἐν τοῖς γυμνασίοις,

1 εἶναι MSS.: εἶναι MS. marg., Zur.
he shall, if he wishes, prosecute the examiners themselves; but if he be convicted, in case the penalty imposed on him by the examiners be death, he shall simply be put to death (one death only being possible), but in the case of other penalties which admit of being doubled, he shall pay a double penalty.

As regards the examinations of these examiners themselves, it is right for us to hear what they are to be, and how they are to be conducted. During their lifetime these men, who have been deemed worthy of the highest distinction by the whole State, shall have the front seats at every festival; and from their number, too, shall be chosen the heads of every sacred mission sent out to take part in any public sacrifices, congresses or other such sacred assemblies of the Hellenes; and these alone of all the citizens shall be adorned with a crown of laurel; and they all shall be priests of Apollo and Helios, and every year that one of them who has been adjudged first of those appointed in that year shall be the high-priest, and his name they shall inscribe at the head of the year, that it may serve as a measure of the date, so long as the State remains. When they die, their laying-out, funeral and interment shall be different from that of other citizens: nothing but white raiment shall be used at it, and there shall be no dirges or lamentations; a choir of girls and another of boys shall stand round the bier, and they shall chant alternately a laudation for the priests in the form of a hymn in verse, glorifying them with their hymnody all the day long; and at the next dawn the bier itself shall be borne to the tomb by a hundred of the young men who attend the gymnasia,
όυς ἀν οἱ προσήκοντες τοῦ τελευτήσαντος ἐπιώ-
ψωνται, πρῶτοι δὲ προϊναὶ τοῦ ἥδεοις τὴν
πολεμικῆς σκευῆς ἐνδεδυκότας ἐκάστους, σὺν
τοῖς ἵπποισι μὲν ἵππεας, σὺν δὲ ὄπλοις ὀπλάτας,
καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ὦσαύτως, παῖδας δὲ περὶ αὐτῶν
τὴν κλίψιν ἐμπροσθεν τὸ πάτριον μέλος ἐφυμένων,
καὶ κόρας ἐπομένας ἐξόπισθεν ὅσαι τ’ ἄν γυναῖκες
τῆς παιδοποιήσεως ἀπηλλαγμέναι τυγχάνοσι, μετὰ
dὲ ταῦτα ἱερεάς τε καὶ ἱερείας ὡς καθαρεύοντι
τῷ τάφῳ ἐπεσθαί, ἐὰν ἀρα καὶ τῶν ἄλλων
εὐργωνται τάφων, ἐὰν καὶ τῷ τῆς Πυθίας οὔτω
τε καὶ ταύτῃ σύμψηφον ἦθηκη δὲ ὑπὸ γῆς
αὐτοῖς εὐργασμένην εἶναι ψαλίδα προμήκη λίθων
ποτίμων καὶ ἀγήρων εἰς δύναμιν, ἔχουσαν κλίνας
Ε παρ’ ἀλλήλας λιθίνας κειμένας, οὐ δὴ τὸν μακά-
ριον γεγονότα θέντες, κύκλῳ χώσαντες, πέρεξ
dένδρων ἅλτος περιφυτεύοσοι πλῆς κόλου ἐνός,
ὅπως ἂν αὐξην ὁ τάφος ἔχῃ ταύτῃ [τὴν] 1 εἰς
tὸν ἄπαντα χρόνον, ἂν ἐπιδεή 2 χόματος τοῖς
tιθεμένοις: κατ’ ἐνιαυτὸν δὲ ἅγωνα μουσικῆς
αὐτοῖς καὶ γυμνικὸν ἵππικόν τοι θήσουσιν.
Τὰ μὲν δὴ γέρα τοιαύτα τοῖς τὰς εὐθύνας δια-
fυγοῦσιν ἂν δὲ τις τούτων πιστεύων τῷ κεκρίσθαι
τὴν ἀνθρωπίνην φύσιν ἐπιδείξῃ κακὸς γενόμενος
ὕστερον τῆς κρίσεως, γραφεσθαί μὲν τὸν βουλό-
μενον αὐτῶν ο νόμος προστατέτω, ο δ’ ἄγων
ἐν δικαστηρίῳ γιγνέσθω τοιῷ δε τιν τρόπω.
948 πρῶτον μὲν νομοφύλακες ἔστωσαν τοῦτου τοῦ.

1 ταύτη Ast: ταύτην MSS. [τὴν] I bracket.

494
—they being selected by the relatives of the dead man,—and the procession shall be led by the men of war, all clad in their proper military garb,—cavalry with their horses, hoplites with their weapons, and the rest in like manner; and round about the bier the boys, being in front, shall sing their national anthem, and behind them the girls shall follow singing, and all the women who have passed the age of child-bearing; and next shall follow the priests and priestesses as to a tomb that is sanctified—yea, though they be debarred from approaching all other tombs,—if so be that the voice of the Pythian\(^1\) approves that thus it shall be. Their tomb shall be constructed under ground, in the form of an oblong vault of spongy stone, as long-lasting as possible, and fitted with couches of stone set side by side; in this when they have laid him who is gone to his rest, they shall make a mound in a circle round it and plant thereon a grove of trees, save only at one extremity, so that at that point the tomb may for all time admit of enlargement, in case there be need of additional mounds for the buried. And every year contests of music, gymnastics and horse-racing shall be held in their honour.

These shall be the rewards for those who have passed the scrutiny of examiners. But if any of these examiners, relying on the fact of his election, shall give proof of human frailty by becoming evil after his election, the law shall enjoin on him who wishes to indict him, and the trial shall take place in the court after this manner:—The court shall be composed first of Law-wardens, next

---

\(^1\) The priestess of Apollo at Delphi; op. Rep. 461 E.
δικαστήριον, ἐπείτα αυτῶν τούτων οἱ ξώντες, πρὸς δὲ τούτοις τὸ τῶν ἐκλεκτῶν δικαστήριον γραφέσθω δὲ ὁ γραφόμενος, ὅν ἂν γράφηται, λέγουσαν τὴν γραφὴν ἀνάξιον εἶναι τῶν καὶ τῶν τῶν ἀριστείων καὶ τῆς ἀρχῆς καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ὁ φεύγων ἀλῷ, στερεύθη τῆς ἀρχῆς καὶ τοῦ τάφου καὶ τῶν ἀλλων τῶν δοθεισῶν αὐτῷ τιμῶν, ἐὰν δὲ ὁ διώκων μὴ μεταλάβῃ τὸ πέμπτον μέρος τῶν ψήφων, τινέτω ὁ μὲν τὸν μεγίστου τιμήματος Β δώδεκα μνᾶς, ὅκτῳ δὲ ὁ τοῦ δευτέρου, τρίτου δὲ ἔξ, τετάρτου δὲ δύο. "Ραδαμάνθυος δὲ περὶ τὴν λεγομένην κρίσιν τῶν δικῶν ἡξίον ἁγασθαί, διότι κατεῖδε τούς τότε ἀνθρώπους ἡγουμένους ἐναργῶς εἶναι θεοὺς, εἰκότως, ὅτε κατὰ τὸν τότε χρόνον τῶν πολλῶν ἐκ θεῶν οὕτων, ὃν εἶς ἂν αὐτὸς, ὃς γε λόγος, ἔοικε δὴ δικαστὴ μὲν ἀνθρώπων οὐδενὶ διανοο- μενος δεῖν ἐπιτρέπειν, θεοὺς δὲ, ὃθεν ἀπλαὶ καὶ ταχεία δίκαι ἐκρίνοντ' αὐτῷ· διδοὺς γὰρ περὶ Σ ἑκάστων τῶν ἀμφισβητουμένων ὄρκου τοῖς ἀμφισβητοῦσιν ἀπηλλάττετο ταχὺ καὶ ἀσφαλῶς, νῦν δὲ ὅτε δὴ μέρος μὲν τι, φαμέν, ἀνθρώπων τῷ παράπαν οὐχ ἤγούνται θεοὺς, οἱ δὲ οὐ φροντίζειν ἡμῶν αὐτοὺς διανοοῦνται, τῶν δὲ δὴ πλεῖστων ἐστὶ καὶ κακίστων ἡ δόξα ὅς σμικρὰ δεχόμενοι θύματα καὶ θωπείας πολλὰ συναποστεροῦσιν χρήματα καὶ μεγάλων σφάς ἐκλύονται κατὰ πολλὰ ξημιῶν, οὐκέτι δὴ τοῖς νῦν ἀνθρώποις ἡ 'Ραδαμάνθυος ἄν εἰη τέχνη πρέπουσα ἐν δίκαις.

1 i.e. after superannuation. 2 Cp. 855 C. 3 Cp. 886 D ff., 891 B ff.
of the living\textsuperscript{1} members of the body of examiners themselves, and, in addition to these, of the Bench of select judges\textsuperscript{2} and he who indicts anyone shall state in his indictment that the person in question is unworthy of his distinctions and of his office; and if the defendant be convicted, he shall be deprived of his office and of his tomb, and of the other privileges granted to him; but if the prosecutor fails to gain one-fifth of the votes, he shall pay twelve minas if he be of the highest class,—if of the second, eight,—if of the third, six,—and if of the fourth, two minas.

Rhadamanthys deserves admiration for the way in which, as we are told, he judged cases of law, in that he perceived that the men of his time had a clear belief in the existence of gods,—and naturally so, seeing that most men at that time were the offspring of gods, he himself among others, as the story declares. Probably he thought that he ought not to entrust lawsuits to any man, but only to gods, from whom he obtained verdicts that were both simple and speedy; for he administered an oath to the disputants regarding each matter in dispute, and thus secured a speedy and safe settlement. But nowadays, when, as we say,\textsuperscript{3} a certain section of mankind totally disbelieve in gods, and others hold that they pay no regard to us men, while a third party, consisting of the most and worst of men, suppose that in return for small offerings and flatteries the gods lend them aid in committing large robberies, and often set them free from great penalties,—under such conditions, for men as they now are, the device of Rhadamanthys would no longer be appropriate in actions at law. Since,

\textsuperscript{1} of the living

\textsuperscript{2} of the Bench

\textsuperscript{3} nowadays

497
Δ μεταβεβληκείσθη ὁδοί τῶν περὶ θεοῦ δοξῶν ἐν τοῖς ἀνθρώποις μεταβάλλειν χρή καὶ τοὺς νόμους· ἐν γὰρ λήξει δικῶν τοὺς μετὰ νοὺ τιθεμένους νόμους ἔξαιρεῖν δεῖ τοὺς ὄρκους τῶν ἀντιδικοῦτων ἑκατέρων, καὶ τὸν λαγχάνοντα τῷ τινα δίκην τὰ μὲν ἐγκλήματα γράφειν, ὄρκον δὲ μὴ ἐπομνύναι, καὶ τὸν φεύγοντα κατὰ ταῦτα τὴν ἁρμηνεύ γράψαντα παρατίθεναι τοῖς ἀρχουσιν ἀνώμοσην. δεινὸν γὰρ ποιῶν γ᾽ ἐν τόληι πολλῶν γενομένων εὗ εἰδέναι σμικροῦ δεῖν τοὺς ἡμίσεις Ἑ αὐτῶν ἐπιωρηκηκότας, ἐν ξύσσιτοις τε ἀλλήλοις εὐχέροις συγγιγγομένους καὶ ἐν ἄλλα συνοισίαις τε καὶ ἴδιωτικάς συγγεινήσεις ἐκάστων. νόμος ἢ κείσθω δικαστὶ μὲν ὀμνύναι δικάζειν μέλλουσα, καὶ τὸν τᾶς ἀρχὰς τῷ κοινῷ καθιστάντα 949 δι᾽ ὄρκων ἢ διὰ φοράς ψῆφων, ἀφ᾽ ἱερῶν φέροντα, δράν ἀεὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον, καὶ κρίσιν αὐτὸν καὶ πάσης μουσικῆς καὶ γυμνικῶν τε καὶ ἱππικῶν ἀθλῶν ἐπιστάματι καὶ βραβεῖας καὶ ἀπαντῶν ὀπόσα μὴ φέρει κέρδος κατὰ τὴν ἀνθρωπίνην δόζαν τῷ ἐπιορκοῦντι· τῶν δὲ ὀπόσα ἔξαρσθέντι καὶ ἐξομοσαμένῳ κέρδος μέγα φανερὸν εἶναι δοκεῖ, ταῦτα δὲ διὰ δικῶν ὄρκων χωρὶς κρίνεσθαι Β ἔξυμπαντας τοὺς ἐπικαλοῦντας ἀλλήλοις. καὶ τὸ παράπαν ἐν δίκη τοὺς προεδρους μὴ ἐπιτρέπειν μήτε ὀμνύντι λέγειν πιθανότητος χάριν μήτε ἐπαρώμενον ἑαυτῶ καὶ γένει μήτε ἱκετεῖαις χρώμενον ἀσχήμοσι μήτε ὁκτοῖς γυναικείοις, ἀλλά τὸ δίκαιον μετ᾽ εὐφημίαις διδάσκοντα καὶ μανθάνοντα ἢ ἀπειδήλων, εἰ δὲ μή, καθάπερ ἐξω

1 Κρ. 934 Ε.

498
therefore, the opinions of men about the gods have changed, so also must their laws change. In legal actions laws that are framed intelligently ought to debar both litigants from taking oaths; he that is bringing an action against anyone ought to write down his charges, but swear no oath, and the defendant in like manner ought to write down his denial and hand it to the magistrates without an oath. For truly it is a horrible thing to know full well that, inasmuch as lawsuits are frequent in a State, well-nigh half the citizens are perjurers, although they have no scruple in associating with one another at common meals and at other public and private gatherings. So it shall be laid down by law that a judge shall take an oath when he is about to give judgment, and likewise oaths shall be taken by him who is appointing public officials by voting under oath or by bringing his votes from a sacred spot, and by the judge of choirs or of any musical performance, and by the presidents and umpires of gymnastic and horse-racing contests, or of any matters which do not, in human opinion, bring gain to him who commits perjury. But in all cases where it obviously appears that a large gain will accrue to him who denies stoutly and swears ignorance, all the contending parties must be judged by trials without oaths. And in general, during a trial, the presidents of the court shall not permit a man to speak under oath for the sake of gaining credence, or to imprecate curses upon himself and his family, or to make use of unseemly supplications and womanish sobbings, but only and always to state and hear what is just in proper language; otherwise, the magistrate shall check him for
τού λόγου λέγοντος, τοὺς ἄρχοντας πάλιν ἐπανάγειν εἰς τὸν περὶ τοῦ πράγματος ἀεὶ λόγον. Ξένῳ δ' εἶναι πρὸς ξένους, καθάπερ τὰ νῦν, δέχεσθαι τε ὅρκους παρ᾽ ἄλληλων, ἃν ἐθέλωσι, Καὶ διδόναι κυρίως: οὐ γὰρ καταγγήρασον ὀνόµαντεν ὑπὲρ ἄλληλον τῷ ἑαυτῷ τοιούτως ἄλλους κυρίους τῆς χώρας παρέξοντας ἀντιτρόφους· δικών τε περὶ λήξεως τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον εἶναι πρὸς ἄλληλους πᾶσι τὴν κρίσιν.

"Ὅσα τις ἔλευθερος ἀπεθεῖ τῇ πόλει, μήτ' ὅνι πληγῇ ὧδ' ἀν δεσμῶν μηδ' θανάτου, περὶ δὲ χορείας τινῶν φοιτήσεων ἢ πομπεύσεων ἢ τοιούτων τινῶν ἄλλων κοινῶν κοσμήσεων ἢ D λειτουργίων, ὡσποδ' ἄν τοις ὑποίκισις ἐφημερίκης ἢ πολεμικῶν εἰσφορῶν εἶνεκα, πάντων τούν τοιούτων τῆς πρώτης ἀνάγκης τάττειν εἶναι τὰς ξημιὰς, τοῖς δὲ μὴ πειθομένοις ἐνεχυρασίαν τούτος οἶς ἄν πόλις ἀμα καὶ νόμος εἰσπράττειν προστάτη, τῶν δὲ ἀπειθοῦντων ταῖς ἐνεχυρασίαις πρᾶσιν τῶν ἐνεχύρων εἶναι, τὸ δὲ νόμισμα γίγνεσθαι τῇ πόλει· εάν δὲ ξημιὰς δέωνται πλεῖονος, τὰς ἄρχας ἐκαστατοῦσα τοῖς ἀπειθοῦσι τὰς πρεποῦσας ξημιὰς ἐπι—

Ε Βαλλούσας εἰςάγειν εἰς τὸ δικαστήριον, ἔως ὃν ἐθέλησοι δρᾶν τὸ προσταχθὲν.

Πόλει δὲ ἦτις ἃν μήτε χρηματίζηται πλὴν τῶν ἔκ γῆς χρηματισμῶν μήτ' ἐμπορεύεται, περὶ ἀποδημίας ἑαυτῶν ἔξω τῆς χώρας καὶ ξένων υποδοχῆς ἄλλοθεν ἀνάγκη βεβουλευσθαι τῷ χρή δρᾶν.

1 τάττειν . . . τὰσ: ἱατὴν . . . τῆς MSS. (τακτὴν Winck.)

1 Cp. 850 B ff.
digressing from the point, and shall call him back to deal with the matter in hand. In the case of resident aliens dealing with aliens, it shall be permitted them, as now, to give and receive oaths of a binding character one from another, if so they choose,—for these men will not grow old in the State nor, as a rule, will they make their nest in it, and rear up others like themselves to become naturalised in the country; and in respect of the private actions they bring against one another, they shall all have the same privilege during the trial.

In all cases where a free man disobeys the State, not by acts deserving of stripes, imprisonment or death, but in respect of matters such as attendance at festivals or processions or public ceremonies of a similar kind—matters involving either a sacrifice in peace or a contribution in time of war,—in all such cases the first necessity is to assess the penalty; in case of disobedience, those officers whom the State and the law appoint to exact the penalty shall take a pledge; and if any disregard the pledgings, the things pledged shall be sold, and the price shall go to the State; and if a greater penalty be required, the official proper in each case shall impose on the disobedient the suitable penalties and shall summon them before the court, until they consent to do what they are bidden.

For a State which makes no money except from the produce of its soil, and which does not engage in commerce, it is necessary to determine what action it ought to take regarding the emigration of its citizens to outside countries and the admission of aliens from elsewhere. In giving counsel con-
συμβουλεύειν οὐδὲν τὸν νομοθέτην δεῖ τούτων πέρι πρῶτον πείθοντα εἰς δυνάμειν. τέφυκε δὲ ἡ πόλεως ἐπιμεῖξια πόλεσιν ἡθι κεραυνύναι παντοδατά, καινοτομίας ἀλλῆλοις ἐμποιοῦντων ξένων
950 ξένων: οἱ δὲ τοῖς μὲν εὗ πολιτευομέναις διὰ νόμων ὀρθῶν βλάβην ἀν φέροι μεγίστην πασῶν, ταῖς δὲ πλείσταις πόλεσιν, ἀτέ οὐδαμῶς εὐνομομέναις, οὐδὲν διαφέρει φύρεσθαι δεχομένους τ' ἐν αὐτοῖς ξένους καὶ αὐτοὺς εἰς τὰς ἄλλας ἐπικωμάζοντας πόλεις, ὅταν ἐπειθυμήσῃ τις ἀποδημίας ὁπηοῦν καὶ ὅποτε εἴτε νέος εἴτε καὶ πρεσβύτερος ὤν. τὸ δ' αὖ μήτε ἄλλους δέχεσθαι μήτε αὐτοὺς ἄλλοσε ἀποδημεῖν ἅμα μὲν οὐκ ἐγχωρεῖ τὸ γε παράπαν, Β ἔτι δὲ ἄγριον καὶ ἄπνεὺς φαίνοιτ' ἀν τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀνθρώποισι, ὅνομασί τε χαλεποῖς ταῖσι λεγομέναις ξενηλάσιαις χρωμένους καὶ τρόποις αὐθάδεσι καὶ χαλεποῖς, ὡς δοκοίεν ἂν. χρη δὲ οὕποτε περὶ σμικροῦ ποιεῖσθαι τὸ δοκεῖν ἀγαθοῦ εἴναι τοῖς ἄλλοις ἢ μὴ δοκεῖν. οὐ γὰρ ὅσον οὐσίας ἀρετῆς ἀπεσφαλμένοι τυγχάνουσιν οἱ πολλοί, τοσοῦτον καὶ τού κρίνειν τοὺς ἄλλους, ὅσοι 2 ποιηροὶ καὶ χρηστοὶ, θείον δὲ τι καὶ εὐστοχόν ἔνεστι καὶ τοῖς κακοῖς, ὡστε πάμπολλοι καὶ τῶν σφόδρα
C κακῶν εὗ τοῖς λόγοις καὶ ταῖς δόξαις διαφοροῦνται τοῖς ἀμείνους τῶν ἀνθρώπων καὶ τοῖς χείροις. διὸ καλὸν ταῖς πολλαῖς πόλεσι τὸ παρακέλευμα ἔστι, προτιμῶν τὴν εὐδοξίαν πρὸς τῶν πολλῶν.

1 τ' ἐν αὐτοῖς Stallbaum: τε αὐτοῖς MSS.
2 ὅσοι MSS. marg., Stallb.: οἱ MSS., Zur., al.

1 Cp. 704 E.
2 By a law of Lycurgus, strangers were forbidden to reside at Sparta; cp. Aristoph. Av. 1012 ἀστερ ἐν ἀπερ ἄλλοιν ξενηλατοῦνται.
3 Cp. Meno 99 B, C.
cerning these matters the lawgiver must begin by using persuasion, so far as he can. The intermixture of States with States naturally results in a blending of characters of every kind, as strangers import among strangers novel customs: and this result would cause immense damage to peoples who enjoy a good polity under right laws; but the majority of States are by no means well governed, so that to them it makes no difference if their population is mixed through the citizens admitting strangers and through their own members visiting other States whenever any one of them, young or old, at any time or place, desires to go abroad. Now for the citizens to refuse altogether either to admit others or to go abroad themselves is by no means a possible policy, and, moreover, it would appear to the rest of the world to be both churlish and cross-grained, since they would get the reputation of adopting harsh language, such as that of the so-called “Aliens Expulsion Acts,” and methods both tyrannical and severe; and reputation in the eyes of others, whether for goodness or the reverse, is a thing that should never be lightly esteemed. For the majority of men, even though they be far removed from real goodness themselves, are not equally lacking in the power of judging whether others are bad or good; and even in the wicked there resides a divine and correct intuition, whereby a vast number even of the extremely wicked distinguish aright, in their speech and opinions, between the better men and the worse. Accordingly, for most States, the exhortation to value highly a good public reputation is a right exhortation. The most correct and most important rule is this,—that the man who pursues
τὸ μὲν γὰρ ὀρθὸτατον καὶ μέγιστον ὁντα ἁγαθὸν ἀληθῶς οὕτω τὸν εὐδόξον βλον θηρεῦειν, χωρὶς δὲ μηδαμῶς, τὸν γε τέλεον ἀνδρα ἐσόμενον. καὶ δὴ καὶ τῇ κατὰ Κρήτην οἰκιζομένη τὸλει πρέπουν ἀν εἴη δόξαν πρὸς τῶν ἄλλων ἀνθρώπων ὁτι καλλιστὴν τε καὶ ἀρίστην παρασκευάζεσθαι πρὸς ἀρετήν.

D πᾶσα δὲ ἐλπὶς αὐτῆς ἐκ τῶν εἰκότων, ἀνπερ κατὰ λόγον γίγνηται, μετ’ ὀλίγων ἥλιον ὠψεσθαι καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους θεοὺς ἐν ταῖς εὐνόμοις πόλεσι καὶ χώραις.

Οδε οὖν χρῆ ποιεῖν περὶ ἀποδημίας εἰς ἄλλας χώρας καὶ τόπους καὶ περὶ ὑποδοχῆς ξένων. πρῶτον μὲν νεωτέρα ἐτῶν τετταράκοντα μη ἐξέστω ἀποδημήσαι μηδαμὴ μηδαμῶς, ἐτε ἰδία μηδενὶ, δημοσίᾳ δὲ ἐστῶ κήρυξιν ἡ πρεσβείαις ἢ καὶ τισὶ Εθεωροῖς: τὰς δὲ κατὰ πόλεμον καὶ στρατείας ἀποδημίας οὖκ ἐν ἐκδημίαις πολιτικαῖς ἄξιοι ἀγορεύειν ὡς τούτων οὕσας. Πυθῶδε τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι καὶ εἰς Ὀλυμπίαιν τῷ Διῷ καὶ εἰς Νεμέαν καὶ εἰς Ἰσθμὸν χρῆ πέμπειν, κοινονοῦντας θυσίαν τε καὶ ἀγόνων τούτως τούς θεοῖς, πέμπειν δὲ εἰς δύναμιν ὅτι πλείστους ἁμα καὶ καλλιστους τε καὶ ἀρίστους, οἵτινες εὐδόκιμους τὴν πόλιν ἐν ἱεραῖς τε καὶ εἰρηνικαῖς συνονοσίαις ποιήσουσι δοκεῖν, τοῖς 951 περὶ τῶν πόλεων ἀντίστροφον ἀποδοθόντες δόξης παρασκευήν, ἐλθόντες δὲ οἰκαὶ διδάξουσι τοὺς νέους ὅτι δεύτερα τὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐστὶ ὀρμίμα τὰ περὶ τὰς πολιτείας. θεωροὺς δὲ ἄλλους ἐκπέμ-504
after a good reputation should himself be truly
good, and that he should never pursue it without
goodness (if he is to be really a perfect man); and
furthermore, as regards the State we are founding
in Crete, it would well become it to gain for itself
in the eyes of the rest of the world the best and
noblest reputation possible for goodness; and if it
develop according to plan, there is every hope that,
as is natural, it (and but few others) will be num-
bered among the well-ordered States and countries
upon which the Sun and all the other gods look
down.

In regard, therefore, to the question of going abroad
to other lands and places and of the admission of
foreigners we must act as follows:—First, no man
under forty years old shall be permitted to go abroad
to any place whatsoever; next, no man shall be per-
mitted to go abroad in a private capacity, but in a
public capacity permission shall be granted to heralds,
embassies, and certain commissions of inspection.
Military expeditions in war it would be improper to
reckon among official visits abroad. It is right that
embassies should be sent to Apollo at Pytho and
to Zeus at Olympia, and to Nemea and the Isthmus,
to take part in the sacrifices and games in honour
of these gods; and it is right also that the am-
bassadors thus sent should be, so far as is practicable,
as numerous, noble and good as possible,—men who
will gain for the State a high reputation in the
sacred congresses of peace, and confer on it a
glorious repute that will rival that of its warriors;
and these men, when they return home, will teach
the youth that the political institutions of other
countries are inferior to their own. Also, they ought
πειν χρεὼν τοιούσδε τινὰς τοὺς νομοφύλακας παρεμένουσ. ἃν τινὲς ἐπιθυμῶσι τῶν πολιτῶν τὰ τῶν ἀλλων ἀνθρώπων πραγματα θεωρῆσαι κατὰ τινὰ πλείω σχολῆν, ἀπειργέτω μηδεὶς τούτους.

Β νόμος. οὖτε γὰρ ἀπειρον οὕσα πόλις ἀνθρώπων κακῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν δύνατ' ἃν ποτε, ἀνομίλητος οὕσα, ἡμερος ἱκανος εἶναι καὶ τέλεος, οὐδ' ἄν τοὺς νόμους διαφυλάττειν ἀνευ τοῦ γρώμη λαβεῖν αὐτοὺς, ἀλλὰ μὴ μόνον ἐθεσιν. εἰσὶ γὰρ ἐν τοῖς πολλοῖς ἀνθρωποί έκεί θείοι τινές, οὐ πολλοί, παντὸς δ' ἄξιοι ἔννοιες θελεῖν, φυσικοι οὖδεν μᾶλλον ἐν εὐνομουμέναις πόλεσιν ἢ καὶ μή, ὅν κατ' ξύνος ἀεὶ χρή τὸν ἐν ταῖς εὐνομουμέναις πόλεσιν οἰκούντα ἐξίοντα κατ' θάλατταν καὶ γῆν ζητεῖν.

C οὔς ἂν ἀδιάφθοροτς ἢ, τὰ μὲν βεβαιώμενον τῶν νομίμων, ὡσ καλῶς αὐτοῖς κεῖται, τὰ δ' ἐπαινορθούμενον, εἰ τι παραλείπεται. ἀνευ γὰρ ταύτης τῆς θεωρίας καὶ ζητήσεως οὐ μενεὶ ¹ ποτὲ τελέως πόλις, οὐδ' ἂν κακῶς αὐτὴν θεωρῶσιν.

ΚΑ. Πῶς οὖν ἂν γίγνοντι ἀμφότερα;
ΑΘ. Τῇ δε. πρῶτον μὲν ὁ θεωρός ὁ τοιοῦτος ἡμῖν γεγονὼς ἐστώ πλείουν ἐτῶν ἢ πεντήκοντα, ἐτί δὲ τῶν εὐδοκίμων τὰ τε ἀλλα καὶ εἰς τῶν πόλεμον ἐστώ γεγονημένοις, εἰ μέλλει καὶ τῶν τόν ἄνομοφυλάκων δόγμα ² εἰς τᾶς ἀλλας μεθύσειν πόλεις: πλέον δὲ ἐξήκοντα γεγονὼς ἐτῶν μηκέτι θεωρεῖτω. θεωρήσας δὲ ὀπόσ' ἂν ἐτή βουληθή

¹ μενεὶ Wagner: μενεὶ MSS.
² δόγμα Madvig: δειγμα MSS., edd.

¹ Κπ. Rep. 619 A.
506
to send out other inspecting commissioners (when they have obtained leave from the Law-wardens) of the following kind:—If any of the citizens desire to survey the doings of the outside world in a leisurely way, no law shall prevent them; for a State that is without experience of bad men and good would never be able (owing to its isolation) to become fully civilized and perfect, nor would it be able to safeguard its laws unless it grasped them, not by habit only, but also by conviction. Amongst the mass of men there always exist—albeit in small numbers—men that are divinely inspired; intercourse with such men is of the greatest value, and they spring up in badly-governed States just as much as in those that are well governed. In search of these men it is always right for one who dwells in a well-ordered State to go forth on a voyage of enquiry by land and sea, if so be that he himself is incorruptible, so as to confirm thereby such of his native laws as are rightly enacted, and to amend any that are deficient. For without this inspection and enquiry a State will not permanently remain perfect, nor again if the inspection be badly conducted.

CLIN. How, then, might both these objects be secured?

ATH. In this way. First, our overseas inspector shall be more than fifty years old: secondly, he shall have proved himself a man of high repute both in military and other affairs, if it is intended that he shall be despatched into other States with the approval of the Law-wardens; but when he has passed sixty years of age, he shall cease to act as inspector. When he has been inspecting for as
τῶν δέκα καὶ ἀφικόμενος οὔκαδε εἰς τὸν σύλλογον ὠτὸ τῶν τῶν περὶ νόμους ἐποπτευόντων. οὖτος δ’ ἐστι νέων καὶ πρεσβυτέρων μεμιγμένος, ἐκάστης μὲν ἡμέρας συλλεγόμενος ἐξ ἀνάγκης ἀπ’ ὀρθοὺν μέχριτερ ἂν ἦλιος ἀνάσχης,1 πρῶτον μὲν τῶν ἕρεσιν τῶν τὰ ἀριστεία εἰληφότων, ἐπειτα τῶν ἕνα μονό προσβλαμβάνων. τὴν δὲ συνυποίαν εἶναι τούτοις καὶ τοὺς λόγους περὶ νόμων ἕλε τῆς 952 τε οἰκείας πόλεως πέρι, καὶ ἕλεν ἄλλοθι πυθαγόνηται τι περὶ τῶν τοιούτων διαφέρον, καὶ δὴ καὶ περὶ μαθημάτων, ὅπους ἂν ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ σκέψει δοκῇ συμφέρειν [ά] 2 μαθοῦσι μὲν εὐαγέστερον γίγνεσθαι, μὴ μαθοῦσι δὲ σκοτωδέστερα τὰ περὶ νόμους αὐτοῖς φαίνεσθαι καὶ ἁσαφῆ. ἢ δὲ ἂν τούτων ἐγκρίνωσιν οἱ γεραίτεροι, τοὺς νεωτέρους πάση σπουδῆς μανθάνειν, εὰν δὲ τις ἄναξίος δοκῇ τῶν παρακεκλημένων εἶναι, τῷ παρακάλοντι πέμφεσθαι τὸν σύλλογον ὅλων τοὺς δ’ εὐδοκιμόντας τούτων τῶν νέων φυλάττειν τήν ἄλλην πόλιν, ἀποβλέποντας εἰς αὐτοὺς διαφερόντως τε τηροῦντας, καὶ τιμῶν μὲν κατορθοῦντας, ἀτιμάζειν δὲ μᾶλλον τῶν ἄλλων, εὰν ἀποβαίνωσι χείρουσ τῶν πολλῶν. εἰς δὴ τοῦτον τῶν σύλλογον ὁ

1 ἀνάσχη MSS.: ἀνάσχη Zur., vulg.

many years out of the ten as he wishes and has returned home, he shall go to the synod of those who supervise the laws; and this synod shall be a mixed body of young men and old which is obliged to meet every day between dawn and sunrise; it shall consist, first, of the priests who have gained the award of merit, and secondly, of the ten senior Law-wardens; and it shall also include the President of Education who has been last appointed, and his predecessors in office as well. None of these members shall go alone, but each of them shall bring with him a companion—a young man, selected by himself, between thirty and forty years old. Their conference and discourse shall deal always with the subject of laws and of their own State, and with anything important they may have learnt elsewhere which bears on this subject, or any branches of knowledge which are thought likely to assist in their enquiry, in that the learning of them helps towards a clearer view of legal matters, whereas ignorance of them conduces to a view that is dim and blurred. Whatsoever of these matters are approved by the elder members the younger shall learn with all diligence; and should any of the young men invited to attend be deemed unworthy, the person who has invited him shall be censured by the whole synod, but such of them as are held in good repute shall be watched over by the rest of the citizens, who shall regard and observe them with special care, honouring them when they do right, but dishonouring them more than other men if they turn out worse than most. To this synod he that has inspected the legal in-

3 Cp. 946 E.
θεωρήσας τὰ ἐν τοῖς ἀλλοις ἀνθρώποις νόμιμα ἀφικόμενος εὕθὺς πορευέσθω, καὶ εἰ τινὰ φήμην τινῶν περὶ θέσεως νόμων ἢ παιδείας ἢ τροφῆς εὑρέ τινας ἐξοντας φράξειν, εἴτε καὶ αὐτὸς νεονεκως ἃττα ἥκοι, κοινοῦτο τῷ συλλόγῳ ἄπαντι καὶ C έάν τε μηδὲν χείρων μηδέ τι βελτίων ἥκειν δόξη, χάριν γοῦν τῆς σφόδρα προθυμίας αἰνεῖσθω. εάν δὲ πολὺ βελτίων, πολύ τ’ ἐπαινεῖσθω μᾶλλον ξὶν τελευτήσαντα τε τιμαίς αὐτὸν προσηκούσαις ἢ τῶν συλλεγομένων τιμᾶτω δύναμις. εάν δὲ διεφθαρμένος ἀφικέσθαι δόξη, μηδὲν ξυγγιγνέσθω μήτε νέω μήτε πρεσβυτέρω προσποιούμενος εἶναι σοφός. καὶ εάν μὲν πείθηται τοῖς ἄρχουσιν, ἰδιώτης κ.τ.λ., εάν δὲ μή, τεθνάτω, εάν η’ ἐν δικαστηρίῳ ἄλφο πολυπραγμονόν τι περὶ τήν παιδείαν καὶ τοὺς νόμους. εάν δὲ ἄξιον οντα εἰς D δικαστηρίων εἰσάγειν ἄρχόντων μηδείς εἰσώγη, ονείδος ἀποκείσθω τοῖς ἄρχουσιν εἰς τὴν τῶν ἀριστεῖων διαδικασίαν.

Ο μὲν οὖν ἐκδημῶν οὖτω καὶ τοιούτως ὃν ἐκδημεῖτω, τὸν δ’ εἰσεπειθήσαντα μετὰ τοῦτον χρῆ φιλοφρονεῖσθαι. τέτταρες δ’ εἰσὶ ξένοι δὲν ὑμν. πέρι πόρου συναντῇ ποιεῖσθαι. ο μὲν δὴ πρωτότος τε καὶ διὰ τέλους ἀτιθεῖσθαι, καθάπερ τὸν ὑμῶν τοῖς διατελεῖν πολλὰ διατελεῖν ταῖς φοιτήσεσι, καθάπερ οἱ τῶν όρυδῶν Ε διαπορευόμενοι, καὶ τούτων οἱ πολλοὶ κατὰ θάλατταν ἀπεχνᾶς οἰον πετόμενοι χρηματισμοῦ

1 Cp. 915 D.
stitutions of other peoples shall repair immediately after his return home; and if he has discovered any persons able to declare any oracle regarding legislation or education or nurture, or if he has brought back any personal observations of his own, he shall communicate them to the whole synod; and if it appear that he has come back in no respect worse (nor yet any better) than when he went, still because of his extreme zeal he shall be commended; while if it appear that he has come back much better, he shall be much more highly commended during his life, and when dead, due honours shall be paid to him by the synod's authority. But if, on the other hand, such an inspector appear to be corrupted on his return, in spite of his pretensions to wisdom, he shall be forbidden to associate with anyone, young or old; wherein if he obeys the magistrates, he shall live as a private person, but if not, he shall be put to death—if, that is to say, he be convicted in a court of law of being a meddler in respect of education and the laws. And if, when such an one deserves to be summoned before a court, none of the magistrates summons him, the magistrates shall be censured at the adjudication of awards of merit.

Such, then, shall be the character and the procedure of him that travels abroad. Next to him we must deal in friendly wise with the visitor from abroad. There are four types of stranger which call for mention. The first and inevitable immigrant is the one who chooses summer,¹ as a rule, for his annual visits, in the fashion of migratory birds—and, like birds, the most of these cross the sea, just as if they had wings, for the sake of making gain by their trading,
χάριν ἐμπορεύομενοι ἔτους ὁρᾶ πέτονται πρὸς τὰς ἄλλας πόλεις· ὅπερ ἀγοραὶ καὶ λιμέσι καὶ δημοσίως οἰκοδομήμασιν ἔξω τῆς πόλεως πρὸς τῇ πόλει ὑποδέχεσθαι χρὴ τοὺς ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀρχοντας τεταγμένους, φυλάττοντας μὴ νεωτέρις· τίς τι 953 τῶν τοιοῦτων ἔξων, καὶ δίκαι καί τοὺς ὅρθως διανέμοντας, ἀναγκαῖα μὲν, ὅσι ὅλιγοτα δ' ἐπιχρωμένους. ὁ δὲ δεύτερος, ὁμμασίν ὅντως θεωρῶς ὅσα τε Μουσῶν ὡσίν ἔχεται θεωρήματα· τῷ δὴ τοιοῦτῳ παντὶ χρὴ καταλύσεις πρὸς ἀρχοντας ἐνεῖν φιλοξενίας ἀνθρώπων παρεσκευασμένας, χρὴ δὲ καὶ τῶν τοιοῦτων ἱερεάς τε καὶ νεωκόρους ἐπιμελείσθαι καὶ τημελεῖν, ἐως1 ἃν τὸν μέτριον ἐπιμελώντες χρόνον, ἴδοντες τε καὶ ἀκούοντες Β ὅν χάριν ἀφίκοντο, ἀβλαβεῖς τοῦ δρᾶσαι τε καὶ παθεῖν ἀπαλλάττωνται δικαστὰς δ' αὐτῶς εἶναι τοὺς ἱερεάς, ἔαν ἀδικὴ τις αὐτῶν τινὰ ἢ τιν' ἄλλον ἀδικὴ τις τοῦτον ὅσα ἐντὸς δραχμῶν πεντηκοντα· ἐὰν δὲ τι μείζον ἐγκλῆμα αὐτῶς γίγνηται, πρὸς τοῖς ἀγορανύμοις εἶναι δὲ δίκαι τοῖς τοιοῦτοις. τρίτον δὲ ἕξον ὑποδέχεσθαι χρὴ δημοσία τὸν κατὰ τὶ δημοσίως ἐξ ἄλλης χώρας ἀφιγμένων· ὅπερ στρατηγοῖς τε καὶ ἱππάρχοις καὶ ταξιάρχοις ὑποδεκτέον ἐστὶ μόνοις, τὴν τ' ἐπιμελείαν τῶν Κ τοιοῦτων μετὰ τῶν πρυτάνεων ποιητέων ἐκείνων παρ' ὅτι· τὰ ἄν αὐτῶν τὴν κατάλυσιν χειροθεῖς ποιήστηται μόνῳ· τέταρτος δὲ ἃν ποτὲ τις ἀφικηται, σπάνιος μὲν, ἃν δ' οὖν ποτὲ τις ἐλθῇ τῶν παρ' ἦμῖν θεσφῶν ἀντίστροφος ἐξ ἄλλης χώρας,

1 ἐως MSS.: ὅπως MSS. marg., Zur.
and fly over to foreign cities during the summer season; this stranger must be received, when he comes to the city, at the markets, harbours, and public buildings outside the city, by the officials in charge thereof; and they shall have a care lest any such strangers introduce any innovation, and they shall duly dispense justice to them, and shall hold such intercourse as is necessary with them, but to the least extent possible. The second type of stranger is he who is an inspector, in the literal sense, with his eyes, and with his ears also of all that appertains to musical exhibitions: for all such there must be lodgings provided at the temples, to afford them friendly accommodation, and the priests and temple-keepers must show them care and attention, until they have sojourned for a reasonable length of time and have seen and heard all that they intended; after which, if no harm has been done or suffered by them, they shall be dismissed. And for these the priests shall act as judges, in case anyone injures one of them or one of them injures anyone else, if the claim does not exceed fifty drachmae; but if any greater claim is made, the trial for such strangers must take place before the market-stewards. The third type which requires a public reception is he who comes from another country on some public business: he must be received by none but the generals, hipparchs and taxiarchs, and the care of a stranger of this kind must be entirely in the hands of the official with whom he lodges, in conjunction with the prytaneis. The fourth type of stranger comes rarely, if ever: should there, however, come at any time from another country an inspector similar to those we send
πρῶτον μὲν ἐλαττον ἔτοιν μηδὲν πεντήκοντα γεγονός ἔστω, πρὸς τούτῳ δὲ ἀξιῶν τι καλὸν ἴδειν τῶν ἐν ταῖς ἄλλαις πόλεσι διαφέρου ἐν καλλοναίς ἡ καὶ δεῖξαι τι κατὰ ταύτα ἄλλη πόλει. ἵνα μὲν

D νῦν πᾶς ἀκέλευστος οἱ τοιοῦτος ἐπὶ τὰς τῶν πλουσίων καὶ σοφῶν θύρας, τοιοῦτος ἄτερος αὐτὸς ὁς ἐπὶ γὰρ τὴν τοῦ τῆς παιδείας ἐπιμελουμένου πάσης οἴκησιν ἵνα πιστεύων ἵκανὸς εἶναι ξένος τῷ τοιοῦτῳ ξένω, ἢ τὴν τῶν νικηφόρων τινὸς ἐπ’ ἀρετῆς ξυνῶν δὲ τούτων τίς τὸ μὲν διδάξας, τὸ δὲ μαθὼν ἀπαλλαττέσθω, φίλος παρὰ φίλου δῷροι καὶ τιμαῖς πρεποῦσας τιμηθεῖς. τούτως δὴ τοῖς νόμοις ὑποδέχεσθαι τε χρὴ πάντας ξένους τε καὶ ξένας ἐξ ἄλλης χώρας

Ε καὶ τοὺς αὐτῶν ἐκπέμπειν, τιμῶντας ξένουν Νῆα, μὴ βρώμασι καὶ θύμασι τὰς ἕξενηλασίας ποιομένους, καθάπερ ποιοῦσι νῦν θρέμματα Νεῖλον, μηδὲ κηρύγμασιν ἀγρίοις.

Ἐγγυὴν ἢν ἄν ἐγγυναταί τις, διαρρήόθην ἐγγυνάσθω, τὴν πράξιν πᾶσαν διομολογοῦμενος ἐν συγγραφῇ καὶ ἐναυτίοις μαρτύρων μὴ ἐλαττον ἢ τριῶν, ὡσα ἐντός χιλίων, τὰ δ’ ὑπὲρ χιλίας μὴ ἐλαττον ἢ πέντε. ἐγγυνητὴς μὲν δὴ καὶ ὁ προπολῶν ὁτιοῦν τοῦ μὴ ἐνδικως πωλοῦντος ἢ καὶ μηδαμῶς ἀξιόχρεως ὑπόδικος δ’ ἔστω καὶ ὁ προπολῶν, καθάπερ ὁ ἀποδόμενος.

---

1 i.e. by forbidding their presence at ceremonial feasts; or, because (as Grote says) "the Egyptian habits as to eating and sacrifice were intolerably repulsive to a foreigner."

2 Cp. 950 A, B.
abroad, he shall come on these conditions:—First, he shall be not less than fifty years old; and secondly, his purpose in coming must be to view some noble object which is superior in beauty to anything to be found in other States, or else to display to another State something of that description. Every visitor of this kind shall go as an unbidden guest to the doors of the rich and wise, he being both rich and wise himself; and he shall go also to the abode of the General Superintendent of Education, believing himself to be a proper guest for such a host, or to the house of one of those who have won a prize for virtue; and when he has communed with some of these, by the giving and receiving of information, he shall take his departure, with suitable gifts and distinctions bestowed on him as a friend by friends. Such are the laws in conformity with which they must receive all strangers, of either sex, from another country, and send out their own citizens; thus doing honour to Zeus, Patron of Strangers, instead of expelling strangers by means of meats and ceremonies (as is now done by the nurslings of the Nile), or else by savage proclamations.

If anyone gives a security, he shall give it in express terms, setting forth the whole transaction in a written record; and this he shall do before not less than three witnesses, if the amount be under 1,000 drachmae, and before not less than five, if it be over 1,000. The broker in a sale shall act as security for the seller should the latter have no real right to the goods sold or be quite unable to guarantee their possession; and the broker shall be legally liable equally with the seller.
Φωράν δὲ ἂν ἐθέλη τὶς τι παρ’ ὅτων, γυμνὸς
[ἡ] 1 χιτωνίσκοιν ἔχων, ἀξιόστος, προσμόσας τὸν νομίμως θεοὺς ἤ μὴν ἐκπίζειν εὐρήσειν, οὗτο
φωράν· ὦ δὲ παρεχέτω τὴν οἰκίαν, τὰ τε σεσημασμένα καὶ τὰ ἀσημαντα, φωράν. ἦαν δὲ τις ἐρευνάντων 
βουλομένω φωράν μὴ διδῶ, δικάζεσθαι μὲν τὸν ἀπειργόμενον τιμησάμενον τὸ ἐρευνώμενον,
Β ἂν δὲ τις ὀφλη, τὴν διπλασίαν τοῦ τιμηθέντος 
βλάβην ἐκτίνειν. ἦαν δὲ ἀποδημῶν οἰκίας 
δεσπότης τυγχάνῃ, τὰ μὲν ἀσημαντα παρεχόντων 
οἱ ἐνοικοῦντες ἐρευνάν, τὰ δὲ σεσημασμένα 
παρασημηνάσθω καὶ ὃν ἂν ἐθέλη φύλακα κα-
ταστησάτω πέντε ἱμέρας ὁ φωρῶν· ἦαν δὲ 
πλείουα χρόνον ἄπη, τοὺς ἀστυνόμους παρα-
λαβόνα ὀὕτω φωράτω, λύων καὶ τὰ σεσημασμένα,
C πάλιν δὲ μετὰ τῶν οἰκείων καὶ τῶν ἀστυνόμων 
κατὰ ταῦτα σημηνάσθω.
Τὸν ἄμφιστητησίμων χρόνον <ὁδε> 2 ὄρος, ὅν 
ἐὰν τις ἢ κεκτημένος, μηκέτ’ ἄμφισβητεῖν ἐξεῖναι. 
χαρών μὲν οἰκήσεων τε τῆς δὲ ὁκ ἐστ’ ἄμφισβή-
τησίς. τῶν δὲ ἄλλων δὲ τι ἂν τις εκτημένος ἢ, ἦαν 
μὲν κατὰ ἄστυ καὶ κατ’ ἀγορὰν καὶ ἱερὰ χρώμενον 
φαίνηται καὶ μηδὲς ἐπιλάβηται, φη δὲ ἤπτεῖν 
τούτων τῶν χρόνων, ὁ δὲ μὴ ἀποκρυπτόμενος 
φανερὸς ἢ, ἦαν οὕτω τις ἐνιαυτὸν ὀτιοῦν εκτημένος,
D ὀ δὲ Ξητῶν διαγένωνται, μὴ ἐξέστο τοιοῦτον

1 [ἡ] bracketed by Hermann.
2 <ὁδε> added by W. R. Paton, England (δὲ some MSS.).


516
LAWS, BOOK XII

If anyone wishes to make a search on any man's premises, he shall strip to his shirt and wear no girdle, and when he has first taken an oath by the appointed gods that of a truth he expects to find the object, he shall make his search; and the other man shall grant him the right to search his house, including things both sealed and unsealed. But if, when a man desires to search, the other party refuses leave, the man so prevented shall take legal proceedings, assessing the value of the object sought; and any man thus convicted shall pay as damages twice the value of the object assessed. And if the master of the house happens to be away from home, the occupants shall allow the claimant to search what is unsealed, and he that searches shall counter-seal what is sealed, and shall set any man he chooses to stand guard over it for five days; and if the master be absent longer, the claimant shall call in the city-stewards, and so make his search, in which he shall open also what is sealed, and he shall seal this up again in the same way in the presence of the household and of the city-stewards.

In cases of disputed claims there must be a limit of time, after which it shall be no longer possible to dispute the claim of the person in possession. In our State no dispute is possible in respect of lands or houses; but in respect of anything else which a man has acquired, if the possessor be seen to be using it in the city, market, and temple, and if no one lays claim to it,—then if some man asserts that he has been looking for it all this time, while it is plain that its possessor has made no concealment of it, and if this goes on for a year, the possessor still keeping the article and the other man still seeking, at the expir-
κτήματος ἐπιλαβέσθαι μηδένα παρελθόντος ἐναυτοῦ. ἦν δὲ κατ’ ἀστυ μὲν μὴ μηδὲ κατ’ ἀγορᾶν χρῆται, κατ’ ἄγροὺς δὲ φανερῶς, μὴ προστυχῆς δὲ ἐν πέντε ἔτεσι γένηται τίς, τῶν πέντε ἐξελθόντων ἔτοι μηκέτι [τοῦ λοιποῦ χρόνου]¹ ἐξέστω τοῦτῳ τοῦ τοιοῦτου ἐπιλαβέσθαι. ἦν δὲ κατ’ οἰκίας ἐν ἀστεῖ τε τίς χρῆται, τριετῆ τῇ προθεσμίᾳ εἶναι, ἦν δὲ κατ’ ἄγροὺς ἐν ἀφανείᾳ Ε κέκτηται, δέκα ἐτῶν, ἦν δ’ ἐν ἀλλοδημίᾳ, τοῦ παντὸς χρόνου ὅταν ἀνεύρη που, μηδεμίαν εἶναι προθεσμίαν τῆς ἐπιλήψεως.

'Εάν τίς τινα δίκη παραγενέσθαι κωλύσῃ βία, εἴτε αὐτὸν εἴτε μάρτυρας, ἦν μὲν δούλον εἴτε αὐτὸν εἴτε ἀλλότριον, ἀτελή καὶ ἀκυρον γίγνεσθαι τὴν 955 δίκην, ἦν δ’ ἐλεύθερον, πρὸς τῷ ἀτελῆ δεθῆναι μὲν ἐνιαυτῶν, ὑπόδικου δὲ ἀνδραποδισμοῦ τῷ ἐθέλουτi γίγνεσθαι. ἦν δὲ ἀνταγωνιστὴν γυμναστικῆς ἢ μουσικῆς ἢ τινος ἁγώνος ἐτέρου διακωλύῃ τις βία μὴ παραγίγνεσθαι, φραζέτω μὲν ὁ ἐθέλων τοῖς ἀθλοθέταις, οἱ δ’ εἰς τὸν ἁγώνα ἐλεύθερον ἀφιέντων τὸν ἐθέλουτα ἁγωνίζεσθαι. ἦν δὲ ἀδυνατήσωσιν, ἦν μὲν ὁ κωλύων ἁγωνίζεσθαι νικήσῃ, τὰ τε νικητήρια τῷ διακωλυθέντι διόδαι καὶ νικήσαντα Β γράφειν ἐν ἠρεῖς οἷς ἢν ἠθέλη, τῷ δὲ διακωλύσαντι μὴ ἐξέστω μηδὲν ἀνάθημα μηδ’ ἐπιγραφῆ τοῦ τοιοῦτον ἁγώνος ποτε γενέσθαι, βλάβης δὲ ὑπόδικος γιγνέσθω, εάν τε ἡπτάται ἁγωνίζόμενος εἰν τε καὶ νικᾶ.

'Εάν τις κλεμμάδιον ² ὁποίον ὑποδέχηται

² κλεμμάδιον MSS., vulg.: κλέμμα δ’ MS. marg., Zur.

518
LAWS, BOOK XII

ation of the year no one shall be allowed to lay claim to its possession. And if a man uses an article openly in the country—although not in the city or market,—and if no claimant confronts him within five years, after the expiration of the five years no claim to such a possession shall be allowed. And if a man uses an article indoors in the city, the time-limit shall be three years; if he uses it in a concealed place in the country, it shall be ten years; while if it be in a foreign country, there shall be no limit of time set to making a claim, whenever it is found.

If any man forcibly prevent any person from appearing at an action at law—whether it be the person himself or his witnesses,—in case that person be a slave of his own or of another man, the action shall be null and void; and in case the person so prevented be a free man, in addition to the annulment of the action, the offender shall be imprisoned for a year and shall be liable to a charge of kidnapping at the hands of anyone who chooses. And if anyone forcibly prevents a rival competitor at a gymnastic, musical or other contest from appearing, whoso wishes shall report the fact to the Presidents of the Games, and they shall allow him that wishes to contend to enter for the contest free; but should they prove unable, in case he who prevented the competitor wins, they shall give the prize to the man prevented and shall inscribe his name as victor in whatever temples he chooses, whereas the preventer shall be forbidden to put up any tablet or inscription regarding such a contest, and he shall be liable to pay damages, whether he be defeated at the contest or be victorious.

If anyone knowingly receive any stolen article,
γυγωσκων, την αυτην υπεχετω δικην τω κλεψαντι φυγαδος δε υποδοχης θανατος εστω ζημια. τον αυτων φιλον τε και εχθρων νομιζετω πας τη πολεων εαν δε τις ιδια ποιηται προσ τινας ειρηνην ή πολεμου άνευ του κοινου, θανατος εστω C και τουτω ζημια. εαν δε τι μερος της πολεως ειρηνην ή πολεμου προς τινας εαυτω ποιηται, τους αιτιους οι στρατηγοι ταυτης της πραξεως εισαγοντον εις δικαιστηριον, οφλωντι δε θυατος εστω δικη. τους τη πατριδι διακονουντας τι δωρων χωρις χρη διακονειν, προφασιν δε ειναι μηδεμιαν μηδε λογον επαινουμενον ως επ' αγαθοις μεν δει δεχεσθαι δωρα, επι δε φλαυρως ου το γαρ γνωναι και γνωντα καρτερειν ουκ ευπετεσ, D άκοντα δε ασφαλεστατον πειθεσθαι τω νομω, μηδεν επι δωροις διακονειν. ο δε μη πειθομενον άπλως τεθνατω άλως τη δικη. χρηματων εισφορας περι τω κοινο, τετιμησθαι μεν έκαστων την ουσιαν ένεκα πολλων χρεων και την επετειον επικαρπιαν εν γραμμασιν άποφερειν άγρυνομοις φυλετας, όπως άν δυναι ουσιαν ταιν εισφοραιν, οποτερα το δημοσιον άν χρησθαι βοηληται, E χρηται κατ' ένιαυτων έκαστων θουλευουμενον, εαν τε του τιμήματος ολου μερει εαν τε της γενομενης επ' ένιαυτων έκαστοτε προσόδου, χωρις των εις τα ξυσσιτα τελουμενων. Θεοισι δε αναθηματα χρεων έμμετρα τον μετριον άνδρα ανατιθεντα δωρεσθαι. γη μεν ουν εστια τε οικησεως ιερα πασι πάντων θεων μηδεις ουν.
he shall be liable to the same penalty as the thief; and for the crime of receiving an exile the penalty shall be death. Everyone shall regard the friend or enemy of the State as his own personal friend or enemy; and if anyone makes peace or war with any parties privately and without public consent, in his case also the penalty shall be death; and if any section of the State makes peace or war on its own account with any parties, the generals shall summon the authors of this action before the court, and the penalty for him who is convicted shall be death. Those who are performing any act of service to the State must do it without gifts; and it shall be no excuse nor laudable plea to argue that for good deeds a man ought to receive gifts, though not for bad: to decide wisely, and firmly to abide by one's decision, is no easy thing, and the safest course is for a man to listen and obey the law, which says, "Perform no service for gifts." Whoso disobeys, if convicted by the court, shall be put to death once for all. Touching money-contributions to the public treasury, not only must the property of every man be valued, for many reasons, but the tribesmen also must furnish an annual record of the year's produce to the landwardens, so that the Treasury may adopt whichever it may prefer of the two existing methods of contribution, and may determine year by year whether it will require a proportion of the whole assessed value, or a proportion of the current yearly income, exclusive of the taxes paid for the common meals.

As regards votive offerings to the gods, it is proper for a reasonable man to present offerings of reasonable value. The soil and the hearth are in all cases sacred to all the gods; wherefore no one shall consecrate
δευτέρως ίερὰ καθιεροῦτω θεοῖς. χρυσὸς δὲ καὶ
956 ἄργυρος ἐν ἄλλαις πόλεσιν ίδία τε καὶ ἐν ἱεροῖς
ἐστίν ἐπίφθονον κτῆμα, ἐλέφας δὲ ἀπολελοιπότος
ψυχὴν σώματος οὐκ εὐαγές\(^1\) ἀνάθημα, σίδηρος δὲ
καὶ χαλκὸς πολέμων ὀργανά. ξύλον δὲ μονόξυλον
ο ὁ τι ἄν ἐθέλη τις ἀνατιθέτω, καὶ λίθον ὑσαντώς,
πρὸς τὰ κοινὰ ίερὰ, ύφ᾽ ὑν δὲ μὴ πλέον ἔργον <ἡ>\(^2\)
γυναικὸς μᾶς ἐμμηνοῦ. χρόματα δὲ λευκὰ
πρέπουτ' ἂν θεοῖς εἰη καὶ ἀλλοθί καὶ ἐν ύφῇ:
βάμματα δὲ μὴ προσφέρειν ἀλλ' ἥ πρὸς τὰ
Β πολέμου κοσμημάτα. θείοτατα δὲ δῶρα ὅρνιθές·
τε καὶ ἀγάλματα, ὀσαπερ ἂν ἐν μιὰ ξυγράφος
ἡμέρα εἰς ἀποτελῆ· καὶ ταλλα ἐστῳ κατά τὰ
tοιαῦτα ἀναθήματα μεμιμημένα.

"Οτε δὲ μέρη διεῖρθαι τῆς πόλεως ξυμπάσης,
ὅσα τε καὶ ἀ δεῖ γίγνεσθαι, καὶ νόμοι περὶ τῶν
ξυμβολαίων εἰς δύναμιν τῶν μεγίστων πέρι
πάντων εἰρηνταί, τὸ λοιπόν ἡ δίκαι ἂν εἰη
χρεὼν γίγνεσθαι, δικαστηρίων δὲ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον
αἵρετοι δικασταί γίγνοιν' ἂν, οὕς ἂν ὁ φεύγων
C τε καὶ ὁ διώκων ἐλονται κοινῇ, διαιτηταί δικαστῶν
tούνομα μᾶλλον πρέπουν ἐχοντες· δεύτεροι δὲ
κωμηταί τε καὶ φυλεταί, κατὰ τὸ δωδέκατον
méros διηρημένοι, ἐν ὥσ, ἂν μὴ διακρίθωσιν
ἐν τοῖς πρῶτοισ, περὶ ξημίαις μεῖξονοι ἱοντων
ἀγωνιούμενοι, ὁ δὲ φεῦγων, ἄν ἡττηθῇ τὸ δεύτερον,
tὸ πεπτημορίον ἀποτινετω τῷ τιμήματος τῆς

1 εὐαγές Euseb., most edd. : εὐχερὲς MSS.
2 <ἡ> added by Stallbaum.

1 Cp. Levit. 19. 11: "He that toucheth the dead body of
any man shall be unclean seven days."
afresh what is already sacred. Gold and silver, which in other States are used both privately and in temples, are objects liable to cause envy; and ivory, which comes from a body bereft of soul, is not a pure offering; while iron and bronze are instruments of war; of wood forming a single piece a man may offer in the public temples whatsoever he wishes, and of stone likewise, and of woven stuff an amount not exceeding a month’s output by one woman. For woven stuff and other materials, white will be a colour befitting the gods; but dyes they must not employ, save only for military decorations. Birds and statues make most godlike gifts, and they should be no larger than what one sculptor can complete in a single day; and all other votive offerings shall be modelled on similar lines.

And now that we have stated in detail what and how many the divisions of the State as a whole must be, and have also stated to the best of our power the laws regarding all the most important business transactions, it will be proper to deal next with judicial procedure. Of law courts the first will be composed of selected judges, selected jointly by both plaintiff and defendant, and these will be called “arbitrators,” as being a more suitable name than “judges.” The second court shall be formed of the villagers and tribesmen (the tribes being divided into twelve parts); and if the cause be not decided in the first court, they shall come before these judges to fight a case involving a greater injury, and if at the second trial the defendant is defeated, he shall pay as an extra penalty the fifth part of the assessed amount of the penalty recorded;

\[\text{2 Cp. 922 A.} \quad \text{3 Cp. 766 Diff.}\]
γραφείσης δίκης. εάν δ' εγκαλῶν τις τοῖς
dικασταῖς τὸ τρίτον ἀγωνίζεσθαι βούληται, ἀγέτω
μὲν ἐπὶ τοὺς δικαστάς τοὺς ἐκλεκτοὺς τὴν δίκην,
D εάν δὲ πάλιν ἡττηθῇ, τὴν ἡμιολίαν τοῦ τιμήματος
ἀποτινέτω. εάν δὲ ὁ διώκων ἡττηθείς ἐν τοῖς
πρώτοις μὴ ἢρεμῇ, εἰς δὲ τοὺς δεύτερους ή, νικήσας μὲν δὴ τὸ πέμπτον μέρος ἀπολαμβάνετω,
nικηθεῖς δὲ ἀποτινέτω ταῦταν μέρος τῆς δίκης.
εάν δ' εἰς τὸ τρίτον ἔλθωσι δικαστήριον ἀπειθή-
santes ταῖς ἐμπροσθεν δικαίω, ὁ μὲν φεύγων
ἡττηθείς, ὡσπερ εἰρήται, τὴν ἡμιολίαν, ὁ δὲ
dιώκων τὴν ἡμίσειαν τοῦ τιμήματος ἀποτινέτω.
Ε κληρόσεις δὲ δικαστήριών καὶ πληρώσεις καὶ
ὑπηρεσίῶν ἐκάστας τῶν ἀρχῶν καταστάσεις καὶ
χρόνους ἐν οἷς ἐκάστα γίγνεσθαι χρεῶν, καὶ
dιαψηφίσεων πέρι καὶ ἀναβολῶν, καὶ πάνθ
ὀπόσα τοιαῦτα ἀναγκαία περὶ δίκας γίγνεσθαι,
προτέρων τε καὶ υστέρων λίθεις ἀποκρίσεων τε
ἀνάγκας καὶ παρακαταβάσεων καὶ ὅσα τούτων
ἀδελφὰ ξύμπαντα, εἴπομεν μὲν καὶ πρόσθεν,
957 καλὸν δὲ τὸ γε ὅρθον καὶ δις καὶ τρίς. πάντα
δ' οὖν ὀπόσα σμικρὰ καὶ ράδια νόμιμα εὐφρίσκειν,
πρεσβύτου νομοθέτου παραλιπόντος τῶν νέων
ἀναπληροῦν χρὴ νομοθέτην. τὰ μὲν ἱδία δι-
καστήρια ταύτῃ πη γιγνόμενα μέτρον ἀν ἔχου
τὰ δὲ δημόσια καὶ κοινὰ καὶ ὅσοις ἀρχὰς δεὶ
χρωμένας τὰ προσήκοντα ἐκάστῃ τῶν ἀρχῶν
διωκεῖν, ἔστ' ἐν πολλαῖς πόλεσιν οὐκ ἀσχήμονα
ἐπιεικῶν ἀνδρῶν οὐκ ὀλίγα νομοθετήματα, οὖν

1 Cp. 766 D ff., 846 B ff.
2 Cp. 754 C.
and if, dissatisfied with his judges, he desires to fight his case before a court a third time, he shall bring it before the select judges, and if he be again worsted, he shall pay one and a half times the assessed amount. Again, if the plaintiff, when worsted in the first court, does not rest satisfied, but goes to the second court, in case he wins, he shall receive the fifth part, but in case he loses, he shall pay the same fraction of the penalty. And if, through dissatisfaction with the previous verdict, they proceed to the third court, the defendant (as we have said) shall pay, if worsted, one and a half times the penalty, and the prosecutor one-half of it. As regards the allotting of courts, the filling of vacancies, the appointing of serjeants for the several boards of magistrates, the times prescribed for performing each of these duties, the recording of votes, adjournments, and all other necessary judicial arrangements,—such as the fixing by lot of the order of trials, rules about counter-pleadings and counter-attendances, and all matters cognate thereto,—all these we have dealt with previously, but nevertheless it is a proper thing to reiterate twice,—yea, thrice,—the truth. The old lawgiver, however, may pass over all such legal observances as are trivial and easy of discovery, and the young lawgiver shall fill up his omissions. In dealing with the private law courts this method would be reasonable, but in connection with the public courts of the State, and all those which the officials have to use in managing the affairs which belong to their several offices, there exist in many States quite a number of admirable ordinances of worthy men; and from

Alluding, probably, to Athenian law in particular.
PLATO

νομοφύλακας χρή τὰ πρέπουντα τῇ νῦν γεννωμένη
Β πολιτεία κατασκευάζειν συλλογισμένους καὶ ἐπανορθούμένους, ταῖς ἐμπειρίαις διαβασανίζοντας, ἔως ἃν ἰκανός αὐτῶν ἐκαστα δόξῃ κεῖσθαι, τότε δὲ τέλος ἐπιθέντας, ἥκινητα οὕτως ἐπισφραγισμένους, χρησθαι τὸν ἁπαντα βίον. ὃσα δὲ περὶ τε σιγὴν δικαστῶν καὶ εὐθηνίας καὶ τούναντιν, καὶ ὃσα παραλλάττει τῶν [πολλῶν] 1 ἐν ταῖς ἄλλαις πόλεσι δικαίων καὶ ἁγαθῶν [καὶ καλῶν], 2 τὰ μὲν εἴρηται, τὰ δὲ ἐτί πρὸς τῷ τέλει ρηθῆσται.

C πρὸς ἃ πάντα χρῆ τὸν μέλλοντα δικαστὴν ἤσον ἔσεσθαι κατὰ δίκην βλέπειν τε καὶ κεκτημένου γράμματα αὐτῶν πέρι 3 μανθάνειν. πάντων γὰρ μαθημάτων κυριώτατα τοῦ τῶν μανθάνοντα βελτίω γίγνεσθαι τὰ περὶ τοὺς νόμους κείμενα, εἰπέρ ὀρθῶς εἴη τεθέντα, γίγνοιτ' ἂν, ἢ μάτην τούνομα νῦ προσήκου κεκτήτ' ἢν ὁ θεῖος ἡμῶν καὶ θαυμαστὸς νόμος, καὶ δὴ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων

D λόγων ὃσοι τε ἐν ποιήμασιν ἐπαινοῦν καὶ ψόγοι περὶ τινῶν λέγονται καὶ ὃσοι καταλογάδην, εἰτ' ἐν γράμμασιν εἶτε καθ' ἡμέραν ἐν ταῖς ἄλλαις πάσαις συνουσίαις διὰ φιλονεικίας τε ἀμφισβητοῦνται καὶ διὰ ξυγγραφῆς ἔστιν ὅτε καὶ μᾶλα ματαίων, τούτων πάντων ἄν βάσανος εἴη σαφῆς τὰ τοῦ νομοθέτου γράμματα, ὃ δὲι κεκτημένου ἐν αὐτῷ, καθάπερ ἀλέξιφάρμακα τῶν ἄλλων λόγων, τῶν ἁγαθῶν δικαστήν αὐτῶν τε ὀρθῶν καὶ τῆν πόλιν, τοῖς μὲν ἁγαθοῖς μοναξὶ τῶν δικαίων

1 [πολλῶν] bracketed by Hermann.
2 [καὶ καλῶν] omitted by best MSS.
3 πέρι MSS.: πάρα Steph., Zur.

526
these the Law-wardens must construct a code which is suitable to the polity we are now framing, partly by comparing and amending them, partly by submitting them to the test of experience, until each such ordinance be deemed satisfactory; and when they have been finally approved, and have been sealed as absolutely unchangeable, then the magistrates shall put them into practice all their life long.

All rules regarding silence and discreet speech, and the opposite of these, on the part of the judges, and all else that differs from the rules which obtain in the other States concerning justice and goodness,—all these have been stated in part,1 and in part they will be stated at the end. To all these matters he that purposes to be a righteous and just judge must attend, and that written exposition of them which he possesses he must learn. For of all studies, that of legal regulations, provided they be rightly framed, will prove the most efficacious in making the learner a better man; for were it not so, it would be in vain that our divine and admirable law bears a name akin to reason.2 Moreover, of all other speeches—whether they be of personal praise or blame, composed in verse or prose, written down or uttered from day to day at some gathering by way of controversy or by way of consent (often of a very futile character),—of all such speeches the writings of the lawgiver3 will serve as a test; and inasmuch as he possesses these within himself, as a talisman against other speeches, the good judge will guide both himself and the State aright; for the good he will secure both the permanence and the increase of

1 Cp. 766 D, 855 D. 2 νόμος = νοῦς; cp. 714 A. 3 Cp. 811 D, 858 C.
Ε καὶ ἐπαύξησιν παρασκευάζοντα, τοῖς δὲ κακοῖς ἐξ ἁμαθίας καὶ ἀκολασίας καὶ δειλίας καὶ ξυλλήβδην πάσης ἁδικίας εἰς τὸ δυνατὸν μεταβολὴν, ὅσοις ἰάσιμοι δόξαι τῶν κακῶν ὅσι δὲ ὄντως ἐπικεκλωσμέναι, θάνατον ἵμα ταῖς οὕτως διατεθέσαις ψυχαῖς διανέμοντες, ὃ δικαίως εἶναι πολλάκις ἄν εἰρημένου, ἡξιοὶ ἐπαίνου γύρωντ' ἄν τῇ πάσῃ πόλει τοιοῦτοι δικασταί καὶ δικαστῶν ἡγεμόνες.

Ἐπειδὰν δὲ αἱ κατ᾽ ἐνιαυτὸν δίκαι τέλος ἐκδικασθεῖσαι σχῶσί, ταῖς πράξεσι νόμους αὐτῶν χρεοῦν γίγνεσθαι τούσδε πρῶτον μὲν ἡ δικᾶζοντα ἀρχῇ τὰ τοῦ ὄφλοντος τῷ νικήσαντι

Β χρήματα πάντα ἀποδίδοτο χωρίς τῶν ἀναγκαῖων κεκτῆσαί, μετὰ τὴν διαψήφισιν ἐκάστην εὐθὺς ὑπὸ κήρυκος, ἀκούοντων τῶν δικαστῶν ἐπειδὰν δὲ ὁ τῶν δικασίμων μην ὑμῶν ἔχομενος γένηται μὴν, ἐὰν τις μὴ ἀπαλλάττῃ τὸν νικήσαντα ἔκόντα ἐκών, ἡ δικάσασα ἀρχῇ ἑξυπομένῃ τῷ νικώντι τὰ τοῦ ὄφλοντος παραδιδότω χρήματα. ἐὰν δὲ μὴ ἔχωσιν ὁπόθεν, ἐλλείπῃ δὲ μὴ ἐλάττων δραχμῆς, μὴ πρότερον εἶναι τούτω δίκαι πρὸς ἀλλον μηδένα, πρῖν ἄν ἐκπληρώσῃ τὸ χρέος

C ἀπαν τῷ νικήσαντι, ἀλλοις δὲ πρὸς τοῦτον ἐστῶσαν δίκαι κυρίως. ἐὰν δὲ τις ἀφηρήται τὴν ἀρχὴν τὴν καταδικάσασαν καταδικασθεῖς, εἰσαγόντων μὲν αὐτῶν εἰς τῶν νομοφυλάκων δικαστήριον οἱ ἀφαιρεθέντες ἁδίκως, ἐὰν δὲ τις ἀφλη τὴν τοιαύτην δίκην, ὡς ὄλην τὴν πόλιν καὶ νόμους φθείρων θανάτῳ ἦμισθώ.

1 i.e. men whose false beliefs are ineradicable, beyond hope of conversion.
what is just, and for the bad a change as great as possible from their ignorance, intemperance and cowardice, and, in short, from their general iniquity,—that is to say, for all the bad whose opinions are curable; but for those whose opinions are really fixed by Fate,¹—if they assigned death as a cure for souls in this condition (a statement that deserves to be often repeated), such judges and leaders of judges would merit praise from the whole State.

When all the lawsuits for the year have been finally adjudged, we must have laws for the execution of the verdicts to this effect:—First, the magistrate who is acting as judge shall assign to the victorious party all the goods of the party convicted, excepting such as the latter must necessarily retain in his possession; and this he shall do in each case immediately after the voting has taken place by means of a herald’s proclamation made in the hearing of the judges; and unless the loser settle with the victor to their mutual satisfaction by the end of the month next to those in which the courts are sitting, the magistrate who has tried the case shall, at the instance of the victor, hand over to him the goods of the loser. And if the means are not forthcoming, and there be a deficiency of not less than a drachma, the loser in question shall be precluded from suing anyone else until he has paid to the full his whole debt to the victor; but others may bring valid actions against him. If anyone, when condemned, obstructs the court which condemned him, the officials thus wrongfully obstructed shall summon him before the court of the Law-wardens, and anyone who is cast in such an action, as being guilty of subverting the whole State and its laws, shall be punished by death.
Ἀνδρὶ δὴ τὸ μετὰ τοῦτο γεννηθέντι καὶ ἐκτραφέντι καὶ γεννήσαντι καὶ ἐκθρέψαντι τέκνα
καὶ ξυμμίξαντι ξυμβόλαια μετρίως, διδόντι τε δίκας εἰ τινὰ ἡδικήκει καὶ παρ᾽ ἐτέρου ἐκλαβόντι,
σὺν τοῖς νόμοις ἐν μοῦρα γηράσαντι τελευτή γίγνοιτ' ἀν κατὰ φύσιν. περὶ τελευτήσαντας δὴ,
εἰτε τις ἀρρήνει εἰτε τις θήλυς ἢν, τὰ μὲν περὶ τὰ
θεῖα νόμιμα τῶν τε ὑπὸ γῆς θεῶν καὶ τῶν τῆς
οσα προσήκει τελεισθαι, τοῖς ἤξιγγητὰς γίγνεσθαι
κυρίους φράζειν: τὰς θήκας δ᾽ εἶναι τῶν χωρίων
ὀπόσα μὲν ἐργάσιμα μηδαμοῦ, μῆτε τι μέγα μῆτε
ti σμικρὸν μνῆμα, δὲ δὴ χωρία 1 πρὸς τοῦτο,
Ε αὐτῷ μόνον φύσιν ἔχει, τὰ τῶν τετελευτηκότων
σώματα μάλιστα ἀλυπῆτος τοῖς ζωσὶ δεχόμενα 2
κρύπτειν, ταῦτα ἐκπληροῦν: τοῖς δὲ ἀνθρώποις
οσα τροφὴν [μήτηρ οὖσα ἢ γῆ πρὸς ταῦτα] 3
πέφυκε βούλεσθαι φέρειν, μῆτε ζων μῆτε τις ἀπο-
θανών στερεῖτο τὸν ζωνθ' ἡμῶν. χώμα δὲ μὴ
χοῦν υψηλότερον πέντε ἀνδρῶν ἔργον, ἐν πενθ'
ἡμέραις ἀποτελούμενον λίθων δὲ ἐπιστήματα
μὴ μείξω ποιεῖν ἢ ὅσα δεχέσθαι τὰ τοῦ τετε-
λευτηκότος ἐγκώμια βίου, μὴ πλείω τεττάρων
959 ἡρώικών στίχων. τὰς δὲ προθέσεις πρῶτον μὲν
μὴ μακρότερον χρόνου ἐνδον γίγνεσθαι τοῦ
δηλοῦντος τὸν τε ἐκτεθνεῶτα καὶ τὸν ὄντως
τεθνηκότα, εἴῃ δ᾽ ἄν σχεδὸν ὡς τανθρώπινα μέτρον
ἐχουσα τριταία πρὸς τὸ μνῆμα ἐκφορά. πειθέσθαι

1 δὴ χωρία: ἢ χώρα MSS., edd. (ἡ ἢ χώρα Hermann).
2 δεχόμενα: δεχομένη MSS., Edd.
Next, when a man has been born and reared, and has himself begotten and reared up children, and has engaged reasonably in the transactions of business, giving or receiving (as the case may be) compensation for wrongs done,—when he has thus duly grown old in a law-abiding life, his end will come in the course of nature. Touching the dead, male or female, what the sacred rites are which require to be performed in respect of the gods of the underworld, or of this world, shall be declared by the Interpreters as the final authorities: no tombs, however, shall be put in places that are tilled,—whether the monument be small or great,—but they shall fill up those places where the soil is naturally fitted for this purpose only,—namely, to receive and hide the bodies of the dead with the least hurt to the living; but as regards all the places which of their own nature desire to produce food for mankind, of these no one, living or dead, shall deprive us who are alive. And they shall not pile up a mound to a height greater than can be made by five men in five days; nor shall they erect stone pillars of a size more than is required to hold, at the most, a eulogy of the dead man’s life consisting of not more than four heroic lines. And as to the laying-out of the corpse, first, it shall remain in the house only for such a time as is required to prove that the man is not merely in a faint, but really dead; and accordingly, in a normal case, the third will be the proper day for the carrying out to burial. As in other matters

δ' ἐστὶ τῷ νομοθέτη χρεῶν τά τε ἄλλα καὶ λέγοντι ψυχήν σώματος εἶναι τὸ πᾶν διαφέρουσαν, ἐν αὐτῷ τε τῷ βίῳ τὸ παρεχόμενον ἡμῶν ἐκαστον B τοῦτ’ εἶναι μηδέν ἄλλ’ ἢ τὴν ψυχήν, τὸ δὲ σῶμα ἱνδαλλόμενον ἡμῶν ἐκάστοις ἐπεσθαί, καὶ τελευτησάντων λέγεσθαι καλῶς εἰδωλα εἶναι τὰ τῶν νεκρῶν σώματα, τὸν δὲ ὄντα ἡμῶν ἐκαστον οὕτως, ἀδάνατον εἶναι ψυχήν ἐπονομαζόμενον, παρὰ θεοὺς ἄλλους ἀπιέναι δώσοντα λόγον, καθὰ περ ὁ νόμος ὁ πάτριος λέγει, τῷ μὲν ἀγαθῷ θαρράλεον, τῷ δὲ κακῷ μάλα φοβερόν, βοηθείαν τε αὐτῷ μήτινα μεγάλην εἶναι τετελευτηκότι ἥξωντι γὰρ C ἔδει βοηθεῖν πάντας τοὺς προσήκοντας, ὅπως ὁτι δικαιότατος ὃν καὶ ὀσιώτατος ἦν τε ἥξων καὶ τελευτῆσας ἀτιμώρητος [ἀν]1 κακών ἀμαρτημάτων ἐγόγγυτο τὸν μετὰ τὸν ἐνθάδε βίον. ἐκ δὲ τούτων οὔτως ἐχόντων οὐδέποτε οἰκοφορεῖν χρή, διαφερόντως νομίζοντα τὸν αὐτοῦ τούτου εἶναι τὸν τῶν σαρκῶν ὅγκον θαπτόμενον, ἀλλ’ ἐκεῖνον τὸν νῦν ἢ ἅδελφον, ἢ ὄντινα τὶς μάλισθ’ ἤγειται ποθῶν θάπτειν, οἴχεσθαι περαίνοντα καὶ ἐμπιπλάντα τὴν αὐτοῦ μοῖραν, τὸ δὲ παρὸν δεῖν D εὖ ποιεῖν, τὰ μέτρια ἀναλίσκοντα ὡς εἰς ἄψυχον χθονίων βωμόν: τὸ δὲ μέτριον νομοθέτης ἂν μαντεύσαιτο οὐκ ἀσχημονεύσατα. ἐστω δὴ νόμος

1 [ἀν] bracketed by Ast (ἀνιάτων Winck.).

---

1 Cp. Phaedo 63 B. 2 Cp. 717 E, 719 D.
it is right to trust the lawgiver, so too we must believe him when he asserts that the soul is wholly superior to the body, and that in actual life what makes each of us to be what he is is nothing else than the soul, while the body is a semblance which attends on each of us, it being well said that the bodily corpses are images of the dead, but that which is the real self of each of us, and which we term the immortal soul, departs to the presence of other gods, there (as the ancestral law declares) to render its account,—a prospect to be faced with courage by the good, but with uttermost dread by the evil. But to him who is dead no great help can be given; it was when he was alive that all his relatives should have helped him, so that when living his life might have been as just and holy as possible, and when dead he might be free during the life which follows this life from the penalty for wickedness and sin. This being so, one ought never to spend extravagantly on the dead, through supposing that the carcase of flesh that is being buried is in the truest sense one's own relative; but one ought rather to suppose that the real son or brother—or whoever else it may be that a man fancies himself to be mournfully burying—has departed in furtherance and fulfilment of his own destiny, and that it is our duty to make a wise use of what we have and to spend in moderation, as it were on a soulless altar to the gods below: and what constitutes moderation the lawgiver will most properly divine. Let this, then, be the law:

\[^{3} i.e. the corpse is like an altar which has no \textit{\"real presence\"} to sanctify it; hence it is less worthy of costly offerings.\]
οὗτος. Τῶν μὲν δὴ τοῦ μεγίστου τιμήματος εἰς τὴν πᾶσαν ταφήν ἀναλισκόμενα μὴ πλέον πέντε μνῶν, τῶ δὲ τοῦ δευτέρου τρεῖς μναὶ, καὶ δύο τῶν τρίτου, μνὰ δὲ τῷ τοῦ τετάρτου μέτρου ἀν ἔχοι τῶν ἀναλωμάτων. νομοφύλαξι δὲ πολλά τε ἀλλα ἀνάγκη πράττειν καὶ πολλῶν ἐπι-
Ε μελείσθαι, τούτων δ' οὐχ ἥκιστα, ὅπως ἂν παῖδων τε καὶ ἄνδρῶν καὶ πάσης ἡλικίας ἐπι-
μελεύμενοι ζῶσιν: καὶ δὴ καὶ πρὸς τὸ τέλος ἀπάντων νομοφύλαξ εἰς γε τις ἐπιστατῇ, ὅν ἂν
οῖ τοῦ τετελευτηκότος ἐπίσκοπον οίκειοι παρα-
λάβωσιν, ὦ καλὸν τ' ἐστω καλῶς καὶ μετρίως τὰ περὶ τῶν τετελευτηκότα γιγνόμενα καὶ μὴ
καλῶς αἰσχρῶν. πρόθεσις δὲ καὶ τάλλα ἐστω μὲν κατὰ τὸν περὶ τὰ τοιαύτα νόμου γιγνόμενα,
tῶ δὲ πολιτικῷ νόμῳ νομοθετοῦντι παραχωρεῖν
χρῆ τὰ τοιόδε: Δακρύειν μὲν τῶν τετελευτηκότα
960 ἐπιτάττειν ἢ μὴ ἄμορφον, θρηνεῖν δὲ καὶ ἔξω
τῆς οἰκίας φωνῆν ἐξαγγέλλειν ἀπαγορεύειν, καὶ
tῶν νεκρῶν εἰς τὸ φανερὸν προάγει τῶν ὁδῶν
κωλύειν, καὶ ἐν ταῖς ὀδοῖς πορευόμενον φθέγ-
γεσθαι, καὶ πρὸ ἡμέρας ἔξω τῆς πόλεως εἶναι.
ταῦτα δὴ κείσθω τε οὕτω περὶ τὰ τοιαύτα
νόμιμα, καὶ ο μὲν πειθόμενος ἐστω ξημίας ἐκτὸς,
ὁ δὲ ἀπειθῶν ἐνὶ τῶν νομοφυλάκων ὑπὸ πάντων
Β ξημιούσθω τῇ δοξάσῃ πᾶσι κοινῆ ξημία. ὅσαι
δ' ἀλλαὶ γίγνονται περὶ τελευτήσαντας ταφαὶ
534
An expenditure on the whole funeral not exceeding five minas for a man of the highest property-class, three minas for one of the second class, two for one of the third, and one mina for one of the fourth class, shall be held to be moderate amounts. The Law-wardens must of necessity perform many other duties and supervise many other matters, but by no means the least of their duties is to live keeping a constant watch over children and men and people of every age; and at the end of his life above all everyone must have some one Law-warden to take charge of him—that one who is called in as overseer by the relatives of the dead man; and it shall stand to his credit if the arrangements about the dead man are carried out in a proper and moderate way, but if improperly, to his discredit. The laying-out of the corpse and the other arrangements shall be carried out in accordance with the custom concerning such matters, but it is right that custom should give way to the following regulations of State law:—Either to ordain or to prohibit weeping for the dead is unseemly, but we shall forbid loud mourning and lamentation outside the house, and we shall prohibit the carrying out of the dead on to the open roads and making lamentation while he is borne through the streets, and the funeral party must be outside the city-bounds before daybreak. These shall be the legal regulations regarding such matters: he that obeys them shall be free from penalty, but he that disobeys a single one of the Law-wardens shall be penalized by them all with the penalty adjudged by all in common. All other interments of the dead, or disposal of
είτε καὶ ἀταφοι πράξεις, περὶ πατροφόνων καὶ ἱεροσύλων καὶ τῶν τοιούτων πάντων, εἰρημέναι ἐν τοῖς ἐμπροσθεν κείνται διὰ νόμων, ὡστε σχεδὸν ἡ νομοθεσία τέλος ἂν ἦμιν ἔχου. τῶν πάντων δً ἐκάστοτε τέλος οὐ τὸ δρᾶσαι τι σχεδὸν οὔδε τὸ κτήσασθαι κατοικίσαι τέ ἐστίν, ἀλλὰ τῷ γεννηθέντι σωτηρίαν ἐξευρόντα τελέως ἂεὶ τοῦ ἴδη νομίζειν πάν ὅσον ἐδει πραχθῆναι πεπρᾶξθαι, πρότερον δ’ ἀτελές εἶναι τὸ ὅλον.

κλ. Καλῶς, ὦ ἔνει, λέγεις: πρὸς ὦ τι δὲ τὸ νῦν αὐ ῥηθὲν εἰρηταί, φράξ’ ἐτι σαφέστερον.

ἀ. Ἡ Η Kleinía, πολλά τῶν ἐμπροσθεν καλῶς ὑμνηταί, σχεδὸν δὲ οὐχ ἥκιστα τὰ τῶν ὜ορῶν προσρήματα.

κλ. Ποία δή;

ἀ. Τὸ Δάχεσιν μὲν τὴν πρώτην εἶναι, Κλωθὼ δὲ τὴν δευτέραν, τὴν Ἡ Δροπόποι δὲ τρίτην σώτειραν, τῶν λεχθέντων, ἀπεικασμένα τῇ] ¹ τῶν κλωθέντων τῷ κύρει τὴν ἀμετάστροφον ἀπεργαζομένην ² δύναμιν. ἦν ³ δὴ καὶ πόλει καὶ πολίταις ⁴ δεῖ μὴ μόνον υγίειαν καὶ σωτηρίαν τοῖς σώμασι παρασκευάζειν, ἀλλὰ καὶ εὐνομίαν ἐν ταῖς ψυχαῖς, μᾶλλον δὲ σωτηρίαν τῶν νόμων. ἦμῖν δ’ ἐτι μοι φαινεσθαι δοκεῖ τοῦτ’ ἐκλείπον τοῖς νόμοις εἶναι, πῶς χρη τὴν ἀμετάστροφον αὐτοῖς ἐγγίγνεσθαι κατὰ φύσιν δύναμιν.

¹ [τῶν λεχθέντων, ἀπεικασμένα τῇ] I bracket, and for πυρί, I read κύρει (for τῷ πυρί, Herm. ci, σωτηρία, αἷα: αἷα).
² ἀπεργαζομένην Schmidt, Stallb.: ἀπεργαζομένων MSS.
³ ἦν Ast.: δ’ MSS.
⁴ πολίταις: πολίτεῖς MSS., edd. (πολίταις καὶ πολίταις Badh.)

536
corpses without interment in the cases of parricides, temple-robbers, and all such criminals,—have been previously\(^1\) dealt with and laid down by law, so that our task of legislation has nearly come to an end. But in every case, the full end does not consist in the doing, gaining or founding of an object; rather our view should be that it is only when we have discovered a means of salvation, endless and complete, for our creation, that we are at length justified in believing that we have done all that ought to be done: until then, we must believe, the whole of our creation is incomplete.

**CLIN.** You say well, Stranger; but explain to us yet more clearly the purport of your last observation.

**ATH.** O Clinias, many of the sayings of old time have been nobly uttered, and of these not the least, I may say, are the titles given to the Fates.

**CLIN.** What titles, pray?\(^2\)

**ATH.** That the first of them is Lachesis, the second Clotho, and Atropos the saviour-third\(^2\)—she that bestows on the dooms ratified by Clotho the quality of irreversibility. She it is that must furnish also to the State and its citizens, not merely health and salvation for their bodies, but also right legality in their souls, or rather the salvation of the laws. And this, as it seems clear to me, is what our laws still lack—namely, a right mode of naturally implanting in them this irreversible quality.

---

\(^1\) Cp. 854 D ff., 873 C f.

\(^2\) Cp. *Rep.* 620 E. Atropos is called "the saviour-third" (cp. τὸ τρίτον τῇ Σωτηρίᾳ) because she completes the work of the other Fates by making the thread of life (doom) spun by them irreversible. (ἔτροπος = "unturnable.")
κλ. Οὐ σμικρὸν λέγεις, εἴπερ ἐστὶ μὴ δυνατὸν εὑρεῖν ὧπη γύνοιτ' ἀν παντὶ κτήμα τι1 [τὸ] τοιούτων.

Ε θ. 'Αλλ' ἐστὶ μὴν δυνατὸν, ὡς γέ μοι τὰ νῦν παντάπασι καταφαίνεται.

κλ. Μὴ τοίνυν ἀφιστώμεθα μηδενὶ τρόπῳ, πρὶν ἄν τοῦτ' αὐτὸ ἐκπορισώμεθα τοῖς εἰρημένοις νόμοις: γελοῖον γὰρ τὸ γε μάτην πονησάντα οὕτως εἰς μηδὲν βέβαιον καταβαλεῖν.

Αθ. Ὁρθῶς παρακελεύει, καὶ ἐμὲ τοιοῦτον εὐρήσεις ἄλλον.

κλ. Καλὸς δὴ λέγεις. τίς οὖν δή, φής, σωτηρία γύνοιτ' ἀν καὶ τίνα τρόπον πολιτείᾳ τε καὶ τοῖς νόμοις ἤμιν;

961 Αθ. 'Αρ' οὖκ εὔπομεν ὅτι δεὶ σύλλογον ἡμῖν ἐν τῇ πόλει γῆνεσθαι τοιοῦτα τινὰ; δέκα μὲν τῶν νομοφυλάκων τοὺς πρεσβυτάτους ἀεῖ, τοὺς δὲ τάρισταί αἰληφότας ἀπαντᾷς δεῖν εἰς ταύτο συλλέγεσθαι τούτοις: ἐτί δὲ τοὺς ἐκδημήσαντας ἐπὶ ξῆτησιν εἰ τί ποι σήν νομοφυλακίαν γυνοῖτο ἔγκαιρον ἀκοῦσαι, καὶ σωθέντας οἷκάδε δόξαν τοῦτο 2 αὐτοῖς, διαβασανισθέντας, τοῦ ἕναλλογον ἀξιοκοινωνίτους εἶναι: πρὸς τούτους

Β δὲ ἐνα ἐκαστὸν δεὶν προσλαμβάνειν τῶν νέων, μὴ ἐλαττὸν ἢ τριακοντατέτα τηγενότα, πρῶτον δὲ αὐτὸν κρίναντα ἐπάξιον εἶναι φύσει καὶ τροφῇ τῶν νέων οὔτως εἰς τοὺς ἄλλους εἰσφέρειν, καὶ ἐναν μὲν δόξη καὶ τοῖς ἄλλους, προσλαμβάνειν, εἰ δὲ

---

1 κτήμα τι Burnet : κτήματι MSS. ; κτήματι τὸ Zur. , vulg.
2 δόξαν τοῦτο W.-Möllendorff : δόξαι τοῦτοις MSS. , edd.
LAWS, BOOK XII

CLIN. The point you mention is a serious one, if it is really impossible to discover a means whereby everything may acquire some such quality.

ATH. Nay, but it is possible, as I now perceive quite clearly.

CLIN. Then let us by no means desist until we have secured this very quality for the laws we have stated; for it would be ridiculous for us to have wasted all this labour on an object, and then not base it on any firm foundation.

ATH. You are right in your exhortation, and you will find me as ready as yourself to proceed.

CLIN. Very good. Then what is it you say will prove a means of salvation to our polity and its laws, and how will it do so?

ATH. Did we not say\(^1\) that we must have in our State a synod of the following kind:—The ten senior members, at the moment, of the body of Law-wardens shall form the synod, in company with all who have won the award of merit; and, moreover, those inspectors who have gone abroad\(^2\) to discover if they could hear of anything pertinent to the safe-keeping of laws, and who, in the belief that they have succeeded, have come safely home again, shall, after undergoing a searching test, be deemed worthy to take part in the synod? In addition to these, every member must bring with him one of the young men, not less than thirty years old, whom he has first selected as being both by nature and training a suitable person; after selecting him, he shall introduce him among the members, and if they also approve, he shall keep him as a colleague, but if they disapprove, the fact

\(^2\) Cp. 951 A ff.
μή, ἀπόρρητον εἶναι τὴν γεγονυῖαν κρίσιν τοῖς τε ἄλλοις δὴ καὶ μάλιστ' αὐτῷ τῷ ἀποκριθέντι. δεὶν δὲ ὁρθρίου εἶναι τὸν σύλλογον, ἣνίκ' ἂν τῶν ἄλλων πράξεων ἱδίων τε καὶ κοινῶν καὶ μάλιστ' ἢ τις σχολῇ παντί. τοιοῦτον τί ποιο νεκθεῖν ἡμῖν ἦν ἐν

C τοῖς ἐμπροσθεν λόγοις;

κλ. Ἡν γὰρ οὖν.

α. Τούτον δὴ πέρι τοῦ συλλόγου πάλιν ἀναλαβὼν λέγομι ἂν τὸ τοιόνδε. φημί, εἰ τις τούτον βάλοιτο οἶνον ἀγκυραν πάσης τῆς πόλεως, πάντα ἐχουσαν τὰ πρόσφορα ἐαυτῇ σώζειν ἂν εὐμπαντα ἢ βουλόμεθα.

κλ. Πῶς δή;

α. Τὸ μετὰ τούτο ἡμέτερος ἂν καιρὸς γίγνοιτο ὅρθως φράζοντας μηδὲν ἀπολείπειν προθυμίας.

κλ. Καὶ μάλα καλῶς εἴπες, ποιεῖ θ' ἄστερ καὶ διανοεῖ.

D α. Χρῆ τοίνυν ὡς Κλεινία, παντὸς πέρι νοῆσαι σωτηρία τὸν εἰκότα ἐν ἐκάστοις τῶν ἔργων, ὡς ἐν ξώφ ψυχῇ καὶ κεφαλῇ τὸ ἕπε μέγιστον πεφύκατον.

κλ. Πῶς αὐ φῆς;

α. Ἡ τούτων ἀρετὴ δὴ ποιο παντὶ παρέχει ξώφ σωτηρίαν.

κλ. Πῶς;

α. Ψυχῇ μὲν πρὸς τοῖς ἄλλοις νοῦς ἐγγυνώμενος, κεφαλῇ δ' αὖ πρὸς τοῖς ἄλλοις ὤψις καὶ ἀκοή. ἡμέληβην δὲ οὐς μετὰ τῶν καλλιστῶν αἰσθησεων κραθεῖς γενόμενος τε εἰς ἐν σωτηρία ἐκάστων δικαιότατ' ἂν εἰς καλομένη.
of his original selection must be concealed from all the rest, and especially from the person thus rejected. The synod must meet at an early hour, when everyone has his time most free from other business, private or public. Was it not some such organisation as this that we described in our previous discourse?

CLIN. It was.

ATH. Resuming, then, the subject of this synod, I will say this:—If one were to lay this down as an anchor for the whole State, possessing all the requisite conditions,—then, I affirm, it would secure the salvation of all that we desire.

CLIN. How so?

ATH. Now will be the time for us to display no lack of zeal in declaring truly what follows.

CLIN. Excellently spoken! Proceed as you propose.

ATH. One ought to observe, Clinias, in regard to every object, in each of its operations, what constitutes its appropriate saviour—as, for example, in an animal, the soul and the head are eminently such by nature.

CLIN. How do you mean?

ATH. Surely it is the goodness of those parts that provides salvation to every animal.

CLIN. How?

ATH. By the existence of reason in the soul, in addition to all its other qualities, and by the existence of sight and hearing; in addition to all else, in the head; thus, to summarize the matter, it is the combination of reason with the finest senses, and their union in one, that would most justly be termed the salvation of each animal.
κα. "Έσικε γούν.

Ε άι. "Έσικε γάρ. ἀλλ' ὁ περὶ τί νοῦς μετ' αἰσθήσεων κραδεῖς σωτηρία πλοίων ἐν γε χειμῶσι καὶ ἐν εὐδαιμ. γίγνοιτ' ἂν; ἢρ' οὐκ ἐν νητ. κυβερνήτης ᾃ μα καὶ ναῦται τὰς αἰσθήσεις τῷ κυβερνητικῷ νῷ συγκερασάμενοι σωζόσοιν αὐτοὺς τε καὶ τὰ περὶ τὴν ναῦν;

κα. Τί μὴν;

αἰ. Ὅδεν δὴ πολλῶν δεῖ τῶν περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα παραδειγμάτων, ἀλλ' οἰον περὶ στρατοπέδων νοῆσωμεν ἢ σωμάτων, τινα θέμενοι στρατηγοὶ σκοπὸν καὶ ιατρικὴ ὑπηρεσία πᾶσα στοχάζοιτ' 962 ἀν τῆς σωτηρίας ὄρθως. ἢρ' οὐχ ἢ μὲν νίκην καὶ κράτος πολεμῶν, ἢ δὲ ιατρῶν τε καὶ ὑπηρετῶν νομείας σώματι παρασκευήν;

κα. Πώς γάρ οὖν;

αἰ. 'Ιατρὸς δὴ τὸ περὶ σῶμα ἄγνωσιν, ὁ προσείπομεν υγείαν νῦν, ἡ νίκην στρατηγός ἢ τῶν ἄλλων ὅσα δὴ διήλθομεν, ἐσθ' ὅπως ἂν νοῦν περὶ τι τούτων ἂν ἐχὼν φαίνοιτο;

κα. Καὶ πῶς;

αἰ. Τι δὲ δὴ περὶ πόλιν; ἐι τις τῶν σκοπῶν οἱ βλέπειν δεἰ τὸν πολιτικὸν φαίνοιτο ἄγνοιῶν, ἢρα άρχων μὲν πρῶτον δικαίας ἂν προσαγορεύοιτο, Β εἰτα σώζειν ἂν δυνατὸς εἰή τούτο οὐ τῶν σκοπῶν τὸ παράπαν μηδ' εἰδείν;

κα. Καὶ πῶς;

αἰ. Δει δὴ καὶ τὰ νῦν, ὡς ἐσικεῖν, εἰπ'ερ μέλλει

1 ἢ σωμάτων Ι add (Baiter adds καὶ νόσων after στρατοπέδων).
2 ὄρθως is assigned by Zur. and most edd. (except Burnet) to Clin.
That is certainly probable.

It is probable. But what kind of reason is it which, when combined with senses, will afford salvation to ships in stormy weather and calm? On shipboard is it not the pilot and the sailors who, by combining the senses with the pilot reason, secure salvation both for themselves and for all that belongs to the ship?

Of course.

There is no need of many examples to illustrate this. Consider, for instance, what would be the right mark for a general to set up to shoot at in the case of an army, or the medical profession in the case of a human body, if they were aiming at salvation. Would not the former make victory his mark, and mastery over the enemy, while that of the doctors and their assistants would be the providing of health to the body?

Certainly.

But if a doctor were ignorant of that bodily condition which we have now called "health," or a general ignorant of victory, or any of the other matters we have mentioned, could he possibly be thought to possess reason about any of these things?

How could he?

What, now, shall we say about a State? If a man were to be plainly ignorant as regards the political mark to be aimed at, would he, first of all, deserve the title of magistrate, and, secondly, would he be able to secure the salvation of that object concerning the aim of which he knows nothing at all?

How could he?

So now, in our present case, if our settle-
τέλος ὁ κατοικισμὸς τῆς χώρας ἦμιν ἐξειν, εἰναὶ τι τὸ γίγνωσκον ἐν αὐτῷ πρῶτον μὲν τούτο ὁ λέγομεν, τὸν σκοτών, ὡστὶς ποτὲ ὁ πολιτικὸς ὁμ ἦμιν τυγχάνει, ἔπειτα ὅντινα τρόπον δεῖ μετα- σχεῖν τούτον καὶ τῆς αὐτῆς καλῶς ἡ μὴ συμβου- λεύει τῶν νόμων αὐτῶν πρῶτον, ἔπειτα ἀνθρώπων. εἰ δ’ ἔσται τοῦ τοιοῦτον κενῆ τις πόλις, οὐδὲν θαυμαστὸν ἄνους οὔσα καὶ ἀναίσθητος εἰ πράξει τὸ προστυχὸν ἐκάστοτε ἐν ἐκάσταις τῶν πράξεων.

κλ. Ἀληθῆ λέγεις.

α. Νῦν ὡς ἦμιν ἐν τῖνι ποτὲ τῶν τῆς πόλεως μερῶν ἐπιτιθεμένων ἔστιν ἰκανὸν κατεσκευασ- μένον ὑποτήν τοιοῦτον φυλακτήριον; ἔχομεν φράζειν;

κλ. Ὁ δήτα, ὁ ἐξείς, σαφῶς γε’ εἰ δ’ οὖν τοπάζειν δεῖ, δοκεῖ μοι τείνον ὁ λόγος οὗτος εἰς τὸν σύλλογον δυν ἐπεσ νῦν δὴ νῦκτωρ δεῖν ἐννιεύει. Ἐ. Α. Κάλλισθ’ ὑπέλαβες, ὁ Κλεινία, καὶ δεῖ δὴ τοῦτον, ὡς ὁ νῦν παρεστηκὼς ἦμιν λόγος μηνύει, πάσαν ἄρετην ἐχειν’ ἂς ἀρχεῖ τὸ μὴ πλανᾶσθαι πρὸς πολλὰ στοχαζόμενον, ἀλλ’ εἰς ἐν βλέποντα πρὸς τοῦτο ἀεὶ τὰ πάντα οἰον βέλη ἀφιέναι.

κλ. Παντάπασι μὲν οὖν.

α. Νῦν δὴ μαθησόμεθα ὅτι θαυμαστὸν οὐδὲν πλανᾶσθαι τὰ τῶν πόλεων νόμιμα, ὅτι πρὸς ἀλλ’ ἀλλη βλέπει τῶν νομοθεσίων ἐν τῇ πόλει ἐκάστῃ. καὶ τὰ μὲν πολλὰ οὐδὲν θαυμαστὸν τὸ τοῖς μὲν Ἐ τῶν ὄρον εἶναι τῶν δικαίων, ὅπως ἀρξουσί τινες ἐν τῇ πόλει, εἰτ’ οὖν βελτίους εἰτε χείρος

1 Cp. 705 E, 934 B.
ment of the country is to be finally completed, there must, it would seem, exist in it some element which knows, in the first place, what that political aim, of which we are speaking, really is, and, secondly, in what manner it may attain this aim, and which of the laws, in the first instance, and secondly of men, gives it good counsel or bad. But if any State is destitute of such an element, it will not be surprising if, being thus void of reason and void of sense, it acts at haphazard always in all its actions.

CLIN. Very true.

ATH. In which, then, of the parts or institutions of our State have we now got anything so framed as to prove an adequate safeguard of this kind? Can we answer that question?

CLIN. No, Stranger; at least, not clearly. But if I must make a guess, it seems to me that this discourse of yours is leading up to that synod which has to meet at night, as you said just now.

ATH. An excellent reply, Clinias! And, as our present discourse shows, this synod must possess every virtue; and the prime virtue is not to keep shifting its aim among a number of objects, but to concentrate its gaze always on one particular mark, and at that one mark to shoot, as it were, all its arrows continually.

CLIN. Most certainly.

ATH. So now we shall understand that it is by no means surprising if the legal customs in States keep shifting, seeing that different parts of the codes in each State look in different directions. And, in general, it is not surprising that, with some statesmen, the aim of justice is to enable a certain class of people to rule in the State (whether they be really
τυγχάνουσιν ὄντες· τοῖς δὲ ὅπως πλουτίσονται, εἰτ' οὖν δοῦλοι τινῶν ὄντες εἰτε καὶ μη' τῶν δὲ ἡ προθυμία πρὸς τὸν ἐλεύθερον δὴ βίον ἀρμημένη· οἳ δὲ καὶ ξύνδυο νομοθετοῦνται, πρὸς ἀμφοὶ βλέποντες, ἐλεύθεροί τε ὅπως ἄλλων τε πόλεων ἔσονται δεσπόται· οἳ δὲ σοφῶτατοι, ὡς οἴονται, πρὸς ταύτα τε καὶ τὰ τοιαύτα ἕμπαντα, εἰς ὑπὸ δὲ <οὐ,>¹ οὔδεν διαφερόντως τετιμημένον ἔχοντες φράζειν εἰς ὁ τὰλλ' αὐτοῖς δεὶ βλέπειν.

963 κλ. Ὅνικοῦν τὸ γ' ἡμέτερον, ὡς ἔκε, ὡρθῶς ἂν εἰη πάλαι τιθέμενον· πρὸς γὰρ ἐν ἐφαμεν δεῖν ἄει πάνθ' ἡμῖν τὰ τῶν νόμων βλέποντ' εἶναι, τούτῳ δ' ἀρετὴν ποὺ ἐξυνεχωροῦμεν πάνυ ὡρθῶς λέγεσθαι.

ἀ. Ναῖ.

κλ. Τὴν δὲ γε ἀρετήν τέτταρα ἐθεμέν ποι.

ἀ. Πάνω μὲν οὖν.

κλ. Νοῦν δὲ γε πάντων τούτων ἡγεμόνα, πρὸς ὑπὸ δὴ τὰ τὰ ἄλλα πάντα καὶ τούτων τὰ τρία δεῖν βλέπειν.

ἀ. Καλλίστ' ἐπακολουθεῖς, ὡς Κλεινία. καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ δὲ ἐξυνακολούθει. νοῦν γὰρ δὴ κυ-βερνητικὸν μὲν καὶ ἰατρικὸν καὶ στρατηγικὸν Ἐπομεν εἰς τὸ ἐν ἐκείνῳ οΪ δεὶ βλέπειν, τὸν δὲ πολιτικὸν ἐλέγχοντες ἐνταῦθ' ἐσμὲν νῦν, καὶ καθάπερ ἄνθρωπον ἐπανερωτῶντες ἐποίμεν ἃν, Ὄθαναμάσιε, σὺ δὲ δὴ ποι̇ σκοπεῖς; τὶ ποτ'

¹ <οὐ,> added by Stephens, H. Richards.

¹ Cp. 630 E ff.
superior, or inferior), while with others the aim is how to acquire wealth (whether or not they be somebody’s slaves); and others again direct their efforts to winning a life of freedom. Still others make two objects at once the joint aim of their legislation,—namely, the gaining of freedom for themselves, and mastery over other States; while those who are the wisest of all, in their own conceit, aim not at one only, but at the sum total of these and the like objects, since they are unable to specify any one object of pre-eminent value towards which they would desire all else to be directed.

Clin. Then, Stranger, was not the view we stated long ago the right one? We said that all our laws must always aim at one single object, which, as we agreed, is quite rightly named “virtue.”

Ath. Yes.

Clin. And we stated that virtue consists of four things.

Ath. Certainly.

Clin. And that the chief of all the four is reason, at which the other three, as well as everything else, should aim.

Ath. You follow us admirably, Clinias; and now follow us in what comes next. In the case of the pilot, the doctor, and the general, reason is directed, as we said, towards the one object of aim which is proper in each case; and now we are at the point of examining reason in the case of a statesman, and addressing it as a man, we shall question it thus:—“O admirable sir, what is your aim?” Medical reason

2 Cp. 631 C ff.: “reason” (or “wisdom”) as the most “divine” stands first, the others being temperance, justice and courage.
PLATO

καθάπερ ὑπὲρ ἄλλων ἐγὼ πρὸς ὑμᾶς συχνῶν διωριζόμην;

καὶ. Οὐδαμῶς, ὃ ξένε.

α. Τί ὁ; ὅτι δεῖ προθυμεῖσθαι τε ξυνιδεῖν αὐτὸ καὶ ἐν ὑσί;

καὶ. Οἶον ἐν τίσι λέγεις;

α. Οἶον ὅτε τέτταρα ἐφήσαμεν ἀρετής εἶδη γεγονότα, δήλου ὡς ἐν ἑκαστὸν ἀνάγκη φάναι, τεττάρων γε ὑμῶν.

καὶ. Τί μὴν;

α. Καὶ μὴν ἐν γε ἄπαντα ταῦτα προσαγορεύσομεν. ἀνδρίαν γὰρ φαμεν ἀρετὴν εἶναι, καὶ ἐν τὴν φρόνησιν ἀρετὴν, καὶ τὰ δύο τάλλα, ὡς ὑμῶς ὑμτα σὺ πολλὰ ἄλλα ἐν τούτῳ μόνον, ἀρετὴν.

καὶ. Πάνν μὲν ὑμῖν.

α. Ἡ τοῖσιν διαφέρετον αὐτοῖν τούτῳ τῷ δύο καὶ δǚ ὀνύματα ἐλαβέτην καὶ τάλλα, οὐδὲν χαλεπὸν εἶπεῖν ἢ δὲ ἐν ἄμφοιν ἐπωνομᾶσαμεν ἀρετὴν καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις, οὐκ εἴπετες ἐτι.

καὶ. Πῶς λέγεις;

α. Οὐδὲν χαλεπὸν ὁ γε λέγω δηλῶσαι. διανειμώμεθα γὰρ ἄλληλοι τὴν ἐρώτησιν καὶ ἀπόκρισιν.

καὶ. Πῶς αὐ φράζεις;

Ε. α. Ἐρώτησόν με τί ποτὲ ἐν προσαγορεύουντες

1 Cp. 893 A.
is able to state clearly the one single object at which it aims; so will you be unable to state your one object—you who are superior, as perhaps you will say, to all the wise?" Can you two, Megillus and Clinias, define that object on his behalf, and tell me what you say it is, just as I, on behalf of many others, defined their objects for you?

CLIN. We are totally unable to do so.

ATH. Well then, can you declare that we need zeal in discerning both the object itself as a whole and the forms it assumes?

CLIN. Illustrate what you mean by "the forms" you speak of.

ATH. For example, when we said that there are four forms of virtue, obviously, since there are four, we must assert that each is a separate one.

CLIN. Certainly.

ATH. And yet we call them all by one name: we assert that courage is virtue, and wisdom virtue, and the other two likewise, as though they were really not a plurality, but solely this one thing—virtue.

CLIN. Very true.

ATH. Now it is not hard to explain wherein these two (and the rest) differ from one another, and how they have got two names; but to explain why we have given the one name "virtue" to both of them (and to the rest) is no longer an easy matter.

CLIN. How do you mean?

ATH. It is not hard to make clear my meaning. Let one of us adopt the rôle of questioner, the other of answerer.¹

CLIN. In what way?

ATH. Do you ask me this question—why, when
ἀρετὴν ἀμφότερα δύο πάλιν αὐτὰ προσείπομεν, τὸ μὲν ἀνδρίαν, τὸ δὲ φρόνησιν. ἐρῶ γὰρ σοι τὴν αἰτίαν, ὅτι τὸ μὲν ἐστι περὶ φόβου, οὗ καὶ τὰ θηρία μετέχει τῆς ἀνδρίας καὶ τὰ γε τῶν παίδων ἥθη τῶν πάνω νέων. ἂνεν γὰρ λόγον καὶ φύσει γίγνεται ἄνδρεια ψυχή: ἂνεν δὲ αὖ λόγου ψυχῆς φρόνιμός τε καὶ νοῦν ἔχουσα οὔτ' ἐγένετο πῶς τοτε οὔτ' ἐστιν οὖθ' αὐθίς ποτε γενήσεται, ὥς οὐντος ἐτέρου.

κλ. Ἀλήθη λέγεις.

964 Ἄ. Τὰ λοιπὰ τῶν ἔστον διαφόροι καὶ δύο, σὺ παρ' ἐμοῖ ἀπείληφας τὸ λόγῳ; ἢ δὲ ἐν καὶ ταύτων, σὺ πάλιν ἀπόδος ἐμοί. διανοοῦ δὲ ως ἐρῶ καὶ ὅπη τέτταρα ὀντα ἐν ἐστι, καὶ ἐμε δὲ αἰξίου, σοῦ δεζαντος ως ἐν, πάλιν ὅπη τέτταρα. καὶ δὴ τὸ μετὰ τούτοι σκοπῶμεν τὸν εἰδότα ἰκανὸς περὶ ὁντινωνοι, οῖς ἐστὶ μὲν ονομα, ἐστὶ δὲ αὖ καὶ λόγος, πότερον μόνον ἐπίστασθαι τούνομα χρεών, τὸν δὲ λόγον ἄγνοεῖν, ἢ τὸν γε ὀντα τι καὶ περὶ τῶν διαφερόντων μεγέθει τε καὶ Β κάλλει πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα ἄγνοεῖν αἰσχρόν.

κλ. Ἔοικε γοῦν.

Ἄ. Μειξόν δὴ τι νομοθετῇ τε καὶ νομοφύλακι καὶ δὲ ἀρετὴ παῦτων διαφέρειν οἴεται καὶ νικητήρια τούτων αὐτῶν εἰληφεν, ἢ ταύτα αὐτὰ περὶ δυν νῦν λέγομεν, ἀνδρία, σωφροσύνη, δικαιοσύνη, φρόνησις;

κλ. Καὶ πῶς;

Ἄ. Τούτων δὴ περὶ τοὺς ἐξηγητάς, τοὺς δι-

---

calling both the two by the single name of "virtue," did we again speak of them as two—courage and wisdom? Then I shall tell you the reason,—which is, that the one of them has to do with fear, namely courage,\(^1\) in which beasts also share, and the characters of very young children; for a courageous soul comes into existence naturally and without reasoning, but without reasoning there never yet came into existence, and there does not nor ever will exist, a soul that is wise and rational, it being a distinct kind.

CLIN. That is true.

ATH. Wherein they differ and are two you have now learnt from my reply. So do you, in turn, inform me how it is that they are one and identical. Imagine you are also going to tell me how it is that, though four, they are yet one; and then, after you have shown me how they are one, do you again ask me how they are four. And after that, let us enquire regarding the person who has full knowledge of any objects which possess both a name and a definition, whether he ought to know the name only, and not know the definition, or whether it is not a shameful thing for a man worth anything to be ignorant of all these points in regard to matters of surpassing beauty and importance.

CLIN. It would certainly seem to be so.

ATH. For the lawgiver and the Law-warden, and for him who thinks he surpasses all men in virtue and who has won prizes for just such qualities, is there anything more important than these very qualities with which we are now dealing—courage, temperance, justice, and wisdom?

CLIN. Impossible.

ATH. In regard to these matters, is it not right
δασκάλους, τοὺς νομοθέτας, τῶν ἄλλων τοὺς φύλακας, τῷ δεομένῳ γινώσκει τε καὶ εἰδέναι ἢ τῷ δεομένῳ κολάζεσθαι τε καὶ ἐπιπλήξαι ἁμαρτάνοντι, πότερον οὐ δεὶ διδάσκοντα ἢν δύναμιν ἔχει κακία τε καὶ ἀρετῇ καὶ πάντως δηλοῦντα διαφέρειν τῶν ἄλλων, ᾠλλ' ἡ ποιητὴν τινα ἐλθόντα εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἢ παιδευτὴν νέων φάσκοντ' εἶναι βελτίω φαίνεσθαι τοῦ πᾶσαν ἀρετὴν νεανικότος; εἶτα ἐν τῇ τοιαύτῃ πόλει ὅπου μὴ λόγῳ ἠργῷ τε ίκανοὶ φύλακαι εἶνεν, ἀρετῆς πέρι γιγνώσκοντες ἰκανῶς, θαυμαστῶν τι ταύτην τὴν πόλιν ἀφύλακτον οὖσαν πάσχειν ἢ πολλαὶ πάσχουσι

D τῶν νῦν πόλεως;

κλ. Οὔδεν γε, ὡς εἶκός.

ἀθ. Τί οὖν; ὃ λέγομεν νῦν, ποιητέον ἡμῖν, ἢ πῶς; τοὺς φύλακας ἀκριβεστέρους τῶν πολλῶν περὶ ἀρετῆς ἠργῷ καὶ λόγῳ κατασκευαστέον; ἢ τίνα τρόπον τῇ τῶν ἐμφρόνων κεφαλῇ τε καὶ αἰσθησειν ὁμοιωθῆσειν ἡμῖν ἡ πόλις, ὡς τοιαύτην τινὰ φυλακὴν κεκτημένη ἐν αὕτῃ;

κλ. Πῶς οὖν δὴ καὶ τίνα τρόπον, ὃ ξένε, ἀπεικόζωτες αὐτὸ τοιοῦτῳ τινὶ λέγομεν;

Ε ἀθ. Δῆλον ὡς αὐτῆς μὲν τῆς πόλεως οὖσας τοῦ κύτους, τῶν δὲ φυλάκων τοὺς μὲν νέους οἰὸν ἐν ἀκρᾳ κορυφῇ ἀπειλεγμένους1 τοὺς εὐφυεστάτους ὀξύτητας ἐν πάσῃ τῇ ψυχῇ ἔχοντας περὶ ὁλὴν κύκλῳ τὴν πόλιν οἴματι, φρουροῦντας δὲ παραδίδοναι μὲν τὰς αἰσθήσεις ταῖς μνήμαις, τοῖς πρεσβυτέροις δὲ ἐξαγγέλους γίγνεσθαι πάντων 965 τῶν κατὰ πόλιν, τοὺς δὲ νῦ ἀπεικασμένους τῷ

1 ἀπειλεγμένου MSS.: ἀπειλημμένου MSS. marg., Zur., vulg.

552
that the interpreters, the teachers, the lawgivers, as the wardens of the rest, in dealing with him that requires knowledge and information, or with him that requires punishment and reproof for his sin, should excel all others in the art of instructing him in the quality of vice and virtue and exhibiting it fully? Or is some poet who comes into the State, or one who calls himself a trainer of youth, to be accounted evidently superior to him that has won prizes for all the virtues? In a State like that, where there are no wardens who are competent both in word and deed, and possessed of a competent knowledge of virtue,—is it surprising, I ask, if such a State, all unwarded as it is, suffers the same fate as do many of the States which exist to-day?

**clin.** Not at all, I should say.

**ath.** Well then, must we do what we now propose, or what? Must we contrive how our wardens shall have a more accurate grasp of virtue, both in word and deed, than the majority of men? For otherwise, how shall our State resemble a wise man's head and senses, on the ground that it possesses within itself a similar kind of wardenship?

**clin.** What is this resemblance we speak of, and wherein does it consist?

**ath.** Evidently we are comparing the State itself to the skull; and, of the wardens, the younger ones, who are selected as the most intelligent and nimble in every part of their souls, are set, as it were, like the eyes, in the top of the head, and survey the State all round; and as they watch, they pass on their perceptions to the organs of memory,—that is, they report to the elder wardens all that goes on in the State,—while the old men, who are likened to
PLATO

polla kai 'a'xia logon diaferontos vronein, tois yeronantas, boulevesbetai, kai upheratas xwimeneous meta xymboulias tois neois, oitou de koini soxein amfoterous ontows tнн polin dhli. poteron oitov lenomev, 'h tws allws dein kataskevazebsbai; mwn omoious pantas kekthmenen1 kai mh dhikriismenos estin ois traphentas te kai pepai- deunemous;

kl. 'Alla', o thammasie, adunaton.

a.o. 'Iteon 'ara epistina akribesteraan paiideian tнн ephemosev.

B kl. 'Isws.

a.o. 'Ar ouv 'hн de 'hн xchden efpsiameba, tynchanu an ousa 'hн xreian exomev auti;

kl. Panta'pasen men ouv.

a.o. Oukoiv elegomen tон ge proz ekastat akron dhmiourgon te kai frulaka mhn monon dein proz ta polla blепeiv dunaton einai, proz de to en epiegebsbai, gnwhai te kai gnontai proz ekeino suntauazasbai pantas xynorota;

kl. 'Orodo.

C a.o. 'Ar ouv akribestera skexis thea t' an peri otoun ou otowun xynoihto 'h to proz mian idean ek ton pollon kai anomoion dunaton einai blépein;

kl. 'Isws<ou>.2

1 kekthmenen W.-Mollendorff: kekthmenous MSS., edd.
2 <ou> I add.

---

1 962 E, 963 B ff.
2 Cp. 903 C, D, 961 E.
3 Cp. Rep. 537 B ff., where the "dialectic" method is
the reason because of their eminent wisdom in many matters of importance, act as counsellors, and make use of the young men as ministers and colleagues also in their counsels, so that both these classes by their co-operation really effect the salvation of the whole State. Is this the way, or ought we to contrive some other? Should the State, do you think, have all its members equal, instead of having some more highly trained and educated?

CLIN. Nay, my good sir, that were impossible.

ATH. We must proceed, then, to expound a type of education that is higher than the one previously described.

CLIN. I suppose so.

ATH. Will the type which we hinted at just now prove to be that which we require?

CLIN. Certainly.

ATH. Did we not say that he who is a first-class craftsman or warden, in any department, must not only be able to pay regard to the many, but must be able also to press towards the One so as to discern it and, on discerning it, to survey and organise all the rest with a single eye to it?

CLIN. Quite right.

ATH. Can any man get an accurate vision and view of any object better than by being able to look from the many and dissimilar to the one unifying form?

CLIN. Probably not.

described as a kind of induction (συναγωγή) whereby the mind ascends from "the many" particulars to "the one" universal concept or "idea"; a comprehensive view (σύνοψις) of the whole is what marks the dialectician (ὁ συνοπτικός διαλεκτικός).
ΑΘ. Όυκ ἵσως, ἀλλ' ὅντως, ὁ δειμόνιος, ταύτης οὐκ ἔστι σαφεστέρα μέθοδος ἀνθρώπων οὐδενί.

ΚΛ. Σοι πιστεύων, ὃ ξένε, συγχωρῶ δή, καὶ ταύτη πορευόμεθα λέγοντες.

ΑΘ. 'Αναγκαστέον ἄρ', ὡς ἕοικε, καὶ τοὺς τῆς θείας πολιτείας ἡμῶν φύλακας ἀκριβῶς ἰδείων πρῶτον ὁ τί ποτε διὰ πάντων τῶν τεττάρων Δ Ταύτων τυγχάνει, ὃ δή φαμεν ἐν τε ἀνδρία καὶ σωφροσύνῃ καὶ δικαιοσύνῃ καὶ ἐν φρονήσει ἐν ὑν ἀρετὴν ἐν δικαίως ἀν ὅνοματι προσαγορεύεσθαι. τούτῳ, ὃ φίλου, εἰ μὲν βουλόμεθα, τὰ νῦν οἴνοπερ σφόνδρα πιέσαντες μὴ ἵναμεν, πρὶν ἂν ἰκανῶς εἰπωμεν τι ποτ' ἐστιν, εἰς ὃ βλεπτέον, εἴπε ὡς ἐν εἴτε ὃς ὅλον εἴτε ἀμφότερα εἴτε ὅπως ποτὲ πέφυκεν. ἦ τούτων διαφυγόντως ἡμᾶς οἴόμεθά ποτὲ ἡμῖν ἰκανῶς ἔξειν τὰ πρὸς ἀρετὴν, περὶ ἃς οὔτε εἰ πολλά ἐστ' οὔτ' εἰ τέτταρα οὐθ' ὡς ἐν δυνατοί 

Ε φράζειν ἐσόμεθα; οὐκοῦν ἐάν γε ἡμῖν ἡμιβούλους πειθώμεθα, ἀμῶς γε πὼς μηχανησόμεθα ἐν τῇ πόλει ἐγγεγονέναι τούθ' ἡμῖν· εἰ δ' ἄρα τὸ παράπαν δοκεῖ εὗν, εὗν δὴ·

ΚΛ. Ἡ δικτά, νη τὸν ξένονοι, ὃ ξένε, θεόν, ἐστέον ποὺ τὸ τοιοῦτον, ἐπεὶ δοκεῖς ἡμῖν ὅρθωτατα λέγειν. ἀλλὰ δὴ πῶς τις τοῦτ' ἄν μηχανήσαιτο; 

666 ΑΘ. Μήπω τὸ πῶς ἄν μηχανησαίμεθα λέγωμεν· εἰ δεῖ δὲ ἡ μή, πρῶτον βεβαιοσώμεθα τῇ ξυνομολογίᾳ πρὸς ἡμᾶς αὐτούς. 

ΚΛ. Ἀλλὰ μὴν δεῖ γε, εἴπερ δυνατῶν.


556
ATH. It is certain, my friend, rather than probable, that no man can possibly have a clearer method than this.

CLIN. I believe you, Stranger, and I assent; so let us employ this method in our subsequent discourse.

ATH. Naturally we must compel the wardens also of our divine polity to observe accurately, in the first place, what that identical element is which pervades all the four virtues, and which,—since it exists as a unity in courage, temperance, justice and wisdom,—may justly be called, as we assert, by the single name of "virtue." This element, my friends, we must now (if we please) hold very tight, and not let go until we have adequately explained the essential nature of the object to be aimed at—whether, that is, it exists by nature as a unity, or as a whole, or as both, or in some other way. Else, if this eludes us, can we possibly suppose that we shall adequately grasp the nature of virtue, when we are unable to state whether it is many or four or one? Accordingly, if we follow our own counsel, we shall contrive somehow, by hook or by crook, that this knowledge shall exist in our State. Should we decide, however, to pass it over entirely—pass it over we must.

CLIN. Nay, Stranger, in the name of the Stranger's God, we must by no means pass over a matter such as this, since what you say seems to us most true. But how is this to be contrived?

ATH. It is too early to explain how we are to contrive it: let us first make sure that we agree among ourselves as to whether or not we ought to do so.

CLIN. Well, surely we ought, if we can.
AΘ. Τί δαί δή; περὶ καλοῦ τι καὶ ἀγαθοῦ ταύτων τούτω διανοούμεθα; ὡς πάλλ’ ἐστὶ μόνον [ὅν] ⁱ ἐκαστὸν τούτων, τοὺς φύλακας ἧμῖν γνωστέον, ή καὶ ὅπως ἐν τε καὶ ὅπῃ;

ΚΛ. Σχεδὸν ἐσι’ ἐξ ἀνάγκης δεῖν καὶ ὅπως ἐν διανοεῖσθαι.

Β ΑΘ. Τί δ’, ἐννοεῖν μέν, τὴν δὲ ἐνδείξειν τῷ λόγῳ ἀδυνατεῖν ἐνδείκνυσθαι;

ΚΛ. Καὶ πῶς; ἀνδραπόδου γὰρ τίνα σὺ λέγεις ἐξίν.

ΑΘ. Τί δαί; περὶ πάντων τῶν σπουδαίων ἄρ’ ἧμῖν ὁ αὐτὸς λόγος, ὅτι δεὶ τοὺς ὄντως φύλακας ἐσομένους τῶν νόμων ὄντως εἰδέναι τὰ περὶ τὴν ἀλήθειαν αὐτῶν, καὶ λόγῳ τε ἰκανοὺς ἐρμηνεύειν εἶναι καὶ τοῖς ἐργοῖς ἔννεποιεῖν, κρίνοντας τὰ τε καλῶς γιγνόμενα καὶ τὰ μή κατὰ φύσιν;

ΚΛ. Πῶς γὰρ οὐ;

C ΑΘ. Μῶν οὖν οὐχ ἐν τῶν καλλίστων ἐστὶ τὸ περὶ τοὺς θεοὺς, ὃ δὴ σπουδὴ διεπερανάμεθα, ὡς εἰσὶ τε καὶ ὁσίας φαίνονται κύριοι δυνάμεως, εἰδέναι τε εἰς ὅσον δυνατὸν ἐστὶ ταύτῃ ἀνθρωπον γιγνώσκειν, καὶ τοῖς μὲν πλείστοις τῶν κατὰ πόλιν ἐξυγγυνώσκειν τῇ φήμῃ μόνον τῶν νόμων συνακολούθουσι, τοῖς δὲ φυλακῆς μεθέξουσι μηδὲ ἐπιτρέπειν, ὅσ ἂν μὴ διαπονήσῃ τὸ πᾶσαν πίστιν λαβεῖν τῶν οὕσιν πέρι ² θεῶν; τὴν δὲ μὴ ἐπιτροπῆν εἶναι τὸ μηδέποτε τῶν νομοφυλάκων αἰρεῖσθαι τὸν μὴ θείον καὶ διαπεπονηκῶτα πρὸς αὐτά, μηδ’ αὐτὸν πρὸς ἀρετήν ἐγκρίτων ³ γίγνεσθαι;

² οὕσιν πέρι: οὕσων πέρι MSS., edd.
³ ἐγκρίτων L. Dindorf, Herm.: ἐγκρίτων MSS.
ATH. Very well then; do we hold the same view about the fair and the good? Ought our wardens to know only that each of these is a plurality, or ought they also to know how and wherein they are each a unity?

CLIN. It is fairly obvious that they must necessarily also discern how these are a unity.

ATH. Well then, ought they to discern it, but be unable to give a verbal demonstration of it?

CLIN. Impossible! The state of mind you describe is that of a slave.

ATH. Well then, do we hold the same view about all forms of goodness, that those who are to be real wardens of the laws must really know the true nature of them, and be capable both of expounding it in word and conforming to it in deed, passing judgment on fair actions and foul according to their real character?

CLIN. Certainly.

ATH. And is not one of the fairest things the doctrine about the gods, which we expounded earnestly,¹—to know both that they exist, and what power they manifestly possess, so far as a man is capable of learning these matters; so that while one should pardon the mass of the citizens if they merely follow the letter of the law, one must exclude from office those who are eligible for wardenship, unless they labour to grasp all the proofs there are about the existence of gods? Such exclusion from office consists in refusing ever to choose as a Law-warden, or to number among those approved for excellence, a man who is not divine himself, nor has spent any labour over things divine.

¹ In Book X.
ΚΑ. Δίκαιον γοῦν, ώς λέγεις, τὸν περὶ τὰ τοιαύτα ἀργὸν ἢ ἀδύνατον ἀποκρίνεσθαι πόρρω τῶν καλῶν.

ΑΘ. Ἦριθα ὅσον ἱσχεῖ ὅτι δὰ ἔστον τὸ περὶ θεῶν ἀγωντε εἰς πίστιν ὡσα διήλθομεν ἐν τοῖς πρόσθεν;

ΚΑ. Ποία;

ΑΘ. "Εν μὲν ὁ περὶ τὴν ψυχήν ἐλέγομεν, ὡς ἔστωσας τε καὶ θειότατον ἐστὶ πάντων ὁν κίνησις γένεσιν παραλαβοῦσα ἀέναον οὐσίαν ἐπόρισεν ἐν δὲ τὸ περὶ τὴν φοράν, ὡς ἔχει τάξεως, ἀστρων τε καὶ ὅσων ἄλλων ἐγκρατῆς νοῦς ἐστὶ τὸ πάν διακεκοσμηκός, ὁ γὰρ ἴδων ταύτα μὴ φαύλως μὴν ἰδιωτικῶς, οὐδεὶς οὕτως ἄθεος ἀνθρώπων ποτὲ τέφυκεν, ὅς οὐ τοῦνατίον ἔπαθεν ἢ τὸ προσδοκώμενον ύπὸ τῶν πολλῶν. 967 οἱ μὲν γὰρ διανοοῦνται τοὺς τὰ τοιαύτα μετα-χειρισμένους ἀστρονομία τε καὶ ταῖς μετὰ ταύτης ἀναγκαίας ἄλλας τέχνας ἄθεος γίγνεσθαι, καθεωράκοτας, ὡς οἴονται,1 γινομένα ἀνάγκαι πράγματ' ἄλλ' οὐ διανοίας βουλήσεως ἀγαθῶν πέρι τελευμένων.

ΚΑ. Τὸ δὲ δὴ πῶς ἔχειν ἄν εἴη;

ΑΘ. Πάν, ὅπερ εἰπόν, τοῦνατίον ἔχει νῦν τε καὶ ὅτε ἄψυχα αὐτὰ οἱ διανοούμενοι διενοῦντο. θαύματα μὲν οὖν καὶ τότε ὑπεδύετο περὶ αὐτά, Β καὶ ὑποπτεύετο τὸ νῦν οὕτως δεδογμένων, ὃςοι τῆς ἀκριβείας αὐτῶν ἥπτοντο, ὃπως μήποτ' ἄν ἄψυχα ὅντα οὕτως εἰς ἀκριβείαν θαυμαστοῖς

1 οἴονται, Madvig, Apelt: οἴον τε MSS., edd.

---

1 Cp. 893 B ff. 2 Cp. 898 C ff.
It is certainly just, as you say, that the
man who is idle or incapable in respect of this
subject should be strictly debarred from the ranks
of the noble.

ATH. Are we assured, then, that there are two
causes, amongst those we previously discussed, which lead to faith in the gods?

CLIN. What two?

ATH. One is our dogma about the soul,—that it
is the most ancient and divine of all the things
whose motion, when developed into "becoming,"
provides an ever-flowing fount of "being"; and the
other is our dogma concerning the ordering of the
motion of the stars and all the other bodies under
the control of reason, which has made a "cosmos"
of the All. For no man that views these objects in
no careless or amateurish way has ever proved so
godless as not to be affected by them in a way just
the opposite of that which most people expect. For
they imagine that those who study these objects in
astronomy and the other necessary allied arts become
atheists through observing, as they suppose, that all
things come into being by necessary forces and not
by the mental energy of the will aiming at the
fulfilment of good.

CLIN. What in fact is the real state of the case?

ATH. The position at present is, as I said, exactly
the opposite of what it was when those who con-
sidered these objects considered them to be soulless.
Yet even then they were objects of admiration, and
the conviction which is now actually held was sus-
pected by all who studied them accurately—namely,
that if they were soulless, and consequently devoid of reason, they could never have employed with such
λογισμοῖς ἀν ἔχρητο, νοῦν μὴ κεκτημένα· καὶ τινες ἔτολμοι τούτο γε αὐτὸ παρακινδυνεύειν καὶ τότε, λέγοντες ὡς νοῦς εἰή ὁ διακεκοσμηκὼς πάνθ' ὁσα κατ' οὐρανόν. οἱ δὲ αὐτὸι πάλιν ἀμαρτάνοντες ψυχῆς φύσεως, ὅτι πρεσβύτερον εἰή σωμάτων, διανοηθέντες δὲ ὡς νεώτερον,

C ἀπανθ' ὡς εἰπεῖν ἔτος ἀνέτρεψαν πάλιν, ἔαντος δὲ πολὺ μᾶλλον· τὰ γὰρ πρὸ τῶν ὀμμάτων πάντα ἄυτόις ἐφάνη τὰ κατ' οὐρανόν φερόμενα μεστὰ εἶναι λίθων καὶ γῆς καὶ πολλῶν ἄλλων ἀψύχων σωμάτων διανεμομένων τὰς αἰτίας παντὸς τοῦ κόσμου. ταύτ' ἂν τὰ τότε ἐξεργασάμενα πολλὰς ἀθέοτητας καὶ δυσχερείας τῶν τοιούτων ἀπτεσθαί· καὶ δὴ καὶ λοιδορήσεις γε ἐπῆλθον ποιηταῖς, τοὺς φιλοσοφοῦντας κυσὶ ματαίας ἀπεικάζοντας χρωμέναις ὕλακαῖς, ἄλλα τε D ἀνόητα εἰπεῖν. νῦν δὲ, ὅπερ εἰρηται, πᾶν τοῦναντίον ἔχει.

κα. Πῶς;

ἀ. Οὐκ ἐστι ποτὲ γενέσθαι βεβαιῶς θεοσεβῆ θυντῶν ἀνθρώπων οὐδένα, ὅς ἄν μὴ τὰ λεγόμενα ταῦτα νῦν δύο λάβῃ, ψυχῆ τε ὡς ἐστι πρεσβύτατων ἀπάντων ὅσα γονῆς μετείληφεν ἀθάνατον τε ἄρχει τε δὴ σωμάτων πάντων, ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις δὴ, τὸ νῦν εἰρημένον πολλάκις, τὸν τε ἡγημένον ¹ ἐν τοῖς ἀστροῖς νοῦν τῶν ὄντων τὰ τε πρὸ τοῦτων ἐναγακαία μαθήματα λάβῃ, τὰ τε κατὰ τὴν

¹ ἡγημένον: εἰρημένον MSS. (add αὖτων after ὄντων ci. Stallb.)

¹ An allusion to the saying of Anaxagoras, "All things were together; then Reason (νοῦς) came and set them in
precision calculations so marvellous; and even in those days there were some who dared to hazard the statement \(^1\) that reason is the orderer of all that is in the heavens. But the same thinkers, through mistaking the nature of the soul and conceiving her to be posterior, instead of prior, to body, upset again (so to say) the whole universe, and most of all themselves; for as regards the visible objects of sight, all that moves in the heavens appeared to them to be full of stones, earth and many other soulless bodies which dispense the causes of the whole cosmos. These were the views which, at that time, caused these thinkers to incur many charges of atheism and much odium, and which also incited the poets to abuse them \(^2\) by likening philosophers to "dogs howling at the moon," with other such senseless slanders.

But to-day, as we have said, the position is quite the reverse.

CLIN. How so?

ATH. It is impossible for any mortal man to become permanently god-fearing if he does not grasp the two truths now stated,—namely, how that the soul is oldest of all things that partake of generation, and is immortal, and rules over all bodies,—and in addition to this, he must also grasp that reason which, as we have often affirmed, controls what exists among the stars, together with the necessary preliminary sciences; \(^3\) and he must observe

order.” But A. ascribed to Reason only the initiation of a world-order; in all other respects his doctrine was materialistic, and he used purely physical causes and processes in explaining the world, regarding the stars as fiery masses of matter ("full of earth, stones," etc.). Cp. Phaedo 97 B ff.

\(^2\) Cp. Rep. 607 B, C.

\(^3\) Cp. 818 A ff.
Μούσαν τούτοις τῆς κοινωνίας συνθεασάμενος χρήσηται πρὸς τὰ τῶν ἡθῶν ἐπιτηδεύματα καὶ νόμιμα συναρμοττόντως, ὡσα τε λόγον ἔχει, τούτων δυνατὸς ἐστὶ δοῦναι τὸν λόγον [ὡσα τε μη'].

938 ὁ δὲ μὴ ταῦθ' οἷς τ' ὧν πρὸς ταῖς δημοσίαις ἀρεταῖς κεκτῆσθαι σχεδὸν ἀρχῶν μὲν οὐκ ἄν ποτε γενοῖτο ἰκανὸς ὁλης πόλεως, ὕπηρέτης δὲ ἄν ἄλλως ἀρχουσιν. ὃ ῥαν δὴ χρεῶν νῦν, ὁ Κλεινία καὶ Μέγιλλε, ἥδη πρὸς τοῖς εἰρημένοις νόμοις ἀπασιν ὅσοις διεληλυθάμεν, εἰ καὶ τούτων προσοίσομεν, ὡς φυλακῇ ἐσόμενον κατὰ νόμον χάριν σωτηρίας τὸν τῶν ἀρχόντων νυκτερινῶν σύλλογον παιδείας ὁπόσης διεληλυθάμεν κοινωνῶν

Β γενόμενον ἄ πῶς ποιῶμεν;

κλ. 'Αλλ', ὃ λάστε, πῶς οὐ προσοίσομεν, ἀν πη καὶ κατὰ βραχύ δυνηθῶμεν;

ἀθ. Καὶ μὴν πρὸς χάρ τοιοῦτον ἀμιλληθῶμεν πάντες. ἐπιλήπτωρ γὰρ τούτου γε υμῖν καὶ ἔγω γεγυνόμην ἀν προθύμως, πρὸς δ' ἐμοὶ καὶ ἔτέρους ἰσως εὐρήσω, διὰ τὴν περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτ' ἐμπειρίαν τε καὶ σκέψιν γεγονυιάν μοι καὶ μᾶλα συχνὴ.

κλ. 'Αλλ', ὃ ἔσεν, παντὸς μὲν μᾶλλον ταύτῃ πορευτέων ἦπερ καὶ ὁ θεός ἡμᾶς σχεδὸν ἄγει: τίς δὲ ὁ πρόποσ ἡμῖν γεγυνόμενος ὀρθῶς γίγνοιτ' ἂν, C τοῦτι δὴ τὰ νῦν λέγωμεν τε καὶ ἐρευνῶμεν.

ἀθ. Οὐκέτι νόμοις, ὁ Μέγιλλε καὶ Κλεινία, περὶ τῶν τοιούτων δυνατῶν ἔστι νομοθετεῖν, πρὶν ἄν κοσμηθή: τότε δὲ κυρίους ὑν αὐτοὺς δεὶ γίγνεσθαι νομοθετεῖν. ἀλλὰ ἥδη τὸ τὰ τοιαῦτα

also the connection therewith of musical theory, and apply it harmoniously to the institutions and rules of ethics;\(^1\) and he must be able to give a rational explanation of all that admits of rational explanation. He that is unable to master these sciences, in addition to the popular virtues,\(^2\) will never make a competent magistrate of the whole State, but only a minister to other magistrates. And now, Ô Megillus and Clinias, it is time at last to consider whether, in addition to all the previous laws which we have stated, we shall add this also—that the nocturnal synod of magistrates shall be legally established, and shall participate in all the education we have described, to keep ward over the State, and to secure its salvation; or what are we to do?

CLIN. Of course we shall add this law, my excellent sir, if we can possibly do so, even to a small extent.

ATH. Then, verily, let us all strive to do so. And herein you will find me a most willing helper, owing to my very long experience and study of this subject; and perhaps I shall discover other helpers also besides myself.

CLIN. Well, Stranger, we most certainly must proceed on that path along which God too, it would seem, is conducting us. But what is the right method for us to employ,—that is what we have now got to discover and state.

ATH. It is not possible at this stage, Megillus and Clinias, to enact laws for such a body, before it has been duly framed; when it is, its members must themselves ordain what authority they should possess; but it is already plain that what is re-

\(^2\) Cp. 710 A.
κατασκεύαζον διδαχὴ μετὰ ξυνοσίας πολλῆς γίγνοιτ' ἂν, εἰ γίγνοιτο ὁρθῶς.

κλ. Πώς; τι τούτο εἰρήσθαι φῶμεν αὐ; 

α. Πρῶτον μὲν δὴ που καταλεκτέος ἂν εἰη 

D κατάλογος τῶν ὁσιώ ἐπιτηδείοι πρὸς τὴν τῆς φυλακῆς φύσιν ἂν εἰεν ἠλικίας τε καὶ μαθημάτων δυνάμει καὶ τρόπων ἠθεία καὶ ἑθεία. μετὰ δὲ τούτο, ἀ δεὶ μανθάνειν, οὔτε εὐρείων ῥάδιων οὔτε εὐρηκότος ἄλλου μαθητὴν γενέσθαι. πρὸς τούτοις δὲ χρόνους οὔς τε καὶ ἐν οίς δεὶ παραλαμβάνειν ἐκαστὸν, μάταιον ταῦτ' ἐν γράμμασι. 

Ε λέγειν: οὐδὲ γὰρ αὐτοῖς τοῖς μανθάνουσι δῆλα γίγνοιτ' ἂν ο̑ τι πρὸς καιρὸν μανθάνεται, πρὶν ἐντὸς τῆς ψυχῆς ἐκάστῳ τοῦ μαθηματος ἐπιστήμημη γεγονέναι. οὔτω δὴ πάντα τὰ περὶ ταῦτα ἀπορρίητα μὲν λεχθέντα οὐκ ἂν ὁρθῶς λέγοιτο, ἀπρόρρητα δὲ διὰ τὸ μηδὲν προφητεύεντα δηλοῦν τῶν λεγομένων.

κλ. Τί οὖν δὴ ποιητέων ἔχοντων τούτων οὕτως, ὡ ξένε; 

α. Ἄ. Τὸ λεγόμενον, ὡ φίλοι, ἐν κοινῷ καὶ μέσῳ ἔοικεν ἧμῖν κείσθαι, καὶ εἰπερ κινδυνεύειν περὶ τῆς πολιτείας ἐθέλομεν ἡμιμάσης, ἢ τρὶς ἔξ, 

φασίν, ἢ τρεῖς κύβους βάλλοντες, ταῦτα 1 ποιη- 

969 τέον· ἐγὼ δὲ ὑμῖν συγκινδυνεύσω τῷ φράζειν τε καὶ ἐξηγεῖσθαι τά γε δεδογμένα ἐμοὶ περὶ τῆς παιδείας τε καὶ τροφῆς τῆς νῦν αὐ κεκινημένης

1 ταῦτα some MSS., Stallb.: πάντα al. MSS., Zur.
LAWS, BOOK XII

quired in order to form such a body, if it is to be rightly formed, is teaching by means of prolonged conferences.

CLIN. How so? What now are we to understand by this observation?

ATH. Surely we must first draw up a list of all those who are fitted by age, intellectual capacity, and moral character and habit for the office of warden; but as regards the next point, the subjects they should learn,—these it is neither easy to discover for oneself nor is it easy to find another who has made the discovery and learn from him. Moreover, with respect to the limits of time, when and for how long they ought to receive instruction in each subject, it were idle to lay down written regulations; for even the learners themselves could not be sure that they were learning at the opportune time until each of them had acquired within his soul some knowledge of the subject in question. Accordingly, although it would be wrong to term all these matters "indescribable," they should be termed "imprescribable," seeing that the prescribing of them beforehand does nothing to elucidate the question under discussion.

CLIN. What then must we do, Stranger, under these circumstances?

ATH. Apparently, my friends, we must "take our chance with the crowd" (as the saying is), and if we are willing to put the whole polity to the hazard and throw (as men say) three sixes or three aces, so it must be done; and I will go shares with you in the hazard by declaring and explaining my views concerning education and nurture, the subject now started anew in our discourse; but
τοῖς λόγοις· τὸ μέντοι κινδύνευμα οὐ σμικρὸν οὐδ’ ἐτέροις τις προσφερές ἂν εἴη. σοὶ δὴ τούτῳ γε, ὁ Κλεινία, μέλειν παρακελεύομαι· σὺ γὰρ τὴν Μαγνήτων πόλιν, ἢ ὡς ἂν θεὸς ἐπώνυμον αὐτὴν ποιήσῃ, κλέος ἀρεί μέγιστον κατασκευάσας αὐτὴν ὁρθῶς, ἢ τὸ γε ἄνδρειότατος εἶναι δόξαι τῶν Β ὑστεροῦ ἐπιγνωσμένων οὐκ ἐκφεύξει ποτέ. εὰν γε μὴν ούτος ἤμιν ὁ θεῖος γέννηται ξύλλογος, ὁ φίλοι ἑταῖροι, παραδοτέον τούτῳ τὴν πόλιν, ἀμφισβήτησις τ’ οὐκ ἔστ’ οὐδεμία οὐδενὶ τῶν νῦν παρὰ ταῦθ’ ὃς ἐποιεῖ νομοθετῶν, οὐντως δὲ ἔσται σχεδὸν ὑπαρ ἀποτελεσμένον οὐ σμικρῶ πρόσθεν οὐείρατος ὃς τῷ λόγῳ ἐφηψάμεθα, κεφαλὴς νοῦ τε κοινωνίας εἰκόνα τυπά πως ξυμμικαστές, εὰν ἀρα ἤμιν οἱ τε ἄνδρες ἀκριβῶς C ἐκλεκθῶσι, παιδευθῶσι τε προσηκόντως, παιδευ-θέντες τε ἐν ἀκροπόλει τῆς χώρας κατοικήσαντες φύλακες ἀποτελεσθῶσιν οἷς ἢμεῖς οὐκ εἰδομεν ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν βίῳ πρὸς ἀρετῆν σωτηρίας γενομένους.

καλ. 'Αληθέστατα λέγεις· ὁ Μέγιλλε, καὶ ἔγω τε ποιήσω ταῦθ’ οὕτω καὶ <σὺ> ² ξυλ-
D λάμβανε.

προσβάλλομαι.

me. Ἐυλιπῆσομαι.

ἔκλειξθῶσι· some MSS., Herm.: ξυμμικεβαθόσι al. MSS., Zur., vulg.

καὶ ἔγω τε ποιήσω ταῦθ’ οὕτω καὶ <σὺ> ² ξυλ-

καὶ ἔγω τε ποιήσω ταῦθ’ οὕτω καὶ <σὺ> ² ξυλ.

D λάμβανε.

προσβάλλομαι.

ἔκλειξθῶσι· some MSS., Herm.: ξυμμικεβαθόσι al. MSS., Zur., vulg.

καὶ ἔγω τε ποιήσω ταῦθ’ οὕτω καὶ <σὺ> ² ξυλ-

καὶ ἔγω τε ποιήσω ταῦθ’ οὕτω καὶ <σὺ> ² ξυλ.
truly the hazard will be no small one, nor comparable to any others. And you, Clinias, I specially exhort to take good heed to this matter. For as concerns the State of the Magnesians—or whoever else, by the god's direction, gives your State its name,—if you frame it aright, you will achieve most high renown, or at any rate you will inevitably gain the reputation of being the boldest of all your successors. If so be that this divine synod actually comes into existence, my dear colleagues, we must hand over to it the State; and practically all our present lawgivers agree to this without dispute. Thus we shall have as an accomplished fact and waking reality that result which we treated but a short while ago in our discourse as a mere dream, when we constructed a kind of picture of the union of the reason and the head,—if, that is to say, we have the members carefully selected and suitably trained, and after their training quartered in the acropolis of the country, and thus finally made into wardens, the like of whom we have never before seen in our lives for excellence in safeguarding.

MEG. My dear Clinias, from all that has now been said it follows that either we must forgo the idea of settling the State, or else we must detain this Stranger here, and by prayers and every possible means secure his co-operation in the task of settling the State.

CLIN. That is most true, Megillus; I will do as you say, and do you yourself assist me.

MEG. Assist you I will.

1 i.e. if the god should direct the State to be named, not after the Magnetes, but after some other person or place: cp. 704 A, 919 D.  
2 Cp. 964 D ff.
INDEX

ABOLITION (of debts), I. 193, 353.
Absolute power (dangers of), I. 217, 285; II. 271-2
Abuse, II. 461 ff., 483 ff.
Achaeans, I. 187, 197, 263.
Acropolis, I. 381.
Action (and passion), II. 219, 363
Actors, II. 99
Admonition, I. 331
Adoption, n. 281, 424 ff., 443
Adulteration, n. 401 ff.
Adultery (penalty of), I. 497 ff.; n. 167 ff.
Aegina, I. 265
Agamemnon, I. 263
Agrarian legislation, I. 193
Agreement (breach of), II. 413 ff.
Agriculture, I. 377; II. 171, 313 (cp. Farm)
Aim, I. 223, 259, 297, 455; II. 343 ff.
Alcman (quoted), I. 257
Alien, I. 327; II. 169, 501 ff. (cp. Foreigner, Stranger)
All, the, II. 365 ff., 561
Allotments, I. 357, 369, 379 ff.; II. 205, 209
Amazons, II. 63
Ambassadors, II. 475
Ambition, I. 29; II. 255 ff., 471 ff.
Amphion, I. 169
Amusements, see Play.
Amycus, II. 29
Amynthor, II. 447
Anarchy, I. 247 ff.; II. 479
Anaxagoras (alluded to), II. 253 n., 502 ff.
Ancestors, I. 121, 319, 365
Anchor, II. 541
Ancients, II. 95, 497
Anger, I. 27; II. 419 (cp. Passion, Rage)
Angling, II. 121
Animals, I. 349, 491, 493; II. 165, 267, 393, 397, 467
Antaeus, II. 29
Apollo, I. 3, 29, 91, 93, 199; II. 491, 493, 495 n.
Appeal, court of, I. 447
Arbitrators, I. 443
Archers, I. 7, 259; II. 59, 63, 87, 141, 143
Archons, see Officials, etc.
Arcturus, II. 177
Ares, I. 158; II. 141, 413
Argos, I. 159, 221, 265, 267
Aristodemus, I. 219
Arithmetic (number), I. 359, 387; II. 73, 101, 102 n., 105 n.
——— (in games), II. 105
Arms, I. 7, 261; II. 23, 23, 57 ff.
——— loss of, II. 455 ff.
Art (Arts), I. viii, x, xv, 103, 136 n., 139 ff., 167 ff., 271, 305; II. 311 ff., 413 ff.
Atemisium, I. 265
Artificial (products), II. 311
Assaults, II. 285 ff. (cp. Outrage)
Assembly, I. 433; II. 195, 461
Association, I. 27, 53, 459
Assyrian Empire, I. 197
Astronomy, II. 101 ff., 113, 561 (cp. Star)
Astylus, II. 163
Athena, I. xi; II. 239 ff., 563
Athenians, Athens, I. 47, 59, 61, 221 ff., 239 ff., 599
Athletes, II. 121
Athletic contests, II. 131 ff., 139 ff. (cp. Gymnastic)
INDEX

Athos, I. 241
Atomists (doctrines of), II. 313 n.
Atonement, II. 229, 243, 265 ff.
Atropos, II. 537
Audience, I. 109 (cp. 245 ff.; II. 99)
Avarice, II. 255, 471 ff.
Avenger, II. 263, 291

Bacchic dances, II. 93
Bacchus, see Dionysus.
Bachelors (penalized), I. 313, 465
Ball, II. 261
Ball (games), II. 132 n.
Banquets, I. 49, 153 (cp. Feasts)
Baths, warm, I. 427
Beauty, I. 113; II. 219 ff., 315, 551
Becoming (and perishing), II. 321, 329 n. (cp. Generation)
Becos, I. 267; II. 175 (cp. 171)
Begging (forbidden), II. 465
Beginning, I. 471
Belief, II. 235, 299 ff.
Bequest, right of, II. 419 ff.
Best polity, I. 361 (cp. State)
Betrothal, I. 467
Birds, I. 7, 121, 179; II. 7, 89, 165, 511
Birth (gods of), I. 331; II. 287
Birthday feasts, I. 499
Birth-rate, I. 367
Blasphemy, II. 43, 113
Body, I. 329, 377; II. 5, 27, 255, 323, 330, 365 ff., 533, 563
Boeotians, I. 41
Borrowing, I. 373
Boundaries, II. 171 ff.
Boxing, II. 29, 105, 127, 131
Branding, II. 265
Briareus, II. 27
Bribe, I. 427; II. 357, 371, 381
Bronze, II. 105, 523
Burial, I. 27 (cp. Funeral)
Buying (and Selling), II. 191 ff. 397 ff.

Cadmean victory, I. 57
Cadmus, I. 123
Calculation, I. 67 ff., II. 339 (cp. Reason)
Cambyses, I. 227 ff.
Cancelling (Debts, etc.), II. 185, 195 ff.
Cannibalism, I. 493
Carless (gods not), II. 351 ff.
Carian music, II. 45
Carthaginians, I. 45, 161
Cause, I. 223; II. 111, 135, 139, 253, 255 ff., 329, 333 ff.

Cavalry, I. 409
Celtics, I. 45
Censor, I. 35 f., 49; II. 433, 511
Cercyon, II. 29
Ceremonies, II. 501
Challenge, I. 499, 443
Chance, I. 269 ff.; II. 311 ff.
Change, I. 165 ff.; II. 53 ff., 329, 333, 365 ff., 443
Chant, I. 113, 131, 135, 163; II. 99, 115
Chariots, II. 145
Charm, I. 113 n., 137 ff.
Cheerfulness, II. 13, 17 ff.
Cheese, I. 47
Choice, I. 343 ff., 361
Choirs, I. 193, 127 ff.
Chords, I. 149
Choristry, I. 95, 129 ff., 155 ff.; II. 97
Chorus, II. 99
Clynyras, I. 115
Circular motion, II. 327 ff., 342 ff.
Circumference, II. 345
Citations, II. 183
City in mid-country, I. 381
City-stewards, I. 419 ff., 433 ff., 483; II. 23, 177, 181, 185, 191 ff., 227, 293, 391, 405, 419, 465, 517
Civic (life, etc.), I. 135, 449; II. 27
Civil War, I. 19 ff.
Claim, II. 181, 393, 513, 517 ff.
Clan, I. 179 ff., 187 n., 267
Classes, I. 379 ff., 405 (cp. Property-class)
Climate, I. 387
Clotho, II. 537
Club collections, II. 205, 397
Cnossus, I. 5, 253, 399, 405
Cock-fights, II. 9
Coin, Coinage, I. 371 ff., 387
Collision, II. 285
Colonists, Colony, I. ix, 253, 353, 367, 399, 403; II. 423, 429
Colour, I. 97; II. 523
Combination (and separation), II. 329 ff., 341
Comedy, I. 107; II. 97, 463
Commanders, I. 49 ff., 53, 407 ff., 421 (cp. Officer)
Commensurables, II. 107
INDEX

Community (of goods), I. 363; II. 65
Compensation, I. 229
Competition, I. 107, 435 (cp. Contest)
Confederacy, I. 187 n.
Confidence, I. 67, 83 ff., 249
Confinement, I. 373; II. 205
Conspiracy, II. 467
Contests, I. 31; II. 31, 129 ff., 139 ff.
Contracts, I. 331; II. 413 ff.
Contribution, I. 359
Convention (and Nature), II. 314-15
Crafts, II. 477
Cowardice, II. 236
Courts, I. 69, 343
Corpses, II. 265, 531 ff.
Correctness, I. 137 ff.
Cosmogony, II. 477
Corybants, II. 11
Cosmos, II. 343, 561
Council (Boule), I. 161, 409 ff., 117
Country-stewards, see Land-stewards.
Courts, see Law-courts.
Cowardice, I. 77, 81, 111; II. 355, 359
Credit (forbidden), I. 373
Creditor, I. 189, 219
Crete, Cretan, I. 3 ff., 59, 159, 187, 257 ff.; II. 145, 187
Crisis, II. 163
Criterion, I. 139 (cp. Standard)
Criticism, I. 37, 385
Cronos, I. 283 ff.
Crypta, I. 31, 431
Curse, I. 204 n.; II. 203, 449, 461, 499
Custom, I. 7, 45, 181, 493; II. 19 ff., 167, 535
Cyclopes, I. 179, 183
Cypress, I. 5, 369
Cyprus, I. 359
Cyrus, I. 225 ff.
Daedalus, I. 169
Daemons, I. 285 ff., 299, 341 n., 359 ff., 363; II. 49, 125, 189, 277 n., 373, 385
Damage, II. 175 ff. (cp. Injury)
Dancing, I. 91 ff., 159, 459; II. 13, 27 ff., 91 n.
Dardania, I. 183
Dardanii, I. 251
Darius, I. 229 ff., 230 ff.
Datis, I. 239 ff.
Days (appointed), II. 45, 125, 147, 191 ff.
Deal, the, II. 45, 257, 263 ff., 433, 493 ff., 531 ff.
Death, II. 127, 367 ff., 485
— penalty, I. 351; II. 203 ff., 221, 231, 291 ff., 529
Debtor, I. 299
Debts (cancelling of), see Abolition.
Decrease, see Increase.
Definition, II. 335 ff.
Degradation, I. 81, 429; II. 21, 71, 133, 155, 205, 317, 497 (cp. Disqualification)
Delphi, I. 359, 421; II. 391, 495 n.
Deluge, I. 167, 183, 251
Demeter, I. 491
Democracy, I. ix, xv, xvi, 223 ff., 247, 277, 281 ff.
Democritus, II. 302 n., 313 n.
Deposit, Depositor, II. 391
Desertion, I. 429; II. 481, 559
Desire, I. 203 ff., 493; II. 149 ff., 153, 407
Despot, Despotism, I. 237 ff., 251, 361; II. 217 (cp. Monarchy)
Ducalion, I. 166 n.
Device, I. 53, 177, 333, 453; II. 135, 157 ff., 417
Dialectic, II. 555 n.
Diet, II. 35
Dionysia, I. 43
Dionysiac Chorus, I. viii, xv, 129 ff.
Dionysus, I. 45, 87, 129, 153, 155, 245; II. 177
Diopompus, II. 163
Dioscori, II. 29
Disease, I. 269, 345 ff.; II. 237, 373, 399
Disinheritance, II. 441 ff.
Dispensary, I. 73
Disposition, I. 89 ff.; II. 339, 381, 419, 443
Disqualification, I. 429, 499; II. 75, 169, 179, 463, 481, 561 (cp. Degradation)
Dissolution, I. 191; II. 209, 489 ff.
Distribution (of produce), II. 157 ff.
Dithyramb, I. 245 ff.
Divider, I. 199, 227; II. 381, 389, 457
INDEX

Divisions, (twelve), of city and country, I. 383
— of land, I. 195, 357 ff.
Divorce, I. 499; II. 445
Doctors, I. 307 ff., 315 ff., 427; II. 213
(cp. Physic)
Dogs, II. 121, 375 ff.
Donkey, I. 249
Dorians, I. 187
Dowries (forbidden), I. 373, 467
Drachma, II. 417
Drainage (game of), I. 361; II. 109, 305
Dreams, II. 385
Drinking, I. 37, 493 ff.
Drones, II. 355
Drug, I. 83
Drunkenness, I. 43 ff., 131 ff. (cp. Wine)
Dwellings, I. 381 ff.; II. 189
Dyes, II. 185, 523

Early man, I. 167 ff.
Early rising, II. 67
Earth, II. 301, 303, 313
— (early), I. x; II. 6 ff.
— (higher), I. xiv; II. 561 ff.
— (officer of), I. 439 ff.; II. 71, 79, 83 ff., 129, 147, 465, 509, 515
— (officials), I. 435 ff.
Egypt, I. 101 ff., 113; II. 37
Egyptian, I. 389; II. 105, 514 n.
Elleithyia, I. 497
Elder (as superior), I. 179, 211, 289, 313; II. 285, 401
Election (of officials), I. 403 ff.; II. 489 ff.
Elements (four), II. 313, 321
Embassies, I. 241, 371
Emigration, I. 351 ff.; II. 429, 441 ff., 501 ff.
Emmeleiai (dances), II. 95
Encroachment, I. 483; II. 173
Endurance, I. 31; II. 479
Epeius, I. 29
Ephors, I. 219, 281
Epic poetry, I. 109
Epilepsy, II. 308 n.
Epimenides, I. 61, 169
Epitaphs, II. 531
Equity, I. 193, 379, 413
Eretria, I. 239 ff.
Etymologies, I. 9, 93, 287; II. 41, 527, 537

Eulogy, II. 531 (cp. Praise)
Eumuch, the, I. 229
Eurythmnes, I. 159, 197 n.
Even numbers, I. 297; II. 337
Evidence (law of), II. 467 ff.
Evil, I. 337, 339 ff.
Examiners, II. 487 ff. (cp. Scrutiny)
Example, I. 33
Excellence, I. 335 ff., 439, 463, 473
(cp. Goodness, Virtue)
Excess profits, II. 195
Executioners, II. 261
Exercise, II. 5 ff., 67, 167
Exile, II. 237 ff., 279 ff., 293, 521
Expectations, I. 67
Exports, I. 257; II. 183 ff.
Expulsion (of aliens), II. 503, 515
Extremes (political), I. ix, 225, 251

Faction, I. 177, 215 (cp. Feud)
Falsehood, II. 401 ff.
False witness, II. 469 ff., 499
Family, I. 15, 187 n.
Farm, Farmer, I. 63, 181, 365, 421; II. 63, 171, 175 ff., 191 ff., 373, 375
Fate, II. 407, 537
Father, see Parents.
Fear, I. 67, 75 ff., 81 ff., 153; II. 13
Feasts, I. 91; II. 73, 85, 125, 141 ff., 501
Festivals, see Feasts.
Feud, I. 329, 355, 413; II. 209, 461 (cp. Strife)
"Feudality," I. 291
Fiction, I. 125
Fiddle, II. 25
Fighting, II. 27, 87 ff., 141
Figis, II. 177 ff.
Fines, I. 381, 405, 411, 435; II. 205, 211
Fishing, II. 119 ff.
Flattery, I. 33, 329; II. 421, 497
Flood, see Deluge.
Flute, I. 147, 247
Folly, I. 209, 217
Food, I. 137, 493 ff.; II. 187
Footcraces, I. 7; II. 139 ff. (cp. Running)
Force, I. 11, 213; II. 315 (cp. Violence)
Foreigner, II. 97, 179 ff., 191 ff. (cp. Alien, Stranger)
Fountain, I. 41, 305, 425, 435; II. 321
Fowling, II. 119 ff.
Frankincense, II. 185
Fraud, II. 401 ff., 475

574
INDEX

Freedmen, 2. 395
Freedom (liberty), I. ix, xv, 223 ff., 237 ff., 245 ff.
Friend, I. 203, 217, 243
Friendliness, Friendship, I. 223 ff., 237, 331 ff., 371, 419, 457, 471; II. 152 ff.
Fruit-harvest, II. 177
Funerals, I. 299 ff.; II. 493 ff., 531 ff.
Future Life, II. 257, 291 ff., 367 ff., 533 (cp. Hades)

Games, I. 449, 459; II. 23
Ganymede, I. 41
Gaol, II. 237 ff. (cp. Prison)
Generals, II. 513, 521 (cp. Commanders)
Generation, II. 330 ff.
Genius, II. 277
Gentleman, II. 411
Gentleness, I. 337
Geometry, II. 101 ff.
Geryon, II. 27
Gesture, I. 95, 145 ff.; II. 33
Girls (drill for), II. 21 ff., 87 ff., 143 ff.
Goats, I. 49
God, I. 219, 271, 293 ff., 367, 415; II. 355, 361 ff.
Gold, II. 47, 105
Golden leading-string, I. 69
Goods (classified), I. 25, 117, 235 ff., 329, 377
Gorys, I. 267
Graces, I. 185
Grapes, I. 177 ff.
Greece, Greeks, I. 177, 221 (cp. Hellas)
Guarantors, II. 261, 333
Guardians, see Orphans.
Gymnasia, I. 41, 75, 427; II. 57
Gymnastic, I. 41, 435 ff.; II. 27 ff., 85, 139 ff.

Habits, I. 99 ff., 123, 261, 267, 463; II. 19, 27, 145, 471
Hades, II. 257, 291 ff., 367 ff., 533
Hair, II. 479

Half (and Whole), I. 215 (cp. Whole)
Hands, II. 25 ff.
Happiness, I. 110 ff., 373 ff.; II. 255 ff.
Harbour, I. 255 ff.
Harmony, I. 93, 129, 147 ff., 211; II. 37, 51, 75, 81 ff., 373 n.
Harp, I. 107, 147; II. 83
Head, II. 479, 541, 553
Headship, I. 177, 183, 187 n.
Health, I. 25, 161, 193, 399, 329, 345 ff.; II. 447, 545
Hearing, II. 541
Heaven, II. 339 ff., 369
Hecate, II. 390 n.
Hector, II. 483
Heiresses, I. 23; II. 423 ff.
Helios, II. 489, 493
Hellas, II. 107, 255, 307
Helots, I. 31 n., 473
Hephaestus, II. 413
Hera, I. 155, 465 ff.
Heraclaeotes, I. 473
Heraclides, I. 197
Heraclidae, I. 553
Heraclitus (alluded to), II. 76 n.
Heralds, II. 441, 475
Herd, Herdsman, I. 49, 167, 351; II. 69, 373
Hermes, II. 475
Heroes, I. 299, 361; II. 49, 199
Hesiod, I. 109, 169, 215, 303; II. 302 n., 355 n., 482 n.
Hestia, I. 381; II. 189, 207
Hipparchus, I. 407 ff.
Hippolytus, I. 265; II. 449
Homer, I. 107, 177 ff., 263, 475; II. 55, 217, 365 n., 371 n., 375 n., 448 n., 483 n.
Hope, I. 341
Horn-struck (bean), II. 201
Horse-races, I. 437; II. 57 ff., 115, 121, 145
Hospitality (sanctity of), I. 333
Household, I. 179, 211, 366 ff.; II. 9
Human (life, etc.), I. 69, 269 ff.; II. 53, 57, 201, 271 ff., 495
Hunting, I. 431; II. 117 ff.
Hymns, I. 245 ff.; II. 39 ff., 493 ff.

Iambics, II. 463
Iberians, I. 45
Iccus, II. 163

575
INDEX

Ida, I. 183 ff.
Ildness, II. 355 ff.
Ignorance, I. 207 ff., 211 ff.; II. 105 ff., 233 ff.
Illium, I. 183, 197
Illusion, I. 123
Imitation (in art), I. 99, 139 ff., 305; II. 27, 91 ff.
Immortality, I. 117, 287, 311 ff., 365, 463, 471 ff., 563
Implety (penalties of), II. 39, 311, 351 ff., 377 ff.
Imports, II. 185
Incantations, I. 135, 151; II. 373, 383, 455 ff.
Incest, II. 157
Incommensurable, the, II. 109
Incontinence, II. 301, 349
Increase (and Decrease), II. 329 ff., 341
Incurable offenders, II. 201 ff.
Indolence, I. 351; II. 355 ff.
Informers, I. 335, 381; II. 237, 391, 453
Inheritance, I. 23
Injuries, II. 225 ff., 467
Injustice, I. 119, 123; II. 222 ff., 235
Inkeepers, II. 407 ff.
Innovation, I. 103, 113, 417; II. 33
Insolence, I. 57, 85, 119, 217, 295, 467; II. 373
Inspectors, II. 183, 505 ff., 529
Inspiration, I. 183, 305
Institution, I. 1, 5, 29 ff., 43, 47, 51 ff., 161, 261, 485 ff.; II. 21, 99, 161, 505
Intemperance, I. 346 ff.
Interest, I. 373; II. 417
Interpreters, I. 421, 469; II. 125, 181, 267, 401, 551, 553
Intestacy, II. 419 ff., 427
Inventions (of arts), I. 169
Involuntary, see Voluntary.
Ionian (life), I. 179
Iron, I. 173 ff.; II. 523
Irons, I. 381
Irrigation, I. 425; II. 175
I'sis, I. 103
Italy, I. 111, 477
Ivory, II. 523
Javelin, II. 143 ff., 239
Jealousy, II. 355 ff.
Jesting, I. 477; II. 465
Joy, I. 341
Judgment, I. 327
Judicial proceedings, II. 523 ff.
Juices (poisonous), II. 123
Justice, I. 21, 25, 121 ff., 255 ff., 327; II. 219 ff., 223 ff., 263, 305, 315, 373 ff., 471, 483
Kaineanus, II. 485
Keeper, see Saviour.
King, I. 117 ff., 183, 215, 219, 225, 229 ff., 427; II. 365
Knowledge, II. 273, 421, 551 ff.
Kore, I. 491
Lacedaemonians, Laconians, I. 3, 9, 17, 43, 59 ff., 179, 187 ff., 223, 281, 313, 175; II. 61 ff., 151
Lachesis, II. 537
Laius, II. 151
Land, I. 194 ff., 353 ff., 365, 369; II. 171 ff.
Land-stewards (Land-wardens), I. 423 ff.; II. 173, 177, 191, 267, 293, 391, 413, 465, 521
Law, Laws, I. ix, xiii, 3 ff., 279, 289 ff., 301 ff.;—
—(classified), I. 23; II. 291, 370 ff., 507 ff.;—
—(divine), I. xiv, 287, 291 ff., 293, 311 ff., 431 :—
—(philosophy of), I. 15 ff., 25 ff., 41, 67 ff., 181 ff., 259 :—
—(value of), II. 525 ff.
(of Plato), I. viii ff., 363, 395; II. 65, 79 ff., 217
Lawlessness, I. 247
Law-wardens, I. 27, 153, 397, 405 ff., 453 ff.; II. 125, 129, 163, 205, 425, 507 ff., 553, 559
Legal procedure, II. 183
Legislation, I. 393, 449 ff., 181 ff., 189, 193, 267 ff., 449 ff.; II. 35, 171, 211 ff., 313
Legislator, see Lawgiver.
Leisure, II. 65 ff., 127
Letters, II. 75
INDEX

Libations, II. 65
Liberty, see Freedom.
Licentious, I. 345 ff.; II. 297
Life, I. 117 ff., 348 ff.; II. 19, 49, 55, 231
Lightning, II. 267
Like to like, I. 294 n.; II. 153
Limit (of time), II. 517 ff.
Line, II. 107 ff., 328 n.
Lion, I. 263
Lorians, I. 17
Lordship, see Headship.
Lot, I. 213, 369, 413, 419
Love, I. 89, 339; II. 153 ff.
Loyalty, I. 21 ff.
Lust, I. 493; II. 255
Luxury, I. 45, 215, 229 ff.; II. 15, 63, 499
Lyre playing, II. 73, 83
Lyric, II. 463
Macareus, I. 157
Madness, II. 237, 251, 433, 443, 459
Magistrates, I. 383 ff.; II. 69 (cp. Officials)
Magnetes, Magnesian (State), I. ix, xiv, 352 n.; II. 159, 225, 411, 491, 569
Man (the measure, etc.), I. 295, 475, 491 ff.; II. 53, 539
Marathon, I. 241
Marlondyn, I. 473
Market, Market-place, I. 479; II. 151 ff., 169, 408 ff.
Market-stewards, I. 419, 453 ff.; II. 191 ff., 293, 381, 495, 413, 465, 513
Marsyas, I. 169
Master, I. 49, 201, 225, 413, 431, 475 ff.; II. 147, 479
Mathematics, I. 387 (cp. Numbers)
Matricide, II. 251
Meals (public), see Mess, Common Meals.
Mean, I. 329; II. 17 (cp. Extreme-
Measure, due, I. 217 ff.
Measures, I. 63, 387; II. 105
Meats, I. 491 (cp. Food)
Medes, I. 229

Medicine, I. 73, 127 n., 133, 157 (cp. Doctor, Physic)
Megara, I. 21
Memory, I. 273; II. 339
Menoetius, II. 483
Mercenaries, I. 21, 257
Merit (awards of), II. 129, 417, 481, 511, 559
Mess (public), I. 7, 483 ff. (cp. Common Meals)
Messene, I. 189, 221 n., 241
Metic, II. 307 (cp. Resident Alien)
Midas, I. 115
Miletus, I. 41
Military (service, officers, etc.), I. 408 ff., 501; II. 59 ff., 477 ff.
Mines, I. 179; II. 171
Minister, I. 285; II. 281, 479
Minoan, I. 3, 23, 29, 261
Mirror, II. 371
Model (City, etc.), I. viii, xiii ff., 22, 301, 363, 385
Mοdesty, I. 77, 329
Monarchy, I. xv, 183, 223 ff., 273 ff., 411
Money, I. 65, 371, 377, 381; II. 135, 389 (cp. Coin, Gold)
Monument, II. 531
Moon, II. 113 ff., 349
Mother, see Parents.
Mother-forms (of constitution), I. 223
Motion, I. 154 n., 159 n.; II. 7 ff., 327 ff., 337 ff., 561
Mourners, II. 35, 353
Murer, II. 230 ff., 255 ff.
Muse, I. 91, 129, 145 ff., 153, 185, 305, 495; II. 27, 31
Mystic (rite-), II. 257, 581
Myth, I. 279 (cp. Story, Tale)

Naked Games, I. 31 n.
Name, II. 55, 335 ff.
Naval (force, etc.), I. 261
Necessity, I. 307, 415; II. 191 ff.
Neighbour. I. 35, 357, 427 ff., 443, 447; II. 171 ff., 523

VOL. II. PLATO.

PP 577
INDEX

Nemea, II. 505
Nemesis, I. 299
Nestor, I. 279
Nile, II. 515
Ninus, I. 197
Noble (rule of), I. 213, 239
Nome (musical), I. xiii, 245, 317, 469; II. 41 ff.
Novelty, I. 113; II. 33 ff., 97 (cp. Innovation)
Number, I. 297 n., 337 ff., 369, 387 ff., 457; II. 105 ff., 337 ff.
Nurse, II. 9, 15, 23 ff.
Oath, I. 111 n., 191, 219; II. 401 ff., 497 ff.
Obedience, I. ix, xiv, xv, 291; II. 161
Obstruction, II. 529
Oedipus, II. 157, 449
Offering-, II. 521 ff.
Old (age), I. vii, xv, 105, 109, 131 ff., 233, 331, 335, 433 ff., 443, 449 ff.
Oligarchy, I. 273 ff.
Olive, I. 491; II. 481, 491
Olympia, I. 331; II. 67, 115, 163
Olympus, I. 169
Omissions (legislative), I. 459, 483; II. 523
One (and Many), II. 549 ff., 555 ff.
Opinion, I. 28, 139; II. 339, 499, 503
Opportunity, II. 401
Opposites, I. 483; II. 97, 313, 339 ff., 373 n., 445
Oracle, I. 5, 61, 129, 279, 281, 359, 421, 457, 461; II. 209, 225, 391, 421, 511
Orphans, II. 383, 419 ff., 433 ff.
Orpheus, Orphic, I. 147, 163, 293 n., 493; II. 129
Outline, I. 458; II. 51, 371
Outrage, II. 285 ff., 297
Paean, I. 245
Paian (Apollo), I. 127
Pain, I. 31 ff., 209, 273, 325, al.
Painter, Painting, I. 103, 449 ff.; II. 313
Palamedes, I. 169
Pan, II. 93
Pancratia, Pancratium, II. 27, 131, 143
Parents, I. 13, 179 ff., 211, 249, 299 ff., 321, 333, 419; II. 249 ff., 401, 431 ff., 437
Parmenides (alluded to), II. 333 n.
Parricide, II. 251 ff., 537
Part (and Whole), II. 361 ff.
Passion, I. 71, 337; II. 149 ff., 219 ff., 231 ff., 243 ff., 253, 281
Pasture-land, I. 175
Patient, I. 309; II. 213, 239
Patriarchal (law), I. 177
Patriotism, I. 239
Patroclus, II. 483
Pattern, II. 79
Payment, II. 57, 393 ff., 401, 415 ff.
Peace, I. 7 ff., 15 ff.; II. 55, 91 ff., 127, 521
Pedlar, Peddling, I. 65; II. 171, 407, 411
Peleus, II. 483
Pelopidae, I. 197
Peloponnesus, I. 195
Peltast, II. 143
Penestae, I. 473
Perjury, II. 499 (cp. Oath)
Persephone, I. 491 n.
Persian, I. 45, 61, 221 ff., 237 ff.
Persuasion, I. xiii, 113, 117, 279, 301, 307 ff., 315 ff., 399, 497; II. 301, 305, 377
Pestilence, I. 269
Pherecydes (alluded to), II. 302 n.
Phoenician, I. 389
Phoenix, II. 449
Phourarchus, I. 423 ff.; II. 172 n.
Phylarchus, I. 407 ff., 421; II. 145
Phyle, I. 383
Physic, Physician, I. 17; II. 361, 365, 375 (cp. Doctor, Medicine)
Pity, I. 287 ff.
Pilot, I. 263, 269; II. 361, 543
Pindar, I. 213, 291; II. 451 n.
Planets, II. 113
Planting, I. 175
Plataea, I. 265
INDEX

Rule, Ruler, I. 208 n., 211 ff., 227, 275, 279, 283 ff., 289 ff.; II. 273, 491, 479
Running (races), I. 7, 431; II. 141 ff., 163
Rural stewards, see Land-stewards.

Sacred line (in draughts), I. 361
Sacrifices, I. 297 ff., 493; II. 55 ff., 73, 113, 125 ff., 241, 307, 388 ff., 497, 501, 505
Safety, see Salvation.
Salamis, I. 259, 263 ff.
Sale, II. 191 ff., 397 ff., 515
Salvation (safety, safe-keeping), I. 241, 263, 287, 293; II. 325, 337 ff., 565
Satyr, II. 93
Sauromatides, II. 59, 63
Saviour, I. xv, 219, 257, 471; II. 537, 541 (cp. I. 453)
School, I. 435: II. 57, 75
Science, Scientist, I. 49; II. 315 ff.
Scouring, I. 205, 263, 293 ff., 593
Scrupify, I. 433, 439 ff., 445; II. 495 (cp. Test)
Sculptor, II. 523
Scythian, I. 45; II. 25
Sea, I. 257
Search, II. 517
Second-best (state, etc.), I. 361, 385; II. 65, 167, 273
Secret-Service, I. 31 n., 431
Security, II. 315 (cp. Surety)
Select judges, II. 207, 237, 433, 471, 491, 497, 535 (cp. I. 445)
Self-defence, II. 287 ff.
Self-inferior (— superior), I. 11 ff., 67; II. 167
Self-love, I. 339
Self-movement (principle of), I. xvi; II. 351 ff., 357
Serious (work, etc.), I. 161; II. 53 ff., 77, 97, 313
Service (military, etc.), I. 429 ff., 501; II. 481 ff., 521
Sex (sexual relations, etc.), I. 493 ff.; II. 149 ff., 157 ff., 163 ff.
Shame, I. 77 n., 81, 153 (cp. Modesty)
Shepherd, I. 229, 349
Ship, I. 55, 259, 415; II. 53
Shrine, II. 189, 203, 385 ff.
Sicily, I. 111
Silent, II. 93
Silver, I. 175, 371 ff.; II. 47, 105, 523
Simonides, I. 367 n.
Simplicity, I. 175
Sins, II. 281 ff.
Singing, I. 127 ff. (cp. Song)
Slaves, I. 245 ff., 308, 475 ff.; II. 21, 239 ff.
Sleep, II. 67 ff.
Sling, II. 143
Smerdis, I. 228 n., 229 n.
Socrates (alluded to), II. 222 n.
Soldier, II. 451, 487
Solid, II. 107 ff., 328 n.
Solon, I. 355 n.; II. 217, 390 n.
Song, I. 127 ff.; II. 49 ff., 129
Soothsayer, II. 389
Sophist, II. 381
Sorcery, II. 455 ff.
Sorrow, I. 341
Soul, I. xiii, xvi, 208 n., 209, 323 ff.; 337; II. 333 ff., 365 ff., 533, 541, 551 ff., 561 ff.
Spartan, Spartaniate, I. 31 n., 43, 126 n., 218 n., 399, 481; II. 502 n. (cp. Laconian)
“Sparti,” I. 57 n.
Spectators, I. 107, 111
“Sphaeromachia,” II. 132 n.
Spices, II. 185
Spring, I. 417, 425; II. 181 (cp. Fountain)
Stage, II. 99
Standard, II. 49
Star, II. 113 ff., 349 ff., 367 n., 447 n., 561 ff.
Starting-principle, II. 329 (cp. 335)
Statues, II. 523
Stepmother, II. 445
Strife, I. 15, 267, 533; II. 489 (cp. Faction, Feud)
Substance, II. 355 ff.
INDEX

Suffering, II. 219 n.
Suit, see Trial.
Summons, II. 207
Sun, II. 115 ff., 181, 347 ff., 505
Supervision, II. 71, 83, 185, 191, 241, 437
Suppliant, I. 333
Surety, II. 261, 265, 385
Surface, II. 107 ff., 328 n., 367
Swine, II. 107
Syrcusan, I. 47
System, I. 29; II. 61
Tablet, I. 589, 599 ff.
Tale, I. 167, 233 ff.; II. 117, 241, 351, 373, 455, 487 (cp. Story, Tradition)
Tarentum, I. 43
Taste, I. 99, 113
Taxes, II. 59, 195, 521
Taxiarchs, I. 407 ff., 421
Teachers, II. 57, 69 ff., 73 ff., 105, 533
Telemaeans, II. 55
Temenius, I. 189, 219
Temper, I. 463
Temperance, I. xiii, xiv, 39, 79, 233 ff., 273 ff., 279, 297, 335, 345 ff.; II. 165
Temple, I. 350, 417 ff., 425, 470; II. 189 ff.
Temple-robber, II. 157, 201 ff.
Test, I. 81, 85 ff., 353, 421 ff., 451; II. 421, 491, 527, 539 (cp. Scrutiny)
Testator, II. 425 ff.
Thales (alluded to), II. 349 n.
Thanayreus, II. 129
Theatre, I. 187
Theatrocracy, I. 247
Theft, II. 211, 269, 457, 473 ff., 520 ff.
Themis, II. 457
Theognis, I. 21 ff.
Theogony, II. 503
Theopompus, I. 218 n.
Thesemus, I. 295; II. 149
Thessaaly, I. 5, 473; II. 185
Thetis, II. 483
Thracian, I. 45, 117; II. 61
Thurii, I. 41
Thyestes, II. 157
Timber, I. 259
Time, I. 149, 165 ff.; II. 82 n., 517 ff.
Titans, I. 249
Title, II. 557
Toll, II. 185
Tomb, I. 307; II. 493 ff.
Trade, I. 237, 271, 377; II. 193 ff., 405 ff. (cp. Retail trade)
Tradition, I. 187, 285 ff., 293; II. 435 (cp. Story, Tale)
Tragedy, I. 107 ff., II. 97 ff., 157
Training, I. 31, 75, 81, 91, 161, 229, 567, 441; II. 57, 151 ff., 163, 203 (cp. Education)
Trader, Treasurer, II. 211, 237
Transformation, II. 485
Travel (abroad), II. 511 ff. (cp. I. 371)
Treasure, II. 399 ff.
Treasurer, I. 465 ff.; II. 421
Trial, II. 208 ff., 237 ff., 443 ff.
Tribal courts, I. 447; II. 397, 523
Tribal number, I. 457
Tribes, I. 583
Triptolemus, I. 491
Trivial (aerious), II. 3, 65
Trojan (war, etc.), I. 167, 263, 279
Troy, I. 197 (cp. Ilium)
Truth, I. 125, 130 ff., 333, 361; II. 227
Tune, I. 95 ff., 145 ff., 247 ff.; II. 41, 51, 82 n., 147
Tuscany, I. 359
Tutor, II. 62 ff.
Typical (case), II. 43 ff., 277
Tyran, Tyrannus, I. 281, 289; II. 137, 217 (cp. Despot)
Tyrraeus, I. 17 ff., 137; II. 217, 291 ff.
Under-world, II. 531 (cp. Hades)
Unity, I. 365
Universe, see All, World-all.
Unjust, I. 115 ff.; II. 223 ff.
Unwritten laws, II. 19 (cp. 117), 157, 167
Valuation, I. 379; II. 175, 521
Vault, II. 495
Vestey interests, I. 353
Vice, I. 347; II. 391
Victory, I. 7, 45 ff., 57, 77, 291, 331; II. 67, 163
Village, Villagers, I. 9 ff., 429 ff.; II. 23, 523
Vine, Vineyard I. 162, 491
Vintage, II. 177
Violation, II. 269
Violence, II. 285, 291, 297 ff., 459, 477
Voluntary, I. xi, 337, 345 ff.; II. 223 ff., 259, 245 ff., 288
INDEX

Waggons, I. 43
Walls, I. 181, 425, 481
War, I. 7 ff., 11, 15 ff., 253, 269, 367;
   II. 91 ff., 127 ff., 521
Warden, I. 27; II. 563 ff., 569
Warp, I. 349
Watchfulness, I. 415 ff.; II. 69
Water, I. 161, 353; II. 175 ff., 181
Wayside (Goddess of), II. 391
Wealth, I. 117, 175, 257, 329, 373 ff.;
   II. 135, 255, 389, 405 ff.
Weaving, I. 175
Weeping, I. 15 (cp. II. 43)
Weights, I. 387; II. 105
White (garments, etc.), II. 493, 523
Whole (and Parts), I. ix, xiii, 23, 215 n.,
   291; II. 63, 363 ff., 557 ff.
Wills, II. 419 ff.
Wine, I. 45, 57, 63, 75, 83 ff., 133,
   155 ff., 161 ff., 463, 469
Wisdom, I. xiv, xv, 25 ff., 225, 272 n.;
   II. 549 ff. (cp. Reason)
Witchcraft, II. 388, 455
Witness, I. 47 ff.; II. 183, 467 ff., 519
Wives, I. 363, 467
Wolves, II. 375

Women (nature and education of), I.
   45, 109, 365 ff., 487 ff., 497 ff.; II.
   49 ff., 59 ff., 85 ff., 97 ff., 127 ff.,
   143, 295
Women (officials), I. 497 ff.; II. 23,
   445, 453
Wood, II. 523 (cp. Timber)
Woof, I. 349
Wool-work, II. 61
Word-play, I. 286 n., 348 n.; II. 149 n.
World-all, II. 363
Worship, I. 473 (cp. Religion)
Wounds, II. 271 ff.
Woven stuff, II. 193, 523
Wrestler, Wrestling, II. 27 ff., 143
Writing, II. 75

Xerxes, I. 231

Young, Youth, I. 35 ff., 91, 125 ff.,
   313, 331; II. 11 ff., 33, 119 ff.,
   285 ff., 307 ff., 401, 443, 493
Zeus, I. 3, 5, 29, 33, 41, 121, 293 n.,
   333, 413; II. 171, 293, 415, 467,
   475, 505

Printed in Great Britain by Richard Clay & Sons, Limited,
Bungay, Suffolk.
The Loeb Classical Library

VOLUMES ALREADY PUBLISHED

Latin Authors.

APULEIUS. The Golden Ass (Metamorphoses), W. Adlington (1566).
Revised by S. Gaselee. (3rd Imp.)

AUSONIUS. H. G. Evelyn White. 2 Vols.


CAESAR: CIVIL WARS. A. G. Peskett. (2nd Imp.)

CAESAR: GALLIC WAR. H. J. Edwards. (4th Imp.)

CATULLUS. F. W. Cornish; TIBULLUS. J. P. Postgate; and PERVIGILIIUM VENERIS. J. W. Mackail. (5th Imp.)

CICERO: DE FINIBUS. H. Rackham. (2nd Imp.)

CICERO: DE OFFICIIS. W. Walter Miller. (2nd Imp.)


CLAUDIAN. M. Platnauer. 2 Vols.

CONFESSIONS OF ST. AUGUSTINE. W. Watts (1631). 2 Vols. (3rd Imp.)

FRONTINUS, STRATEGEMS AND AQUEDUCTS. C. E. Bennett.

FRONTE: CORRESPONDENCE. C. R. Haines. 2 Vols.

HORACE: ODES AND EPODES. C. E. Bennett. (6th Imp.)

JUVENAL AND PERSIUS. G. G. Ramsay. (2nd Imp.)


LUcretius. W. H. D. Rouse.

MARTIAL. W. C. Ker. 2 Vols.

OVID: HEROIDES AND AMORES. Grant Showerman. (2nd Imp.)

OVID: METAMORPHOSES. F. J. Miller. 2 Vols. (3rd Imp.)


PETRONIUS. M. Heseltine; SENECA: APOCOLOCYNTOSIS. W. H. D. Rouse. (5th Imp.)


PLINY: LETTERS. Melmoth’s Translation revised by W. M. L. Hutchinson. 2 Vols. (2nd Imp.)

PROPERTIUS. H. E. Butler (3rd Imp.)

QUINTILIAN. H. E. Butler. 4 Vols.

SALLUST. J. C. Rolfe.

SCRIPTORES HISTORIAE AUGUSTÆ. D. Magie. 4 Vols. Vols. I and II.

SENeca: EPISTULAE MORALES. R. M Guimere. 3 Vols. (Vol. I and Imp.)

SENeca: TRAGEDIES. F. J. Miller. 2 Vols. (2nd Imp.)

SUETONIUS. J. C. Rolfe. 2 Vols. (3rd Imp.)

TACITUS: DIALOGUS. Sir Wm. Peterson, and AGRICOLA AND GERMANIA. Maurice Hutton. (3rd Imp.)


TERENCE. John Sargeaunt. 2 Vols. (5th Imp.)

VELLEIUS PATERCULUS AND RES GESTAE DIVI AUGUSTI. F. W. Shipley.

Greek Authors.

ACHILLES TATIUS. S. Gaselee.
AENEAS TACTICUS, ASCLEPIODOTUS AND ONASANDER.
AESCHYLUS. H. Weir Smyth. 2 Vols.
APOLLODORUS. Sir James G. Frazer. 2 Vols.
APOLLONIUS RHODIUS. R. C. Seaton. (3rd Imp.)
APPIAN'S ROMAN HISTORY. Horace White. 4 Vols.
ARISTOPHANES Benjamin Bickley Rogers. 3 Vols. [G. R. Mair.
CALLIMACHUS AND LYCOPHRON. A. W. Mair; and ARATUS,
CLEMENT OF ALEXANDRIA. Rev. G. W. Butterworth.
DAPHNIS AND CHLOE. Thornley's Translation revised by J. M. Edmonds ; and PARTHENIUS. S. Gaselee. (2nd Imp.)
DEMOSTHENES, DE CORONA and DE FALSA LEGATIONE,
C. A. Vince and J. H. Vince.
DIO CASSIUS: ROMAN HISTORY. E. Cary. 9 Vols. Vols. I to VIII.
DIOGENES LAERTIUS. R. D. Hicks. 2 Vols.
EURIPIDES. A. S. Way. 4 Vols. (4th Imp.)
GALEN: ON THE NATURAL FACULTIES. A. J. Brock.
THE GREEK ANTHOLOGY. W. R. Paton. 5 Vols. (3rd Imp.)
HERODOTUS. A. D. Godley. 4 Vols.
HIPPOCRATES. W. H. S. Jones. 4 Vols. Vols. I and II.
HOMER: ODYSSEY. A. T. Murray. 2 Vols. (2nd Imp.)
JOSEPHUS: THE LIFE AND AGAINST APION. H. St. J. Thacke-
JULIAN. Wilmer Cave Wright. 3 Vols [ray. 8 Vols. Vol. I.
LYRA GRAECA. J. M. Edmonds. 3 Vols. Vols. I and II.
MARCUS AURELIUS. C. R. Haines. (2nd Imp.)
MENANDER. F. G. Allinson.
PAUSANIAS: DESCRIPTION OF GREECE. W. H. S. Jones. 5
PHILOSTRATUS: THE LIFE OF APOLLONIUS OF TYANA.
F. C. Conybeare. 2 Vols. (2nd Imp.)
PHILOSTRATUS AND EUNAPIUS, LIVES OF THE SOPHISTS.
PINDAR. Sir J. E. Sandys. (3rd Imp.) [Wilmer Cave Wright.
PLATO: CRATYLUS, PARMenides, GREATER HIPPIAS,
LESSER HIPPIAS. H. N. Fowler.
PLATO: EUTHYPHRO, APOLOGY, CRITO, PHAEDO, PHAED-
PLATO: LACHES, PROTAGORAS, MENO, EUTHYDEMUS.
PLATO: LYSYS, SYMPOSiUM, GORGIAS. W. R. M. Lamb.
PLATO: POLITICUS AND PHILEBUS. H. N. Fowler. 10N.
W. R. M. Lamb.
PLATO: THEAETETUS AND SOPHIST. H. N. Fowler.
PLUTARCH: THE PARALLEL LIVES. B. Perrin. 11 Vols.
POLYBIUS. W. R. Paton. 6 Vols. Vols. I to IV.
QUINTUS SMYRNAEUS. A. S. Way. [Vols. I to IV.
SOPHOCLES. F. Storr. 2 Vols. (4th Imp.)
ST. JOHN DAMASCENE: BARLAAM AND IOASAPH. Rev. G. R.
Woodward and Harold Mattingly.
STRABO: GEOGRAPHY. Horace L. Jones. 8 Vols. Vols. I to III.
THEOPHRASTUS: ENQUIRY INTO PLANTS. Sir Arthur Hopt,
THUCYDIDES. C. F. Smith. 4 Vols. [Bart. 2 Vols.
XENOPHON: HELLENICA, ANABASIS, APOLOGY, AND SYM-
POSIUM. C. L. Brownson and O. J. Todd 3 Vols.
XENOPHON: MEMORABILIA AND OECONOMICUS. E. C.
Marchant.
XENOPHON: SCRIPTA MINORA. E. C. Marchant.
Reader "tied to" 1st dorsal...

Education universal because effective in a law to society.

"Public Opinion" 1974

Life - a "hasty" 198

Ownership of literature 1978

Pettie loan p 182

Free Trade 184

Penny should be registered 204 & primes p 197

in 1st public 207

President of another to stay home for 1st 211

Sel. help in number cases 241/3

number 9 "banshagbol" 245

"King Ira" and 54h (Philip's pincelation) 271/3

Kahnol before the judge 278

Source 803 + 313

Second hand 9 1st appear 23/10